Vijay Singh Meena
Pankaj Kumar Mishra
Jaideep Kumar Bisht
Arunava Pattanayak *Editors*

Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture

Volume I: Plant-soil-microbe nexus

Springer

Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture

Vijay Singh Meena • Pankaj Kumar Mishra
Jaideep Kumar Bisht • Arunava Pattanayak
Editors

Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture

Volume I: Plant-soil-microbe nexus

Springer

Editors
Vijay Singh Meena
ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture
Almora, Uttarakhand, India

Pankaj Kumar Mishra
ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture
Almora, Uttarakhand, India

Jaideep Kumar Bisht
ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture
Almora, Uttarakhand, India

Arunava Pattanayak
ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture
Almora, Uttarakhand, India

ISBN 978-981-10-5588-1 ISBN 978-981-10-5589-8 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8

Library of Congress Control Number: 2017950010

© Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2017
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Contents

Part II Beneficial Soil Microbe Interaction in Some Economically Important Crops

About the Editors

Dr. Vijay Singh Meena is currently working as Scientist in ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture, Almora, Uttarakhand, India.

Dr. Pankaj Kumar Mishra is currently working as Principal Scientist in ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture, Almora, Uttarakhand, India.

Dr. Jaideep Kumar Bisht is currently working as Principal Scientist & Head of Crop Production Division in ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture, Almora, Uttarakhand, India.

Dr. Arunava Pattanayak is currently working as Director in ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture, Almora, Uttarakhand, India.

Part I

Role of Soil Microbe Interaction

Plant Beneficial Rhizospheric Microbes (PBRMs): Prospects for Increasing Productivity and Sustaining the Resilience of Soil Fertility

1

Abhijit Sarkar, Madhumonti Saha, and Vijay Singh Meena

Abstract

The efficient microorganisms in the vicinity of plant roots that exert positive effects on plant growth are known as plant beneficial rhizospheric microbes (PBRMs). One of the salient features for the effectiveness of PBRMs is their ability to proliferate at hosts' rhizosphere, rhizoplane or the root interior. They are directly or indirectly involved in plant growth promotion and development by releasing particular compounds, increasing the uptake of certain nutrients from the soil and lessening or preventing the plants from deleterious pathogens. Indirect plant growth promotion is achieved by the inhibition of the detrimental effects of phytopathogenic organisms, which can be obtained by the production of siderophores, i.e. metal-chelating agent. Several bacterial species also have been reported in biocontrol of soil-borne phytopathogens and the synthesis of antibiotics. Production of hydrogen cyanide (HCN) and/or fungal cell wall degrading enzymes (e.g. chitinase and β-1, 3-glucanase) help PBRMs to sup-

---

A. Sarkar (✉)
ICAR-Indian Institute of Water Management, Bhubaneswar 751023, Odisha, India

ICAR-Indian Agricultural Research Institute, Pusa Campus, New Delhi 110012, India
e-mail: asiari2012@gmail.com

M. Saha
Department of Agricultural Chemistry and Soil Science, Faculty of Agriculture, Bidhan Chandra KrishiViswavidyalaya, Mohanpur 741252, West Bengal, India

Department of Soil Science and Agricultural Chemistry, Institute of Agricultural Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi 221005, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: madhumonti2609@gmail.com

V.S. Meena
ICAR-Vivekananda Institute of Hill Agriculture, Almora 263601, Uttarakhand, India

Department of Soil Science and Agricultural Chemistry, Institute of Agricultural Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi 221005, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: vijay.meena@icar.gov.in

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_1

press the effect of phytopathogens. Direct plant growth promotion involves symbiotic and non-symbiotic PBRMs which function through production of plant hormones such as auxins, gibberellins, ethylene, cytokinins and abscisic acid. Some of the PBRMs are functioning as a sink for 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC), the immediate precursor of ethylene in higher plants, by hydrolyzing it into α-ketobutyrate and ammonia and in this way promoting root growth by lowering indigenous ethylene levels in the rhizospheric environment. PBRMs also help in solubilization of nutrient-bearing minerals (indigenous sources of phosphates, potash and other nutrients), enhance resistance to plant stress, stabilize soil aggregates and improve soil structure and organic matter content. PBRMs could able to retain more soil organic N and other nutrients in the plant-soil system, which can reduce the need for fertilizer N and P and help in nutrient acquisition. Evidently, PBRMs maintain enormous prospects in advanced and sustainable plant production, including, improved plant tolerance to stress, better uptake of plant nutrient from soils and reduced application of chemical inputs. Besides, PBRMs in the soil bear a peculiar relation to soil fertility. Various investigations have documented the increased health and productivity of different plant species by the application of plant beneficial rhizospheric microorganisms under both the normal and abiotic-stressed conditions. Attempts should be directed towards maximizing the identified benefits of PBRMs in all developing countries. If the benefits of PBRMs in crop production can be maximized, this will certainly help to fight against hunger. This chapter discusses the major functions of PBRMs in broad terms, but efforts were made to present specific usage of PBRMs to enhance plant nutrient uptake, for better plant response to environmental stress, and unexplored potentials in developing countries.

Keywords
Rhizosphere • PBRMs • Stress resistance • Nutrient acquisition • Sustainability

1.1 Introduction

Plants are the sources of food, oxygen, fuel, fibre, medicine and residence for every animal on this planet Earth. Whereas, these plants uptake their own requirements mainly from soil through its root system. Thus, root-soil interaction is running simultaneously from the beginning and evolution of life, where they assemble benefits from their symbiotic association with each other (Meena et al. 2013a, 2016a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Ahmad et al. 2016; Parewa et al. 2014; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b). This root-soil-associated phase is known as rhizosphere (rhiza = root, sphere = area of influence).The rhizosphere is the narrow region of soil that is directly influenced by plant roots in association with root hairs, plant-produced materials and concerted soil microorganisms (Hartmann et al. 2009). It may expand up to 2–3 mm from the root surface, which can be

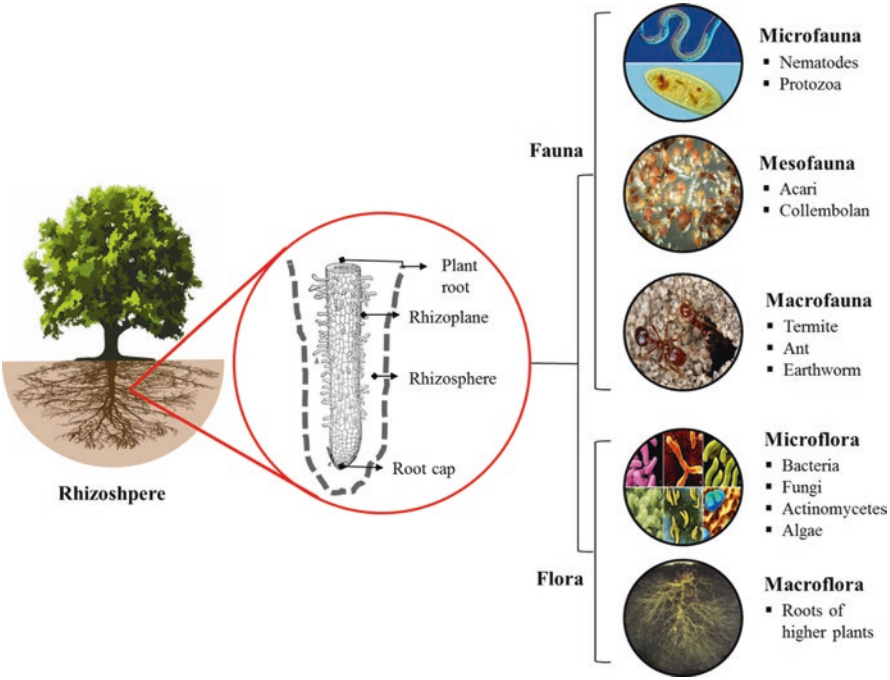


Fig. 1.1 Distribution of microbes in rhizospheric zoo (Coyne 1999; Mendes et al. 2013)

differentiated into two distinct classes, named inner rhizosphere (endorhizosphere) and outer rhizosphere (ectorhizosphere). Endorhizosphere is a multilayered micro-environment that is composed by root surface coated with mucoid layer, and the ectorhizosphere is none other than rhizosphere soil. Largely, three distinct but connected components are identified in the rhizosphere: the root itself, the rhizoplane and the rhizosphere (soil).

There are important groups of organisms which are often present in soil: microflora, macroflora, microfauna, mesofauna and macrofauna (Fig. 1.1). This marginal zone of soil surrounding plant roots can encompass up to ~10^{11} microbial cells per gramme of root and ~30,000 prokaryotic species which can increase plant productivity (Mendes et al. 2013). On the basis of distance from root surface and microbial activity, plant root's micro-ecosystem is divided as rhizosphere (near root surface and higher microbial activity) and non-rhizosphere (bulk soil and lower microbial activity).

In 1946 H. Katznelson suggested the concept of R:S ratio which is the ratio between microbial population in rhizosphere (R) and non-rhizosphere (S) soil. This ratio is situation specific, and it varies from species to species of plants and rhizospheric microbes. During seed germination and seedling emergence, the growing plant interacts with a scale of microorganisms present in the adjoining soil (Katznelson et al. 1948). This can impart a better idea of the relative stimulation of rhizospheric microorganisms on the plant species (Prakash and Verma 2016;

Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Meena et al. 2015f, 2016b; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

As seeds germinate and roots grow throughout the soil, they secrete organic metabolites which supply the driving force for the activation of microbial populations in a zone which includes plant root and the adjacent soil in a few millimetre (mm) of thickness. This is referred as the rhizosphere effect (Morgan et al. 2011) and considered as the qualitative estimation of the degree or extent of plant growth that are affected by those microorganisms, while R:S ratio is used as quantitative measure. These plant beneficial microbes (PBMs) are very indispensable in biogeochemical cycles which are the determinants of plant health and soil fertility and have been used for crop production for decades. Generally, the microbe functions in different ways such as secreting regulatory chemical compounds for the plants, facilitating resource acquisition of certain nutrients (N, P, K, Fe, S, etc.) from the soil and reducing or impeding the plants from the inhibitory effects of various pathogens in the forms of a biocontrol agent (Kumar et al. 2017; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015a, b; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Evidently, these rhizospheric microbes hold infinite potential in advanced and sustainable plant production, including reinforced plant tolerance to stress, modulated plant hormone levels and limited use of chemical inputs. Regular use of enormous amounts of chemical inputs is causing unsuitable environment. Now, try to better understand the function of inoculants as biofertilizers in nutrient absorption, and plant response to environmental stress is more enthralling. The plant beneficial rhizobacteria may reduce the worldwide dependence on precarious agricultural chemicals which weaken the agroecosystems. This chapter emphasizes the comprehension of the rhizosphere and plant beneficial rhizospheric microorganisms under the present aspects (Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016c, d; Saha et al. 2016b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Teotia et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b).

1.2 Rhizosphere Deposits and Priming Effect

The chemicals which are released by the roots within the soils are generally known as root exudates. Then the root products contributed to the surrounding soil are generally called as rhizodeposits. Root exudates, a fraction of rhizodeposition, are abundant in carbon and energy sources that govern the occurrence and growth of the microbes in the rhizosphere. Other fractions of rhizodeposition are lysates, mucilage, secretions and dead cell materials that may take part in plant development (Sommers et al. 2004; Dardanelli et al. 2010).

It is learned that both the qualitative and quantitative formulations of root exudates are influenced by different environmental factors such as pH, soil type, oxygen status, light intensity, soil temperature, nutrient accessibility and the presence

Table 1.1 Various compounds in root exudates (rhizodeposits) of different plant species

Amino acids	α-Alanine, β-alanine, asparagines, aspartate, cysteine, cystine, glutamate, glycine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, serine, threonine, proline, valine, tryptophan, ornithine, histidine, arginine, homoserine, phenylalanine, aminobutyric acid, α-aminoadipic acid
Enzymes	Acid/alkaline-phosphatase, invertase, amylase, protease
Inorganic ions and gaseous molecules	HCO_3^-,OH^-, H^+, CO_2, H_2
Organic acids	Citric acid, oxalic acid, malic acid, fumaric acid, succinic acid, acetic acid, butyric acid, valeric acid, glycolic acid, piscidic acid, formic acid, aconitic acid, lactic acid, pyruvic acid, glutaric acid, malonic acid, tetronic acid, aldonic acid, erythronic acid
Purines/nucleosides	Adenine, guanine, cytidine, uridine
Sugars	Glucose, fructose, galactose, ribose, xylose, rhamnose, arabinose, desoxyribose, oligosaccharides, raffinose, maltose
Vitamins	Biotin, thiamin, pantothenate, riboflavin, niacin

Adapted from Dakora and Phillips 2002

of microorganisms. These factors may have a significant effect on root exudation than differences due to the plant species (Singh et al. 2004).

The exudation of a broad extent of chemical compounds (Table 1.1) which improve the chemical and physical characteristics of the soil thus modulates the structure of soil microbial circle in the adjacent region of root surface (Dakora and Phillips 2002). There are six major regions of rhizodeposition in the immediate vicinity of the root surface: (a) loss of cap and border cells, (b) loss of insoluble mucilage, (c) loss of soluble root exudates, (d) loss of volatile organic carbon, (e) loss of C to symbionts and (f) loss of C due to death and lysis of root epidermal and cortical cells. Then these rhizodeposits may alter the soil properties such as pH and carbon availability, influencing the diversity and activity of microbial populations (Haichar et al. 2008).

Generally, structure of the rhizobacterial community is decided by the plant species with their differences in the formulation and quantity of root exudates that possibly affects the microbial populations. Concerning how plant roots specify soil microbes to build the microbial community in the rhizosphere is an important empirical idea when considering the use of beneficial microbes as plant growth promoters (PGP); these vigorous communications of root exudates and activity of those microbes can conduct to a better root growth (Adesemoye et al. 2009; Drogue et al. 2014).

Change in soil organic matter (SOM) decomposition as a result of plant root and associated microbes activity is often analogous to rhizodeposition. It is also familiar as rhizosphere priming (Kuzyakov 2002), which plays a pivotal role in microbial activity, soil carbon (C) pools distribution and their reactions to global climate change. Rhizosphere priming may be altered by soil nutrient availability, but it itself can also influence nutrient supply to plants. These bilateral effects may be of specific importance in understanding the sustained increase in plant growth and nutrient supply in response to the advancement in atmospheric CO_2 level (Drake et al.

2013; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015c; Meena et al. 2014a, 2016e; Sharma et al. 2016).

1.3 Plant Beneficial Rhizospheric Microbes (PBRMs)

1.3.1 Rhizospheric Microbes and Nutrient Acquisition

Increasing crop losses may be the result of underutilization of essential nutrients by plants from soil. Presence and/or application of PBRMs in rhizosphere as biofertilizer enhances the nutrient recovery efficacy of plants, and increment in crop yield subsequently occurs. For each and different nutrient, PBRMs and plants have specific mechanisms. So, let us know what are the possible mechanisms (Fig. 1.2) involved in nutrient acquisition by PBRM plant interaction. In the following sections, it has been thoroughly discussed (Verma et al. 2015b; Meena et al. 2013b; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016).

Nitrogen (N) is the most essential nutrient for development and productivity of crops. Minimizing the use of chemical fertilizers by using biological fertilizers based on microorganisms inoculum involved in nitrogen fixation is one of the

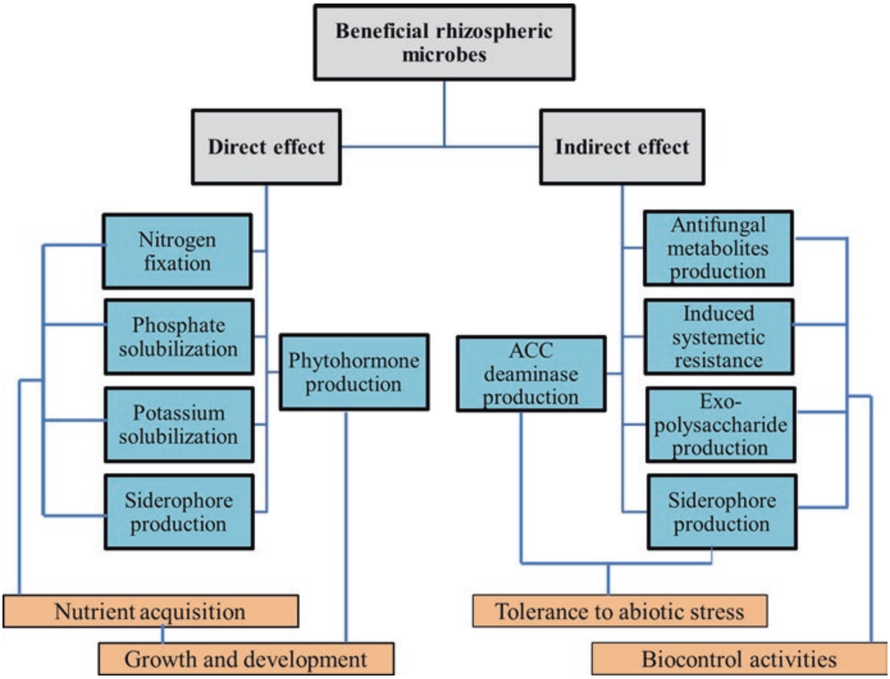


Fig. 1.2 Schematic diagram representing the direct and indirect effects of plant beneficial rhizospheric microbes (PBRMs)

worthwhile initiatives in sustainable agriculture. In the biological N_2 fixation (BNF), the atmospheric N_2 is converted into plant accessible forms by nitrogen-fixing microorganisms (NFM) utilizing a complex enzyme system known as nitrogenase (Boddey et al. 1991; Shridhar 2012).

Generally NFM are categorized as (a) symbiotic N_2-fixing bacteria (NFB) along with the members of the *Rhizobiaceae* family having symbiotic association with leguminous plants (e.g. *Rhizobia*) (Ahemad and Khan 2012; Zahran 2001) and (b) non-symbiotic (free-living, associative and endophytes) nitrogen-fixing microbes, such as cyanobacteria (*Anabaena*, *Nostoc*, *Tolypothrix*), *Azotobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Azoarcus*, etc. (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Wani et al. 2013). Besides this, other NFB associated with non-legumes include the species of *Acetobacter*, *Achromobacter*, *Alcaligenes*, *Arthrobacter*, *Azomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Beijerinckia*, *Clostridium*, *Corynebacterium*, *Derxia*, *Desulfovibrio*, *Enterobacter*, *Erwinia*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Klebsiella*, *Lignobacter*, *Mycobacterium*, *Methylosinus*, *Rhodopseudomonas*, *Rhodospirillum* and *Xanthobacter* (Khan et al. 2009).

On a global scale, BNF provides the largest input of nitrogen to agricultural soils. Inoculation of these efficient PBRMs species usually increases plant's productivity. If *Rhizobium* is inoculated as biofertilizer in the crops such as groundnut, pigeon pea, soybean, etc., it can supply ~19–22 kg ha^{-1}which can raise the production by ~17–33%. Similarly, the use of non-symbiotic bacteria *Azotobacter* and *Azospirillum* in soybean (Alves et al. 2004), *Burkholderia vietnamiensis* in rice (Govindarajan et al. 2008) and *Pantoea*, *Bacillus and Klebsiella* in maize crops (Ikeda et al. 2013) can provide ~20–30 kg N ha^{-1} and simultaneously increased the crop yield by ~10–30%. The relative contribution of BGA as a percentage of total nitrogen fixed in paddy fields varies widely and is estimated to be ~15–35 kg N ha^{-1}in the South Asia.

Phosphorus (P) is the second most essential plant growth-limiting nutrient after nitrogen. Even though P has large reservoir, the amount of available forms is very low to the plants. To conquer the P deficiency in soils, routine application of phosphate fertilizers is not only expensive, but also it is environmentally unacceptable. In these circumstances, microorganisms accompanied with phosphate-solubilizing and phosphate-mobilizing activity are termed as phosphate-solubilizing microbes (PSMs) and phosphate-mobilizing microorganisms (PMMs), which may supply the accessible pool of P to the plants. Hence, it may be a replacement to the chemical phosphatic fertilizers (Khan et al. 2009).

Bacterial/rhizobacterial genera like *Azotobacter*, *Bacillus* (*B. megaterium*, *B. circulans*, *B. subtilis*, *B. polymyxa*) (Kim et al. 2003), *Beijerinckia*, *Burkholderia*, *Enterobacter*, *Erwinia*, *Flavobacterium*, *Microbacterium*, *Pseudomonas* (*P. striata*) and *Serratia* are described as the most significant PSB (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). However, commonly, the solubilization of inorganic phosphorus occurs as a result of the exertion of low-molecular-weight organic acids (gluconic and keto-gluconic acids) which are secreted by various soil bacteria (Zaidi et al. 2015). Conversely, the organic phosphorus is mineralized by the synthesis of a variety of different phosphatise enzymes, which catalyses the hydrolysis of phosphoric esters (Glick 2012). Besides this, vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae (VAM) are also very much convenient in making unavailable form of soil nutrients into readily available form by exploring the large volumes of soil (Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

Their hyphae developed superficially from the roots ranging from a few centimetres (cm) up to several meters in the soil. As a consequences, it increases the effective absorbing surface area of the host plant root by as much as ten times, resulting in increased absorption of static nutrients such as phosphorus, zinc, copper, etc. in the soil by ~60 times.

In India, inoculation with VAM fungi (*Glomus mosseae*, *G. fasciculatum*, *Acaulospora laevis* and *Gigaspora gilmorei*) resulted increased plant productivity (Kumar et al. 2009). These PSB and PSF (fungi) correspondingly represent ~1–50% and 0.1–0.5% of the total population of microorganisms present in the soil (Chabot et al. 1993; Khan et al. 2009).

The PSB solubilize inorganic soil phosphates, being $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, $FePO_4$ and $AlPO_4$, through the production of organic acids, siderophores and hydroxyl and carboxyl groups that chelate the cation bound to phosphate and the latter being converted into soluble forms (Sharma et al. 2013). Bacterial isolates belonging to genera *Enterobacter*, *Pantoea* and *Klebsiella* solubilize $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ to a greater extent than $FePO_4$ and $AlPO_4$ (Chung et al. 2005). Hence, microorganisms play an important role in the soil phosphorus cycle by mediating phosphorus availability to plants, increasing the capacity of plants to acquire phosphorus from the P-deficient soil directly by solubilizing inorganic phosphorus and facilitating their mobilization through the enlargement of root surface area (Richardson and Simpson 2011).

India is blessed with sufficient supply of potassium (K) in soil, though the K reserve is limited, which results to a huge foreign exchange to import K fertilizers. In this context utilization of native sources such as K-bearing minerals (K-feldspar, phlogopite, biotite, muscovite and green sands), waste mica as enriched compost (Nishanth and Biswas 2008) and bio-intervention of these K-bearing minerals could be a viable and alternative technology to solubilize insoluble K into plant available pool.

The usefulness of K-bearing minerals as K fertilizers in agriculture is less due to their limited accessibility. Some efficient microorganisms play significant induction in K solubilization and K release from K-bearing minerals (Reitemeir 1951); those microorganisms are commonly described as potassium-solubilizing bacteria (KSB), potassium-solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR) and potassium-dissolving bacteria (KDB). A broad group of bacteria named *Pseudomonas* sp., *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans*, *Bacillus circulans*, *B. mucilaginosus*, *Burkholderia*, *B. edaphicus* and *Paenibacillus* sp. have been reported to release potassium in available form from potassium-bearing minerals in soils (Liu et al. 2012; Bagyalakshmi et al. 2012; Saiyad et al. 2015; Verma et al. 2015a).

As per the finding of Hutchens et al. (2003), they reported that some specific bacteria generate mucilage like exopolysaccharides which form a cover on all the sides of the bacterial cell and invade the silicate minerals chelating with silicon and hence facilitate K from those silicate structure. It was found that various organic ligands include exudates, extracellular enzymes, metabolic by-products and chelates, and both light and compound organic acids (oxalic, citric, gluconic acids) and

Table 1.2 Rhizospheric microorganisms and their produced siderophore

Microorganisms	Siderophores
Bacteria	
Bacillus, *Arthrobacter*, *Nocardia*	Ferrioxamines
Azotobacter, *Agrobacterium*	Catecholate
Bacillus	Schizokinen, Bacillibactin
Staphylococcus	Staphyloferrin
Escherichia coli	Enterobactin
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Mycobactin
Erwinia chrysanthemi	Chrysobactin, achromobactin
Salmonella sp.	Salmochelin
Bordetella sp.	Alcaligin
Pseudomonas sp.	Pyoverdines
Fungi	
Basidiomycetes (*Ustilagosphaerogena*)	Desferriferrichrome
Ascomycetes (*Neurospora crassa*)	
Zygomycetes (*Rhizopus*)	Rhizopherin
Deuteromycetes	Fusarinines, malonichrome
Fusarium roseum	Fusarinines, triacetylfusarinines
Aspergillus fumigants	Pistillarin
Penicillium bilaii	
Vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae	
Wilcoxinarehmii and *Cenococcum geophilum*	Fericrocin
Higher plants	
Graminaceous plants	Phytosiderophores
	Mugineic acid
	Deoxymugineic acid
	Epoxy-mugineic acid

Adopted from Hider and Kong 2010

siderophores improve the destruction of aluminosilicate mineral which could perform an essential role in the solubilization of elements such as K, Si and Fe from the minerals like muscovite and biotite (Hutchens et al. 2003).

Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) have capability to perform multiple roles in agriculture. Thus, KSB can be applied as bioinoculants to maintain the extraction of potassium and sustain its availability for the plant (Zhang and Kong 2014) and efficiently used as K-biofertilizer for sustaining crop production and maintaining soil K (Meena et al. 2013c, 2015d; Singh et al. 2015, 2016).

Iron is essential for the survival and proliferation of all forms of life. In aerobic (oxidized) conditions, iron occurs predominantly as Fe^{3+}, which may probably form insoluble hydroxides and oxy-hydroxides that results in unavailability of iron to both plants and microorganisms (Rajkumar et al. 2009). Bacteria, fungi and mycorrhizae usually obtain iron by the secretion of siderophores (Table 1.2), which have intensive specificity and affinity for chelating with the iron.

Siderophores are chemically low-molecular-weight (<1000 Da) non-proteinous amino acids, which are released from the rhizospheric microbes in response of iron deficiency, having high association constants for complexing with the Fe^{3+} (Krewulak and Vogel 2008; Lemanceau et al. 2009). Simultaneously, plants also release low-molecular-weight phenolic root exudates, which have great importance for the acquisition of the cationic micronutrients from the rhizosphere, known as phytosiderophore (Marschner et al. 1986; Zhang et al. 1991).

These phytosiderophores are non-hydroxylated (deoxymugineic acid) and hydroxylated (mugineic acid; epi-hydroxymugineic acid) in nature, which forms single negatively charged Fe(III) complexes. Degree of hydroxylation improves stability of phytosiderophore-Fe(III) complex (von Wiren et al. 2000). However, it is likely that phytosiderophore promoted nonsteady-state dissolution mechanisms that contribute to the high iron efficiency of graminaceous plants (Takagi et al. 1984). The reduction strategy (reduction of ferric chelates at the root surface by ferric-chelate reductase oxidase and iron-regulated transporter genes) of non-graminaceous plants and the chelation strategy of graminaceous plants (Kobayashi and Nishizawa 2012) are two distinct strategies developed by plants to acquire sparingly soluble iron from the rhizosphere (Reichard et al. 2005).

Similarly, Fe-siderophore complex around the bacterial membrane is reduced to Fe^{2+} and moreover is then liberated within the cell from the siderophore through a gating process adjoining with the inner and outer membranes both in gram-negative and gram-positive rhizobacteria. The bacterial genera *Burkholderia*, *Enterobacter* and *Grimontella* impended different strains having the capacity of high siderophore production. The secretion of siderophores by bacteria might encourage the plant growth, therefore enriching nutrition (direct effect) or suppressing the growth of phytopathogens (indirect effect) by the isolation of Fe from the surroundings (Dimkpa et al. 2009).

Besides, inoculation of plant beneficial microorganisms can raise the uptake of several other nutrients such as Ca, K, Cu, Mn and Zn by the plants. This uptake mostly occurs due to acidification of the soil rhizosphere through the organic acid production or through activation of proton pump ATPase. In this case, the soil pH is decreased which improves the solubilization of these essential nutrients (Mantelin and Touraine 2004).

1.3.2 Biocontrol Activities of Plant Beneficial Rhizospheric Microbes

Plant growth and development can be obtained indirectly via biocontrol activity in opposition to plant pathogens. Representatives of the bacterial genera *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Serratia*, *Stenotrophomonas* and *Streptomyces* and the fungal genera *Ampelomyces*, *Coniothyrium* and *Trichoderma* are well-defined microorganisms which are responsible for resistant action and include hindrance of the pathogen by the production of antibiotics, toxins and surface-active compounds (biosurfactants); competition for nutrients, minerals and colonization sites (Table 1.3); and a

Table 1.3 Different biocontrol agents produced by PBRM that control disease, pathogen and insect at different crops

Disease/pathogen/insect	Crops	PBRM
Myzus persicae (Sulzer)	Bell pepper	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*
Fusarium avenaceum	Chickpea	*Enterobacter sp.*
Cotton aphids	Cucumber	*Bacillus sp.*
Root rot	Mung bean	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
Myzus persicae	Pepper	*Bacillus licheniformis*
Myzus persicae	Pepper	*Bacillus subtilis* G803
Rhizosphere fungi	*Prunus cerasifera* L.	*Azospirillum brasilense*
Myzus persicae	Red pepper	*Bacillus cereus* MJ-1
Fungal disease	Sesame	*Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681
Blue mould	Tobacco	*Bacillus pumilus* SE 34
Rhizoctonia bataticola	Tobacco	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Tobacco necrosis virus	Tobacco	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*
Tomato mottle virus	Tomato	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*
Acyrthosiphon kondoi	White clover *Medicago*	*Pseudomonas sp.*

Adopted from Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012

procedure that grows extracellular cell wall deteriorating enzymes such as chitinase and β-1,3-glucanase (Whipps 2001; Compant et al. 2005; Haas and Defago 2005).

Effective plant growth acceleration and biological control of plant maladies by rhizobacteria include one or more procedures (Fig. 1.3), which involve the generation of phytohormones, parasitism, antibiosis, competition for niches and nutrients and induced host defence (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2004; Adesemoye et al. 2009).

In general, niche ejection, induced systemic resistance (ISR) and production of antifungal metabolites are the cardinal functions of biocontrol activity in PBRMs (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). Many rhizobacteria have been described to grow antifungal metabolites such as HCN, phenazines, pyrrolnitrin, 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol, pyoluteorin, viscosinamide and tensin (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). The ISR is the circumstance in which the mutual cooperation of some rhizobacteria with the host root protects the plants from some pathogenic bacteria, viruses and fungi (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). Several strains from *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus* and *Azospirillum* genera are the dominant group of that have been characterized for generating the ISR response.

Furthermore, ISR comprises jasmonate and ethylene signalling inside the plants, and these hormones activate resistance capacity of the host plant against a range of plant pathogens (Glick 2012). Many discrete bacterial ingredients induce ISR, such as lipopolysaccharides (LPS), siderophores, flagella, cyclic lipopeptides, 2, 4-diacetylphloroglucinol, homoserine lactones and volatiles like acetoin and 2,3-butanediol (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). With the development of materialistic PGPR in India, the sheath blight of rice due to *Rhizoctonia solani* was alleviated over the control ~38%, and grain yields were significantly increased (~3901 and 1938 kg ha^{-1}) over control (~2690 and 1550 kg ha^{-1}) (Kumar et al. 2009). The

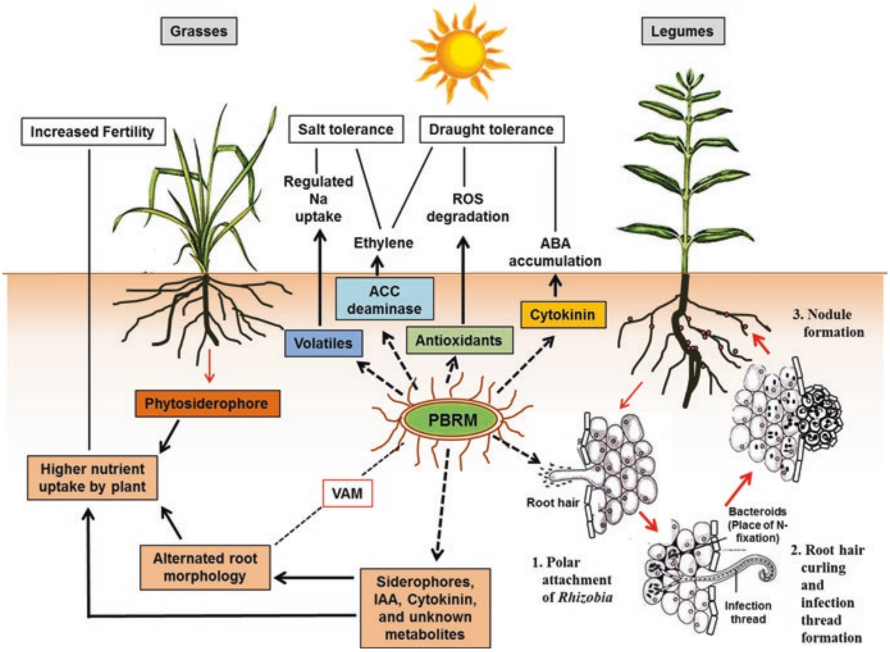


Fig. 1.3 Nutrient acquisition and induced systemic resistance (ISR) against draught, salt and fertility stress by different efficient PBRMs (Coyne 1999; Yang et al. 2009). The *dashed arrows* represent PBRMs secreted compounds; *solid arrows* indicate the components affected by PBRMs secreted compounds (*VAM* vesicular arbuscular mycorrhiza, *ABA* abscisic acid, *ROS* reactive oxygen species, *ACC* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate, *PBRM* plant beneficial rhizospheric microbes, *IAA* indole acetic acid)

practice of using microorganisms as bioinoculants for suppressing of the plant diseases is a method of biological control, which is an eco-friendly approach (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009).

1.3.3 Rhizospheric Microbes in Plant Stress Resistance

'Stress' in plants can be defined as any external factor that negatively influences plant growth, productivity, reproductive capacity or survival. This includes a wide range of factors which can be broadly divided into two main categories: abiotic or environmental stress factors and biotic or biological stress factors. Biotic stress can be defined as the stress which is induced by living organisms, such as other plants, weeds, fungi, bacteria, different faunal groups, etc., whereas abiotic stress is the result of nonliving stressors, such as high winds, extreme temperature and rainfall, drought and unwanted and devastated natural calamities, like cyclone, tornado, flash flood, etc.

Under these abiotic and biotic stresses, endogenous ethylene production is significantly increased which adversely affects the growth of the roots and as a whole the growth of the plant. In this concern, some distinct soil microorganisms produce some growth factors and metabolic products that positively influence plant metabolism which is not directly associated with pest or pathogen resistance (biotic stress). A number of mechanisms have been investigated aiming to reduce the levels of ethylene in plants. One of these mechanisms involves the activity of the enzyme 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylase (ACC) produced by soil bacteria and degrades an ethylene precursor that, in turn, depresses the plant's stress response to a variety of biotic and abiotic stress factors (Farajzadeh et al. 2012). Soil bacteria also produce the auxin, indole acetic acid (IAA) which influences plant physiology, often resulting in enhanced root growth which stimulates plant growth. Naturally, microbial metabolites that positively influence plant vigour also impact plant resistance to pests and pathogens (Kim et al. 2011).

The AA's rhizosphere is the immediate adjacent zone of plant root and a nutrient-rich environment due to adequate supply of sugars, amino acids, organic acids, flavonoids, iso-flavonoids, phytohormones and enzymes; it is also the most vulnerable environment during activity of stressors and stress conditions. Thus, controlling and sustaining rhizosphere in its healthy manner are a major challenge for agricultural science societies. The applications of beneficial microbes in agricultural production systems were introduced long time ago, and there was enhancing manifestation that beneficial microbes can increase plants' tolerance to unfavourable environmental difficulties, which comprises salt stress (Egamberdiyeva and Islam 2008), drought stress (Zahir et al. 2008), weed infestation (Babalola 2010), nutrient deficiency and heavy metal contaminations (Sheng 2005).

The term 'induced systemic tolerance' (Fig. 1.3) has been applied to define the potentiality of PGPR to induce tolerance to salt and drought conditions (Yang et al. 2009). In this concern *Rhizobium trifolii* inoculated with *Trifolium alexandrinum* (berseem) has shown excessive biomass and large number of nodulation under salinity stress condition (Hussain et al. 2002; Antoun and Prevost 2005). Marulanda et al. (2009) rightly observed that the combination of *Pseudomonas putida* or *Bacillus megaterium* and AM fungi had been efficiently mitigating the drought stress. Photosynthetic ability and the anti-oxidative activity of rice plants liable to drought stress had shown to increase after inoculation with the arbuscular mycorrhiza (Ruiz-Sanchez et al. 2010).

The auspicious effects of mycorrhizae have also been described under both the saline and drought stress conditions (Aroca et al. 2013). Not only mycorrhizae but also identification of diverse salt-tolerant rhizobacteria has displayed favourable interactions with plants under stressed conditions. These PGPR (*Rhizobium*, *Azospirillum*, *Pseudomonas*, *Flavobacterium*, *Arthrobacter* and *Bacillus*) exert osmoregulation, resistance to starvation, oligotrophic and endogenous metabolism and useful metabolic methods to acclimatize under arid and brackish environments (Lugtenberg et al. 2001; Egamberdiyeva and Islam 2008). When plants are illuminated to the stress situations, they may increase ethylene inside the cell and cause plant damage (Argueso et al. 2009).

Higher accumulation of ethylene can be hazardous because it persuades defoliation and other cellular mechanisms that exert influence on crop development (Desbrosses et al. 2004). Many growth-promoting microorganisms damage 1-amin ocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) (a precursor of the ethylene) through the production of the enzyme ACC deaminase, which consequently accelerates plant growth and development by lowering ethylene levels in plants. Production of calcisol by PGPRs, viz. *Pseudomonas alcaligenes* PsA15, *Bacillus polymyxa* BcP26 and *Mycobacterium phlei* MbP18, may involve in stress tolerance against salinity and high temperature (Egamberdiyeva 2007).

The PBRMs that produce 1-aminocyclopropane 1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase alleviate various types of stresses, because these antagonistically affect the phytopathogenic bacteria, and other stresses due to polyaromatic hydrocarbons, salt and draught (Glick et al. 2007). It is argued that ACC deaminase producing PBRMs are responsible for lower plant ethylene levels, often a result of various stresses. The optimal functioning of these bacteria includes the synergistic interaction between ACC deaminase and both plant and bacterial auxin, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA).

These bacteria not only directly promote plant growth, they also protect plants against flooding, drought, salt, flower wilting, metals, organic contaminants and both bacterial and fungal pathogens. With their physiological adjustment and genetic potential for increasing tolerance to drought, salinity and high temperatures, the PBRMs could advance plant growth in deteriorated soil system (Maheshwari et al. 2012; Yang et al. 2009). Corresponding production of siderophore and phytosiderophore from PGPR and plant root in the response of Fe deficiency may colonize in the rhizosphere and acts as an aid to eliminate the stress imposed by high levels of heavy metals, such as Al, Cd, Cu, Ga, In, Pb and Zn. The performance of the microbial population in the rhizosphere to decompose the pollutants allows plants to grow as natural vegetation under the polluted condition.

1.3.4 Rhizospheric Microbes and Crop Growth

The modes of action of growth-promoting microbes involve intricate mechanisms to promote plant growth, development and protection against plant diseases. These are accomplished by the two main processes: biofertilization (enhancing the accessibility of nutrients to plant) and phytostimulation (regulation of plant growth, usually by the production of phytohormones). In the phytostimulation processes of plant growth, phytohormones play an important role in a direct way. The phytohormones which are produced by them include indole acetic acid (IAA), auxin, cytokinins, gibberellins and inhibitors of ethylene (Table 1.4). These hormones can be secreted by the plant themselves and with their associated microorganisms such as *Azospirillum* sp., which is also having nitrogen-fixing potentiality (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000).

Different strains of *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* can produce well-characterized phytohormones or growth stimulator that leads crops to have higher amounts of fine plant roots which have the enlarged surface area for the absorption of water and

Table 1.4 Plant beneficial rhizospheric microorganisms (PBRMs) as an efficient phytohormone producer in various plants

Phytohormones	Crops	PBRMs
Gibberellin	Alder	*Bacillus sp.*
	Soybean	
	Soybean	
Cytokinin	Soybean	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*
	Lettuce and rapeseed	*Rhizobium leguminosarum*
	Wheat	*Paenibacillus polymyxa*
Indole acetic acid (IAA)	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium japonicum*
	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium amyloliquefaciens*
	Wheat	*Azospirillum brasilense*
	Radish	*Bradyrhizobium* sp.
	Rice	*Enterobacter cloacae*
	Rice	*Aeromonas veronii*
	Lettuce	*Agrobacterium* sp.
	Lettuce	*Alcaligenes piechaudii*
	Lettuce	*Comamonas acidovorans*
Jasmonic acid (JA)	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium japonicum*
	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium amyloliquefaciens*
Salicylic acid (SA)	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium japonicum*
	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium amyloliquefaciens*

Adopted from Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Masciarelli et al. 2014

nutrients from the surrounding soils. Indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) is a commonly produced phytohormone by growth-promoting rhizospheric microorganisms and which is believed to be associated with cell division, cell enlargement and root initiation (Salisbury 1996). Auxin is a group of plant hormones significant in the advancement of lateral root formation. Enhanced lateral root leads to an increased ability to absorb the essential nutrients for the plant.

Auxins are mostly secreted by *Azospirillum*, and it is commonly described that their formation, rather than the nitrogen fixation, is the main feature responsible for the stimulation of lateral root growth and, hence, advanced plant development (Bloemberg and Lugtenberg 2001). Other groups of plant hormones include gibberellins and cytokinins, both of which regulate shoot development; howsoever their effects on root enlargement are not well researched (Fig. 1.3). They meet important functions for plant growth and health by several processes. Immediate plant growth promotion occurs either from enhanced nutrient availability or from hormonal incitement. Variant methods are engaged in the inhibition of plant pathogens, which is mostly indirectly related with plant growth.

Plant growth and productivity are greatly affected by the mutual associations between plant roots and the surrounding soil, including the microbial communities. These microbes are either autochthonous or applied as crop inoculation such as *Azospirillum* (Cassan and Garcia de Salamone 2008), *Bacillus* (Jacobsen et al. 2004), *Pseudomonas* (Loper 1988), *Rhizobium* (Long 2001), *Serratia* (De

Vleesschauwer et al. 2007), *Stenotrophomonas* (Ryan et al. 2009) and *Streptomyces* (Schrey and Tarkka 2008). Besides, some fungal genera like *Ampelomyces*, *Coniothyrium* and *Trichoderma* have been stated also to be advantageous for the host plant (Harman et al. 2004).

1.3.5 Role of Rhizospheric Microbes in Soil Fertility and Sustainability

'Zero Hunger Challenge' is the major goal of human efforts. This goal can be achieved by sustainable increment in the arena of agricultural productivity to satisfy the demands of abruptly spreading human population. Growing more and more foods from less and less farm holdings is a demand feature of our economy. Not only we have touched the limits of land ready for cultivation, but agricultural margin is also narrowing at the proportion of a million acres per annum due to enlargement of our cities, industrial areas and highways construction. Then we should consider our soil with great concern. Microorganisms in the soil show a unique relation to soil fertility. The presence of rhizosperic microbial communities in association with PBRMs has pivotal role to prolong soil function, in both natural and maintained agricultural soils (Bharti et al. 2016) (Table 1.5).

Soil organisms exceed soil fertility by doing a number of functions that are advantageous for plants. This chapter assesses five of these functions of PBRMs:

1. PBRMs can accelerate the nutrient release from native source of nutrient in soil and applied organic residues. Phosphate-solubilizing PBRMs and potassium-solubilizing PBRMs accelerate the weathering reactions of P- and K-bearing minerals, especially when in direct contact with mineral surfaces either by production of organic acids or formation of biofilms or may take part in nutrient mobilization by proliferation of root length as mycorrhizal fungi (Basak and Biswas 2009; Saha et al. 2016a; Hodge 2017).
2. In the symbiotic association, *Rhizobia* or *Bradyrhizobia* fix atmospheric nitrogen gas and make it available to the leguminous plants. Free-living (*Enterobacter*, *Azotobacter*) and associative (*Azospirillum*) nitrogen-fixing rhizobacteria, nevertheless, absorb this gas and transform it into cell protein. When the cells waste away, other microbes invade the protein and convert the nitrogenous components to ammonium, so which becomes readily available for the plants.
3. The process of 'the priming effect' has described as early as 1926 but still poorly understood. Positive priming (extra decomposition of SOM) or negative priming (reduction of SOM decomposition) is depending on the metabolic activity of PBRMs (van der Wal and de Boer 2017). In terrestrial ecosystems, large quantities of carbon are held in SOM 'the key to soil fertility' and altered by soil microbes that supply SOC and organically bounded nutrients to plants.
4. Bioremediation of agricultural toxic chemical inputs (pesticides) in soil is mostly acted by microorganisms (Zhuang et al. 2007). Some PBRMs having enzymatic activity in soil, which can disintegrate agricultural pesticides or other toxic

Table 1.5 Different PBRMs of vegetable and food grains and their activities

Host plants		PBRM inoculants	PBRM abilities
Vegetables	Brinjal	*Azotobacter* spp., *Azospirillum* spp.	Biofertilizer
		Pseudomonas fluorescens	Biocontrol against bacterial wilt
	Tomato	*Bacillus subtilis*, *B. cereus*, *Arthrobacter* spp., *Trichoderma viride*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *P. putida*, *P. marginalis*, *P. syringae*	Induced systemic resistance and biocontrol against late blight
	Potato	*Bacillus subtilis*, *B. cereus*, *Azotobacter* spp.	Biofertilizer, induced systemic resistance against late blight
	Broccoli	*Bacillus cereus*, *Brevibacillus reuszeri*, *Rhizobium rubi*	Biofertilizer
	Cabbage	*Bacillus subtilis*, *B. megaterium*, *Pantoea agglomerans*	Improved nutrient uptake, induced systemic resistance
	Okra	*Bacillus firmus*, *B. subtilis*	Induced systemic resistance against root knot nematode
	Radish	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *Bacillus subtilis*	Induced systemic resistance
	Chilli	*Bacillus* spp., *Arthrobacter* and *Serratia* spp.	Induced systemic resistance against anthracnose disease of chilli (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*) and endophytic bacteria
	Spinach	*Bacillus megaterium*	Induced systemic resistance against *Rhizoctonia*, *Pythium*, *Fusarium* and *Phytopthora*
		B. subtilis	
		B. licheniformis	
		B. cereus	
		B. subtilis	
		Paenibacillus polymyxa	
		Pseudomonas putida	
	Cucumber	*Bacillus pumilus*	Biocontrol against angular leaf spot (*Pseudomonas syringae*)
		Bacillus spp.	Biocontrol against root rot (*Pythium* sp.)
Food grains	Rice	*Pseudomonas fluorescence* Aur6,	Biocontrol against *Magnaporthe grisea*
		Chryseobacterium balustinum, BGA	Salinity
			N fixation
	Wheat	*Bacillus circulans, Glomas* spp., *Cladosporium herbarum*, *Calothrix* sp., *Anabaena* sp.	Biofertilization
		Arthrobacter sp., *Bacillus subtilis*	Salinity controller

(continued)

Table 1.5 (continued)

Host plants		PBRM inoculants	PBRM abilities
	Maize	*Serratia liquefaciens*, *Bacillus* sp.	Biofertilization
			Biocontrol to root pathogens
		Pseudomonas spp.	Phytostimulation
		Azospirillum brasilense, *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*	
	Soybean	*Bradyrhizobium japonicum*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus thuringiencis*	Biofertilization enhancer
			Phytostimulation
		Pseudomonas flaviporus, *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*	
	Bean	*Rhizobium tropici*, *Azotobacter brasilence*, *Glomus sinuosum*, *Glomus intraradices*, *Gigaspora albida*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*	Biofertilization enhancer (N and P)
			Biocontrol against *Rhizoctonia solani*

Adopted from Choudhary and Johri 2009; Zaidi et al. 2015; Montano et al. 2014

materials added to soil; either by bioremediation of contaminated soils through seizing poisonous heavy metal species and/or destroying xenobiotic compounds (Kuppusamy et al. 2016).

5. Biological functions in soil can ameliorate soil structure. Some bacteria and fungi produce brown-coloured substances during organic matter decomposition, which can bind soil particles both physically and chemically into micro-aggregates. The hyphal networks of fungi can cross-link with the soil particles that help in the genesis and maintenance of soil aggregates (Lehmann et al. 2017).

Being an inherent part of soil and as most of the soil function is microbial imparted, soil organisms play an essential role in conserving soil health and sustainable crop production even after decades. The main target in the upcoming decades would be on secured and eco-friendly approaches by accomplishing the beneficial microorganisms in sustainable crop production. Commonly, there are divergent in naturally occurring microorganisms, whose inoculation to the soil ecological environment improves soil physicochemical properties, soil microbial proliferation, soil quality, plant growth and crop productivity (Morris and Blackwood 2015).

1.4 Future Prospects

Attempt should be directed towards enhancement of biological diversity and be a beneficiary from identified soil microbes. Due to population growth and growing food demand, accelerated, sustainable and eco-friendly agriculture is growing with the use of biofertilizers and biopesticides, which have turned into the ideal model for the Asian continent as well as Indian subcontinent. If the aids of these microorganisms in crop production can be widen, this will certainly take an action against hunger. The production performance of a specific rhizospheric microorganism may be further enlarged with the development and adaptation according to the prevalent soil conditions. Subsequently, they are supposed to partly substitute the chemical fertilizers, pesticides and synthetic growth regulators which have numerous side effects to sustainable agriculture (Verma et al. 2015c). Notwithstanding the fact that a lot of associative and endophytic bacteria have indicated plant growth-promoting properties at the point of laboratory and greenhouse level, but these bacteria have dimed to show their consistency under natural conditions. Accordingly, a challenge is affixed for standard optimization of the applied efficient PGPR (PBRMs) strains and the amount of fertilizers to be added to get the maximum output. One of the major challenges encompasses the specification of plant genotype, age and suitable associative bacteria. Considering this suitability, it would help to increase productivity by adopting the specific strain for inoculation.

1.5 Conclusions

The current chapter is an attempt to illuminate the concept of beneficial rhizobacteria in the present scenario. The latest criterions of a wide range of utilizations of these beneficial microorganisms have been presented absolutely to extract large prospects regarding their activity and applicability for sustainable agriculture. Thus, these PBRMs manifested as biofertilizers are essential for conserving good soil fertility, preferable soil conditions and prolonged agricultural productivity. The diverse groups of soil microorganisms do not live unaided but form an interconnected system, more or less in balanced condition with the environment. All have played an enormous role in the advancement of soil fertility by weathering and solubilization of the immobile nutrient sources. Soil organic matter decomposition, humification, aggregate formation, bio-catalytic activity, biocontrol against plant pathogens and parasites along with improving soil health with proper aeration cause better soil fertility in sustainable manner. Their actions are concerned with the formation of structural systems of soils which help in increasing agricultural productivity. Such plant growth-stimulating mechanisms might assist in higher production of crop grains in a more feasible way, still on marginal farm, and thus assign to avoid the alterations between food and balanced energy production. PBRMs (mycorrhizae and rhizospheric bacteria) improved the soil health in different ecosystems and provide a sustainable alternative to enhanced crop production.

References

Adesemoye A, Torbert H, Kloepper JW (2009) Plant growth-promoting rhizo-bacteria allow reduced application rates of chemical fertilizers. Microbial Ecol 58:921–929

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012) Evaluation of plant growth promoting activities of rhizobacterium Pseudomonas putida under herbicide-stress. Ann Microbiol 62:1531–1540

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Alves BJR, Boddey RM, Urquiaga S (2004) The success of BNF in soybean in Brazil. Plant Soil 252:1–9

Antoun H, Prevost D (2005) Ecology of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 1–38

Argueso CT, Ferreira FJ, Kieber JJ (2009) Environmental perception avenues: the interaction of cytokinin and environmental response pathways. Plant Cell Environ 32(9):1147–1160

Aroca R, Ruiz-Lozano JM, Zamarreno AM, Paz JA, García-Mina JM, Pozo MJ, Lopez-Raez JA (2013) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis influences strigolactone production under salinity and alleviates salt stress in lettuce plants. J Plant Physiol 170:47–55

Babalola OO (2010) Beneficial bacteria of agricultural importance. Biotechnol Lett 32:1559–1570

Bagyalakshmi B, Ponmurugan P, Marimuthu S (2012) Influence of potassium solubilizing bacteria on crop productivity and quality of tea (Camellia sinensis). Afr J Agric Res 7:4250–4259

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Basak BB, Biswas DR (2009) Influence of potassium solubilizingmicroorganisms (*Bacillus mucilaginosus*) and waste mica on potassium uptake dynamics by sudan grass (*Sorghum vulgare Pers.*) grown under two Alfisols. Plant Soil 317(1–2):235–255

Bharti N, Barnawal D, Wasnik K, Tewari SK, Kalra A (2016) Co-inoculation of Dietzianatronolimnaea and Glomus intraradiences with vermicompost positively influences Ocimumbasilicum growth and resident microbial community structure in salt affected low fertility soils. Appl Soil Ecol 100:211–225

Bhattacharyya P, Jha D (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. W J Microbiol Biotech 28:1327–1350

Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJJ (2001) Molecular basis of plant growth promotion and biocontrol by rhizobacteria. Curr Opin Plant Biol 4:343–350

Boddey RM, Urquiaga S, Reis V, Döbereiner J (1991) Biological nitrogen fixation associated with sugar cane. Plant Soil 137:111–117

Cassán FD, Garcia de Salamone I (2008) *Azospirillum* sp.: Cell physiology, plant interactions and agronomic research in Argentina. Asociación Argentina de Microbiologia, Argentina, 276 p

Chabot R, Antoun H, Cescas MP (1993) Stimulation de la croissance du maiset de la laitue romaine par desmicroor- ganismesdissolvant le phosphoreinorganique. Can J Microbiol 39:941–947

Choudhary DK, Johri BN (2009) Interactions of Bacillus spp. and plants with special reference to induced systemic resistance (IRS). Microbiol Res 164:493–513

Chung H, Park M, MadhaiyanaM SS, Song J, Cho H, Sa T (2005) Isolation and characterization of phosphate solubilizing bacteria from the rhizosphere of crop plants of Korea. Soil Biol Biochem 3:1970–1974

Compant SW, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clement C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microb 71:4951–4959

Coyne MS (1999) Soil microbiology: an exploratory approach. Delmar publishers. pp 139–158; 279–289

Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low-nutrient environments. Plant Soil 245:35–47. doi:10.1023/A:1020809400075

Dardanelli MS, Carletti SM, Paulucci NS, Medeot DB, Rodriguez Caceres EA, Vita FA, Bueno M, Fumero MV, Garcia MB (2010) Benefits of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria and rhizobia in agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria, Microbiology monographs, vol 18. Springer, Berlin, pp 1–20

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Desbrosses G, Kopka C, Ott T, Udvardi MK (2004) Lotus japonicusLjKUP is induced late during nodule development and encodes a potassium transporter of the plasma membrane. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 17:789–797

Dimkpa CO, Merten D, Svatos A, Büchel G, Kothe E (2009) Siderophores mediate reduced and increased uptake of cadmium by Streptomyces tendae F4 and sunflower (Helianthus annuus), respectively. J Appl Microbiol 5:687–1696

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Drake JE, Darby BA, Giasson MA, Kramer MA, Phillips RP, Finzi AC (2013) Stoichiometry constrains microbial response to root exudation- insights from a model and a field experiment in a temperate forest. Biogeosciences 10:821–838

Drogue B, Sanguin H, Borland S, Prigent-Combaret C, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2014) Genome wide profiling of *Azospirillumlipoferum* 4B gene expression during interaction with rice roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 87:543–555

Egamberdiyeva D (2007) The effect of plant growth promoting bacteria on growth and nutrient uptake of maize in two different soils. Appl Soil Ecol 36:184–189

Egamberdiyeva D, Islam KR (2008) Salt tolerant rhizobacteria: plant growth promoting traits and physiological characterization within ecologically stressed environment. In: Ahmad I, Pichtel J, Hayat S (eds) Plant-bacteria interactions: strategies and techniques to promote plant growth. Wiley-VCH, Weinheim, pp 257–281

Farajzadeh D, Yakhchali B, Aliasgharzad N, Sokhandan-Bashir N, Farajzadeh M (2012) Plant growth promoting characterization of indigenous Azotobacteria isolated from soils in Iran. Curr Microbiol 64:397–403

Glick B (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: Mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2012:1–15

Glick BR, Todorovic B, Czarny J, Cheng Z, Duan J, McConkey B (2007) Promotion of plant growth by bacterial ACC deaminase. Crit Rev Plant Sci 26:227–242

Govindarajan M, Balandreau J, Kwon SW, Weon HY, Lakshminarasimhan C (2008) Effects of the inoculation of Burkholderiavietnamensis and related endophytic diazotrophic bacteria on grain yield of rice. Microb Ecol 55:21–37

Haas D, Defago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent pseudomonads. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:307–319

Haichar F, Marol C, Berge O, Rangel-Castro JI, Prosser JI, Balesdent J, Heulin T, Achouak W (2008) Plant host habitat and root exudates shape soil bacterial community structure. ISME J:1221–1230

Harman WL, Gerik TJ, Williams JR (2004) CROPMAN: a crop production/environmental simulation tool to enhance agricultural sustainability. In: Dilawari VK, Brar LS, Jalota SK (eds) Proceedings of sustaining agriculture: problems and prospects. Punjab Agricultural University, Ludhiana., November 9–11, 2004, pp 22–30

Hartmann A, Schmid M, van Tuinen D, Berg G (2009) Plant-driven selection of microbes. Plant Soil 321:235–257

Hider RC, Kong X (2010) Chemistry and biology of siderophores. Nat Prod Rep 27(5):637

Hodge A (2017) Accessibility of inorganic and organic nutrients for mycorrhizas. Mycorrhizal mediation of soil fertility, structure and carbon storage Chapter-8 pp. 129–148

Hussain N, Mujeeb F, Tahir M, Khan GD, Hassan NM, Bari A (2002) Effectiveness of Rhizobium under salinity stress. Asian J Plant Sci 1:12–14

Hutchens SE, Valsami JE, Eldowney MS (2003) The role of heterotrophic bacteria in feldspar dissolution. Min Mag 67:1151–1170

Ikeda AG, Bassani LL, Adamoski D, Stringari D, Cordeiro VK, Glienke C, Maria Steffens BR, Hungria M, Galli-Terasawa LV (2013) Morphological and genetic character- ization of endophytic bacteria isolated from roots of differ- ent maize genotypes. MicrobEcol 65:154–160

Jacobsen BJ, Zidack NK, Larson BJ (2004) The role of -based biological control agents in integrated pest management systems: plant diseases. Phytopathology 94(11):1272–1275

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Katznelson H, Lochhead AG, Timonin MI (1948) Soil microorganisms and the rhizosphere. Bot Rev 14:543–587

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA (2009) Role of phosphate- solubilizing microorganisms in sustainable agriculture – a review. Agron Sustain Dev 27:29–43

Kim H, Park J, Choi SW, Choi KH, Lee G, Ban S, Lee C, Kim CS (2003) Isolation and characterization of Bacillus strains for biological control. J Microbiol 41(3):196–201

Kim YC, Leveau J, Gardener BBM, PiersonEA PLS, Ryu CM (2011) The multifactorial basis for plant health promotion by plant-associated bacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:1548–1555

Kobayashi T, Nishizawa NK (2012) Iron uptake, translocation and regulation in higher plants. Annu Rev Plant Bio 63:11–152

Krewulak HD, Vogel HJ (2008) Structural biology of bacterial iron uptake. Biochim Biophys Acta 1778:1781–1804

Kumar VK, Raju SK, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Lawrence KS, Groth DE, Miller ME, Sudini H, Binghai D (2009) Evaluation of commercially available PGPR for control of rice sheath blight caused by Rhizoctoniasolani. J Pure Appl Microbiol 3(2):485–488

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kuppusamy S, Thavamani P, Megharaj M, Venkateswarlu K, Lee YB, Naidu R (2016) Pyrosequencing analysis of bacterial diversity in soils contaminated long-term with PAHs and heavy metals: implications to bioremediation. J Hazard Mater 317:169–179

Kuzyakov Y (2002) Factors affecting rhizosphere priming effects (review). J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 165:382–396

Lehmann A, Leifheit EF, Rilling MC (2017) Mycorrhiza and soil aggregation. Mycorrhizal mediation of soil fertility, structure and carbon storage Chapter-14 pp. 241–262

Lemanceau P, Bauer P, Kraemer S, Briat JF (2009) Iron dynamics in the rhizosphere as a case study for analyzing interactions between soils, plants and microbes. Plant Soil 321:513–535

Liu D, Lian B, Dong H (2012) Isolation of Paenibacillus sp. and assessment of its potential for enhancing mineral weathering. Geophys J R Astron Soc 29:413–421

Long SR (2001) Genes and signals in the Rhizobium-Legume symbiosis. Plant Physiol 125(1):69–72

Loper J (1988) Role of fluorescent siderophore production in biological control of *Pythium ultimum* by a *Pseudomonas flurorescens* strain. Phytopathology 78:166–172

Lugtenberg BJJ, Kamilova FD (2004) Rhizosphere management: microbial manipulation for biocontrol. In: Goodman RM (ed) Encyclopedia of plant and crop science. Dekker, New York, pp 1098–1101

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Lugtenberg BJJ, Dekkers L, Bloemberg CV (2001) Molecular determinants of rhizosphere colonization by Pseudomonas. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:461–490

Maheshwari DK, Dubey RC, Aeron A, Kumar B, Kumar S, Tewari S, Arora NK (2012) Integrated approach for disease management and growth enhancement of Sesamumindicum L. utilizing Azotobacterchroococcum TRA2 and chemical fertilizer. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28(10):3015–3024

Mantelin S, Touraine B (2004) Plant growth-promoting bacteria and nitrate availability: impacts on root development and nitrate uptake. J Exp Bot 55:27–34

Marschner H, Römheld V, Kissel M (1986) Different strategies in higher-plants in mobilization and uptake of iron. J Plant Nutri 9:695–713

Marulanda A, Barea JM, Azcon R (2009) Stimulation of plant growth and drought tolerance by native microorganisms (AM Fungi and Bacteria) from dry environments: mechanisms related to bacterial effectiveness. J Plant Growth Regul 28:115–124

Masciarelli O, Llanes A, Luna V (2014) A new PGPR co-inoculated with Bradyrhizobiumjaponicum enhances soybean nodulation. Microbiol Res 169:609–6015

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (Pisum sativum L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis and Agricultural. Biotechnology 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mendes R, Garbeva P, Raaijmakers JM (2013) The rhizosphere microbiome: significance of plant beneficial plant pathogenic and human pathogenic microorganisms. FEMS Microbiol Rev 37:634–663

Montano FP, Villegas CA, Bellogin RA, del Cerro P, Espuny MR, Guerrero IJ, FJL B, Ollero FJ, Cubo T (2014) Plant growth promotion in cereal and leguminous agricultural important plants: from microorganism capacities to crop production. Microbiol Res 169:325–336

Morgan JA, Lecain DR, Pendall E, Blumenthal DM, Kimball BA, Carrillo Y et al (2011) C_4 grasses prosper as carbon dioxide eliminates desiccation in warmed semi-arid grassland. Nature 476:202–205. doi:10.1038/nature10274

Morris SJ, Blackwood CB (2015) The ecology of soil biota and their function. Soil Microbiology, Ecology and Biodiversity (Fourth Edition) Chapter-10 pp. 273–309

Nishanth D, Biswas DR (2008) Kinetics of phosphorus and potassium release from rockphosphate and waste mica enriched compost and their effect on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticumaestivum). Bioresour Technol 99:3342–3354

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium

solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rajkumar M, Vara Prasad MN, Freitas H, Ae N (2009) Biotechnological applications of serpentine soil bac- teria for phytoremediation of trace metals. Crit Rev Biotechnol 29(2):120–130

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reichard PU, Kraemer SM, Frazier SW, Kretzchmark R (2005) goethite dissolution in the presence of phytosiderophores: rates, mechanisms, and synergistic effect of oxalate. Plant Soil 276:115–132

Reitemeir RF (1951) Soil potassium. In: American Society ofAgronomy, Norman AG (eds) Advances in agronomy, vol 3. Academic Press, Int. Publ, New York, pp 113–164

Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011a) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability update on microbial phosphorus. Plant Physiol 156(3):989–996

Ruiz-Sanchez M, Aroca R, Munoz Y, Polon R, Ruiz-Lozano JM (2010) The arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis enhances the photosynthetic efficiency and the antioxidative response of rice plants subjected to drought stress. J Plant Physiol 167:862–869

Ryan RP, Monchy S, Cardinale M, Taghavi S, Crossman L, Avison MB, Berg G, van der Lelie D, Dow JM (2009) The versatility and adaptation of bacteria from the genus Stenotrophomonas. Nat Rev Microbiol 7(7):514–525

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizingbacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saiyad SA, Jhala YK, Vyas RV (2015) Comparative effi- ciency of five potash and phosphate solubilizing bac- teria and their key enzymes useful for enhancing and improvement of soil fertility. Int J Sci Res Pub 5:1–6

Salisbury FB (1996) Units, symbols, and terminology for plant physiology: a reference for presentation of research resulted in the plant sciences. Oxford University Press, US, p 118

Schrey SD, Tarkka MT (2008) Friends and foes: streptomycetes as modulators of plant disease and symbiosis. Antonie van Leeuwenhoek 94(1):11–19

Sharma SB, Sayyed RZ, Trivedi MH, Gobi TA (2013) Phosphate solubilizing microbes: sustainable approach for managing phosphorus deficiency in agricultural soils. Spring 2:1–14

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Sheng XF (2005) Growth promotion and increased potassium uptake of cotton and rape by a potassium releasing strain of Bacillus edaphicus. Soil Biol Biochem 37:1918–1922

Shridhar BS (2012) R Nitrogen fixing microorganisms. Int J Microbiol Res 3:46–52

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh BK, Millard P, Whiteley AS, Murrell JC (2004) Unravelling rhizosphere-microbial interactions: opportunitiesand limitations. Trends Microbiol 12:386–393. PMID:15276615; http://dx.doi. org/10.1016/j.tim.2004.06.008

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Sommers E, Vanderleyden J, Srinivasan M (2004) Rhizosphere bacterial signalling: a love parade beneath our feet. Crit Rev Microbiol 30:205–240

Steenhoudt O, Vanderleyden J (2000) Azospirillum, a free-living nitrogen-fixing bacterium closely associated with the grasses: genetic, biochemical and ecological aspect. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24(4):487–506

Takagi S, Nomoto K, Takemoto T (1984) Physiological aspect of mugineic acid, a possible phytosiderophore of graminaceous plants. J Plant Nutri 7:469–477

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma P, Yadav AN, Khannam KS, Panjiar N, Kumar S, Saxena AK, Suman A (2015a) Assessment of genetic diversity and plant growth promoting attributes of psychrotolerant bacteria allied with wheat (Triticumaestivum) from the northern hills zone of India. Ann Microbiol. doi:10.1007/s13213-014-1027-4

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015b) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015c) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

van der Wal A, de Boer W (2017) Dinner in the dark: illuminating drivers of soil organic matter decomposition. Soil Biol Biochem 105:45–48

Vleesschauwer D (2007) Using Serratia plymuthica to control fungal pathogens of plants. CAB Reviews 2(046)

Wani SA, Chand S, Ali T (2013) Potential use of Azotobacter chroococcum in crop production: an overview. Curr Agric Res J 1:35–38

Whipps J (2001) Microbial interactions and biocontrol in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 52:487–511

Wiren N, Khodr H, Hider RC (2000) Hydroxylated phytosiderophore species possess and enhanced chelate stability and affinity for iron$^{(III)}$. Plant Physiol 124:1149–1157

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yang J, Kloepper JW, Ryu CM (2009) Rhizosphere bacteria help plants tolerate abiotic stress. Trends Plant Sci 14(1):1–4

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zahir ZA, Munir A, Asghar HN, Shaharoona B, Arshad M (2008) Effectiveness of rhizobacteria containing ACC deaminase for growth promotion of peas (*Pisumsativum*) under drought conditions. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:958–963

Zahran HH (2001) Rhizobia from wild legumes: diversity, taxonomy, ecology, nitrogen fixation and biotechnology. J Biotechnol 91:143–153

Zaidi A, Ahmad E, Khan MS, Saif S, Rizvi A (2015) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in sustainable production of vegetables: current perspective. Sci Hortic 193:231–239

Zhang C, Kong F (2014) Isolation and identification of potassium-solubilizing bacteria from tobacco rhizo- spheric soil and their effect on tobacco plants. Appl Soil Ecol 82:18–25

Zhang FS, Römheld V, Marschner H (1991) Diurnal rhythm of release of phytosiderophores and uptake rate of zinc in iron-deficient wheat. Soil Science Plant Nutri 37(4):671–678

Zhuang X, Chen J, Shim H, Bai Z (2007) New advances in plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for bioremediation. Environment International33 (3):406–413

2

Rhizosphere Microorganisms Towards Soil Sustainability and Nutrient Acquisition

Mahendra Prasad, Manoj Chaudhary, Mukesh Choudhary,
T. Kiran Kumar, and Lokesh Kumar Jat

Abstract

The importance of soils and its function is conclusive; the soil is a living entity that needs to be improved under sustainable approach. It is apparent that soil biota contributes substantially to effective soil functioning and maintenance of soil sustainability. The increase of food production to meet out the food security demand of an ever-increasing population has been highly dependent on integrated nutrient management input but ignores the potential of bioagents. The significance of rhizosphere microorganism can be enormous as they are able in managing nutrient transformation, nutrient acquisition and use, and thus crop sustainability. The soil sustainability and nutrient use efficiency (NUE) can be enhanced by modification of rhizosphere through the best management approaches such as agronomic practices, nutrient management, use of organic and biofertilizers, and regulation of rhizosphere processes.

Keywords

Rhizosphere • Soil sustainability • Nutrient availability • PGPR • Bioremediation

---

M. Prasad (✉) • M. Chaudhary • M. Choudhary • T.K. Kumar
Crop Production Division, ICAR-Indian Grassland and Fodder Research Institute,
Jhansi 284003, India
e-mail: mahendra.meena18@gmail.com

L.K. Jat
Department of Soil Science and Agricultural Chemistry, Institute of Agricultural Sciences,
BHU, Varanasi 221005, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_2

2.1 Introduction

Agriculture in the twenty-first century faces more challenges, like decline in productivity and degradation in soil quality. As per the United Nations estimates, the global human population is projected to reach ~9 billion by 2050 (Wood 2001). The feeding of our ever-increasing population is one of the largest challenges for maintaining the worldwide agricultural sustainability. The soil being a critical component on the earth is not only for sufficient food production but also for maintaining worldwide environmental sustainability for the next generation (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Kumar et al. 2015, 2017a; Ahmad et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016). These existing technologies have reached to its plateau and are hitherto extremely difficult to further increase the food production. Therefore, exploring nonconventional resources is an urgent need not only to increase the demand of ever-increasing population but also to sustain our ecosystem from the further degradation. Sustainability in the agriculture production cannot be attained without microbiological population in soil under the present circumstances (Vaxevanidou et al. 2015; Patil et al. 2014).

These efficient microorganisms are key factor of the living biomass of the soil system (Whitman et al. 1998). Soil microorganisms play significant roles in agriculture mainly by improving plant nutrition and soil health, as well as soil quality (Barea 2004; Barea et al. 2013; Lugtenberg 2015) and degrading organic pollutants. The function of agriculture ecosystem depends largely on soil microbial dynamics (Barea 2004). These efficient soil microorganisms maintain the organic matter (OM) mineralization and thus regulate nutrient cycling. The beneficial saprophytic rhizosphere microbes improve plant performance work as a decomposer of OM substances, plant growth-promoting bacteria/rhizobacteria (PGPB/PGPR), and other plant growth-promoting (PGP) activities. The efficient PGPR must have the ability to survive and multiply in rhizosphere microbes with indigenous microbes, at least for the time needed to express their beneficial PGP (Martinez-Viveros et al. 2010). The rhizosphere microorganisms improve nutrient cycling processes that include N fixation, P mobilization, and the release of other nutrients to soil solution for plant nutrition (Richardson et al. 2009; Barea and Richardson 2015).

The rhizosphere soils contain efficient microbes, and researcher differentiates them into beneficial and harmful categories based on their beneficial effect on soil sustainability, crop growth, and yield (Welbaum et al. 2004; Bais et al. 2006; Brimecombe et al. 2007; Jat et al. 2015). Microbes play vital roles in soil sustainability and nutrient acquisition. Without soil microbes life on the planet would not be possible. An increased knowledge of rhizospheric chemistry-based symbioses in plants could provide potential ways of developing sustainable agriculture with minimal risk to the environment. Therefore, rhizosphere microorganisms have a key role to improve NUE and crop sustainability simultaneously (Bahadur et al. 2016a, b; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Yasin et al. 2016).

2.2 Why Soil Sustainability Is So Important?

Providing as well as feeding rapidly growing human population is one of the greatest challenges worldwide. The requirement of food will be ~29 Mt, while their availability will be only ~22 Mt by 2020. Best management practices (BMPs) and recommended management practices (RMPs) of soil system ensure that mineral nutrients do not become deficient or toxic to plants as well as humans and that appropriate crop/mineral nutrients enter the food chain. Soil management is important, both directly and indirectly, to crop productivity, environmental sustainability, and human health. Because of the projected increase in worldwide population and the consequent necessity for the nutritional security, the management of soils will become increasingly important in the coming years because the traditional agriculture will not be able to meet the needs of the next generation (Altieri 2004).

2.3 The Rhizosphere: A Hot Spot for Microbial Activities

The rhizosphere is the narrow region of soil system that is immediately near to the root surface and that is more affected by rhizospheric phenomena. The term “rhizosphere” was first time used by Lorenz Hiltner in 1904. The root exudates include carbohydrates, sugar, organic acids, vitamins, flavonoids, nucleotides, enzymes, hormones, and volatile compounds, inorganic ions, and gaseous molecules. The exudates act as messengers that stimulate interactions between roots and soil organisms. Therefore, rhizosphere is the most dynamic environment in the soil with a high microbial diversity. It is well established that microorganism’s population is higher in rhizosphere (Table 2.1) than bulk soil (Brimecombe et al. 2001; Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017a).

In the rhizosphere, the populations of microorganisms may fluctuate from few thousands to millions (Nihorimbere et al. 2011). This plant-microbe interaction has shown many beneficial effects on plant growth and developments (Singh et al. 2004), PGP increased availability and uptakes of nutrients, and disease suppression (Morrissey et al. 2004; Haas and Defago 2005; Mendes et al. 2011). However, increased resistance to abiotic and biotic stresses (Zolla et al. 2013; Badri et al. 2013), all these leads to increases in crop productivity and soil sustainability as well as nutrient availability (Bardgett et al. 2014; Nath et al. 2017; Sarkar et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017a).

Table 2.1 Presence of microbes in the rhizosphere and non-rhizosphere soil system

	Rhizosphere	Non-rhizosphere	
Microorganisms	Microbes g^{-1} dry soil		R:S ratio
Bacteria	1200×10^6	53×10^6	23.0
Fungi	12×10^5	1×10^5	12.0
Actinomycetes	46×10^6	7×10^6	7.0
Algae	5×10^3	27×10^3	0.2

Table 2.2 Microbial-mediated soil nutrient availability

Nutrient	Microbial transformation
Sulfur	Mineralization, immobilization, oxidation, reduction
Nitrogen	Immobilization, nitrification, denitrification, urea hydrolysis, N_2 fixation
Phosphorus	Mineralization, immobilization, extracellular P activity, facilitated uptake by VAM
Potassium	K solubilization, mobilization, and mineralization
Zinc	Facilitated uptake by mycorrhizal fungi, Zn solubilization
Copper	Facilitated uptake by exudates and mycorrhizal fungi
Iron	Change in oxidation state, production of siderophores, chelation
Manganese	Change in oxidation state in soil system

2.4 Role of Rhizosphere Microorganisms in Soil Sustainability and Nutrient Acquisition

Rhizosphere microorganisms play important roles in agriculture mainly by improving soil-plant nutrition and health, as well as soil quality of the ecosystem (Barea et al. 2013; Lugtenberg 2015). The rhizosphere is a multifaceted, complex "melting pot" of components and processes affecting plant growth and development and thus ecosystem functioning (Table 2.2). The plant-microbe interactions may be classified into beneficial, neutral, or harmful to the plant, depending on the beneficial and harmful effect on specific microorganisms and plants (Bais et al. 2006). Exploring this multicomponent complex of rhizosphere and its possible relationship to soil sustainability will become crucial in order to maintain food production with reduced fertilizers and pesticide inputs (Bakker et al. 2012; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a, b; Singh et al. 2015; Teotia et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a).

2.4.1 Organic Matter (OM) Decomposition

The OM has been considered as one of the most important components in improving soil health and agricultural sustainability. The rhizosphere microorganisms play an important role in regulating soil organic matter (SOM) decomposition and nutrient cycling due to the direct influences by roots that are often referred as rhizosphere processes. These rhizosphere processes may include exudates, water uptake, nutrient mobilization by roots and microorganisms, and SOM decomposition. These efficient rhizosphere processes are major paths for nutrient and water availability. Therefore, rhizosphere effect on the SOM decomposition is significant in mediating plant-soil interactions.

SOM decomposition is mediated by rhizosphere processes (Sallih and Bottner 1988; Cheng and Coleman 1990). This OM in the soil system is more or less continuously transformed by different chemical and biochemical mechanisms into various ranges of compounds (Marschner and Rengel 2007). The SOM contains various compounds which are the main energy source for the soil biota. Soil organisms have appropriate biochemistries and life processes to embezzle such energy for their growth; in doing so, the compounds are further transformed and cycled between compartments (Masood and Bano 2016; Meena et al. 2016a; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016; Kumar et al. 2017b).

2.4.2 Nutrient Transformation and Availability

Plant-microbe-soil interactions strongly modulate nutrient availability in soil system. In rhizosphere soil, the activity of microbes and plant roots is clearly distinct from the bulk soil (Marschner et al. 2003). The plant/crop roots must compete with the root system of neighboring plant species for space, water, and mineral nutrients. Next to water and temperature, nutrients are the most crucial environmental factors required for growth and development of crops (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2010). Soil-plant-microbe interactions have various effects such as positive, negative, and neutral; these efficient systems help to remediate the polluted soil system (Morgan et al. 2005; Kuzyakov and Xu 2013).

These various efficient rhizosphere microorganisms like free-living and symbiotic nitrogen-fixing rhizobacteria contribute a lot to meet nutrient demand. Moreover, the phosphate and potassium solubilizing bacteria (PSB and KSB) have the capability to convert inorganic unavailable P and K form to soluble forms available to plants. The soil biota are also involved in the cycling of other nutrient elements of pertinence to agricultural production systems including various macro- and micronutrients (Tebo et al. 2004; Weber et al. 2006; Meyer et al. 2007; Eriksen 2009). The mycorrhizae (VAM) can also influence the uptake of a range of elements by plants, including macro- and microelements, its work mainly phytoremediation or uptakes of heavy metals (Clark and Zeto 2000; Meena et al. 2015a, b, 2016b; Saha et al. 2016b; Sharma et al. 2016).

Other than rhizobacteria, fungi are fundamental for soil ecosystem functioning especially in agricultural soils. It was estimated that the 1.5 million fungal species are present in the natural ecosystems but only few (5–10%) have been described formally (Hawksworth 2001; Bianciotto and Bonfante 2002). The arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) increase the plant growth (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008; Akhtar and Panwar 2011). The AMF have a high affinity toward enhanced P nutrition in plants (Verma et al. 2017a). These efficient AMF could also scavenge the available P, Fe, and Zn through their extra radical hyphae (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008). Additional to their contribution in plant nutrition, AMF are able to improve soil structure and mitigate plant stress (Gianinazzi et al. 2010; Meena et al. 2013b, 2014a, 2016c, d; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Rawat et al. 2016; Saha et al. 2016a).

These efficient rhizosphere microbes have shown their influence toward the uptake of various macro- and micronutrients (Table 2.3) (Wu et al. 2005; Adesemoye et al. 2008). In another field study, inoculation of chickpea and barley with strains of *M. mediterraneum* significantly enhanced the K, Ca, and Mg along with P and N in both crop plants (Peix et al. 2001).

Table 2.3 Microbiological properties in bulk and rhizosphere soils of different plantations

		MBC	MBN	MBP	
Tree species		mg kg^{-1}			Microbial C/N
Siberian elm	Bulk soil	36.8(4.9)	7.0(0.6)	1.8(0.1)	5.2(0.8)
	Rhizosphere soil	52.7(5.2)	9.4(1.0)	2.1(0.2)	5.6(1.0)
	T-test	**	*	NS	NS
Simon poplar	Bulk soil	73.6(7.2)	6.7(0.2)	2.6(0.1)	10.9(1.2)
	Rhizosphere soil	90.7(6.4)	8.2(0.6)	2.8(0.2)	11.1(1.1)
	T-test	*	*	NS	NS
Mongolian pine	Bulk soil	45.6(3.2)	4.9(0.5)	1.6(0.1)	9.4(1.0)
	Rhizosphere soil	48.4(4.2)	8.0(0.9)	1.8(0.2)	6.1(0.7)
	T-test	NS	**	NS	*

Adopted from Zhao et al. (2010)

Data are means with standard errors given in parentheses (n = 5). NS denotes no significant difference (by paired samples T-test)

* Significant differences between bulk and rhizosphere soils at $P < 0.05$

** Significant differences between bulk and rhizosphere soils at $P < 0.01$

2.4.3 Plant Growth-Promoting (PGP) Activities

The bacteria present in the rhizosphere act as PGPR; they have the ability to enhance PGP atmospheric N fixation, hormone production, specific enzymatic activity, and plant and insect protection by producing antibiotic and other pathogen-depressing substances (Kamnev and Lelie 2000). However, the N_2-fixing, PSB, and KSB are important for crop plants as they increase N, P, and K uptake and play a crucial role as PGPR in the biofertilization (Zhang et al. 2013). In general, huge bulk inorganic/chemical fertilization is applied to replenish soil N and P demand with the resultant in high cost and environmental risk. Most of the P-fixed in the form of insoluble compounds is unavailable to plants. Thus, the application of such efficient microbes as eco-friendly biological agents may contribute to minimize the use of expensive P and K fertilizers.

2.4.4 Biocontrol Agents

A broad range of efficient microorganisms carry out biocontrol activities in the rhizosphere soils. These microbes play a major role to control diseases, which is a form of biological control and is an environment-friendly approach. Many rhizosphere bacteria have been reported to produce antifungal compounds like HCN, phenazines, pyrrolnitrin, 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol, and pyoluteorin (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). The biocontrol ability of the PGPR depends on a wide variety of traits, such as the production of various antibiotic compounds, iron chelators, and exoenzymes (Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c, d; Prakash and Verma 2016).

Table 2.4 Effect of PGPR on various PGP activities under sustainable agriculture

PGPRs	Responses	Crop	References
Pseudomonas and *Azotobacter*	Stimulates growth and yield	Chickpea	Rokhzadi et al. (2008)
P. putida strain R-168	Enhance seed germination, growth parameters	Maize	Gholami et al. (2009)
P. fluorescens strain R-93, *P. fluorescens* DSM 50090, *P. putida* DSM291, and *A. lipoferum* DSM 1691	Increase growth, leaf nutrient contents and yield	Banana	Kavino et al. (2010)
P. putida strains R-168 and DSM-291	Improves seed germination, seedling growth and yield	Maize	Nezarat and Gholami (2009)
R. leguminosarum and *Pseudomonas* sp.	Enhance yield and P uptake	Wheat	Afzal and Asghari (2008)
P. putida strain	Growth stimulation	Tomato	Gravel et al. (2007)
Azospirillum brasilense	Improve growth attributes	Wheat and maize	Dobbelaere et al. (2002)
P. fluorescens strain	Growth and yield	Pearl millet	Niranjan et al. (2003)
Azotobacter and *Azospirillum* strains	Growth and productivity	Canola	Yasari and Patwardhan (2007)
P. alcaligenes PsA15 and *B. polymyxa*	Enhance nutrient uptake	Maize	Egamberdiyeva (2007)
Rhizobium leguminosarum	Direct growth promotion	Canola and lettuce	Noel et al. (1996)

2.4.5 Soil Bioremediations

The soil is an important habitat for thousands of microbes (Table 2.4); these efficient microbes are habitats between soil particles and soil organic matter in rhizosphere (Akhtar et al. 2013). Many soil microbes are capable of degrading toxic compounds including herbicides, pesticides, solvents, and other organic compounds and might provide a reasonable and effective measure of disposing toxic compounds (Murali and Mehar 2014).

Due to the degrading and sequestration capability of the microbial communities toward the toxic compounds and heavy metals (HMs), microbes have been used for bioremediation of soil contaminated with HMs (Table 2.5) (Dell'Amico et al. 2005; Kao et al. 2006; Umrania 2006).

The organic pollutants can be degraded by plants/crops/microbes through biochemical reactions taking place within the rhizosphere. The phytodegradation of organic pollutants may also be enhanced by rhizospheric activity (Mirsal 2004). The AMF were also demonstrated to PGP and degradation of toxic pollutants in soils with increased pollutant concentrations especially ectomycorrhizal fungi (Table 2.6). They promote the establishment of plants at HM-contaminated soil by immobilizing heavy metals in the soil, thereby reducing the availability of metals to plants (Jentschke and Godbold 2000; Meharg and Cairney 2000; Fomina et al. 2005).

Table 2.5 PGPR as biocontrol agents against various plant diseases

PGPR	Experimental conditions	Disease	References
Bacillus strain	Greenhouse	Blight of squash	Zhang et al. (2010)
B. pumilus strain SE34	Laboratory	Blue mold disease in tobacco	Zang et al. (2002)
B. pumilus strain INR7	Field	Bacterial wilt in cucumber	Zehnder et al. (2001)
B. pumilus strain SE34 and *B. subtilis* strain IN937b	Greenhouse	Cucumber mosaic cucumovirus (CMV) in tomato	Zehnder et al. (2000)
B. cereus strains B101R, B212R, and A068R	Greenhouse	Foliar diseases in tomato	Silva et al. (2004)
Pseudomonas spp.	Rice	Rice sheath rot	Saravanakumar et al. (2009)
P. fluorescens	Saline field	Saline resistance in groundnut	Saravanakumar and Samiyappan (2007)
P. fluorescens	Rice	Sheath blight disease	Radjacommare et al. (2002)
B. subtilis strain GBO3 and *B. pumilus* strain INR7	Greenhouse/ field	Downy mildew in pearl millet	Niranjan et al. (2003)
Bacillus sp. and *Azospirillum* strains SPS2	Greenhouse	Rice blast	Naureen Zakira et al. (2009)
B. amyloliquefaciens 937a and *B. subtilis* 937b	Field	Tomato mottle virus	Murphy et al. (2000)
P. fluorescens strain CHA0 + chitin bio-formulations	Greenhouse/ field	Banana bunchy top virus (BBTV)	Kavino et al. (2008)
B. strains BB11 and FH17	Greenhouse	Blight of bell pepper	Jiang et al. (2006)
Burkholderia strains MBf21 and MBf15	In vitro/in vivo	Maize rot	Rodriguez et al. (2008)

2.4.6 Drought and Nutrient Stress/Deficiency

Diverse environmental stresses like drought, salinity, and nutrient deficiencies are connected to soil-derived limitations. These stresses are inducing a series of morphological, physiological, biochemical, and molecular changes in the plant root system to adapt to the stress conditions and/or to modify the environment from which the stress is originated. Variation in the soil nutrient composition is a common condition in agricultural systems. Indeed, only ~30 to 50% of applied N fertilizers and ~10 to 20% of P fertilizers are used in crops (Adesemoye and Kloepper 2009). Furthermore, there is a general trend worldwide in reducing the use of chemical inputs in agriculture due to environmental concerns (Meena et al. 2013c, 2016e; Parewa et al. 2014). Water and nutrient acquisition from soils is governed by plant roots and their interaction with the abiotic and biotic components of soil (Hartmann

Table 2.6 Soil bioremediation of pollutants using plant-microbe interaction

Plant/crops	Pollutants	Microorganisms	References
Populus deltoides niger	1,4-Dioxane	Actinomycetes	Schnoor et al. (1998)
Senecio glaucus	Oil	*Arthrobacter*	Radvan et al. (1995)
Barley	2, 4-D	*Burkholderia cepacia*	Jacobsen (1997)
Populus deltoides	PAH	*Kurthia* sp.	Bisht et al. (2014)
		Micrococcus sp.	
Alfalfa	Pyrene, anthracene, and phenanthrene	Not identified	Schwab et al. (1995)
Oat, lupine, and rape	Pyrene	Not identified	Liste (2000)
Prairie grasses	PAHs	Not identified	Qiu et al. (1994)
Grasses	Naphthalene	*Pseudomonas putida*	Kuiper et al. (2001)
Wheat	2,4-D	*Pseudomonas putida*	Kingsley et al. (1994)
Sugar beet	PCBs	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	Brazil et al. (1995)

PAHs polyaromatic hydrocarbons, *PCBs* polychlorinated biphenyls, *2,4-D* 2,*4*-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid

et al. 2008). The soil biotic component includes microorganisms that are living symbiotically or in association with plant roots. These microorganisms might enhance acquisition of nutrients in low-nutrient soils and alleviate the effects of low water availability. But there are only few studies that provided information regarding rhizosphere soil microorganisms to plants in mitigating with stresses derived from nutrient and water availability (Saleem et al. 2007; Hayat et al. 2010; Kang et al. 2010; Smith et al. 2010; Meena et al. 2015e).

2.5 Management of Rhizosphere System for Soil Sustainability and Productivity

It is well known that nutrient has unsounded effects on many aspects of root development, thus accompanying rhizosphere process (Zhang et al. 2010; Meena et al. 2015f). Most of the mineral nutrients were taken up by plants through the rhizosphere where root exudates play a dominant role in driving interactions among soil-plant-microbe system. However, the plant root exudates consist of a complex mixture of various acids, sugars, and enzymes, which have major direct or indirect effects on the acquisition of mineral nutrients required for PGP activities (Dakora and Phillips 2002). The rhizospheric chemistry/phenomena can enhance P mobilization and acquisition from soil by plants (Zhang et al. 2010). It is suggested that optimizing crop combination and BMPs, RMPs, and INM in intercropping systems through better understanding of rhizosphere interactions provides an effective approach to improve sustainable crop production with high yield, significantly higher NUE (Zhang et al. 2012).

2.5.1 The Cultural Management/Practices

Rhizospheric modification and root distribution along with the cropping system play a significant role toward the sustainable rhizosphere management. The subsurface irrigation systems can be adopted to improve soil characteristics and root distribution/modification, in relation to the physical properties of the soil and fertilization practices (Clothier and Green 1994; Yang et al. 2004).

2.5.2 Efficient Fertilization

The injudicious fertilization can result in considerable decreases of rhizosphere microorganisms population and eco-friendly insects, crop susceptibility or aggravation of soil physical properties, and pollution (HMs) of water resources through leaching causing irreparable damage to the overall system. One of the more promising practices is the innovative BMPs and RMPs, which reduces fertilization rate (Hakim et al. 2013). Other practices for managing the fertility of soil-plant system include supplying nutrients through drip irrigation (Postel et al. 2003; Palada and Wu 2005), applying organic manures (FYM, VC) to increase soil-buffering capacity (Glaser et al. 2002), and localized amendment as strategies for problematic soils.

2.5.3 Use of Organic and Biofertilizers

The organic farming (OF) system has become popular due to consumer concern with human health and the environment safety. Organic fertilization for the nutrient supply is more balanced, which helps to maintain soil sustainability and crop productivity. Among the beneficial effects of organic manures include (1) enhancement of soil biological activity, (2) enhancement of colonization of mycorrhizae, (3) improved root growth due to better soil structure, and (4) slow release of nutrients which contribute to the residual pool of organic N and P in the soil, reducing N leaching loss and P fixation (Singh and Mandal 2000).

2.6 Concluding Remarks

The rhizosphere microbial activity in the rhizosphere contributes significantly to sustainable agriculture. Efficient rhizosphere microorganisms, like AMF/rhizobacteria, contribute essentially to enhance NUE and crop sustainability. Application of these efficient microbes in the soil-plant system has the capacity to improve the plant fitness in unfavorable conditions of soils and increase the nutrient uptake efficiency (NUE) as well as water use efficiency (WUE). The rhizosphere management involves manipulating root growth, rhizosphere modification, RMPs and BMPs in intercropping, and the use of efficient crop genotypes with an aim to exploit the biological potential for efficient nutrient acquisition by plant roots rather than overuse of chemical/inorganic fertilization. The nutrient inputs in intensive farming systems should be optimized to achieve both high crop productivity and high NUE through maximizing rhizosphere efficiency in nutrient mobilization and acquisition. So all these activities make the rhizosphere the most dynamic environment in the soil.

Acknowledgments Authors are thankful to the Division of Crop Production, ICAR-Indian Grassland and Fodder Research Institute, Jhansi, for providing the necessary facilities required for the review to be conducted.

References

Adesemoye AO, Kloepper JW (2009) Plant-microbes interactions in enhanced fertilizer use efficiency. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:1–12

Adesemoye AO, Torbert HA, Kloepper JW (2008) Enhanced plant nutrient use efficiency with PGPR and AMF in an integrated nutrient management system. Can J Microbiol 54:876–886

Afzal A, Asghari B (2008) Rhizobium and phosphate solubilizing bacteria improve the yield and phosphorus uptake in wheat. Int J Agric Biol 10:85–88

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Akhtar MS, Panwar J (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and opportunistic fungi: efficient root symbionts for the management of plant parasitic nematodes. Adv Sci Eng Med 3:165–175

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as potential biprotectants against plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA, Akhtar MS, Futai K (eds) Mycorrhizae: sustainable agriculture and forestry. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 61–98

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2010) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in biocontrol of plant diseases and sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria, Microbiology monographs 18. Springer, Berlin, pp 157–196

Akhtar MS, Chali B, Azam T (2013) Bioremediation of arsenic and lead by plants and microbes from contaminated soil. Res Plant Sci 1:68–73

Altieri MA (2004) Linking ecologists and traditional farmers in the search for sustainable agriculture. Front Ecol Environ 2:35–42

Badri DV, Chaparro JM, Zhang R, Shen Q, Vivanco JM (2013) Application of natural blends of phytochemicals derived from the root exudates of *Arabidopsis* to the soil reveal that phenolic-related compounds predominantly modulate the soil microbiome. J Biol Chem 288(7):4502–4512

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57(1):233–266

Bakker MG, Manter DK, Sheflin AM, Weir TL, Vivanco JM (2012) Harnessing the rhizosphere microbiome through plant breeding and agricultural management. Plant Soil 360:1–13

Bardgett RD, Mommer L, De Vries FT (2014) Going underground: root traits as drivers of ecosystem processes. Trends Ecol Evol 29:692–699

Barea JM (2004) Impacto de las micorrizas en la calidad del suelo y la productividad vegetal en sistemas agrícolas y espacios naturales. In: Monzón de Asconegui MA, García de Salamone IE, Miyazaki SS (eds) Biología del suelo. Transformaciones de la materia orgánica, usos y biodiversidad de los organismos edáficos. Editorial FAUBA, Universidad de Buenos Aires, Argentina, pp 7–11

Barea JM, Richardson AE (2015) Phosphate mobilisation by soil microorganisms. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer International Publishing Switzerland, Heidelberg, pp 225–234

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, Azcón R, AzcónAguilar C (2013) Microbial interactions in the rhizosphere. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 1. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 29–44

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Bianciotto V, Bonfante P (2002) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: a specialized niche for rhizospheric and endocellular bacteria. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:365–371

Bisht S, Pandey P, Aggarwal H et al (2014) Utilization of endophytic strain Bacillus sp. SBER3 for biodegradation of polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) in soil model system. Eur J Soil Biol 60:67–76

Brazil GM, Kenefick L, Callanan M et al (1995) Construction of a rhizosphere Pseudomonad with potential to degrade polychlorinated biphenyls and detection of bph gene expression in the rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:1946–1952

Brimecombe MJ, De Lelj FA, Lynch JM (2001) The rhizosphere. The effect of root exudates on rhizosphere microbial populations. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere. Biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant Interface. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 95–140

Brimecombe MJ, De Leij FAAM, Lynch JM (2007) Rhizodeposition and microbial populations. In: Pinton R, Veranini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface. Taylor & Francis Group, New York

Cheng W, Coleman DC (1990) Effect of living roots on soil organic matter decomposition. Soil Biol Biochem 22:781–787

Clark RB, Zeto SK (2000) Mineral acquisition by arbuscular mycorrhizal plants. J Plant Nutr 23:867–902

Clothier BE, Green SR (1994) Rootzone processes and the efficient use of irrigation water. Agric Water Manag 25:1–12

Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low nutrient environments. Plant Soil 245:35–47

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Dell'Amico E, Cavalca L, Andreoni V (2005) Analysis of rhizobacterial communities in perennial Graminaceae from polluted water meadow soil, and screening of metal-resistant, potentially plant growth-promoting bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 52:153–162

Dobbelaere S, Croonenborgh A, Thys A, Ptacek D, Okon Y, Vanderleyden J (2002) Effect of inoculation with wild type *Azospirillum brasilense* and *A. irakense* strains on development and nitrogen uptake of spring wheat and grain maize. Biol Fertil Soils 36:284–297

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds)

Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Egamberdiyeva D (2007) The effect of plant growth promoting bacteria on growth and nutrient uptake of maize in two different soils. Appl Soil Ecol 36:184–189

Eriksen J (2009) Soil sulfur cycling in temperate agricultural systems. Adv Agron 102:55–89

Fomina MA, Alexander IJ, Colpaert JV, Gadd GM (2005) Solubilization of toxic metal minerals and metal tolerance of mycorrhizal fungi. Soil Biol Biochem 37:851–866

Gholami A, Shahsavani S, Nezarat S (2009) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination, seedling growth and yield of maize. World Acad Sci Eng Technol 49:19–24

Gianinazzi S, Gollotte A, Binet MN, van Tuinen D, Redecker D, Wipf D (2010) Agroecology: the key role of arbuscular mycorrhizas in ecosystem services. Mycorrhiza 20:519–530

Glaser B, Lehmann J, Zech W (2002) Ameliorating physical and chemical properties of highly weathered soils in the tropics with charcoal – a review. Biol Fertil Soils 35:219–230

Gravel V, Antoun H, Tweddell RJ (2007) Growth stimulation and fruit yield improvement of greenhouse tomato plants by inoculation with *Pseudomonas putida* or *Trichoderma atroviride*: possible roe of Indole Acetic Acid (IAA). Soil Biol Biochem 39:1968–1977

Haas D, Défago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent *pseudomonads*. Nat Rev Microbiol 3(4):307–319

Hakim AL, Ma CH, Luther GC, Mariyono J (2013) Stater solution technology, publication extension, USAID-AVRDC-FIELD

Hartmann A, Schmid M, van Tuinen D, Berg G (2008) Plant-driven selection of microbes. Plant Soil 321:235–257

Hawks Worth DL (2001) The magnitude of fungal diversity, 1.5 million sp. R revised. Mycol Res 105:1422–1432

Hayat R, Ali S, Amara U, Khalid R, Ahmed I (2010) Soil beneficial bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion: a review. Ann Microbiol 60:579–598

Jacobsen CS (1997) Plant protection and rhizosphere colonization of barley by seed inoculating herbicide degrading bacteria *Burkholderia* (*Pseudomonas*) *cepacia* DBO1 (pRO101) in 2,4-D contaminated soil. Plant Soil 189:139–144

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jentschke G, Godbold DL (2000) Metal toxicity and ectomycorrhizas. Physiol Plant 109:107–116

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Jiang Z-Q, Guo Y-H, Shi-Mo L, Hong-Ying Q, Guo J-H (2006) Evaluation of biocontrol efficiency of different Bacillus preparations and field application methods against Phytophthora blight of bell pepper. Biol Control 36:216–223

Kamnev AA, Lelie D (2000) Chemical and biological parameters as tools to evaluate and improve heavy metal phytoremediation. Biosci Rep 20:239–258

Kang BG, Kim WT, Yun HS, Chang SC (2010) Use of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria to control stress response of plant root. Plant Biotechnol 4:179–183

Kao PH, Huang CC, Hseu ZY (2006) Response of microbial activities to heavy metals in a neutral loamy soil treated with biosolid. Chemosphere 64:63–70

Kavino M, Harish S, Kumar N, Saravanakumar D, Samiyappan R (2008) Induction of systemic resistance in banana (*Musa spp.*) against banana bunchy top virus (BBTV) by combining chitin with root-colonizing *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0. Eur J Plant Pathol 120:353–362

Kavino M, Harish S, Kumar N, Saravanakumar D, Samiyappan R (2010) Effect of chitinolytic PGPR on growth, yield and physiological attributes of banana (*Musa* spp.) under field conditions. Appl Soil Ecol 45:71–77

Kingsley MT, Fredrickson JK, Metting FB et al (1994) Environmental restoration using plant-microbe bioaugmentation. In: Hinchee RE, Leeson A, Semprini L, Ong SK (eds) Bioremediation of chlorinated and polyaromatic hydrocarbon compounds. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, pp 287–292

Kuiper I, Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJJ (2001) Selection of a plant-bacterium pair as a novel tool for rhizostimulation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-degrading bacteria. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:1197–1205

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with *Enterobacter* and *Rhizobacteria* on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Kuzyakov Y, Xu X (2013) Competition between roots and microorganisms for nitrogen: mechanisms and ecological relevance. New Phytol 198:656–669

Liste HHM (2000) Plant-promoted pyrene degradation in soil. Chemosphere 40:7–10

Lugtenberg B (2015) Life of microbes in the rhizosphere. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer International Publishing Switzerland, Heidelberg, pp 7–15

Marschner P, Rengel Z (2007) Nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems. Springer, Berlin. (AgEng96, Madrid, 23–26 September 1996)

Marschner P, Fu QL, Rengel Z (2003) Manganese availability and microbial populations in the rhizosphere of wheat genotypes differing in tolerance to Mn deficiency. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 166:712–718

Martinez-Viveros O, Jorquera MA, Crowley DE, Gajardo G, Mora ML (2010) Mechanisms and practical considerations involved in plant growth promotion by rhizobacteria. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 10:293–319

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol’s potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sustain Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bangladesh J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of well grow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meharg AA, Cairney JWG (2000) Ectomycorrhizas – extending the capabilities of rhizosphere remediation? Soil Biol Biochem 32:1475–1484

Mendes R, Kruijt M, de Bruijn I, Dekkers E, van der Voort M, Schneider JH, Piceno YM, DeSantis TZ, Andersen GL, Bakker PA, Raaijmakers JM (2011) Deciphering the rhizosphere microbiome for disease-suppressive bacteria. Science 332(6033):1097–1100

Meyer J, Schmidt A, Michalke K, Hensel R (2007) Volatilisation of metals and metalloids by the microbial population of an alluvial soil. Syst Appl Microbiol 30:229–238

Mirsal I (2004) Soil pollution: origin, monitoring and remediation. Springer, New York

Morgan JAW, Bending GD, White PJ (2005) Biological costs and benefits to plant–microbe interactions in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 56:1729–1739

Morrissey JP, Dow JM, Mark GL, O'Gara F (2004) Are microbes at the root of a solution to world food production? EMBO Rep 5(10):922–926

Murali O, Mehar SK (2014) Bioremediation of heavy metals using spirulina. Int J Geol Earth Environ Sci 4(1):244–249

Murphy JF, Zehnder GW, Schuster DJ, Sikora EJ, Polston JE, Kloepper JW (2000) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacterial mediated protection in tomato against tomato mottle virus. Plant Dis 84:779–784

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Naureen Zakira P, Hafeez Adam H, Roberts Fauzia Y, Michael R (2009) Identification of rice blast disease-suppressing bacterial strains from the rhizosphere of rice grown in Pakistan. Crop Prot 28:1052–1060

Nezarat S, Gholami A (2009) Screening plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for improving seed germination, seedling growth and yield of maize. Pak J Biol Sci 12:26–32

Nihorimbere V, Ongena M, Smargiassi M, Thonart P (2011) Beneficial effect of the rhizosphere microbial community for plant growth and health. Biotechnol Agron Soc 15:327–337

Niranjan SR, Deepak SA, Basavaraju P, Shetty HS, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW (2003) Comparative performance of formulations of plant promoting rhizobacteria in growth promotion and suppression of downy mildew in pearl millet. Crop Prot 22:579–588

Noel TC, Sheng C, Yost CK, Pharis RP, Hynes MF (1996) *Rhizobium leguminosarum* as a plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium: direct growth promotion of canola and lettuce. Can J Microbiol 42:279–283

Palada MC, Wu DL (2005) Influence of rain shelter and irrigation method on yield, water and fertilizer use efficiency of chili pepper. Hortic Sci 40:1143. (abst.)

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Patil SS, Adetutu EM, Rochow J, Mitchell JG, Ball AS (2014) Sustainable remediation: electrochemically assisted microbial dechlorination of tetrachloroethene-contaminated groundwater. Microb Biotechnol 7(1):54–63

Peix A, Rivas-Boyero AA, Mateos PF, Rodriguez-Barrueco C, Martínez-Molina E, Velazquez E (2001) Growth promotion of chickpea and barley by a phosphate solubilizing strain of Mesorhizobium mediterraneum under growth chamber conditions. Soil Biol Biochem 33:103–110

Postel S, Polak P, Gonzales F, Keller J (2003) Drip irrigation for small farmers: a new initiative to alleviate hunger and poverty. International Development Enterprises (IDE-India) Report 014

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Qiu X, Shah SJ, Kendall EW et al (1994) Grass enhanced bioremediation for clay soils contaminated with polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons. In: Anderson TA, Coates JR (eds) Bioremediation through rhizosphere technology. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC, pp 142–157

Radjacommare R, Nandakumar R, Kandan A, Suresh S, Bharathi M, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2002) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* based bio-formulation for the management of sheath blight disease and leaf folder insect in rice. Crop Prot 21:671–677

Radvan S, Sorkhoh N, El Nemr L (1995) Oil biodegradation around roots. Nature:376–302

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Richardson AE, Barea JM, McNeill AM, PrigentCombaret C (2009) Acquisition of phosphorus and nitrogen in the rhizosphere and plant growth promotion by microorganisms. Plant Soil 321:305–339

Rodriguez Hernandez A, Heydrich Perez M, Acebo Guerrero Y, Velazquez del Valle MG, Hernandez Lauzardo AN (2008) Antagonistic activity of Cuban native rhizobacteria against Fusarium verticillioides (Sacc.) Nirenb. In maize (Zea mays L.). Appl Soil Ecol 39:180–186

Rokhzadi A, Ahmad A, Farrokh D, Ghorban NM, Eslam M (2008) Influence of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on dry matter accumulation and yield of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) under field conditions. Am Eur J Agric Environ Sci 3:253–257

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saleem M, Arshad M, Hussain S, Bhatti AS (2007) Perspective of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) containing ACC deaminase in stress agriculture. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 34:635–648

Sallih Z, Bottner P (1988) Effects of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) roots on mineralization rates of soil organic matter. Biol Fertil Soils 7:67–70

Saravanakumar D, Samiyappan R (2007) ACC deaminase from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* mediated saline resistance in groundnut (*Arachis hypogea*) plants. J Appl Microbiol 102(5):1283–1292

Saravanakumar D, Lavanya N, Muthumeena K, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2009) Fluorescent pseudomonad mixtures mediate disease resistance in rice plants against sheath rot (*Sarocladium oryzae*) disease. BioControl 54:273–286

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. In The adaptive soil management: from theory to practices. p 69–88. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Schnoor JL, Aitchison EW, Kelley SL et al (1998) Phytoremediation and augmentation of 1,4-dioxane. Abstr Adv Biol Rern Syst Conf 87:91–133

Schwab AP, Banks MK, Arunachalam M (1995) Biodegradation of polyromantic hydrocarbon in rhizosphere. In: Hinchee RE, Anderson DB, Hoeppel RE (eds) Bioremediation of recalcitrant organics. Battle Memorial Institute, Columbus, pp 23–29

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Silva HSA, da Silva RR, Macagnan M, de Almeida HVB, Pereira MCB, Mounteer A (2004) Rhizobacterial induction of systemic resistance in tomato plants: non-specific protection and increase in enzyme activity. Biol Control 29:288–295

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh YV, Mandal BK (2000) Rate of mineralization of Azolla, other organic materials and urea in water logged soils. Trop Agric (Trinidad) 77(1):119–122

Singh BK, Millard P, Whiteley AS, Murrell JC (2004) Unravelling rhizosphere–microbial interactions: opportunities and limitations. Trends Microbiol 12(8):386–393

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Smith SE, Facelli F, Pope S, Smith FA (2010) Plant performance in stressful environments: interpreting new and established knowledge of the roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas. Plant Soil 326:3–20

Tebo BM, Bargar JR, Clement BG, Dick GJ, Murray KJ, Parker D, Verity R, Webb SM (2004) Biogenic manganese oxides: properties and mechanisms of formation. Ann Rev Earth Planet Sci 32:287–328

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Umrania VV (2006) Bioremediation of toxic heavy metals using acid thermophilic autotrophs. Bioresour Technol 97:1237–1242

Vaxevanidou K, Christou C, Kremmydas GF, Georgakopoulos DG, Papassiopi N (2015) Role of indigenous arsenate and iron (III) respiring microorganisms in controlling the mobilization of arsenic in a contaminated soil sample. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 94(3):282–288

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. India Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of Indo-Gangetic plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Weber KA, Achenbach LA, Coates JD (2006) Microorganisms pumping iron: anaerobic microbial iron oxidation and reduction. Nat Rev Microbiol 4:752–764

Welbaum G, Sturz AV, Dong Z, Nowak J (2004) Fertilizing soil microorganisms to improve productivity of agroecosystems. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:175–193

Whitman WB, Coleman DC, Wiebe WJ (1998) Prokaryotes: the unseen majority. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:6578–6583

Wood N (2001) Nodulation by numbers: the role of ethylene in symbiotic nitrogen fixation. Trends Plant Sci 6:501–502

Wu SC, Cao ZH, Li ZG, Cheung KC, Wong MH (2005) Effects of biofertilizer containing N-fixer, P and K solubilizers and AM fungi on maize growth: a greenhouse trial. Geoderma 125:155–166

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yang C, Yang L, Yang Y, Ouyyang Z (2004) Rice root growth and nutrient uptake as influenced by organic manure in continuously and alternately flooded paddy soils. Agric Water Manag 70:67–81

Yasari E, Patwardhan AM (2007) Effects of *Azotobacter* and *Azospirillum* inoculations and chemical fertilizers on growth and productivity of Canola. Asian J Plant Sci 6:77–82

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zang S, Moyne AL, Redddy MS, Kloepper JW (2002) The role of salicylic acid in induced systemic resistance elicited by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria against blue mold of tobacco. Biol Control 25:288–296

Zehnder GW, Yao C, Murphy JF, Sikora EJ, Kloepper JW (2000) Induction of resistance in tomato against cucumber mosaic cucumovirus by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Biol Control 45:127–137

Zehnder G, Murphy JF, Sikora EJ, Kloepper JW (2001) Application of rhizobacteria for induced resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:39–50

Zhang S, White TL, Martinez M, McInroy C, Kloepper JA, Klassen JWW (2010) Evaluation of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for control of *Phytophthora* blight on squash under greenhouse conditions. Biol Control 53:129–135

Zhang FS, Cui ZL, Chen XP, Ju XT, Shen JB, Chen Q, Liu XJ, Zhang WF, Mi GH, Fan MS (2012) Integrated nutrient management for food security and environmental quality in China. In: Sparks DL (ed) Advances in agronomy, vol 116. Academic, San Diego, pp 1–40

Zhang A, Zhao G, Gao T, Wang W, Li J, Zhang S et al (2013) Solubilization of insoluble potassium and phosphate by *Paenibacillus kribensis* CX-7:a soil microorganism with biological control potential. Afr J Microbiol Res 7(1):41–47

Zhao Q, Zeng D, Fan Z (2010) Nitrogen and phosphorus transformations in the rhizospheres of three tree species in a nutrient-poor sandy soil. Appl Soil Ecol 46:341–346

Zolla G, Badri DV, Bakker MG, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2013) Soil microbiomes vary in their ability to confer drought tolerance to Arabidopsis. Appl Soil Ecol 68:1–9

PGPR: Heart of Soil and Their Role in Soil Fertility

3

Ishwar Prakash Sharma, Satish Chandra, Narendra Kumar, and Dinesh Chandra

Abstract

Soil is an excellent niche for the growth of microorganisms which includes plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPRs). PGPRs have great potential for plant growth promotion as they control pest and disease and have been considered important in sustainable agriculture. PGPRs induce and/or synthesize various growth-promoting and biocontrolling chemicals which are useful for sustainable agriculture and environment. These chemicals are phytohormones, antibiotics, enzymes, etc., which react with the soil and provide better health to the plants. PGPRs directly or indirectly circulate their products to soil for better soil health which further enhance the soil immunity followed by influencing plant growth, productivity, and yield. Soil immune system works strongly by the activities of soil microbes which are considered as a heart of soil. These soil microbes are responsible for increasing soil fertility and productivity which are considered important for sustainable agriculture.

Keywords

PGPR • Immunity • Sustainable agriculture • Soil fertility • Biomolecules

---

I.P. Sharma (✉) • S. Chandra • D. Chandra
Department of Biological Sciences, College of Basic Sciences and Humanities, GBPUAT, Pantnagar 263 145, India
e-mail: ipsharma.com@gmail.com

N. Kumar
Department of Plant Physiology, College of Basic Sciences and Humanities, GBPUAT, Pantnagar 263 145, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_3

3.1 Introduction

Soil is an excellent niche for the growth of microorganisms including bacteria. Out of these some bacteria are able to colonize soil surrounding plant roots, rhizosphere (Hiltner 1904; Kennedy 2005); these bacteria are rhizobacteria. These bacteria have the ability to induce plant growth and biocontrol activities (Meena et al. 2016e). In the coming years, food security and feed will be a major global challenge for increasing human population; now, we need to increase the sustainability of agricultural productivity to meet the increasing demand for food. More than half of the population still relies on agriculture as its principal source of income, and it is a source of raw material for a large number of industries (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Zahedi 2016; Kumar et al. 2017). Therefore, these bacteria are an important biological tool for the abovementioned challenges.

Agricultural crops are mostly affected by diseases and/or pests which can be biologically prevented by these PGPRs and other symbiotic rhizospheric microorganisms which are mostly found in the rhizosphere of all plants (Trudgill and Blok 2001; Sharma and Sharma 2016). For the managing of pest and disease, a large number of synthetic chemicals are being used, which pose environmental hazards, besides being costly and uneconomical (Joshi et al. 2006; Maheshwari et al. 2012; Youssef and Eissa 2014; Gupta et al. 2015). The quantity and quality of agricultural production are affected by the use of chemicals in agriculture practices; recently, these interactions are an important discussion subject under the agriculture-environment relationships (Ladha et al. 1997; Eser and Geçit 2010; Gupta et al. 2015; Meena et al. 2016f; Mahmood et al. 2016a, b; Ahmad et al. 2016a, b; Sharma and Sharma 2016). PGPRs are used to replace these chemicals by a variety of mechanisms, viz., formation of soil structure, decomposition of organic matter, recycling of elements, mineral nutrient solubilization, production of plant growth regulators, degradation of organic pollutants, root growth stimulation, soil fertility enhancement, biocontrol of plant pathogens, etc. (Ahemad and Khan 2009; Akhtar et al. 2012; Sivasakhti et al. 2014; Gupta et al. 2015).

Many studies show that the use of microbial-based products is a common practice for controlling plant pest population and preventing diseases of crops (Lacey et al. 2001; Goettel et al. 2010; Dogan et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2013c, 2015e). The major influences that the rhizosphere microorganisms have on plants today become an important biological tool to govern the health of plants in eco-friendly manner. They are involved in various biotic activities of the soil ecosystem to make it dynamic for nutrient turnover and sustainable for crop production (Ahemad and Khan 2009; Akhtar et al. 2012; Gupta et al. 2015). Hence, PGPRs are economic and secure alternative strategy for enhancing plant growth and development as they are able to increase the soil health and immunity toward soil pests and diseases.

3.2 Role of PGPR in Soil Fertility

Soil is the natural niche for soil microorganisms which play an important role in soil processes and determine plant productivity (Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c, d). PGPRs are involved in all beneficial activities within the soil like decomposition of crop residues, synthesis of soil organic matter (SOM), mineralization of SOM, immobilization of mineral nutrients, phosphate solubilization, nitrification, nitrogen fixation, phytohormone synthesis, and disease suppression which help in soil fertility improvement and ultimately enhancing the productivity (Prasad et al. 2015). Soil moisture is a necessary condition for PGPR colonization in the rhizosphere (Shrivastava et al. 2014). Rhizobacteria associated with roots are responsible for the synthesis of large number of biomolecules which get mixed with the soil and further improve soil health. They also act on the plant residues, where various organic compounds undergo decomposition and mineralization (Kumar et al. 2015; Ahmad et al. 2016a, b; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Yasin et al. 2016). These mineralized chemicals enter the soil body where they agitate and add value to the soil. Apart from this mechanism, they also synthesize many growth-responsible chemicals which ultimately affect plant root morphology (Fig. 3.1).

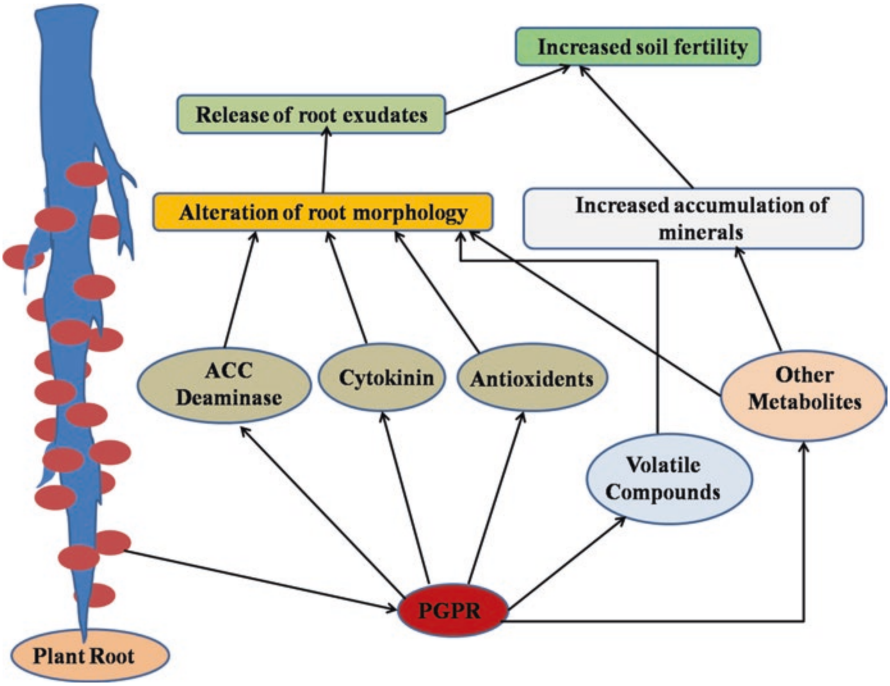


Fig. 3.1 An overview of soil fertility enhancement mechanism through PGPRs

Rhizobacteria have great potential to increase nutrient availability in the soil (Choudhary et al. 2011; Meena et al. 2013b, 2014a, 2015f). Nitrogen is essential for amino acid and protein synthesis which is the most limiting nutrient to plants and accumulated from atmospheric nitrogen through biological nitrogen-fixing mechanism in the soil as well as in plant roots (Lloret and Martinez-Romero 2005; Raymond et al. 2004). Some PGPRs have the ability to solubilize phosphate in the soil body, resulting in an increased availability of phosphate ions in the soil which are easily available to plants (Wani et al. 2007; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Teotia et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a). Various volatile compounds and other metabolites (enzymes, proteins, antibiotics, etc.) also produced by PGPRs are highly involved in improving soil health and plant growth. Many bacterial species from different genera including *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Serratia*, *Arthrobacter*, and *Stenotrophomonas* have been reported as volatile compound producers. Various enzymes (chitinase, beta-glucanases, etc.) are release in the soil body by these bacteria which suppress the growth of many pathogens in the soil and contribute to the biocontrol activity (Vejan et al. 2016). Overall, the soil body is healthy through all these mechanisms, and such healthy soil becomes potential for good yield and productivity, thus making the soil highly fertile (Meena et al. 2016c, d; Parewa et al. 2014).

3.3 Plant Growth-Promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR)

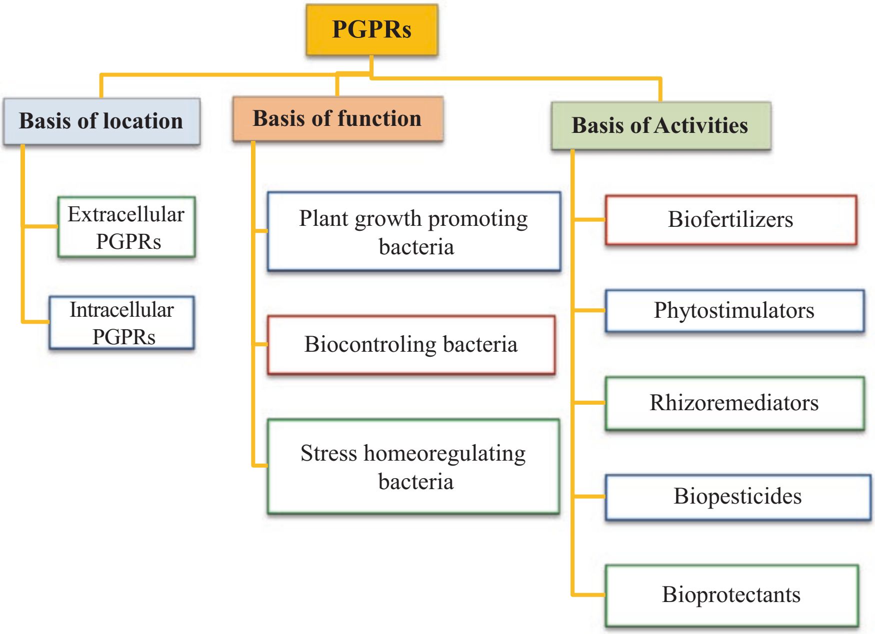
In vitro promotion of plant growth and root pathogen biocontrol through *Pseudomonas* strains was the first evidence of the rhizospheric bacteria which could be a good source for sustainable agriculture (Burr et al. 1978; Kloepper et al. 1980). The term plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) was first suggested by Kloepper et al. (1989). Previously, Theophrastus (372–287 BC) already suggested and recommended the remedying defects of different soil samples because of the presence of soil biota in the soil heart (Tisdale and Nelson 1975). The study of Hellriegel and Wilfarth (1888) suggested that rhizospheric bacteria have the ability to convert atmospheric N_2 in the roots of legumes. Still there are several groups of rhizobacteria that have been reported and have the ability to promote plant growth and induce resistance against various stresses (Meena et al. 2015b; Prakash and Verma 2016; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016). In the rhizosphere, very important and intensive interactions take place between the plant, soil, microorganisms, and soil microfauna as they share the same niche. Many biochemical interactions as well as exchanges of signal molecules between plants and soil microorganisms have been studied which significantly influence plant growth and crop yields (Pinton et al. 2001; Werner 2004).

PGPRs may colonize in the rhizosphere, root surface, or intercellular spaces of the host plant (Lugtenberg and Bloemberg 2004). They are free-living bacteria (Kloepper et al. 1989), while some PGPRs invade living plant tissue and cause unapparent and asymptomatic infections (Sturz and Nowak 2000) and are referred to as endophytes. However, in accordance with their degree of association with the plant root cells, PGPRs can be classified into extracellular plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (ePGPR) and intracellular plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (iPGPR) (Gray and Smith 2005; Meena et al. 2015a, 2016b; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Rawat et al. 2016; Saha et al. 2016a). iPGPRs can enter plant cells and are able to produce specialized structures, so-called nodules. On the other hand, ePGPRs are found in the rhizosphere, or within the apoplast of the root cortex, but not inside the cells. According to their close proximity to the plant root, ePGPRs can be divided into three classes, i.e., living near the roots but not in contact, colonizing on the root surface, and living in the intercellular spaces of the root cortex (Gray and Smith 2005; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a, b; Masood and Bano 2016; Singh et al. 2015, 2016).

PGPRs act against phytopathogens by secretion of many biochemicals like toxin, enzymes, proteins, antibiotics, etc. Plant-associated microorganisms have been extensively examined for their role in natural and induced suppressiveness of soil-borne diseases. Applications of PGPRs have been reported to increase the production of antibiotics and inhibit root penetration of phytopathogens (Handelsman et al. 1990; Sikora 1992; Sikora and Hergarten 1992; Liu and Sinclair 1992; Yu et al. 2002).

3.3.1 Classification of PGPRs

PGPRs are classified on the basis of their locations, functions, and activities.



3.3.1.1 On the Basis of Location

According to their location in the rhizosphere, they are divided into two categories (Gray and Smith 2005; Martinez-Viveros et al. 2010).

Extracellular PGPRs (ePGPRs)

These PGPRs are found in the rhizosphere, in the rhizoplane, or in the spaces between cells of the root cortex, but they are never present inside the cells. Examples are species of *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, etc., which are present in the soil as well as in the intercellular space of cortical cells as endophytes.

Intracellular PGPRs (iPGPRs)

These generally exist inside the cells specially in specialized nodular structure. Examples are *Rhizobia* and *Frankia*, both of which are associated with higher plants and present inside the cells where they fix atmospheric nitrogen.

3.3.1.2 On the Basis of Functionality

On this basis, PGPRs are divided into three groups, viz., plant growth-promoting, biocontrol, and stress homeoregulating bacteria.

Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria

Some rhizobacteria directly induce plant promotion via nitrogen fixing (Glick et al. 1999; Rubio and Ludden 2008; Ahemad and Khan 2012; Glick 2012; Kuan et al. 2016), phytohormone production like IAA (Spaepen and Vanderleyden 2011; Glick 2012; Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Wang et al. 2015), cytokinin (Cassán et al. 2009; Hussain and Hasnain 2009; Vacheron et al. 2013), GA3 (Richardson et al. 2009; Dodd et al. 2010; Goswami et al. 2016), siderophore production (Glick et al. 1999; Sharma et al. 2003; Khan et al. 2009; Rajkumar et al. 2010; Ahemad and Kibret 2014), and phosphate solubilization (Bashan and de Bashan 2010; Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Glick 2012; Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Gupta et al. 2014, 2015; Meena et al. 2016) (Table 3.1).

Biocontrolling Bacteria

Bashan et al. (1993) for the first time suggested these bacteria. They indirectly promote plant growth by releasing phytotoxic substances such as hydrogen cyanide, chitinase, pectinase, cellulase, ethylene, antibiotics, etc., which are responsible for controlling plant pathogens (Ramamoorthy and Samiyappan 2001; Yu et al. 2002; Bashan and de-Bashan 2010; Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Gupta et al. 2015; Sharma and Sharma 2016; Meena et al. 2016) (Table 3.2).

Stress Homeoregulating Bacteria

These bacteria suggested by Sgroy et al. (2009) can facilitate plant growth directly or indirectly in biotic and abiotic stresses. Direct facilitation by these bacteria includes releasing stress-related phytohormones, such as abscisic acid (Cohen et al. 2009, 2015), salicylic acid (Zhang et al. 2002; Beneduzi et al. 2012), and jasmonic acid (Vejan et al. 2016; George et al. 2016); plant growth regulators, like cadaverine (Sgroy et al. 2009; Kaushal and Wani 2016); and stress signaling molecules such as

Table 3.1 Some PGPR strains involve in phytohormone production in different plants (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012)

Phytohormones	PGPR strain	Host plant
IAA	*Aeromonas veronii*	Rice
	Agrobacterium sp.	Lettuce
	Alcaligenes piechaudii	Lettuce
	Azospirillum brasilense	Wheat
	Bradyrhizobium sp.	Radish
	Comamonas acidovorans	Lettuce
	Enterobacter cloacae	Rice
	Rhizobium leguminosarum	Radish
Cytokinin	*Paenibacillus polymyxa*	Wheat
	Pseudomonas fluorescens	Soybean
	Rhizobium leguminosarum	Rape and lettuce
Gibberellin	*Bacillus* sp.	Alder

Table 3.2 Some PGPRs and their antibiotic production and target pathogen (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012)

Antibiotics	PGPRs	Target organisms
Bacillomycin	*Bacillus*	*Aspergillus flavus*
Kanosamine	*B. cereus*	*Phytophthora medicaginis*
Zwittermycin A	*B. cereus*, *B. thuringiensis*, *B. subtilis*	*Phytophthora*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*
Iturin	*B. subtilis*	*Pythium ultimum*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Fusarium oxysporum*
Iturin A, surfactin	*B. subtilis*	*Rhizoctonia solani*
Pyrrolnitrin	*Burkholderia cepacia*, *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *Enterobacter agglomerans*	*Rhizoctonia solani*, *Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici*, *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, *Clavibacter michiganensis*, *Xanthomonas campestris*, *Pseudomonas syringae*
2,4-DAPG, pyoluteorin, phenazines	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	*Xanthomonas oryzae*, *Pythium ultimum*, *Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici*
Phenazine-1-carboxylate	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *P. aureofaciens*	*Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici*, *Sclerotinia homeocarpa*
Phenazine-1-carboxamide	*P. chlororaphis*	*Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. radicis-lycopersici*
Viscosinamide	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	*R. solani*, *Pythium ultimum*
Amphisin	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	*Pythium ultimum*, *R. solani*
Geldanamycin A	*Streptomyces hygroscopicus*	*R. solani*
Oligomycin A	*Streptomyces libani*	*Botrytis cinerea*
Polyoxin D	*Streptomyces cacaoi*	*R. solani*

1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase (Glick et al. 1999; Vejan et al. 2016; Mahmood et al. 2016a, b).

3.3.1.3 On the Basis of Activities

On this basis, Somers et al. (2004) divide PGPRs into following categories:

(A) *Biofertilizers* – Many of the PGPRs enhance soil fertility and productivity by involving in nutrient cycling. Different types of biofertilizers are being used such as:
  1. Nitrogen-fixing biofertilizers like *Rhizobium*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Nitrosomonas*, *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, etc.
  2. Phosphorus-solubilizing and phosphorus-mobilizing biofertilizers like *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Mycorrhiza*, etc.
  3. Plant growth-promoting biofertilizers like *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, etc.

(B) *Phytostimulators* – Certain bacteria stimulate the plant growth by producing different phytohormones like *Pseudomonas*, *Azospirillum*, *Bradyrhizobium*, etc.

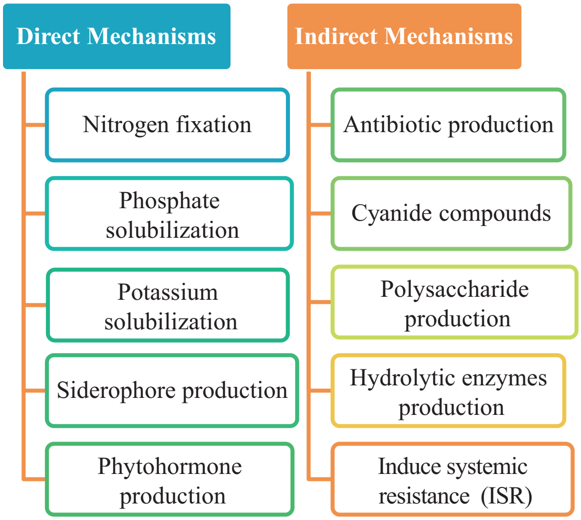
(C) *Rhizoremediators* – Many of the bacteria are used in degradation of herbicides, pesticides, and other hazardous organic compounds and/or pollutants in the soil which could be helpful in plant growth by increasing soil fertility.

(D) *Biopesticides* – Many of the bacteria produce antibiotics and other toxic compounds which are helpful in the reduction of pathogens, e.g., *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* spp.

(E) *Bioprotectants* – *Large* numbers of bacteria are helpful in the disease suppression which directly and indirectly enhance plant growth.

3.4 PGPR Mechanism

PGPRs promote plant growth directly as well as indirectly (Castro et al. 2009) as follows:



3.4.1 Direct Mechanism

Directly, PGPRs promote plant growth by providing essential nutrients (N, P, Fe, etc.) and enhancing phytohormone level. Generally these bacteria are involved in different nutrient cycles like N_2 and P cycle; directly the nutrients are provided to plants by these bacteria through nutrient mineralization and solubilization processes. On the other hand, these bacteria are also involved in many phytohormone (IAA, gibberellic acid, cytokinins) pathways (Kloepper et al. 2007). Among all the phytohormones, IAA is the most common which is produced by PGPR (Barazani and Friedman 1999).

3.4.2 Indirect Mechanism

PGPRs are the well source for biocontrol which inhibit the phytopathogen, so they are indirectly helpful to plant growth (Glick 2012). PGPRs are powerful resource of disease suppression which are economically as well as environmentally safe. PGPRs have a variety of mechanisms which make them a biocontrol agent. They produce antibiotics (Mazurier et al. 2009), cell wall-degrading enzymes like cellulose and β-1,3-glucanase, and cyanide compounds like HCN (Duffy et al. 2003; Ramatte et al. 2003) which are helpful in reducing phytopathogens and enhancing plant growth. Some molecules such as 2, 4-diacetylphloroglucinol (2, 4-DAPG) and pyoluteorin are also produced by some PGPRs (de Souza et al. 2003; Beneduzi et al. 2012) which are responsible for disease suppression.

By using the above mechanisms, PGPRs defense against phytopathogens and pests results in resistance to the plant. This resistance is either systemic acquired resistance (SAR) or induced systemic resistance (ISR). SAR is activated in plant tissues after pathogen attacks, immediately plant signals are produced, and defense responses occur in distal tissues through the vascular system (Pieterse et al. 2009). As the resistance induced, the plant is protected from pathogenic fungi, bacteria, viruses and nematodes. A large number of defense enzymes like phenylalanine ammonia lyase (PAL), chitinase, β-1,3-glucanase, peroxidase (PO), polyphenol oxidase (PPO), lipoxygenase (LOX), superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), and ascorbate peroxidase (APX) are involved in the resistance and activate ISR (Meena et al. 2016a; Saha et al. 2016b; Sharma et al. 2016; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016).

3.5 Conclusions

Several microbes from soil have been studied and are responsible for the improvement of soil fertility and productivity, crop production and protection, and compost preparation and decomposition. The products from these soil bacteria have been exploited to control many diseases. Recent development of molecular biology made it possible to develop transgenic plants by improving genetics. Similarly, the environmental exploitation is also well documented in the literature. Due to lack of information on microbial diversity of various microorganisms, it is a novel approach in exploring the uninformed microbial diversity in agriculture, environment, and human health. The antagonistic effect of these bacteria toward pathogens is one of the most important traits when they are present in quorum in the soil where they interact with plant roots and other microorganisms also. The diversity of metabolites with antagonistic activity produced by several bacteria some of these might produce more than one compound simultaneously which act through several mechanism like two compounds (CHAO and Pf-5) are synthesize by *P. fluorescens* strains they act simultaneously, first one acts as an antibiosis and other one acts on nutrients competition (Bouizgarne 2013). These bacteria induce systemic resistance by synthesizing several chemicals (DAPG, HCN, pyoverdine, etc.) which defends against phytopathogens. All these biochemicals in soil regulate the soil immune system where they circulate throughout the soil body; hence, they defense against the pathogens and result in better health of soil for better productivity.

Acknowledgments The authors are greatly thankful to all the supporting members of the GBPUAT Pantnagar who encourage us to prepare this manuscript.

References

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2009) Effect of insecticide-tolerant and plant growth promoting *Mesorhizobium* on the performance of chickpea grown in insecticide stressed alluvial soils. J Crop Sci Biotechnol 12:213–222

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012) Effects of pesticides on plant growth promoting traits of *Mesorhizobium* strain MRC4. J Saudi Soc Agric Sci 11:63–71

Ahemad M, Kibret M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saud Univ Sci 26(1):1–20

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016a) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Ahmad I, Khan MSA, Aqil F, Singh M (2016b) Microbial applications in agriculture and the environment: a broad perspective (ed) Microbes and microbial technology: agricultural and environmental applications, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4419-7931-5_1

Akhtar N, Qureshi MA, Iqbal A, Ahmad MJ, Khan KH (2012) Influence of *Azotobacter* and IAA on symbiotic performance of *Rhizobium* and yield parameters of lentil. J Agric Res 50:361–372

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Barazani O, Friedman J (1999) Is IAA the major root growth factor secreted from plant-growth-mediating bacteria? J Chem Ecol 25(10):2397–2406

Bashan Y, de-Bashan LE (2010) How the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Azospirillum* promotes plant growth – a critical assessment. Adv Agron 108:77–136

Bashan Y, Holguin G, Lifshitz R (1993) Isolation and characterization of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. In: Glick BR, Thompson JE (eds) Methods in plant molecular biology and biotechnology. CRC, Boca Raton, pp 331–345

Beneduzi A, Ambrosini A, Passaglia LM (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): their potential as antagonists and biocontrol agents. Genet Mol Biol 35:1044–1051

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Bouizgarne B (2013) Bacteria for plant growth promotion and disease management. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: disease management. Springer-Verlag, Berlin

Burr TJ, Schroth MN, Suslow T (1978) Increased potato yields by treatment of seedpieces with specific strains of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *P. putida*. Phytopathology 68:1377–1383

Cassán F, Perrig D, Sgroy V, Masciarelli O, Penna C, Luna V (2009) *Azospirillum brasilense*Az39 and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* E109, inoculated singly or in combination, promote seed germination and early seedling growth in corn (*Zea mays* L.) and soybean (*Glycine max* L.) Eur J Soil Biol 45:28–35

Castro RO, Cornejo HAC, Rodriguez LM, Bucio JL (2009) The role of microbial signals in plant growth and development. Plant Signal Behav 4(8):701–712

Choudhary DK, Sharma KP, Gaur RK (2011) Biotechnological perspectives of microbes in agroecosystems. Biotechnol Lett 33:1905–1910

Cohen AC, Travaglia CN, Bottini R, Piccoli PN (2009) Participation of abscisic acid and gibberellins produced by endophytic Azospirillum in the alleviation of drought effects in maize. Botany 87:455–462

Cohen AC, Bottini R, Pontin M, Berli FJ, Moreno D, Boccanlandro H, Travaglia CN, Piccoli PN (2015) Azospirillum brasilense ameliorates the response of Arabidopsis Thaliana to drought mainly via enhancement of ABA levels. Physiol Plant 153:79–90

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

de Souza JTA, Arnould C, Deulvot C, Lemanceau P, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Raaijmakers JM (2003) Effect of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol on *Pythium*: cellular responses and variation in sensitivity among propagules and species. Phytopathology 93:966–975

Dodd IC, Zinovkina NY, Safronova VI, Belimov AA (2010) Rhizobacterial mediation of plant hormone status. Ann Appl Biol 157:361–379

Dogan A, Erler F, Erkan M, Ozgur Ates A, Sule Sabanci H, Polat E (2016) Microbial-based production system: a novel approach for plant growth and Pest and disease Management in Greenhouse-Grown Peppers (*Capsicum annuum* L.) J Agri Sci Technol 18:371–386

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Duffy B, Schouten A, Raajimakers J (2003) Pathogen selfdefense: mechanisms to counteract microbial antagonism. Annu Rev Phytopathol 45:501–538

Eser D, Geçit H (2010) Ekoloji. A.Ü. Ziraat Fakültesi. 1584, Ders Kitab : 536

George TS, Dou D, Wang X (2016) Plant–microbe interactions: manipulating signals to enhance agricultural sustainability and environmental security. Plant Growth Regul 80(1):1–3

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications Hindawi publishing corporation, Scientifica

Glick BR, Patten CL, Holguin G, Penrose GM (1999) Biochemical and genetic mechanisms used by plant growth promoting bacteria. Imperial College Press, London

Goettel MS, Eilenberg J, Glare TR (2010) Entomopathogenic fungi and their role in regulation of insect populations. In: Gilbert LI, Gill S (eds) Insect control: biological and synthetic agents. Academic, London, pp 387–432

Goswami D, Janki N, Thakker DPC (2016) Portraying mechanics of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): a review. Cogent Food Agri 2:1–19

Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: commonalities and distinctions in the plant-bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37(3):395–412

Gupta S, Meena MK, Datta S (2014) Isolation, characterization of plant growth promoting bacteria from the plant *Chlorophytum borivilianum* and in-vitro screening for activity of nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization and IAA production. Int J Cur Microbiol Appl Sci 3(7):1082–1090

Gupta G, Parihar SS, Ahirwar NK, Snehi SK, Singh V (2015) Plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR): current and future prospects for development of sustainable agriculture. J Microb Biochem Technol 7(2):96–102

Handelsman J, Raffel S, Mester E, Wunderlich L, Grau C (1990) Biological control of damping off of alfalfa seedlings with *Bacillus cereus* UW85. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:713–718

Hellriegel H, Wilfarth H (1888) Untersuchungen uber die Stickstoffnahrung der Gramineen und Leguminosen. Beilageheft zu der Z des Vereins Rubenzucker-Industrie Deutschen Reichs 234

Hiltner L (1904) Uber neue erfahrungen und probleme auf dem gebiete der bodenbakteriologie. Arb Dtsch Landwirtsch Ges 98:59–78

Hussain A, Hasnain S (2009) Cytokinin production by some bacteria: its impact on cell division in cucumber cotyledons. Afr J Microbiol Res 3:704–712

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Joshi KK, Kumar V, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK (2006) Effect of chemical fertilizer adaptive variants, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* GRC2 and *Azotobacter chroococcum* AC1 on *Macrophomina phaseolina* causing charcoal rot of *Brassica juncea*. Korean J Environ Agric 25:228–235

Kaushal M, Wani SP (2016) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria: drought stress alleviators to ameliorate crop production in drylands. Ann Microbiol 66(1):35–42

Kennedy AC (2005) Rhizosphere. In: Sylvia DM (ed) Principles and applications of soil microbiology, 2nd edn. Pearson Education, Upper Saddle River, pp 242–262

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA, Oves M (2009) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in the remediation of metal contaminated soils Environ. Chem Lett 7:1–19

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) Pseudomonas siderophores: a mechanism explaining disease suppressive soils. Curr Microbiol 4:317–320

Kloepper JW, Lifshitz R, Zablotowicz RM (1989) Free-living bacterial inocula for enhancing crop productivity. Trends Biotechnol 7:39–44

Kloepper JW, Gutierrez-Estrada A, Mclnroy JA (2007) Photoperiod regulates elicitation of growth promotion but not induced resistance by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 53(2):159–167

Kuan KB, Othman R, Rahim KA, Shamsuddin ZH (2016) Plant growth-promoting Rhizobacteria inoculation to enhance vegetative growth, nitrogen fixation and nitrogen remobilisation of maize under greenhouse conditions. PLOS ONE. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0152478

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure ApplMicrobiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. Journal of plant growth Regulation.:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5.

Lacey LA, Frutos R, Kaya HK, Vail P (2001) Insect pathogens as biological control agents: do they have a future? Biol Control 21:230–248

Ladha JK, De Bruijn FJ, Malik KA (1997) Introduction: assessing opportunities for nitrogen fixation in rice – a frontier project. Plant Soil 194:1–10

Liu ZL, Sinclair JB (1992) Population dynamics of *Bacillus megaterium* strain B153-2-2 in the rhizosphere of soybean. Phytopathology 82:1297–1301

Lloret L, Martinez-Romero E (2005) Evolution and phylogeny of rhizobia. Rev Latinoam Microbiol 47:43–60

Lugtenberg BJJ, Bloemberg GV (2004) In: Ramos JL (ed) *Pseudomonas* Vol. 1. New York, Kluwer academic/plenum publishers, p 403–430

Maheshwari DK, Dubey RC, Aeron A, Kumar B, Kumar S et al (2012) Integrated approach for disease management and growth enhancement of *Sesamum indicum* L. utilizing Azotobacter *chroococcum* TRA2 and chemical fertilizer. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:3015–3024

Mahmood S, Daur I, Al-Solaimani SG, Ahmad S, Madkour MH, Yasir M, Hirt H, Ali S, Ali Z (2016a) Plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria and silicon synergistically enhance salinity tolerance of mung bean. Front Plant Sci 7:876

Mahmood K, Xu Z, El-Kereamy A, Casaretto JA, Rothstein SJ (2016b) The Arabidopsis transcription factor ANAC032 represses anthocyanin biosynthesis in response to high sucrose and oxidative and abiotic stresses. Front Plant Sci doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2016.01548

Martinez-Viveros O, Jorquera MA, Crowley DE, Gajardo G, Mora ML (2010) Mechanisms and practical considerations involved in plant growth promotion by *rhizobacteria*. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 10:293–319

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Mazurier S, Corberand T, Lemanceau P, Raaijmakers JM (2009) Phenazine antibiotics produced by fluorescent pseudomonads contribute to natural soil suppressiveness to Fusarium wilt. ISME J 3:977–991

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): Isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena MK, Gupta S, Datta S (2016a) Antifungal potential of PGPR, their growth promoting activity on seed germination and seedling growth of winter wheat and genetic variabilities among bacterial isolates. Int J Cur Microbiol Appl Sci 5(1):235–243

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016b) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (Pisum sativum L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis and agricultural. Biotechnology 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016c) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016d) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016e) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016f) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pieterse CM, Leon-Reyes A, Van der Ent S, Van Wees SC (2009) Networking by small-molecule hormones in plant immunity. Nat Chem Biol 5:308–316

Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (2001) The rhizosphere as a site of biochemical interactions among soil components, plants and microorganisms Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P The Rhizosphere biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface, Marcel Dekker, New York. 1–17

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Prasad R, Kumar M, Varma A (2015) Role of PGPR in soil fertility and plant health. In: Egamberdieva D et al (eds) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and medicinal plants, soil biology. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 247–260

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium

solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rajkumar M, Ae N, Prasad MNV, Freitas H (2010) Potential of siderophore-producing bacteria for improving heavy metal phytoextraction. Trends Biotechnol 28:142–149

Ramamoorthy V, Samiyappan R (2001) Induction of defense-related genes in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* treated chilli plants in response to infection by *Colletotrichum capsici*. J Mycol Plant Pathol 31:146–155

Ramatte A, Frapolli M, Defago G, Moenne-Loccoz Y (2003) Phylogeny of HCN synthase encoding hcnBC genes in biocontrol fluorescent pseudomonads and its relationship with host plant species and HCN synthesis ability. Mol Biol Pl Microbe Interact 16:525–535

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Raymond J, Siefert JL, Staples CR (2004) The natural history of nitrogen fixation. Mol Biol Evol 21:541–554

Richardson AE, Baréa JM, McNeill AM, Prigent-Combaret C (2009) Acquisition of phosphorus and nitrogen in the rhizosphere and plant growth promotion by microorganisms. Plant Soil 321:305–339

Rubio LM, Ludden PW (2008) Biosynthesis of the iron-molybdenum cofactor of nitrogenase. Ann Rev Microbiol 62:93–111

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sgroy V, Cassán F, Masciarelli O, Del Papa MF, Lagares A, Luna V (2009) Isolation and characterization of endophytic plant growth-promoting (PGPB) or stress homeostasis-regulating (PSHB) bacteria associated to the halophyte Prosopis strombulifera. Appl Microbiol. Biotechnol 85(2):371–381

Sharma IP, Sharma AK (2016) Physiological and biochemical changes in tomato cultivar PT-3 with dual inoculation of mycorrhiza and PGPR against root-knot nematode. Symbiosis 69(2):1–9

Sharma A, Johri BN, Sharma AK, Glick BR (2003) Plant growth-promoting bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. strain GRP3 influences iron acquisition in mung bean (*Vigna radiata* L. Wilzeck). Soil Biol Biochem 35:887–894

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava S, Prasad R, Varma A (2014) Anatomy of root from eyes of a microbiologist. In: Morte A, Varma A (eds) Root engineering. Springer, Berlin, pp 3–22

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sikora RA (1992) Management of the antagonistic potential in agricultural ecosystems for the biological control of plant parasitic nematodes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 30:245–270

Sikora RA, Hergarten SH (1992) Importance of plant health promoting rhizobacteria for the control of soil borne fungal disease and plant parasitic nematodes. J Plant Protect 10:53–58

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Sivasakhti S, Usharani G, Saranraj P (2014) Biocontrol potentiality of plant growth promoting bacteria (PGPR)- Pseudomonas fluorescence and Bacillus subtilis: a review. Afr J Agri Res 9:1265–1277

Somers E, Vanderleijden J, Srinivasan M (2004) Rhizosphere bacterial signalling: a love parade beneath our feet. Crit Rev Microbiol 30:205–240

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter. Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J (2011) Auxin and plant-microbe interactions. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 3(4):a001438. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a001438

Sturz AV, Nowak J (2000) An endophytic community of rhizobacteria and the strategies requires to create yield enhancing associations with crops. Appl Soil Ecol 15:183–190

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Tisdale SL, Nelson WL (1975) Soil fertility and fertilizers, 3rd edn. Collier Macmillan Publication, London

Trudgill DL, Blok VC (2001) Apomictic, polyphagous root-knot nematodes: exceptionally successful and damaging biotrophic root pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:53–77

Vacheron V, Desbrosses G, Bouffaud M, Touraine B, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Muller D, Legendre L, Wisniewski-Dyé F, Prigent-Combaret C (2013) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria and root system functioning. Front Plant Sci doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2013.00356

Vejan P, Abdullah R, Khadiran T, Ismail S, Boyce AN (2016) Role of plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria in agricultural sustainability—a review. Molecules 21:1–17

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Wang B, Seiler JR, Mei C (2015) Burkholderia phytofirmans strain PsJN advanced development and altered leaf level physiology of switchgrass. Biomass Bioenergy 83:493–500

Wani PA, Khan MS, Zaidi A (2007) Synergistic effect of the inoculation with nitrogen-fixing and phosphate-solubilizing rhizobacteria on performance of field-grown chickpea. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 170:283–287

Werner D (2004) Signalling in the rhizobia-legumes symbiosis. In: Varma A, Abbott L, Werner D, Hampp R (eds) Plant surface microbiology. Springer, N.Y, pp 99–119

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Youssef MMA, Eissa MFM (2014) Biofertilizers and their role in management of plant parasitic nematodes. E J Biotechnol Pharm Res 5:1–6

Yu GY, Sinclair JB, Hartman GL, Bertagnolli BL (2002) Production of iturin A by *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* suppressing *Rhizoctonia solani*. Soil Biol Biochem 34:955–963

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zhang S, Moyne AL, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW (2002) The role of salicylic acid in induced systemic resistance elicited by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria against blue mold of tobacco. Biol Control 25:288–296

Strength of Microbes in Nutrient Cycling: A Key to Soil Health

4

Nisha Sahu, D. Vasu, Asha Sahu, Narayan Lal,
and S.K. Singh

Abstract

Nowadays, due to continuous degradation in soil quality, a healthy soil system is the result of a complex network of physical, chemical, and biological soil quality indicators. Healthy soils provide a balance between the needs of both farmers and community. Soil organic matter (SOM) helps to sustain the soil health as well as its quality, inactivate toxic compounds, suppress pathogens, and protect environmental sustainability. It implies interactions among the soil's internal and external components for the sustainable food production system. The efficient soil microbes play an important role, since they are responsible to drive various biological transformations and different pools of carbon (C) and macro- and micronutrients, which facilitate the subsequent establishment of soil-plant-microbe interaction. The diversity of microbes in soil system is enormous. This article emphasizes the role of microbes for soil health through the decomposition of SOM present in soil system. Toward the global knowledge of soil microbial dynamics, its function is increasing rapidly, but the knowledge of rhizospheric complex is limited, despite of their importance in regulating soil-plant systems.

Keywords

Soil health • Microorganisms • Nutrient transformations • Sustainable

---

N. Sahu (✉) • D. Vasu
ICAR-National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning, Nagpur, Maharashtra, India
e-mail: nishasahu5@gmail.com

A. Sahu
ICAR-Indian Institute of Soil Science, Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh, India

N. Lal • S.K. Singh
ICAR-National Research Centre on Litchi, Muzaffarpur, Bihar, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_4

4.1 Introduction

The importance of soil is increasing at an alarming rate due to the rapidly growing worldwide population as healthy soils will be less to meet the future food supply due to growing pressure on land for urban expansion, biofuel production, and natural resource extraction (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a, b). The soil develops by degeneration of rocks as well as minerals, through biotic actions of microbes sustained by them (Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017a; Nath et al. 2017). It represents dynamic ecosystems, making it appropriate to think about them in terms such as health, vitality, and soil sustainability. Soils are the resources that provide humans with ~90% of all the food we consume. Our one major challenge is to manage soils in a sustainable fashion so that they will meet the needs of the next generation (Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015f, 2016a; Parewa et al. 2014; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016). Meanwhile, measurement of soil processes and its properties linked to these also depends on the use and location of the soil. Previously, not only the physical and chemical properties were given importance, but nowadays also the role of soil biodiversity in maintaining soil fertility and crop productivity (Singh 2015).

Soils are establishment of all terrestrial ecosystems and are considered home to a vast diversity of rhizospheric macro- and microorganisms. They provide food or nutrients to the macro-/microorganisms that live above and below the ground and play significant role in buffering and filtering of soil system. Therefore, soils are very important to existing societies (mainly human) as we depend on our day-to-day work (Dominati et al. 2010; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017a; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016).

Soils support a diversity of life and conception is similar to human health; it is not difficult to understand or recognize when the system is viewed as a whole. The strength of soil comes from the life that exists within it – soil microorganisms, ranging from genes and species to communities. It is an excellent indicator of soil health (Nielsen and Winding 2002; Takoutsing et al. 2016). Variation in microbial population and activities is considered as early signs of soil degradation and amelioration. These efficient rhizospheric microorganisms are a vitally important component of the soil habitat where they play significant roles in soil-plant systems functioning through controlling nutrient cycling reactions essential for sustaining soil quality and also contributing to the genesis and maintenance of soil structure (Meena et al. 2015a, b, e; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Teotia et al. 2016).

There is an infinite abundance of microbes that exist within the soil system. However, very little is known about the tiny creature which is responsible for numerous processes occurring in soil and maintaining productivity in natural and managed agroecosystems (Meena et al. 2016c, e; Saha et al. 2016a; Yadav and Sidhu 2016). Investigation on rhizospheric chemistry in relation to mainly nutrients and microbes is difficult as we cannot see them, so they are out of sight and out of mind;

most methods for studying these critters are rife with difficulties, and though we can identify thousands of different species, we only really know what a small percentage of them are doing in the soil. Only ~1% of the microbes' species have been identified or cultured. In short, we have a lot left to learn by understanding what microbes are doing, under what conditions they dominate, and how to sustain nutrient cycling (Meena et al. 2014a, 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016).

Soil microbes have an enormous influence on soil-plant-microbe interactions and play a significant role for maintaining soil quality. The most important of these interactions is nutrient cycling. Under the healthy soil-plant system, soil biota regulates the flow, root growth, and storage of nutrients. Even fertilization may pass through efficient rhizospheric microbes before being utilized by the crop/plant (Dubey et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2017a).

4.2 Soil Health

In the long-term soil fertility, the more we are supporting the next generation. A healthy, fertile soil laid the groundwork for a strong and resilient food production system. Nowadays, one of the major tasks is to manage and maintain soil in a sustainable fashion. In the mid-1990s, the term soil health was introduced; several scientists gave various definitions of soil health, and one of the most commonly proposed definition is by Doran and Safley 1997 "The continued capacity of soil to function as a vital living system, within ecosystem and land-use boundaries, to sustain biological productivity, promote the quality of air and water environments, and maintain plant, animal and human health." This definition encompasses a time component, reflecting the importance of continuous function over time and the dynamic nature of soil-plant system (Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013c).

Soil is a finite and nonrenewable resource because regeneration of soil through various weathering processes (physical, chemical, and biological) of underlying rock requires geological time (Huber et al. 2001). The soil quality focuses on the continued capacity or buffering capacity of soil to sustain plant growth promoting (PGP) and is essential for the integrity of ecosystems to remain intact or to recover from disturbances (Pankhurst et al. 1997). However, the deterioration of soil quality is a major concern for human-animal-plant health (Singer and Ewing 2000).

Healthy soils are able to balance a range of functions to meet the needs of both farmers and community. It functions to sustain soil biota and plant life, store and cycle wastewater and nutrients, decompose SOM, inactivate toxic compounds, suppress pathogens, and protect soil and water quality. Meanwhile, healthy soil system had a concept that implies that the soil functions as a balance of each other, and it enhances the sustainability of production system (Meena et al. 2013b, 2015c; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2015). The degradation in soil-water quality is a symptom of poor soil health (Takoutsing et al. 2016). Healthy soils function to sustain biological productivity, store and cycle water and nutrients, decompose organic matter, inactivate toxic compounds, suppress pathogens, protect water quality, and enhance catchment health. Hierarchy and emergence are properties of all systems including soils and the composition of soil (Dubey 2016). The soil health is the net result of undergoing conservation and degradation processes, depending highly on the biological component of the soil ecosystem, and influences plant health, environmental health, and food safety and quality (Parr et al. 1992; Halvorson et al. 1997; Singh 2015; Takoutsing et al. 2016). A healthy soil functions to buffer nutrients as well as contaminants and other solutes via sorption or incorporation with clay particles and SOM. The soil serves as an environmental filter for removing undesirable solid and gaseous constituents from air and water (Parr et al. 1992; Singer and Ewing 2000).

4.3 Soil as a Microbial Habitat

The biological activity in soil is largely concentrated in the topsoil, where the depth may vary from a few to ~120 cm. In the topsoil, the biological components (soil microorganisms) occupy a tiny fraction (<0.5%) of the total soil volume and make up <10% of SOM. They play a significant role in the cycling of nutrients and the decomposition of organic residues (Pankhurst et al. 1997). The organic residues are, in this way, converted to biomass or mineralized to CO_2, H_2O, and nutrients (Bloem et al. 1997). These efficient microbes are further associated with the transformation and degradation of waste materials and synthetic organic compounds (Meena et al. 2014b, 2015d; Singh et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016).

The roles of these efficient rhizospheric microbes possess the ability to give an integrated measure of soil sustainability, an aspect that cannot be obtained with physical/chemical measures and/or analyses of diversity of higher organisms. Microbes respond quickly to changes; hence, they rapidly adapt to environmental conditions. This adaptation potentially allows microbial analyses to be discriminating in soil health assessment, and changes in microbial populations and activities may therefore function as an excellent indicator of change in soil health (Kennedy and Papendick 1995; Pankhurst and Hawke 1995; Singh 2015). Soil is a dynamic habitat for a variety of life-forms and provides a mechanical support to plants from which they extract nutrients. Soil organisms are constantly interacting with one another; sometimes these interactions are mutually beneficial, symbiotic, and competitive. It improves soil health because the “good” bacteria, fungi, nematodes, and insects are able to outcompete the “bad” ones and also contribute greatly by breaking down organic materials to make nutrients available to plants. Microorganisms act as an important link in the process of nutrient recycling. Thus, the same fundamental soil structure in different locations is found to support different biological communities. The microflora and microfauna present in the soil are depicted in Fig. 4.1. Soils are combinations of sand, silt, and clay particles and provide a diversity of microhabitats which supports a wide range of organisms. These organisms interact to modify the atmosphere between soil particles. The atmosphere within the soil differs from the above ground due to the use of the available oxygen present in

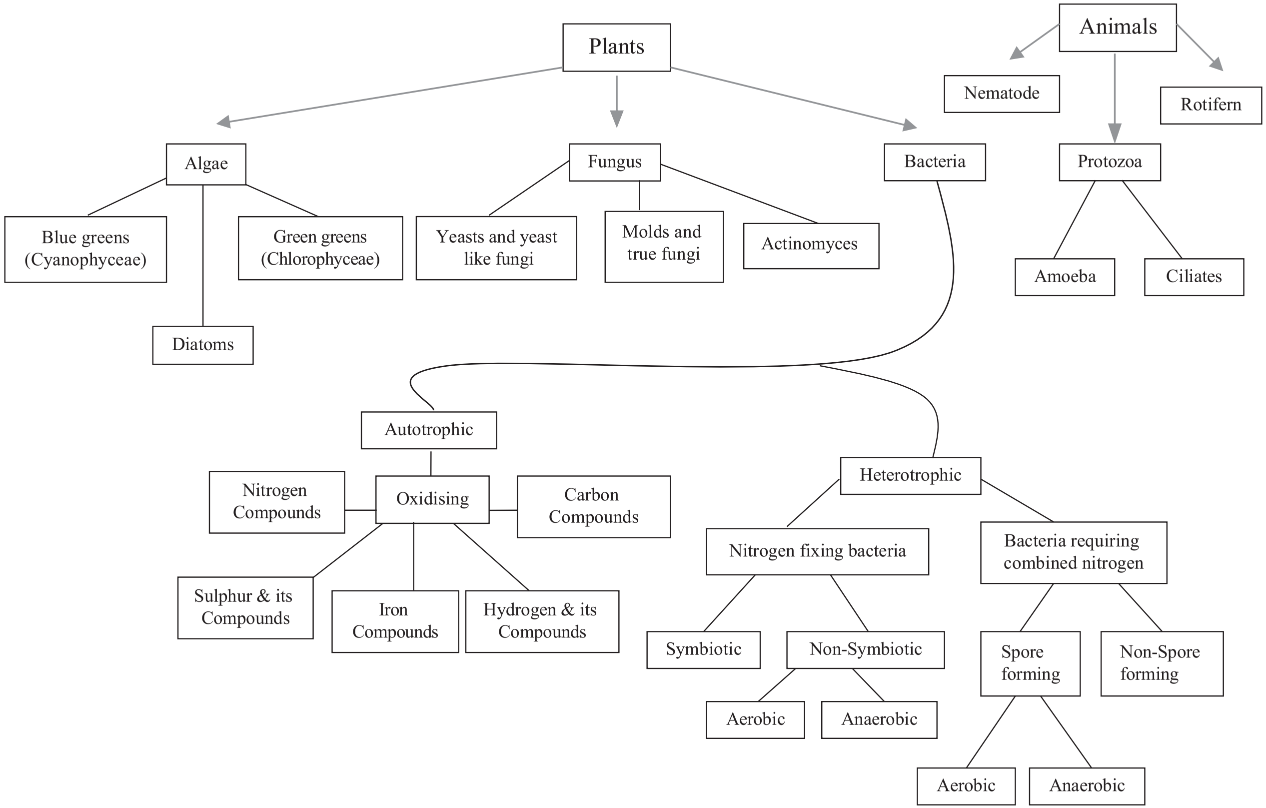


Fig. 4.1 The microflora and microfauna of the soil system

Table 4.1 Distribution of soil microorganisms

Depth	Organisms per gram of soil			
(cm)	Aerobic bacteria	Anaerobic bacteria	*Actinomyces*	Fungi
3–8	7,800,000	1,950,000	2,080,000	119,000
20–25	1,800,000	379,000	245,000	50,000
35–40	472,000	98,000	49,000	14,000
65–75	10,000	1000	5000	3000
135	100	400		3000

the soil by microbial and other metabolisms, and finally there is less oxygen beneath the ground. Similarly, carbon dioxide is generated as a by-product of microbial metabolism, and there is a higher concentration of carbon dioxide within soil than above ground (Sarkar et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017a; Kumar et al. 2017b).

Soils contain many aerobic and facultative organisms, and because of the microbial manipulation of microenvironments, soils may harbor a large number of obligate anaerobes. The distribution of soil microorganisms is presented in Table 4.1. These rhizobacteria are the largest group of soil microbes, both in total number and in diversity. Nowadays, the great advances of molecular biological techniques like sensitive isotope studies which are yielding information on the metabolism of soil microbes are being used for taxonomic studies (Singh 2015; Dubey 2016). The cycling of nutrients is very important as without which, the continuation of life on earth would be impossible, as essential nutrients would rapidly be taken up by organisms and locked in a form that cannot be used by others. Soil is one part of the ecosystem and supports all terrestrial life-forms; therefore, protection of soil is of high priority, and a thorough understanding of soil enzyme activities is a critical factor in assuring that soil remains healthy. A better understanding of soil enzymes in maintaining the soil health will provide an opportunity for an integrated biological assessment of soils. The response of microbes to environmental stress is rapid compared to higher organisms, due to their high surface to volume ratio (Pankhurst and Hawke 1995).

These efficient microbial communities can be considered as architects of soils (Rajendhran and Gunasekaran 2008), and many ecosystem services that are linked to ecosystems, including plant production, safeguarding of drinking water, or C sequestration, are closely linked to microbial activities and their functional traits (Torsvik and Ovreas 2002; Lombard et al. 2011). Studies on the development of abiotic and biotic interactions are very complex (Ollivier et al. 2011). Microbes act on a scale of μm^3 and form biogeochemical interfaces with the soil matrix, shaping their own environment (Totsche et al. 2010; Monier et al. 2011) Finally, most functional traits, for example, the degradation of plant litter or the development of food web structures and closed nutrient cycles, are not a result of a single organism but of microbial communities which closely interact which each other (Aneja et al. 2006; Simon and Daniel 2011; Sharma et al. 2012).

4.4 Microbial Decomposition of Organic Matter and Nutrient Availability

Soil organic matter acts as a storehouse for nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur. There is very little inorganic nitrogen in soils and much of it is derived from organic forms. The organic matter decomposition is largely an enzymatic process and facilitated by extracellular hydrolytic enzymes produced by soil microorganisms. Soil enzymes are involved in the biochemical processes during organic matter decomposition. The important soil enzymes are amylase, arylsulfatase, cellulase, chitinase, dehydrogenase, phosphatase, and urease which are released from plants, animals, organic compounds, and microorganisms and soils (Gupta et al. 1993; Ganeshamurthy et al. 1995). The rate of SOM decomposition is influenced by environmental factors such as temperature, moisture content, and microbial diversity (Debnath and Hajra 1972). In principle, the breakdown of organic matter involves four stages, viz., (a) breakdown of compounds that are easy to decompose – like sugars, starches, and proteins; (b) breakdown of compounds that take several years to decompose like cellulose (an insoluble carbohydrate found in plants) and lignins (a very complicated structure that is part of wood); (c) breakdown of compounds that can take up to ~10 years to decompose – like some waxes and the phenols; and (d) breakdown of compounds that take thousands of years to decompose which include humus-like substances which are the result of integration of compounds from breakdown products of plants and those generated by microorganisms (Chakroborty and Sen 1967). Mineralization of organic matter is the biological process where organic compounds in organic matter are chemically converted by the microorganisms in soil to simpler organic compounds, other organic compounds, or mineralized nutrients (Fig. 4.2). Therefore, incorporating organic matter into soils can change the amount of nitrogen (and other nutrients) available to plants, and those having a high C/N ratio will probably cause some nitrogen deficiency in the crops/plants, at least in the short term (Katherine et al. 2004; Ellert et al. 1997).

4.5 Mineralization and Humification

One of the most important functions of soil microorganism is the decomposition of various forms of organic matter present in the soil. It chiefly consists of residues of dead plant and animals and the excretory products of the living beings. These organic constituents need to be converted into simple inorganic forms (minerals) to make them available to the autotrophic organisms. This conversion of organic matter into simple inorganic forms is called mineralization which is rendered mainly through decomposition of organic matter by soil microorganism, mainly fungi and bacteria (Gupta and Germina 1988; Xu et al. 2015). The organic residues added to the soil are categorized into three groups: the easily degradable, moderately degradable, and difficultly degradable which are distinctly attached by different types of microbes.

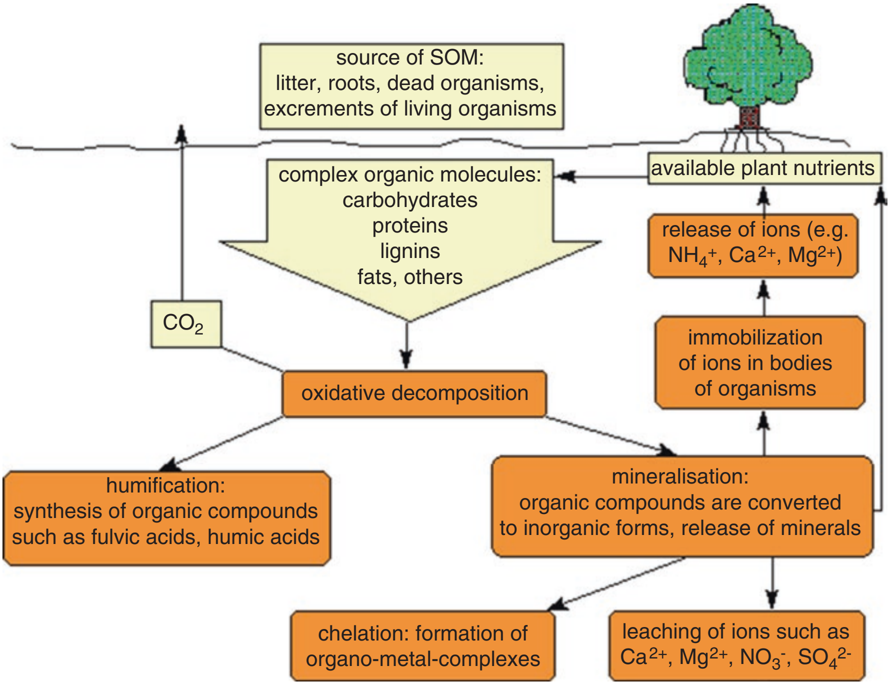


Fig. 4.2 An overview of SOM mineralization in the soil-plant system

The result of microbial mineralization is the release of energy, water, gases, etc. on the one hand and formation of complex amorphous substance humus, called humification, on the other hand. The rate of oxidation of biologically important elements such as nitrogen, carbon, sulfur, phosphorus, etc. during mineralization of organic matter is of paramount importance to plants. Microorganisms play a vital role to convert elements to usable forms to the plants for their use. Thus, the processes of mineralization and humification run in nature hand in hand (Billings and Ziegler 2005).

4.6 Role of Soil Enzymes in Organic Matter Decomposition

Soil enzymes are a group of enzymes whose usual inhabitants are the soil and are continuously playing an important role in maintaining soil ecology, physical and chemical properties, fertility, and soil health and responsible for overall process of organic matter decomposition in the soil system (Dick et al. 1996). They are important in catalyzing several vital reactions necessary for the life processes of microorganisms in soils and the stabilization of soil structure, the decomposition of organic wastes, organic matter formation, and nutrient cycling, hence playing an important role in agriculture (Fig. 4.3). The enzyme levels in soil systems vary in amounts primarily due to the fact that each soil type has different amounts of organic matter

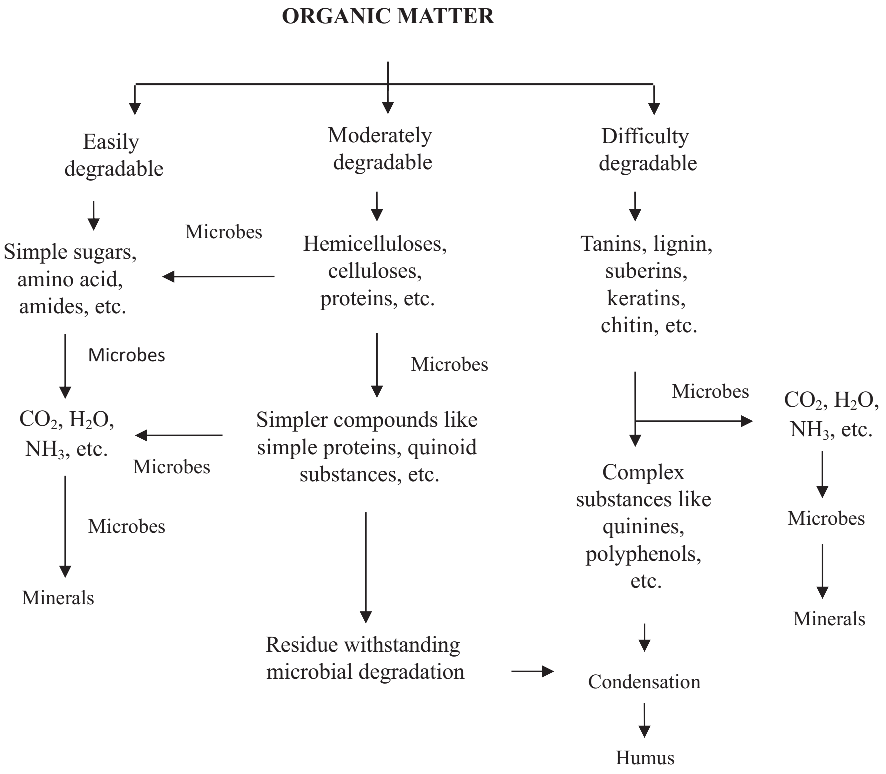


Fig. 4.3 Overview of microbial decomposition of organic matter

content, composition, and activity of its living organisms and intensity of biological processes. In practice, the biochemical reactions are brought about largely through the catalytic contribution of enzymes and variable substrates that serve as energy sources for various microorganisms (Mandels and Reese 1999; Kertesz and Mirleau 2004; Liebich et al. 2007). The enzymes are the direct mediators for biological catabolism of SOM and mineral components. Soil enzyme activities are closely related to SOM and soil quality; the changes are much sooner than other parameters, thus providing early indications of changes in soil sustainability (Dick et al. 1996).

These enzymes may include amylase, arylsulfatase, β-glucosidase, cellulase, chitinase, dehydrogenase, phosphatase, protease, and urease released from plants, animals, organic compounds, and microorganisms and soils (Ganeshamurthy et al. 1995; Xu et al. 2015). Factors affecting enzyme activity in soil are free enzymes adsorbed or otherwise bound to soil organic and inorganic fraction, released into the soil from lysed microbes through the action of bacteria, and accessible in dead non-lysed cells and any metabolic activity of living cells as roots present in soil system.

4.7 Amylase

The starch hydrolyzing enzyme amylase is known to be constituted by α-amylase and β-amylase. The α-amylases are synthesized by plants, animals, and microbes, whereas β-amylase is synthesized mainly by plants. It plays a significant role in the breakdown of starch, which converts starch-like substrates to glucose and β-amylase, which converts starch to maltose (Srinivasulu and Rangaswamy 2006). Plants may however influence the amylase enzyme activities of soil by directly supplying enzymes from their residues or excreted compounds or indirectly providing substrates for the synthetic activities of soil-pant-microbe system.

4.8 Arylsulfatase

Arylsulfatases are typically widespread in nature as well as in soils and are responsible for the hydrolysis of sulfate esters (Kertesz and Mirleau 2004). They are secreted by rhizobacteria into the external environment as a response to sulfur limitation, and its occurrence is often correlated with microbial biomass and rate of S immobilization. This enzyme has a role in the hydrolysis of aromatic sulfate esters ($R–O–SO_3$) to phenols (R–OH) and sulfate or sulfate sulfur (SO_4^{2-} or SO_4–S). So far, very little is known about specific microbial genera or species that play an important role in the soil organosulfur circle in which arylsulfatases are the key enzymes (Gupta et al. 1993; Ganeshamurthy et al. 1995).

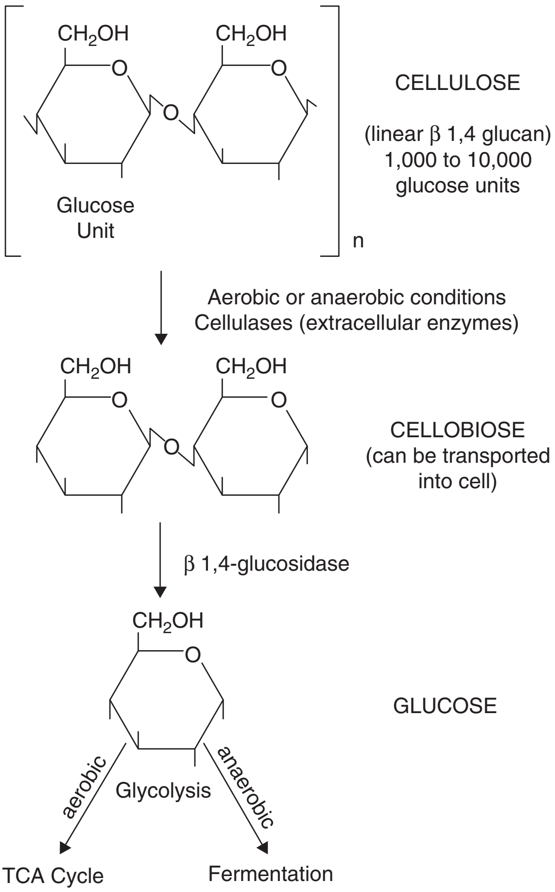
4.9 β-Glucosidase

Glucosidase is a common, predominant enzyme in soils and named according to the type of bond that it hydrolyses. It plays an important role in catalyzing the hydrolysis and biodegradation of various β-glucosidases present in plant debris decomposing in soil-plant system (Xu et al. 2015). Its final product is glucose, an important C energy source of life to microbes in the soil. It is characteristically useful as a soil quality indicator and may give a reflection of past biological activity, the capacity of soil to stabilize the soil organic matter, and can be used to detect management effect on soils.

4.10 Cellulases

The cellulose is the most abundant organic compound in the biosphere, comprising ~50% of the biomass synthesized by photosynthetic fixation of CO_2. Growth and survival of microbes are important in most agricultural soils which depend on the carbon source contained in the cellulose occurring in the soil (Srinivasulu and Rangaswamy 2006). Cellulases are a group of enzymes that catalyze the degradation of cellulose; polysaccharides are built up of β-1,4-linked glucose units (Fig. 4.4).

Fig. 4.4 The decomposition of cellulose to glucose



Many researchers reported that cellulases in soils are derived mainly from plant debris incorporated into the soil, and a limited amount may also originate from fungi and bacteria in soils. Since, cellulase enzymes play an important role in global recycling of the most abundant polymer, cellulose, in nature, it would be of critical importance to understand this enzyme better so that it may be used more regularly as a predictive tool in our soil fertility programs (Saha et al. 2003; Muter et al. 2008).

4.11 Chitinase

Chitinase or chitinolytic enzymes are key enzymes responsible for the degradation and hydrolysis of chitin (poly-β-1-4-(2-acetamido-2-deoxy)-D-glucoside). They are also considered as the major structural component for many fungal cell walls that use the hyperparasitism mechanisms against pest/pathogen attack. These biological agents also reduce disease-producing agents by using other mechanisms such as antibiosis or competition mechanisms and are produced or released by various organisms including plants and microorganisms.

4.12 Dehydrogenase

The dehydrogenase enzyme activity is commonly used as an indicator of biological activity in soils. This enzyme is considered to exist as an integral part of intact cells but does not accumulate extracellularly in the soil (Vasilchenko et al. 2004). It is also known to oxidize soil organic matter by transferring protons and electrons from substrates to acceptors.

Soil water content and temperature influence dehydrogenase activity indirectly by affecting the soil redox status (Debnath and Hajra 1972; Xu et al. 2015).

4.13 Phosphatases

In soil ecosystems, these enzymes are believed to play critical roles in P cycles as they are correlated to P stress and plant growth and are also good indicators of soil fertility. For example, when there is a signal indicating P deficiency in the soil, acid phosphatase secretion from plant roots is increased to enhance the solubilization and remobilization of phosphate, thus influencing the ability of the plant to cope with P-stressed conditions (Saha et al. 2003).

4.14 Proteases

Proteases in the soil play a significant role in N mineralization, regulating the amount of plant available N and plant growth. They are associated with inorganic and organic colloids (Chakroborty and Sen 1967). Extracellular enzyme activities are not only indicative of biological capacity of soil for the enzymatic conversion of the substrate but also have an important role in the ecology of microorganisms. Hence, there is a need to study the properties and factors affecting naturally occurring enzyme complexes as they reveal some unknown role(s) in maintaining soil health and fertility.

4.15 Concluding Remarks and Future Prospectives

Soil organisms (macro and micro) play a significant role in soil processes, including nutrient cycling. These efficient processes are essential to agriculture and forestry and for protecting the quality of water, air, and habitat. Soil enzymes act as a catalyst to sustain soil health and its fertility. Enzymes have significant effects on soil biology, environmental management, growth, and nutrient uptake in plants growing in ecosystems. However, their activities may be influenced by unknown cultural management practices either in a major or minor amount. Therefore, it is necessary to consider the effects on the soil health. Despite of significant importance of soil biological processes, the development of monitoring and management guidelines is limited. In the future, researches focusing more on the discovery of new microbial diversity in the soil might be significant practices that may positively influence the microbial activities for improved plant growth as well as rendering friendly biological environments in order to sustain other living beings.

Acknowledgments The authors are grateful to ICAR-National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning for technical support to carry out the work.

References

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Aneja M, Sharma S et al (2006) Microbial degradation of beech litter – influence of soil type and litter quality on the structure and function of microbial populations involved in the turnover process. Microb Ecol 52:127–135

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Billings SA, Ziegler SE (2005) Linking microbial activity and soil organic matter transformations in forest soils under elevated CO2. Glob Chang Biol 11:203–212

Bloem J, Ruiter P et al (1997) Food webs and nutrient cycling in agro-ecosystems. In: van Elsas JD, Trevors JT, Wellington EMH (eds) Modern soil microbiology. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 245–278

Chakroborty T, Sen S (1967) Mineralisation of carbon from added organic matter in the soil under laboratory conditions. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 15:155–157

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Debnath NC, Hajra JN (1972) Transformation of organic matter in soil in relation to mineralization of carbon and nutrient availability. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 20(2):95–102

Dick RP, Breakwell DP, Turco RF (1996) Soil enzyme activities and biodiversity measurements as integrative microbiological indicators. In: Doran JW, Jones AJ (eds) Methods of assessing soil quality. Soil Science Society of America, Madison, pp 247–271

Dominati E, Patterson M et al (2010) A framework for classifying and quantifying natural capital and ecosystem services of soils. Ecol Econ 69:1858–1868

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Doran JW, Safley M (1997) Defining and assessing soil health and sustainable productivity. In: Pankhurst CE, Doube BM, Gupta VVSR (eds) Biological indicators of soil health. CAB International, Wallingford, pp 1–28

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Dubey RK (2016) Exploring rhizospheric interactions for agricultural sustainability, the need of integrative research on multi-trophic interactions. J Clean Prod 115:362–365

Dubey G, Kollah B, Gour VK, Shukla AK, Mohanty SR (2016) Diversity of bacteria and archaea in the rhizosphere of bioenergy crop Jatropha curcas. 3Biotech. 6:257

Ellert BH, Clapperton MJ, Anderson DW (1997) An ecosystem perspective of soil quality. In: Gregorich EG, Carter MR (eds) Soil quality for crop production and ecosystem health. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 115–141

Ganeshamurthy AM, Singh G, Singh NT (1995) Sulphur status and response of rice to sulphur on some soils of Andaman and Nicobar Islands. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 43:637–641

Gupta VSSR, Germida JJ (1988) Distribution of microbial biomass and its activity in different soil aggregate size calluses affected by cultivation. Soil Boil Biochem 2(6):777–786

Gupta VVSR, Farrell RE, Germida JJ (1993) Activity of arylsuphatases in Saskatchewan soils. Can J Soil Sci 73:341–347

Halvorson JJ, Smith JL et al (1997) Issues of scale for evaluating soil quality. J Soil Water Conserv 52:26–30

Huber S, Syed B et al (2001) Proposal for a European soil monitoring and assessment framework, Technical report no. 61. European Environment Agency, Copenhagen

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Katherine CY, Patricia AM, Kathryn MD, Scott DB (2004) Bacterial degradation of dissolved organic matter from two Northern Michigan streams. Geomicrobiol J 21:521–528

Kennedy AC, Papendick RI (1995) Microbial characteristics of soil quality. J Soil Water Conserv 50:243–248

Kertesz MA, Mirleau P (2004) The role of soil microbes in plant sulphur nutrition. J Exp Bot 55:1939–1945

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with enterobacter and rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Liebich J, Schloter M, Schaffer A, Vereecken H, Burauel P (2007) Degradation and humification of maize straw in soil microcosms inoculated with simple and complex microbial communities. Eur J Soil Sci 58:141–151

Lombard N, Prestat E et al (2011) Soil-specific limitations for access and analysis of soil microbial communities by metagenomics. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 78:31–49

Mandels M, Reese ET (1999) Fungal cellulase and microbial degradation of cellulosic fabric. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 22:225–240

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015c) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015d) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015e) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015f) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (Pisum sativum L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016c) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016d) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016e) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Monier JM, Demaneche S et al (2011) Metagenomic exploration of antibiotic resistance in soil. Curr Opin Microbiol 14:229–235

Muter O, Versilovskis A, Scherbaka R, Grube M, Zarina D (2008) Effect of plant extract on the degradation of nitroaromatic compounds by soil microorganisms. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 35:1539–1543

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Nielsen MN, Winding A (2002) Microorganisms as indicators of soil health, NERI Technical Report No. 388. National Environmental Research Institute, Ministry of the Environment, Denmark

Ollivier J, Towe S et al (2011) Nitrogen turnover in soil and global change. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 78:3–16

Pankhurst CE, Hawke BG (1995) Evaluation of soil biological properties as potential bioindicators of soil health. Aust J Exp Agric 35:1015–1028

Pankhurst CE, Doube BM et al (1997) Biological indicators of soil health: synthesis. In: Pankhurst CE, Doube BM, Gupta VVSR (eds) Biological indicators of soil health. CAB International, Wallingford, pp 419–435

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Parr JF, Papendick RI et al (1992) Soil quality: attributes and relationship to alternative and sustainable agriculture. Am J Altern Agric 7:5–11

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rajendhran J, Gunasekaran P (2008) Strategies for accessing soil metagenome for desired applications. Biotechnol Adv 26:576–590

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Saha H, Mandal S, Hajra JN (2003) Effect of phosphate rock and pyrite on the decomposition and enrichment of rice straw inoculated with cellulose decomposing fungi and cowdung slurry. Indian J Agric 47(3–4):265–272

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. Adapt Soil Manag: Theory Pract:69–88. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Sharma S, Mehta R et al (2012) Improved protocol for the extraction of bacterial mRNA from soils. J Microbiol Methods 91:62–64

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Simon C, Daniel R (2011) Metagenomic analyses: past and future trends. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:1153–1161

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singer MJ, Ewing S (2000) Soil quality. In: Sumner ME (ed) Handbook of soil science. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp G271–G298

Singh JS (2015) Plant-microbe interactions: a viable tool for agricultural sustainability. Appl Soil Ecol 92:45–46

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Srinivasulu M, Rangaswamy V (2006) Activities of invertase and cellulase as influenced by the application of tridemorph and captan to groundnut (Arachis hypogaea) soil. Afr J Biotechnol 5:175–180

Takoutsing B, Weber J et al (2016) Assessment of soil health indicators for sustainable production of maize in small holder farming systems in the highlands of Cameroon. Geoderma 276:64–73

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Torsvik V, Ovreas L (2002) Microbial diversity and function in soil: from genes to ecosystems. Curr Opin Microbiol 5(3):240–245

Totsche KU, Rennert T, Gerzabek MH, Kogel-Knabner I, Smalla K, Spiteller M, Vogel HJ (2010) Biogeochemical interfaces in soil: the interdisciplinary challenge for soil science. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 173:88–99

Vasilchenko LG, Karapetyan KN, Yachkova SN, Zernova ES, Rabinovich ML (2004) Degradation of a lignin–carbohydrate substrate by soil fungi producing laccase and cellobiose dehydrogenase. Appl Biochem Microbiol 40(1):44–48

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. India Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of Indo-Gangetic Plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Xu Z, Yu G et al (2015) The variations in soil microbial communities, enzyme activities and their relationship with soil organic matter decomposition along the northeren slope of Changbai mountain. Appl Soil Ecol 86:19–29

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Quorum Sensing in Plant Microbe Interaction

5

Raghavendra M.P.

Abstract

The coordinated behaviors, at the population level, occur in bacteria due to communication between the cells, which is defined as quorum sensing (QS). These communications help the bacteria to respond in terms of extracellular factors which are involved in scavenging for nutrients; biosynthesis of exopolysaccharides, extracellular hydrolytic enzymes, siderophores, antibiotics, pigments, hypersensitive reaction; aiding motility; and providing scaffolding for biofilms to grow as well as those involved in conjugation and epiphytic fitness. Even in parasitic species, these signals help in regulation of bacterial growth, virulence, and damage caused to hosts. QS signal molecules are regulated by autoinduction and positive feedback mechanism at high cell densities. A detailed mechanism involved in QS is discussed in this chapter with special reference to rhizosphere microflora. The rhizosphere is a digestive system of the plants wherein several microorganisms influenced by root exudates in turn favor its growth. In the future, understanding QS related to plant growth-promoting bacteria and its interspecific bacterial communication may offer good opportunities to manipulate bacterial community structure in the rhizosphere for the benefit of agriculture.

Keywords

Quorum sensing • Rhizosphere microflora • Plant growth

R. M.P. (✉)
Department of Microbiology, Maharani's Science College for Women,
JLB Road, Mysuru 570005, Karnataka, India
e-mail: mpraghavendra@gmail.com

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_5

5.1 Introduction

Revitalization of the native soil systems for improved crop yield was emphasized in many literatures and even the study conducted by United Nations' Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific on "Sustainable agriculture and food security in Asia and the Pacific" emphasizes the same. There is a need of carrying out these processes using various eco-friendly biological amendments especially microorganisms. These organisms colonized in the rhizosphere share symbiotic and asymbiotic relationship with plants benefiting its growth directly or indirectly (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Kumar et al. 2016b).

Rhizosphere microflora along with other eukaryotic cell types is known to produce specific small signaling molecules through which they are able to sense their concentration in the environment. This behavior of accumulating signal molecules in response to increase in population density of the specific organism is named as quorum sensing (Fuqua and Greenberg 2002). The coordinated expression of the specific target genes of the entire population occurs when these signals reach the threshold. These interactions help these organisms to occupy particular habitat adapting to environmental conditions and resource levels and even to generate a coordinated protective response against several adverse conditions. These coordinated responses are generally induced by a group of chemical signaling and are referred to as quorum sensing (QS). QS signals produced by rhizosphere microflora are significantly higher compared to other organisms isolated from bulk soil. It is also evident from the work carried out on the QS signals with distinct chemical structures produced by Gram-negative rhizosphere bacteria and their potential to regulate a wide array of genes in the population (Hartmann et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016a; Jha and Subramanian 2016).

5.2 Biocommunication in Rhizosphere

The rhizosphere is defined as the soil around the roots which is under the influence of root exudates, whereas rhizoplane comprises of the microorganisms adhered onto the root surface. Roots are reported to secrete exudates with a wide array of chemicals involved in regulation of both beneficial and pathogenic microorganisms in the rhizosphere. The variation in these chemicals helps in stabilizing the equilibrium of beneficial microbes in terms of its number and by which evading the continuous attack by soilborne pathogenic bacteria (Walker et al. 2003; Bais et al. 2003). The cross talk between the plant roots and beneficial microbes is playing a vital role in growth and development of the entire plant kingdom in general and agricultural crops in particular (Manefield and Turner 2002; Kent and Triplett 2002; Sharma et al. 2003). The release of chemicals involved in trans-specific communication from roots can occur passively upon decay and may export signals actively to the extracellular environment.

Ten to 40% of the photosynthetic carbon assimilation is released by the plants as root exudates, and it is a mixture of sugars, amino acids, organic acids, sugar alcohols, and secondary metabolites (Bais et al. 2006). Due to its regular addition to soil than the senescent plant debris, their role in regulating the microbial activity through nutrient bioavailability and regulating phytotoxic elements is vital (Singh and Mukerji 2006; Neumann 2007). Thus, microbial activity including cell division, sporulation, and synthesis of secondary metabolites and even its number is very high in the vicinity of growing roots than the non-rhizosphere soil. It is observed that there is 12- to 25-fold difference in bacterial and fungal population between these soils (Kennedy 2005; Parewa et al. 2014; Ahmad et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a).

The rhizosphere is a hotspot of several communications involving a wide range of microorganisms with diverse physiological importance (Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017a; Nath et al. 2017). Among these communications, quorum sensing and quorum quenching are attracting scientific community for its beneficial exploitation in plant growth regulations ultimately leading to yield enhancement. Gram-negative bacteria use homoserine lactones (LuxR/LuxI) as communication signals (Swift et al. 1999; Schauder and Bassler 2001), whereas Gram-positive bacteria use oligopeptides in quorum sensing. The mechanisms of quorum sensing are discussed in detail later in this chapter.

During quorum sensing, it is important for the organisms to differentiate between species-specific signaling and signaling associated with interspecies behavior modulations (Bassler 1999; Federle and Bassler 2003; Waters and Bassler 2006). Hence, they need to have competence in communication, which enables them to coordinate behaviors related to species specifically and also to coordinate with other diverse group of species (Hughes and Sperandio 2008). Mycorrhizal fungi stand as a best example for this; these fungi support the growth of bacteria by releasing few nutrients, and in turn soil bacteria with its wide array of enzymes degrade the complex soil organic nutrients and make it easily available for the fungi (Bonfante 2003; Bonfante and Anca 2009). It also supports the plant growth by extending its hyphae to the areas where plant roots are not able to reach; due to this extension, the plant gets sufficient nutrients supplied by both roots and fungi compared to uninfected roots. Volumes of information are available in these interactions, and it is also documented that if mycorrhizal associations were not available, several plants would have become extinct by this time (Meena et al. 2015f, 2016b; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Prakash and Verma 2016).

Smaller groups of the similar bacteria on the other hand use quorum sensing to develop dialects required to occupy specific niche in the ecosystem. It also helps in identifying the nonself species through species-specific and group-specific quorum sensing. While facing the competition for specific niche, the complex coordination among the species avoids the confusion and enables them to colonize the specific habitat with specialized characteristics acquired through such interactions (Taga and Bassler 2003). The law of limiting factor supported by adaptive radiation of the species is favored by coexistence of bacterial life with suitable interactions to scavenge the limiting factor required to colonize the specific habitat and suitably favored in competition with other groups of organisms (Sarkar et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017a).

Of late, understanding of QS revealed that it is common in all bacteria including proteobacteria which exhibit QS mediated by N-acyl-homoserine lactone (AHL) (Fray 2002). These bacteria need special mention because they are reported to be common in the rhizosphere than in the bulk soil (Cha et al. 1998) and constitute an estimated two-thirds of temperate plant rhizospheres (Hawkes et al. 2007). After accepting the fact that quorum sensing plays an important role in rhizosphere colonization and soil fertility, several novel techniques such as extracting DNA from rhizosphere soil (Williamson et al. 2005), inoculating the specific bacteria to sterile soil to understand the interaction in controlled condition (Steidle et al. 2001), and understanding QS in natural habitat (DeAngelis et al. 2007) and compost (Burmolle et al. 2005) have taken place, but the role of QS in soil processes associated with biologically intact soils needs to be investigated thoroughly using sophisticated methods to understand the difficult interactions and signals associated with it.

It is interesting to note that even higher plants are also reported to secrete molecular compounds similar to bacterial AHL through root exudation (Bauer and Teplitski 2001). Few plants such as legumes, pea, and alfalfa are known to secrete mimic of the bacterial QS regulators required to regulate functions of plant-specific PGPR, which helps them to colonize specific plant and release antifungal compounds to inhibit the soilborne phytopathogens (Teplitski et al. 2000). Another interesting report is that the chemicals released in the root exudates are known to modify the AHL signaling in microbial populations by promoting or inhibiting AHL-mediated QS. To support this, Bauer and Teplitski (2001) reported the ability of *D. pulcra* an alga to produce over 30 halogenated furanone compounds having the ability to inhibit Gram-negative AHL signals. These compounds are similar to bacterial AHL in structure but prevent the Gram-negative bacteria to colonize algal surface, and by doing so, it favors the colonization by Gram-positive bacteria. This gives an idea that QS plays a vital role in selective colonization of root surface either regulated by chemicals released by plants or bacterial signaling system. Understanding this delicate communication in soil is the need of the hour to develop strategies for the next green revolution.

5.3 Mechanism of Quorum Sensing

QS in bacteria is explained related to the field of economics and is considered similar to the systems that control the production of public goods. Biologically, it is the production of costly product individually when accumulated in concentration benefits personally and also the population. For example, the exoenzyme, an enzyme released by the bacteria into the environment to break down complex food/carbon sources into simpler molecules, has to facilitate the easy uptake into the cells for further degradation to derive the energy. This special physiological ability of one organism keeps other organisms without this ability out of competition in a particular habitat. It is also true with pathogenic organisms having the ability to secrete/excrete molecules which are often toxic to other animals including human beings.

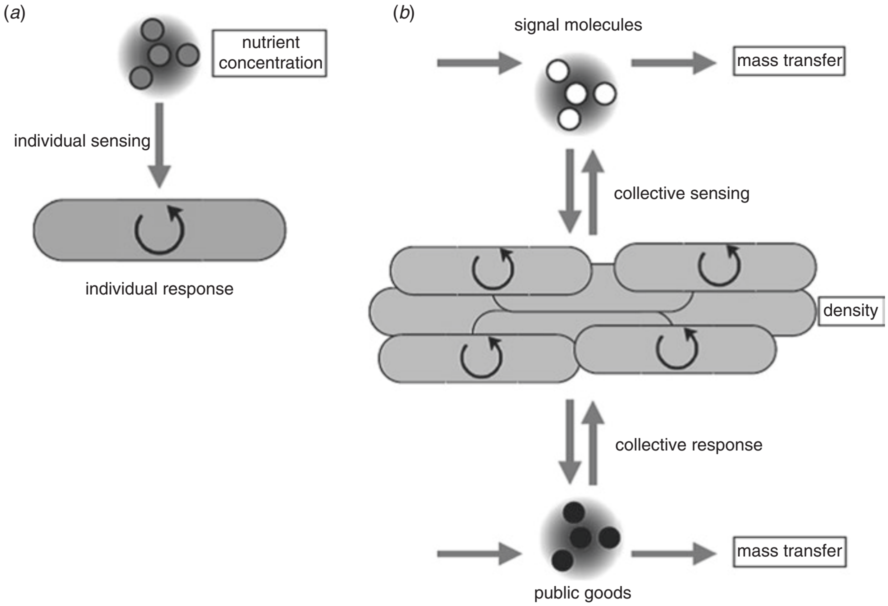


Fig. 5.1 Individual sensing versus collective sensing and responses; (**a**) individual sensing, (**b**) collective sensing (Popat et al. 2015)

Even antibiotics, which plays an important role in amensalism behavior, requires quorum sensing specially regulated by cell density (Fig. 5.1).

5.3.1 General Mechanism

Generally, quorum sensing in bacteria falls into three classes: the first is, as mentioned earlier, AHL-dependent LuxI/LuxR-type QS observed in Gram-negative bacteria, the second is the small peptide-mediated QS observed in Gram-positive bacteria, and the third observed in both these bacteria is luxS-encoded autoinducer 2 (AI-2) QS. These signal molecules are operating with precise sensing and regulatory network (Dunny and Leonard 1997; Miller and Bassler 2001; Schauder and Bassler 2001; Federle and Bassler 2003; Waters and Bassler 2005; Papenfort and Bassler 2016).

The detailed QS mechanism associated with Gram-negative bacteria mediated by AHL is available. AHL is freely diffusible and its concentration varies accordingly in proportion to cell density. The specific target genes are activated when LuxR-like protein recognizes AHL and binds to specific promoters on DNA, which in turn positively regulates the genes leading to the production of proteins. LuxI-like enzymes are reported to be responsible for production of specific AHL in association with acyl-ACP of the fatty acid metabolism (Miller and Bassler 2001; Fuqua and Greenberg 2002; Taga and Bassler 2003; Waters and Bassler 2005).

Two types of quorum sensing systems are reported in Gram-positive bacteria in contrast to Gram-negative bacteria (Dunny and Leonard 1997; Novick 2003; Fontaine et al. 2010; Fleuchot et al. 2011). The first comprises of a three-component signaling peptide referred to as autoinducing peptide (AIP) and the other is a two-component signal transduction system which specifically responds to an AIP (Miller and Bassler 2001; Dunny and Leonard 1997; Schauder and Bassler 2001). The difference observed between AHL signals and AIP is that the latter is not permeable through the cell membrane and hence requires an ATP-binding cassette transporter to transport AIP into extracellular environment (Dunny and Leonard 1997; Novick 2003). A signal peptide precursor is generally produced by Gram-positive bacteria which later cleaved at the double-glycine consensus sequence and obtained active AIP. Usually 5–25 amino acids with unusual side chains serve a signal peptide (Novick 2003). Further, the two-component signal transduction system comprising of membrane-bound histidine kinase and cytoplasmic regulator protein to regulate specific gene in response to the specific AIP leads to QS (Dunny and Leonard 1997; Schauder and Bassler 2001; Novick 2003).

Autoinducer 2 (AI-2) is the third type of QS observed both in Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria (Miller and Bassler 2001; Federle and Bassler 2003; Waters and Bassler 2005). Compared to other two QS systems which are generally for intraspecies interaction, AI-2 helps in interspecies communication and hence generally considered as "universal language" (Federle and Bassler 2003; Schauder and Bassler 2001). AI-2 which is a furanosyl borate first characterized in a marine bacterium *Vibrio harveyi* is reported to regulate bioluminescence which is cell density dependent (Chen et al. 2002; Vendeville et al. 2005). Further, its synthesis using luxS-encoded synthase, signal transduction, and regulation of the gene expression in cell density-dependent manner is well documented (Miller and Bassler 2001; Schauder and Bassler 2001; Federle and Bassler 2003; Waters and Bassler 2005; Vendeville et al. 2005).

5.3.2 QS Mechanism in Rhizosphere

Proteobacteria are reported as major colonizers of the rhizosphere, and hence the QS signals N-acyl-homoserine lactones (AHLs) produced by them are significantly high in the rhizosphere. More than 200 species of proteobacteria are known to produce about 40 different acyl-HSL signals with different specificities and are produced by the LuxI family of signal synthases which binds to highly specific receptors in the LuxR family that act as transcription factors. Most of the rhizosphere microflora is reported to exploit this coevolved signal and receptor circuit for its effective communication in the soil.

The major group observed in the rhizosphere is actinobacteria; in this group, QS is dependent on the production of autoregulatory factors of different chemical classes, mainly the butyrolactone class and the nucleotide-like B-factor class. The first class includes the A-factor of *Streptomyces griseus* (Yamada and Nihira 1998) and similar compounds found in other actinobacteria (Yamada et al. 1987; Kawabuchi et al. 1997). The nucleotide-like B-factor class has been isolated from *Amycolatopsis* (*Nocardia*) *mediterranei* (Kawaguchi et al. 1988). In actinobacteria, research efforts on QS have mostly focused on morphological differentiation and secondary metabolism. The role of QS during the interaction between actinobacteria and plants has not been examined in detail (Simao-Beaunoir et al. 2009).

5.4 Role of Biosurfactant in Rhizosphere Activity

It is observed that the production of biosurfactant is an important component of QS along with motility, signaling, differentiation, and biofilm formation (Kearns and Losick 2003; Van Hamme et al. 2006; Berti et al. 2007; Ron and Rosenberg 2011). It is well documented in *Pseudomonas* spp. wherein QS regulates rhamnolipid (biosurfactant) production (Dusane et al. 2010). These green surfactants are reported to enhance the plant microbe interaction leading to increased plant growth by enhancing the bioavailability of hydrophobic molecules, by increasing the wettability of the soil, and by distributing the chemical fertilizers applied to the soil properly. Hence, benefits of biosurfactants need to be exploited for sustainable agriculture.

There are also reports on biosurfactants playing a vital role in interaction between rhizosphere microflora. Ingham and Jacob (2008) have isolated a Gram-positive bacterium *Paenibacillus vortex*, a versatile swarmer with complicated colonial patterns, from the rhizosphere soil and were found highly sensitive to environmental conditions. These scientists provided greater insight into the transport of nonmotile fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus* with the help of swarming ability of the isolated bacteria. Both these organisms are reported to be inhabitants of the rhizosphere enjoying the mutual interaction; another interesting observation with this interaction is that the smaller bacterium is cooperatively transporting a larger one. The interaction between the swarming bacteria and fungus is reported to have more environmental impact and benefits in fungi in several ways (Ingham et al. 2011; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017b; Meena et al. 2015a, e; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

In a similar finding, Lindum et al. (1998) reported the synthesis of serrawettin W2, a cyclic lipodepsipentapeptide required for swarming motility of *Serratia liquefaciens*, which is regulated in a cell density-dependent manner by an acyl-homoserine lactone-based quorum sensing system. Even swarming of *Bacillus subtilis* was reported to rely on the production of surfactin (Mendelson and Salhi 1996), a cyclic lipopeptide biosurfactant whose synthesis is also controlled by quorum sensing via two pheromone signal peptides, ComX and CSF (Solomon et al. 1996; Lazazzera et al. 1997). Kohler et al. (2000) reported that *Ps. aeruginosa* rhlA mutant was not able to swarm due to its inability to synthesize rhamnolipid.

5.5 Quorum Sensing for Biosurfactant Production

Cell-to-cell signaling regulates the expression of the rhlAB operon responsible for production of biosurfactants (Ochsner et al. 1994; Ochsner and Reiser 1995; Pearson et al. 1997; Pesci et al. 1997). RhlI, N-butyrylhomoserine lactone autoinducer synthase gene, and transcriptional activator encoding rhlR that are the major QS system and rhamnosyltransferase encoded by rhlC which is coordinately regulated along with rhlAB are responsible for biosurfactant production in microorganisms (Rahim et al. 2001). These systems are under the influence of nutritional factor and QS signals (Guerra-Santos et al. 1986). They also came out with interesting observation that the nutritional conditions supersede cell-to-cell communication and hence correlate more positively with upregulation of quorum sensing-controlled genes such as rhlAB. A similar conclusion was also expressed by Bollinger et al. (2001) related to sodA encoding manganese-cofactored superoxide dismutase. These reports highlight the need of understanding the role of nutritional factors and the QS signals in cell density-based gene regulation in microorganisms.

Through social traits bacteria get several benefits such as coordinated population behavior (*Vibrio fischeri*, *Ps. aeruginosa*, and *Staph. aureus*), biofilm formation to get protection from adverse environmental conditions, nutrient and niche protection in nocules (*Rhizobium* sp.), enhanced colonization and growth in specialized niches (siderophores production for iron acquisition in bacteria), autolysis to provide nutrients and DNA for biofilm development (*Ps. aeruginosa*), coordinated movement toward nutrient source (*Yersinia* sp., *Myxococcus xanthus*, *Ps. aeruginosa*), antibiotic resistance through production of extracellular enzymes to break down antimicrobials (*E. coli* and *Klebsiella* spp.), and also immune modulation to facilitate survival within the host (*Ps. aeruginosa*, *Porphyromonas gingivalis*, *Helicobacter pylori*) (Diggle et al. 2007).

5.6 Biofilm Formation on the Root Surface

Plant growth-promoting microorganisms are observed in optimal ecological niches having greater rhizodeposition. These organisms are concentrated on the root surface where the microcolonies or biofilms form (Munch et al. 2016). The biofilm formation has a wider impact on the microbial interaction and its associated plant growth-promoting ability. The biofilm forming beneficial and pathogenic bacteria which are associated with plant roots is tabulated in Table 5.1.

5.7 Beneficial Aspects of Quorum Sensing

Microorganisms being small are suitable models to understand the basic questions related to ecology and evolution of social interactions (Zahavi and Ralt 1984; Crespi 2001; Velicer 2003). In recent times, the beneficial traits acquired by these organisms in high-density population are developing a new insight into their community

Table 5.1 Biofilm formation by beneficial and pathogenic bacteria associated with plant roots

Bacteria	Nature of association	Plant name	References
Acinetobacter calcoaceticus P23	PGPR	Duckweed	Yamaga et al. (2010)
Azospirillum brasilense	PGPR	Wheat	Kim et al. (2005) and Sheludko et al. (2010)
Azorhizobium caulinodans	PGPR	Rice	Van Nieuwenhove et al. (2004)
Azotobacter chroococcum	PGPR	Cotton, wheat	Kumar et al. (2007)
Bacillus amyloliquefaciens S499	PGPR, biocontrol	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Fan et al. (2011) Nihorimbere et al. (2012)
Bacillus cereus	Under conditions of stress by salt, heat, or desiccation	Wild barley	Trivedi et al. (2011)
Bacillus pumilus	Under conditions of stress by salt, heat, or desiccation	Wild barley	Trivedi et al. (2011)
Bacillus polymyxa	PGPR	Cucumber	Yang et al. 2004 Nihorimbere et al. (2012)
Bacillus subtilis	Biocontrol	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Ellis and Cooper (2010) and Beauregard et al. (2013)
Bacillus megaterium C4	Nitrogen fixation, PGPR	Maize, rice	Liu et al. (2006)
Burkholderia cepacia Lu 10-1	Biocontrol	Mulberry	Ji et al. (2010)
Enterobacter agglomerans	Biocontrol	Cotton	Chernin et al. (1995)
Enterobacter cloacae	PGPR	Rice	Shankar et al. (2011)
Klebsiella pneumoniae	Beneficial	Wheat	Dong et al. (2004) and Liu et al. (2011)
Microsphaeropsis sp.	Biocontrol	Onion	Carisse et al. (2001)
Micrococcus sp. NII-0909	PGPR	Cowpea	Dastager et al. (2010)
Paenibacillus lentimorbus	Heavy metal tolerance	Chickpea	Khan et al. (2012)
Paenibacillus polymyxa	Biocontrol	Peanut	Haggag and Timmusk (2008)
Pantoea agglomerans	PGPR	Chickpea, wheat	Chauhan and Nautiyal (2010)
Pseudomonas aureofaciens	Biocontrol	Wheat	Sigler et al. 2001
Pseudomonas brassicacearum	Biocontrol	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Lalaouna et al. (2012)
Pseudomonas chlororaphis	Biocontrol	Wheat	Chin-A-Woeng et al. (2000) and Shen et al. (2012)

(continued)

Table 5.1 (continued)

Bacteria	Nature of association	Plant name	References
Pseudomonas fluorescens	Biocontrol	Crop plant	Silby and Levy (2004) and Barahona et al. (2010)
Pseudomonas putida	Drought tolerance, bioremediation	Maize, sunflower, *A. thaliana*	Sandhya et al. (2009), Matilla et al. (2011), and Jakovleva et al. (2012)
Pseudomonas aurantiaca SR1	PGPR	Maize, wheat	Rosas et al. (2009)
Rhizobium alamii	Heavy metal tolerance	*Arabidopsis thaliana*, rapeseed	Schue et al. (2011)
Rhizobium leguminosarum pv. *viciae* 3841	Nitrogen fixation, PGPR, drought tolerance	Various legumes	Fujishige et al. (2006), Williams et al. (2008), and Janczarek and Skorupska (2011)
Rhizobium leguminosarum	Beneficial	Rice	Janczarek and Skorupska (2011)
Rhizobium sp. NGR234	Nitrogen fixation, PGPR	Legumes (cowpea)	Kysciak et al. (2011)
Rhizobium	Symbiosis	Legumes	Fujishige et al. (2006) and Robledo et al. (2012)
Sinorhizobium	Symbiosis	Legumes	Fujishige et al. (2006), Khan et al. (2012), and Amaya-Gomez et al. (2015)
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia	Biocontrol, PGPR	Crop plant	Ryan et al. (2008)
Shewanella putrefaciens CN-32	Microbial mediated geochemistry	Huang et al. (2011)	
Cyanobacteria sp.	PGPR, biocontrol	Prasanna et al. (2011)	

acquired behavior. Usually, microorganisms develop protective adaptations easily at high density than at low density to adverse environmental conditions such as acidic condition, alkalinity, pressure, etc. (Foster and Hall 1991; Foster 1995; Cui et al. 2001; Li et al. 2001). Even pathogenic bacteria such as *Staphylococcus aureus* require minimum cell density that is required to establish infections with upregulation of genes associated with virulence factor (Ji et al. 1995; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b, 2016e; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016; Teotia et al. 2016). Even eukaryotic slime molds and prokaryotic myxobacteria respond to nutrient stress through aggregation of high-density groups (Rosenbluh et al. 1989; Rietdorf et al. 1996; vanOss et al. 1996).

The importance of rhizobacteria in the rhizosphere and the role of QS in regulating its activity related to plant root colonization and nutrient uptake through effective signaling pathways are well documented and described (Loh et al. 2002; Newton and Fray 2004; Nihorimbere et al. 2011; Podile et al. 2014).

The link between soil signaling and nitrogen cycling is also investigated by DeAngelis et al. (2008). They reported that many alpha-proteobacteria were newly found with QS-controlled extracellular enzyme activity, and even cell division, symbiotic plasmid transfer, gene expression in the rhizosphere, symbiosome development and nitrogen fixation, and nodule number in *Rhizobium* bacteria are regulated by QS. On the contrary, QS is also reported to play an important role in expression of genes associated with virulence factors (Meena et al. 2013c, 2016c; Saha et al. 2016a; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Singh et al. 2015; Bahadur et al. 2016a). This supports an idea that developing QS mutants may be the next line of therapeutic target for disease management.

There is a positive relationship between population growth rate and population density in some species, which is first introduced by Allee et al. (1949) and hence known as the Allee effect. He suggested that there exist threshold densities for some species under some conditions, below which populations decline and thereby increase the likelihood of extinction and above which population growth rate increases as a function of density (Courchamp et al. 1999; Stephens and Sutherland 1999). This effect nowadays received renewed interest in conservation of plant and animal diversity, and it also suits very well into the concepts of QS in microorganisms (Darch et al. 2012; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015d, 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2015b; Singh et al. 2016).

5.8 Quorum Sensing in Soil Microorganisms

Soil is the central organizer of the terrestrial ecosystem, and its physical, chemical, and biological processes have enormous impacts on ecosystem productivity, services, integrity, and human welfare. It is considered as a natural media for growth of several microorganisms associated with plant growth. The overall contribution of soil to the growth of plants is defined as the soil fertility. Several microorganisms inhabit the soil plant interface and create microenvironment which is physiologically dynamic supporting the biogeochemical cycle. These microorganisms in turn develop interactions which is an additional benefit for the plant growth (Verma et al. 2014; Meena et al. 2013b, 2014a, 2015c; Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016). To sense environmental conditions and to change patterns of gene regulation accordingly, soil bacteria have evolved sophisticated signal transduction mechanisms. Soil microorganisms in general and rhizosphere microflora in particular are considered as treasure houses of the soil defining its fertility and plant growth promotion. Table 5.2 represents QS signals and its regulated functions.

Table 5.2 Activities of soilborne bacterial functions regulated by QS signals

Taxonomic class	Representative genus or species	QS signals produced	Known regulated functions	References
Actinobacteria	*Streptomyces* sp.	Gamma-butyrolactones	Antibiotic compound synthesis, differentiation	Chater (1993) and Shaaban et al. (2016)
Alpha-proteobacteria	*Agrobacterium tumefaciens*	OOHL	Ti plasmid transfer, virulence	White and Winans (2007)
	Bradyrhizobium sp.	AHLs	Not determined	Pongsilp et al. (2005)
		Bradyoxetin	Expression of nod genes	Loh et al. (2002)
		pCHL	Not determined	Schaefer et al. (2008)
	Rhizobium leguminosarum pv. *viciae*	OHtDeHL, HHL, HHL, OHL, OHOHL, OOHL	Growth inhibition, induction of rhi genes, plasmid transfer, nodulation	González and Marketon (2003)
	Sinorhizobium meliloti	OHL, OHOHL, OOHL, DDHL, OtdHL, HDHL, OhDHL	EPSII synthesis, motility, nodulation kinetics, plasmid transfer	González and Marketon (2003)
	Mesorhizobium loti	OHHL, OHL, DHL, dDHL	Nodulation	Yang et al. (2009)
	Rhodopseudomonas palustris	pCHL	Chemotaxis	Schaefer et al. (2008)
Beta-proteobacteria	*Burkholderia glumae*	OHL	Toxoflavin synthesis	Ferluga et al. (2008)
	Burkholderia kururiensis	OHHL, OHL, DHL, dDHL	Not determined	Ferluga et al. (2008)
	Ralstonia solanacearum	OHL	Not determined	Ferluga et al. (2008)
Firmicutes	*Staphylococcus aureus*	AIPs (thiolactone peptides)	Virulence, antimicrobial peptides synthesis, genetic competence	Sturme et al. (2007) and Lyon and Novick (2004)
Gamma-proteobacteria	*Erwinia amylovora*	OHHL	Virulence, EPS synthesis, hydrogen peroxide tolerance	Ferluga et al. (2008)
	Pectobacterium carotovorum	OHHL	Varbapenem production, exoenzymes, hrp secretion system	Braeken et al. (2008)
	Dickeya dadantii	HHL, OHHL, DHL	Not determined	Ferluga et al. (2008)
	Pantoea stewartii	OHHL, OOHL	EPS synthesis, biofilm, adhesion, xylem dissemination, pathogenicity	Braeken et al. (2008)
	Serratia liquefaciens	BHL	Swarming, biofilm, protease	Ferluga et al. (2008)

	Pseudomonas aeruginosa	BHL, OdDHL	Biofilm, elastase, lipase, alkaline protease, HCN, pyocyanin, exotoxin A, swarming, lectins, rhamnolipids, virulence.	Braeken et al. (2008) and Ferluga et al. (2008)
		PQS	Elastase, pyocyanin synthesis, LecA lectin, biofilm, AHL signaling, motility + intrinsic functions (antibiosis, iron chelation)	Dubern and Diggle (2008)
		DKPs (e.g., cyclo (D-Ala-LVal))	Unclear, cross-linked to AHL signaling	Holden et al. (1999)
	Pseudomonas syringae pv. *syringae*	OHHL	Cell aggregation, epiphytic fitness, disease development, hydrogen peroxide tolerance, motility	Elasri et al. (2001) and Quin˜ones et al. (2005)
	Pseudomonas aureofaciens	HHL	Phenazine production, rhizosphere colonization, protease activity	Braeken et al. (2008) and Ferluga et al. (2008)
	Pseudomonas fluorescens 2P24	OHHL, OHL	Biofilm formation, wheat rhizosphere colonization, biocontrol ability	Wei and Zhang (2006)
	Xanthomonas campestris	DSF (cis-11-methyl-2-dodecenoic acid)	Extracellular enzymes, LPS and EPS synthesis, multidrug resistance and detoxification, motility and chemotaxis, HR and pathogenicity (hrp), iron uptake, primary metabolism	He and Zhang (2008)
		DF (butyrolactones)	Xanthomonadin production (light protection), colonization	He and Zhang (2008)

BHL N-butyryl-homoserine lactone, *dDHL* N-dodecanoyl-homoserine lactone, *DHL* N-decanoyl-homoserine lactone, *HHL* N-hexanoyl-homoserine lactone, *OdDHL* 3-oxo-N-dodecanoyl-homoserine lactone, *OHDtDeHL* 3-hydroxy-N-7-cis-tetradecenoyl-homoserine lactone, *OHHL* 3-oxo-N-hexanoyl-homoserine lactone, *OHL* N-octanoyl-homoserine lactone, *OOHL* 3-oxo-N-octanoyl-homoserine lactone, *OtDHL* 3-oxo-N-tetradecanoyl-homoserine lactone, *DKP* diketo-peptides

5.9 Future Prospective and Concluding Remarks

Several studies revealed that QS is playing a vital role in inducing protection against abiotic factors, environmental challenges (Popat et al. 2015), and production of biosurfactant along with plant growth promotion. Biosurfactants produced by the rhizosphere and plant-associated microbes are associated with rhizosphere activity, plant microbe interaction, and plant pathogen elimination, increasing the bioavailability of nutrient for beneficial plant-associated microbes. They are proven effective even in improving the agricultural soil quality through soil remediation. Screening of biosurfactant-producing microorganisms from soil biosphere needs to be accelerated, and the application of advanced methodologies such as functional metagenomics will aid in obtaining unculturable biosurfactant-producing microbes (Sachdev and Cameotra 2013). These studies add more insights into the understanding of the QS mechanisms and their role in soil fertility enrichment.

Agriculture is one of the most significant factors contributing to the economic growth of India, and sustainable agriculture economic development is the need of the hour. Hence, a major focus in the coming decades would be on safe and eco-friendly methods by exploiting the beneficial microorganisms in sustainable crop production. Even genetic engineering of rhizosphere microflora and transgenic plants which can alter quorum sensing in microbes will have several benefits in agriculture including yield enhancement and effective plant pathogen management. Besides the growing information on the production of growth regulators and competitiveness of the microbes in the rhizosphere, microsymbionts, and other factors, their effect upon plant growth will become more evident.

Of the ongoing emergence of antibiotic-resistant pathogens, there is a current need for development of alternative management strategies. An antivirulence approach by which quorum sensing is impeded is caught on as a viable means to manipulate bacterial processes, especially pathogenic traits that are harmful to human and animal health and agricultural productivity (LaSarre and Federle 2013). The identification and development of chemical compounds and enzymes that facilitate quorum sensing inhibition by targeting signaling molecules, signal biogenesis, or signal detection are gaining momentum.

Nowadays, screening for quorum quenching compounds is another interesting area which can be carried out in high-throughput screenings since several assays targeting the formation of autoinducers or their receptors are available (Abraham 2016; Reuter et al. 2016). However, the entire mechanism for quorum sensing is known only for a small number of microorganisms, and still very little is known about interspecies cross talks.

References

Abraham W-R (2016) Going beyond the control of quorum-sensing to combat biofilm infections. Antibiotics 5:3–19

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium

solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Allee WC, Emerson E, Park O, Park T, Schmidt KP (1949) Principles of animal ecology. Saunders, Philadelphia

Amaya-Gomez CV, Hirsch AM, Soto MJ (2015) Biofilm formation assessment in *Sinorhizobium meliloti* reveals interlinked control with surface motility. BMC Microbiol 15:58–72

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bais HP, Park SW, Weir TL, Callaway RM, Vivanco JM (2003) How plants communicate using the underground information superhighway. Trends Plant Sci 9:26–32

Bais H, Weir T, Perry L, Gilroy S, Vivanco J (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Barahona E, Navazo A, Yousef-Coronado F, de Carcer DA, Martinez-Granero F, Espinosa-Urgel M, Martin M, Rivilla R (2010) Efficient rhizosphere colonization by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* f113 mutants unable to form biofilms on abiotic surfaces. Environ Microbiol 12:3185–3195

Bassler BL (1999) How bacteria talk to each other: regulation of gene expression by quorum sensing. Curr Opin Microbiol 2:582–587

Bauer WD, Teplitski M (2001) Can plants manipulate bacterial quorum sensing? Aust J Plant Physiol 28:913–921

Beauregard PB, Chai Y, Vlamakis H, Losick R, Kolter R (2013) *Bacillus subtilis* biofilm induction by plant polysaccharides. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(7):E1621–E1630

Berti AD, Greve NJ, Christensen QH, Thomas MG (2007) Identification of a biosynthetic gene cluster and the six associated lipopeptides involved in swarming motility of *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *tomato* DC3000. J Bacteriol 189:6312–6323

Bollinger N, Hassett DJ, Iglewski BH, Costerton JW, McDermott TR (2001) Gene expression in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: evidence of iron override effects on quorum sensing and biofilm-specific gene regulation. J Bacteriol 183:1990–1996

Bonfante P (2003) Plants, mycorrhizal fungi and endobacteria: a dialog among cells and genomes. Biol Bull 204:215–220

Bonfante P, Anca IA (2009) Plants, mycorrhizal fungi, and bacteria: a network of interactions. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:363–383

Braeken K, Daniels R, Ndayizeye M, Vanderleyden J, Michiels J (2008) Quorum sensing in bacteria-plant interactions. In: Nautiyal CS, Dion P (eds) Molecular mechanisms of plant and microbe coexistence, Soil biology, vol 15. Springer, Berlin, pp 265–290

Burmolle M, Hansen LH, Sorensen SJ (2005) Use of a whole-cell biosensor and flow cytometry to detect AHL production by an indigenous soil community during decomposition of litter. Microb Ecol 50:221–229

Carisse O, El Bassam S, Benhamou N (2001) Effect of *Microsphaeropsis* sp. strain 130A on germination and production of sclerotia of *Rhizoctonia solani* and interaction between the antagonist and the pathogen. Phytopathology 91:782–791

Cha C, Gao P, Chen YC, Shaw PD, Farrand SK (1998) Production of acyl-homoserine lactone quorum-sensing signals by gram-negative plant-associated bacteria. Mol Plant Microbe 11:1119–1129

Chater KF (1993) Genetics of differentiation in *Streptomyces*. Annu Rev Microbiol 47:685–713

Chauhan PS, Nautiyal CS (2010) The pur B gene controls rhizosphere colonization by *Pantoea agglomerans*. Lett Appl Microbiol 50:205–210

Chen X, Schauder S, Potier N, Van Dorssealaer A, Pelczer I, Bassler BL, Hughson FM (2002) Structural identification of a bacterial quorum-sensing signal containing boron. Nature 415:545–549

Chernin L, Ismailov Z, Haran S, Chet I (1995) Chitinolytic *Enterobacter agglomerans* antagonistic to fungal plant pathogens. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:1720–1726

Chin-A-Woeng TFC, Bloemberg GV, Mulders IHM, Dekkers LC, Lugtenberg BJJ (2000) Root colonization by phenazine-1-carboxamide-producing bacterium *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* PCL 1391 is essential for biocontrol of tomato foot and root rot. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 13:1340–1345

Courchamp F, Clutton-Brock T, Grenfell B (1999) Inverse density dependence and the Allee effect. Trends Ecol Evol 14:405–410

Crespi BJ (2001) The evolution of social behaviour in microorganisms. Trends Ecol Evol 16:178–183

Cui S, Meng J, Bhagwat A (2001) Availability of glutamate and arginine during acid challenge determines cell density-dependent survival phenotype of Escherichia coli strains. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:4914–4918

Darch SE, Stuart A, West SA, Winzer K, Diggle SP (2012) Density-dependent fitness benefits in quorum-sensing bacterial populations. PNAS 109:8259–8263

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Dastager SG, Deepa CK, Pandey A (2010) Isolation and characterization of novel plant growth promoting *Micrococcus* sp. NII-0909 and its interaction with cowpea. Plant Physiol Biochem 48:987–992

DeAngelis KM, Firestone MK, Lindow SE (2007) A sensitive whole-cell biosensor suitable for detecting a variety of n-acyl homoserine lactones in intact rhizosphere microbial communities. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:3724–3727

DeAngelis KM, Lindow SE, Firestone MK (2008) Bacterial quorum sensing and nitrogen cycling in rhizosphere soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 66:197–207

Diggle SP, Matthijs S, Wright VJ, Fletcher MP, Chhabra SR, Lamont IL, Kong X, Hider RC, Cornelis P, Cámara M, Williams P (2007) The *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 4-quinolone signal molecules HHQ and PQS play multifunctional roles in quorum sensing and iron entrapment. Chem Biol 14:87–96

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dong YM, Iniguez AL, Triplett EW (2004) Nitrogen fixation in wheat provided by *Klebsiella pneumonia* 342. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 17:1078–1085

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Dubern JF, Diggle SP (2008) Quorum sensing by 2-alkyl-4-quinolones in Pseudomonas aeruginosa and other bacterial species. Mol BioSyst 4:882–888

Dunny GM, Leonard BA (1997) Cell-cell communication in gram-positive bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 51:527–564

Dusane DH, Zinjarde SS, Venugopalan VP, RJ ML, Wever MW, Rahman PK (2010) Quorum sensing; implication on rhamnolipid biosurfactant production. Biotechnol Genet Eng Rev 27:159–184

Elasri M, Delorme S, Lemanceau P, Stewart G, Laue B, Glickmann E, Oger PM, Dessaux Y (2001) Acyl-homoserine lactone production is more common among plant-associated *Pseudomonas* spp. than among soil borne *Pseudomonas* spp. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:1198–1209

Ellis CN, Cooper VS (2010) Experimental adaptation of *Burkholderia cenocepacia* to onion medium reduces host range. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:2387–2396

Fan B, Chen XH, Budiharjo A, Bleiss W, Vater J, Borriss R (2011) Efficient colonization of plant roots by the plant growth promoting bacterium *Bacillus amyloliquifaciens* FZB42, engineered to express green fluorescent protein. J Biotechnol 151:303–311

Federle MJ, Bassler BL (2003) Interspecies communication in bacteria. J Clin Invest 112:1291–1299

Ferluga S, Staindler L, Ventiru V (2008) N-acyl homoserine lactone quorum sensing in gram negative rhizobacteria. In: Karlovsky P (ed) Secondary metabolites in soil ecology, Soil biology, vol 14. Springer, Berlin, pp 69–92

Fleuchot B, Gitton C, Guillot A, Vidic J, Nicolas P, Besset C, Fontaine L, Hols P, Leblond-Bourget N, Monnet V, Gardan R (2011) Rgg proteins associated with internalized small hydrophobic peptides: a new quorum-sensing mechanism in *Streptococci*. Mol Microbiol 80:1102–1119

Fontaine L, Boutry C, de Frahan MH, Delplace B, Fremaux C, Horvath P, Boyaval P, Hols PA (2010) Novel pheromone quorum-sensing system controls the development of natural competence in *Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Streptococcus salivarius*. J Bacteriol 192:1444–1454

Foster J (1995) Low pH adaptation and the acid tolerance response of *Salmonella typhimurium*. Crit Rev Microbiol 21:215–237

Foster J, Hall H (1991) Inducible pH homeostasis and the acid tolerance response of *Salmonella typhimurium*. J Bacteriol 173:5129–5135

Fray RG (2002) Altering plant-microbe interaction through artificially manipulating bacterial quorum sensing. Ann Bot 89:245–253

Fujishige NA, Kapadia NN, De Hoff PL, Hirsch AM (2006) Investigations of *Rhizobium* biofilm formation. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 56:195–206

Fuqua C, Greenberg EP (2002) Listening in on bacteria: acyl-homoserine lactone signalling. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 3:685–695

González JE, Marketon MM (2003) Quorum sensing in nitrogen-fixing rhizobia. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 67:574–592

Guerra-Santos LH, Käppeli O, Fiechter A (1986) Dependence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* continuous culture biosurfactant production on nutritional and environmental factors. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 24:443–448

Haggag WM, Timmusk S (2008) Colonization of peanut roots by biofilm forming *Paenibacillus polymyxa* initiated biocontrol against crown rot disease. J Appl Microbiol 104(4):961–969

Hartmann A, Rothballer M, Hense BA, Schroder P (2014) Bacterial quorum sensing compounds are important modulators of microbe-plant interactions. Front Plant Sci 5:1–4

Hawkes CV, DeAngelis KM, Firestone MK (2007) Root interactions with soil microbial communities and processes. In: Cardon Z, Whitbeck J (eds) The rhizosphere: an ecological perspective. Academic, New York, pp 1–30

He YW, Zhang LH (2008) Quorum sensing and virulence regulation in *Xanthomonas campestris*. FEMS Microbiol Rev 32:842–857

Holden MT, Ram Chhabra S, de Nys R, Stead P, Bainton NJ, Hill PJ, Manefield M, Kumar N, Labatte M, England D, Rice S, Givskov M, Salmond GP, Stewart GS, Bycroft BW, Kjelleberg S, Williams P (1999) Quorum-sensing cross talk: isolation and chemical characterization of cyclic dipeptides from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and other gram-negative bacteria. Mol Microbiol 33:1254–1266

Huang JH, Elzinga EJ, Brechbuehl Y, Viegelin A, Kretzschmr R (2011) Impacts of *Shewanella putrefaciens* strain CN-32 cells and extracellular polymeric substances on the sorption of As(V) and As(III) on Fe(III)-hydroxides. Environ Sci Technol 45:2804–2810

Hughes DT, Sperandio V (2008) Inter-kingdom signalling: communication between bacteria and their hosts. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:111–120

Ingham CJ, Jacob EB (2008) Swarming and complex pattern formation in *Paenibacillus vortex* studied by imaging and tracking cells. BMC Microbiol 8:36

Ingham PW, Nakano Y, Seger C (2011) Mechanisms and functions of Hedgehog signalling across the metazoa. Nat Rev Genet 12:393–406

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jakovleva J, Teppo A, Velts A, Sauma S, Moor H, Kivisar M, Teras R (2012) Fis regulates the competitiveness of *Pseudomonas putida* on barley roots by inducing biofilm formation. Microbiology 158(3):708–720

Janczarek M, Skorupska A (2011) Modulation of rosR expression and exopolysaccharide production in *Rhizobium leguminosarum* pv. *trifolii* by clover root exudates. Int J Mol Sci 12:4132–4155

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Ji G, Beavis RC, Novick RP (1995) Cell density control of staphylococcal virulence mediated by an octapeptide pheromone. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92:12055–12059

Ji X, Lu G, Gai Y, GAo H, Lu B, Kong B, Mu Z (2010) Colonization of *Morus alba* L. by the plant-growth-promoting and antagonist bacterium *Burkholderia cepacia* strain Lu10-1. BMC Microbiol 10:243–254

Kawabuchi M, Hara Y, Nihira T, Yamada Y (1997) Production of butyrolactone autoregulators by *Streptomyces coelicolor* A3(2). FEMS Microbiol Lett 157:81–85

Kawaguchi T, Azuma M, Horinouchi S, Beppu T (1988) Effect of B-factor and its analogous on rifamycin biosynthesis in Nocardia sp. J Antibiot 41:360–365

Kearns DB, Losick R (2003) Swarming motility in undomesticated *Bacillus subtilis*. Mol Microbiol 49:581–590

Kennedy A (2005) Rhizosphere. In: Sylvia D, Fuhrmann J, Hartel P, Zuberer D (eds) Principles and applications of soil microbiology, 2nd edn. Pearson Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, pp 242–262

Kent AD, Triplett EW (2002) Microbial communities and their interactions in soil and rhizosphere ecosystems. Annu Rev Microbiol 56:211–236

Khan N, Mishra A, Chauhan PS, Sharma YK, Nautiyal CS (2012) *Paenibacillus lentimorbus* enhances growth of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) in chromium-amended soil. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 101:453–459

Kim C, Kecskes ML, Deaker RJ, Gilchrist K, New PB, Kennedy IR, Kim S, Sa T (2005) Wheat root colonization and nitrogenase activity by *Azospirillum* isolates from crop plants in Korea. Can J Microbiol 51:948–956

Köhler T, Curty LK, Barja F, van Delden C, Pechère J-C (2000) Swarming of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is dependent on cell-to-cell signaling and requires flagella and pili. J Bacteriol 182(21):5990–5996

Kumar R, Bhatia R, Kukreja K, Behl RK, Dudeja SS, Narula N (2007) Establishment of *Azotobacter* on plant roots: chemotactic response, development and analysis of root exudates of cotton (*Gossypium hirsutum* L.) and wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) J Basic Microbiol 47:436–439

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP,

Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Kysciak D, Schmeisser C, Preus S, Riethauen J, Quitschau M, Grond S, Streit WR (2011) Involvement of multiple loci in quorum quenching of autoinducer I molecules in the nitrogen-fixing symbiont *Rhizobium* (*Sinorhizobium*) sp. Strain NGR234. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:5089–5099

Lalaouna D, Fochesato S, Sanchez L, Schmitt-Kopplin P, Haas D, Heulin T, Achouak W (2012) Phenotypic switching involves GacS/GacA dependent Rsm small RNAs in *Pseudomonas rassicaceraum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:1658–1665

LaSarre B, Federle MJ (2013) Exploiting quorum sensing to confuse bacterial pathogens. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 77:73–111

Lazazzera BA, Solomon JM, Grossman AD (1997) An exported peptide functions intracellularly to contribute to cell density signaling in *B. subtilis*. Cell 89:917–925

Li Y, Hanna M, Svensater G, Ellen R, Cvitkovitch D (2001) Cell density modulates acid adaptation in *Streptococcus mutans*: implications for survival in biofilms. J Bacteriol 183:6875–6884

Lindum PW, Anthoni U, Christophersen C, Eberl L, Molin S, Givskov M (1998) N-acyl-L-homoserine lactone autoinducers control production of an extracellular lipopeptide biosurfactant required for swarming motility of *Serratia liquefaciens* MG1. J Bacteriol 180:6384–6388

Liu X, Zhao H, Chen S (2006) Colonization of maize and rice plants by strain *Bacillus megaterium* C4. Curr Microbiol 52(3):186–190

Liu Y, Wang H, Sun X, Yang H, Wang Y, Song W (2011) Study on mechanisms of colonization of nitrogen-fixing PGPB *Klebsiella pneumonia* NG14 on the root surface of rice and the formation of biofilm. Curr Microbiol 62(4):1113–1122

Loh J, Carlson RW, York WS, Stacey G (2002) Bradyoxetin, a unique chemical signal involved in symbiotic gene regulation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:14446–14451

Lyon GJ, Novick RP (2004) Peptide signaling in *Staphylococcus aureus* and other gram-positive bacteria. Peptides 25:1389–1403

Manefield M, Turner SL (2002) Quorum sensing in context: out of molecular biology and into microbial ecology. Microbiology 148:3762–3764

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Matilla MA, Pizarro-Tobias P, Roca A, Fernandez M, Duque E, Molina L, Wu X, Lelie DVD, Gomez MJ, Segura A, Ramos JL (2011) Complete genome of the plant growth promoting rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida* BIRD-1. J Bacteriol 193:1290

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1, 2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (Pisum sativum L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mendelson NH, Salhi B (1996) Patterns of reporter gene expression in the phase diagram of *Bacillus subtilis* colony forms. J Bacteriol 178:1980–1989

Miller MB, Bassler BL (2001) Quorum sensing in bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 55:165–199

Munch C, Neu T, Kuschk P, Roske I (2016) The root surface as the definitive detail for microbial transformation processes in constructed wetlands – a biofilm characteristic. Water Sci Technol 56(3):271–276

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Neumann G (2007) Root exudates and nutrient cycling. In: Marschner P, Rengel Z (eds) Nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems. Springer, Berlin, pp 123–157

Newton JA, Fray RG (2004) Integration of environmental and host derived signals with quorum sensing during plant–microbe interactions. Cell Microbiol 6:213–224

Nihorimbere V, Marc Ongena M, Smargiassi M, Thonart P (2011) Beneficial effect of the rhizosphere microbial community for plant growth and health. Biotechnol Agron Soc Environ 15:327–337

Nihorimbere V, Cawoy H, Seyer A, Brunelle A, Thonart P, Ongena M (2012) Impact of rhizosphere factors on cyclic lipopeptide signature from the plant beneficial strain *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* S499. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 79:176–191

Novick RP (2003) Autoinduction and signal transduction in the regulation of staphylococcal virulence. Mol Microbiol 48:1429–1449

Ochsner UA, Reiser J (1995) Autoinducer-mediated regulation of rhamnolipid biosurfactant synthesis in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92:6424–6428

Ochsner UA, Koch AK, Fiechter A, Reiser J (1994) Isolation and characterization of a regulatory gene affecting rhamnolipid biosurfactant synthesis in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. J Bacteriol 176:2044–2054

Papenfort K, Bassler BL (2016) Quorum sensing signal-response systems in gram-negative bacteria. Nat Rev 14:576–588

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pearson JP, Pesci EC, Iglewski BH (1997) Roles of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* las and rhl quorum-sensing systems in control of elastase and rhamnolipid biosynthesis genes. J Bacteriol 179:5756–5767

Pesci EC, Pearson JP, Seed PC, Iglewski BH (1997) Regulation of las and rhl quorum sensing in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. J Bacteriol 179:3127–3132

Podile AR, Vukanti RVNR, Sravani A, Kalam S, Dutta S, Durgeshwar P, Paparao V (2014) Root colonization and quorum sensing are the driving forces of plant. Proc Indian Natl Sci Acad 80:407–413

Pongsilp N, Triplett EW, Sadowsky MJ (2005) Detection of homoserine lactone-like quorum sensing molecules in *Bradyrhizobium* strains. Curr Microbiol 51:250–254

Popat R, Cornforth DM, McNally L, Brown SP (2015) Collective sensing and collective responses in quorum-sensing bacteria. J R Soc Interface 12:20140882

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Prasanna R, Pattnaik S, Sugitha TC, Nain L, Saxena AK (2011) Development of cyanobacterium based biofilms and their in vitro evaluation for agriculturally useful traits. Folia Microbiol 56:49–58

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Quinones B, Dulla G, Lindow SE (2005) Quorum sensing regulates exopolysaccharide production, motility, and virulence in *Pseudomonas syringae*. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:682–693

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rahim R, Ochsner UA, Olvera C, Graninger M, Messner P, Lam JS, Soberon-Chávez G (2001) Cloning and functional characterization of the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* rhlC gene that encodes rhamnosyltransferase 2, an enzyme responsible for di-rhamnolipid biosynthesis. Mol Microbiol 40:708–718

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reuter K, Steinbachs A, Helms V (2016) Interfering with bacterial quorum sensing. Perspect Med Chem 8:1–15

Rietdorf J, Siegert F, Weijer C (1996) Analysis of optical density wave propagation and cell movement during mound formation in *Dictyostelium discoideum*. Dev Biol 177:427–438

Ron EZ, Rosenberg E (2011) Natural roles in biosurfactants. Environ Microbiol 3:229–236

Rosas SB, Avanzini G, Carlier E, Pasluosta C, Pastor N, Rovera M (2009) Root colonization and growth promotion of wheat and maize by *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1. Soil Biol Biochem 4:1802–1806

Rosenbluh A, Nir R, Sahar E, Rosenberg E (1989) Cell-density dependent lysis and sporulation of *Myxococcus xanthus* in agarose microbeads. J Bacteriol 171:4923–4929

Ryan RP, Fouhy Y, Garcia BF, Watt SA, Niehaus K, Yang L, Tolker-Nielsen T, Dow JM (2008) Interspecies signaling via the *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* diffusible signal factor influences biofilm formation and polymyxin tolerance in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Mol Microbiol 68:75–86

Sachdev DP, Cameotra SS (2013) Biosurfactants in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Botechnol 97(3):1005–1016

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sandhya V, Ali SKZ, Grover M, Reddy G, Venkateswarlu B (2009) Alleviation of drought stress effects in sunflower seedlings by the exopolysaccharides producing Pseudomonas putida strain GAP-P45. Biol Fertil Soils 46(1):17–26

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. In the Adaptive soil management: from theory to practices, p 69–88. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Schaefer AL, Greenberg EP, Oliver CM, Oda Y, Huang JJ, Bittan-Banin G, Peres CM, Schmidt S, Juhaszova K, Sufrin JR, Harwood CS (2008) A new class of homoserine lactone quorum-sensing signals. Nature 454:595–599

Schauder S, Bassler BL (2001) The languages of bacteria. Genes Dev 15:1468–1480

Schue M, Fekete A, Ortet P, Brutesco C, Heulin T, Schmitt-Kopplin P, Achiuak W, Santelia C (2011) Modulation of metabolism and switching to biofilm prevail over exopolysaccharide production in the response of *Rhizobium alamii* to cadmium. PLoS One 611:e26771

Shaaban MI, Bar FMA, El-Mahdy AM, Shokralla S (2016) Quorum sensing inhibiting activity of *Streptomyces coelicoflavus* isolated from soil. Front Microbiol 7:659–671

Shankar M, Ponraj P, Ilakkiam D, Gunasekaran P (2011) Root colonization of rice growth promoting strain of *Enterobacter cloacae*. J Basic Microbiol 51(5):523–530

Sharma A, Sahgal M, Johri BN (2003) Microbial communication in the rhizosphere: operation of quorum sensing. Curr Sci 85:1164–1172

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Sheludko AV, Shirokov AA, Sokolova MK, Sokolov OI, Petrova LP, Matora LY, Katsy EI (2010) Wheat root colonization by *Azospirillum brasilense* strains with different motility. Microbiology 9(5):6887–6695

Shen X, Chen M, Hu H, Wang W, Peng H, Xu P, Zhang X (2012) Genome sequence of *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* GP72, a root-colonizing biocontrol strain. J Bacteriol 194(5):1269–1270

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sigler WV, Nakatsu CH, Reicher ZJ, Turco RR (2001) Fate of the biological control agent *Pseudomonas aureofaciens* TX-1 after application to turfgrass. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:3542–3548

Silby MW, Levy SB (2004) Use of *in vivo* expression technology to identify genes important in growth and survival of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf0-1 in soil: discovery of expressed sequences with novel genetic organization. J Bacteriol 186:7411–7419

Simao-Beaunoir A-M, Roy S, Beaulieu C (2009) Microbial traits associated with actinobacteria interacting with plants. In: Bouarab K, Brisson N, Daayf F (eds) Molecular plant–microbe interactions. CAB International, USA, p 299

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP,

Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh G, Mukerji K (2006) Root exudates as determinant of rhizospheric microbial diversity. In: Mukerji K, Manoharachary C, Singh J (eds) Microbial activity in the rhizosphere. Springer, Berlin, pp 39–53

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Solomon JM, Lazazzera BA, Grossman AD (1996) Purification and characterization of an extracellular peptide factor that affects two different developmental pathways in *Bacillus subtilis*. Genes Dev 10:2014–2024

Steidle A, Sigl K, Schuhegger R, Ihring A, Schmid M, Gantner S, Stofllels M, Riedel K, Givskov M, Hartmann A, Langebartels C, Eberl L (2001) Visualization of N-acylhomoserine lactone-mediated cell–cell communication between bacteria colonizing the tomato rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:5761–5770

Stephens PA, Sutherland WJ (1999) Consequences of the Allee effect for behaviour, ecology and conservation. Trends Ecol Evol 14:401–405

Sturme MH, Francke C, Siezen RJ, de Vos WM, Kleerebezem M (2007) Making sense of quorum sensing in lactobacilli: a special focus on *Lactobacillus plantarum* WCFS1. Microbiology 153:3939–3947

Swift S, Williams P, Stewart GSAB (1999) *N*-acylhomoserine lactones and quorum sensing in proteobacteria. In: Dunny GM, Winans S (eds) Cell-cell signalling in bacteria. Am. Soc. Microbiol, Washington, DC, pp 291–313

Taga ME, Bassler BL (2003) Chemical communication among bacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:14549–14554

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Teplitski M, Robinson JB, Bauer WD (2000) Plants secrete substances that mimic bacterial N-acyl homoserine lactone signal activities and affect population density-dependent behaviours in associated bacteria. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 13:637–648

Trivedi P, Spann TM, Wang N (2011) Isolation and characterization of beneficial bacteria associated with citrus roots in Florida. Microb Ecol 62(2):324–336

Van Hamme JD, Singh A, Ward OP (2006) Physiological aspects. Part 1 in a series of papers devoted to surfactants in microbiology and biotechnology. Biotechnol Adv 24:604–620

Van Nieuwenhove C, Van Holm L, Kulasooriya SA, Vlassak K, Van Holm L (2004) Establishment of *Azorhizobium caulinodans* in the rhizosphere of wetland rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) Biol Fertil Soils 31:143–149

van Oss C, Panfilov A, Hogeweg P, Siegert F, Weijer C (1996) Spatial pattern formation during aggregation of the slime mould *Dictyostelium discoideum*. J Theor Biol 181:203–213

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Velicer GJ (2003) Social strife in the microbial world. Trends Microbiol 11:330–337

Vendeville A, Winzer K, Heurlier K, Tang CM, Hardie KR (2005) Making 'sense' of metabolism: autoinducer-2, LuxS and pathogenic bacteria. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:383–396

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi, India. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of Indo-Gangetic Plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Walker TS, Bais HP, Grotewold E, Vivanco JM (2003) Root exudation and rhizosphere biology. Plant Physiol 132:44–51

Waters CM, Bassler BL (2005) Quorum sensing: cell-to-cell communication in bacteria. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 21:319–346

Waters CM, Bassler BL (2006) The *Vibrio harveyi* quorum-sensing system uses shared regulatory components to discriminate between multiple autoinducers. Genes Dev 20:2754–2767

Wei HL, Zhang LQ (2006) Quorum-sensing system influences root colonization and biological control ability in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* 2P24. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 89:267–280

White CE, Winans SC (2007) Cell-cell communication in the plant pathogen *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. Philos Trans R Soc Lond Ser B Biol Sci 362:1135–1148

Williams A, Wilkinson A, Krehenbrink M, Russo DM, Zorreguieta A, Downie JA (2008) Glucomannan-mediated attachment of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* to pea root hairs is required for competitive nodule infection. J Bacteriol 190:4706–4715

Williamson LL, Borlee BR, Schloss PD, Guan C, Allen HK, Handelsman J (2005) Intracellular screen to identify metagenomic clones that induce or inhibit a quorum-sensing biosensor. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:6335–6344

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yamada Y, Nihira T (1998) Microbial hormones and microbial chemical ecology. In: Barton DHR, Nakanishi K (eds) Comprehensive natural products chemistry, vol 8. Elsevier, Oxford, pp 377–413

Yamada Y, Sugamura K, Kondo K, Yanagimoto M, Okada H (1987) The structure of inducing factors for virginiamycin production in *Streptomyces virginias*. J Antibiot 40:496–504

Yamaga F, Washio A, Morikawa M (2010) Sustainable biodegradation of phenol by *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* P23 isolated from the rhizosphere of duckweed *Lemna aoukkiusa*. Environ Sci Technol 44:470–6474

Yang J, Kharbanda PD, Mirza M (2004) Evaluation of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* pkb1for biocontrol of Pythium disease of cucumber in a hydroponic system. Acta Horticult 635:59–66

Yang M, Sun K, Zhou L, Yang R, Zhong Z, Zhu J (2009) Functional analysis of three AHL autoinducer synthase genes in *Mesorhizobium loti* reveals the important role of quorum sensing in symbiotic nodulation. Can J Microbiol 55:210–214

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahavi A, Ralt D (1984) Social adaptation in myxobacteria. In: Rosenberg E (ed) Myxobacteria: development and cell interactions. Springer-Verlag, New York, pp 215–220

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Horizontal Gene Transfer in Soil and the Rhizosphere: Impact on Ecological Fitness of Bacteria

6

Meenu Maheshwari, Hussein H. Abulreesh,
Mohammad Shavez Khan, Iqbal Ahmad, and John Pichtel

Abstract

The ecological fitness of soil- and root-associated bacterial communities is a key element for soil fertility and plant health as well as plant stress tolerance. Genetic variability in bacterial populations is maintained through mutation and gene acquisition. Horizontal gene transfer (HGT) is accomplished by conjugation, transformation, and transduction both in vitro and under natural conditions. Mobile genetic elements (MGEs) play a significant role in gene dissemination in bacterial communities and increase their adaptability, survival, and ability to colonize different environmental niches. In this context, bacterial conjugative plasmids encoding resistance genes, degradative genes, and tolerance to stress conditions are of much significance. The biofilm mode of bacterial growth further enhances gene exchange and increase the fitness and competitiveness of bacteria. Microcosm studies reveal a number of factors influencing the HGT process in soil. Considering the importance of HGT, a better understanding of genetic processes in the rhizosphere will further help in effective exploitation of naturally engineered bacteria for sustainable agriculture.

M. Maheshwari • M.S. Khan
Department of Agricultural Microbiology, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh 202002, India

H.H. Abulreesh
Department of Biology, Faculty of Applied Science, Umm Al- Qura University,
Makkah, Saudi Arabia

I. Ahmad (✉)
Department of Agricultural Microbiology, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh 202002, India

Department of Biology, Faculty of Applied Science, Umm Al- Qura University,
Makkah, Saudi Arabia
e-mail: iqbalahmad8@yahoo.co.in

J. Pichtel
Natural Resources and Environmental Management, Ball State University, Muncie, IN, USA

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_6

Keywords
Bacteria • Horizontal gene transfer • Conjugative plasmid • Microcosm • Biofilm • Rhizosphere • Ecological fitness

6.1 Introduction

Horizontal gene transfer (HGT) refers to the transfer of genetic material between prokaryotes. The process occurs in one of three ways: (1) transformation (the uptake of free DNA by competent bacteria from the surrounding environment), (2) transduction (gene transfer mediated by bacteriophages), and (3) conjugation (gene transfer by means of plasmids or integrative conjugative elements). Conjugation is the process by which a DNA molecule (i.e., plasmid or conjugative transposon) is transferred from a donor cell to a physically attached recipient cell via some conjugation apparatus (Zechner et al. 2000). Although most conjugative plasmids shared common mechanistic principles, e.g., synthesis of conjugative pili, there is a remarkable diversity of conjugative systems in Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, depending on the shape and other characteristics of the plasmid-encoded pili. Nonconjugative plasmids are transferred to recipient cells by mobilizing/helper plasmids (Heuer and Smalla 2007). Transfer of conjugative plasmids or transposons has been demonstrated to occur in various ecological habitats, for example, the plant surface, rhizosphere, surface water, and human and animal intestines (Aminov 2011; Madsen et al. 2012; Huddleston 2014; Juhas 2015; Pinto-Carbo et al. 2016; Sun et al. 2016). In contrast to conjugation, transduction provides a means of DNA acquisition in which nonviral DNA is transferred from an infected host bacterium to a new host via infectious or noninfectious virus particles (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a, b).

Defective phage particles released from lysed host cells attach to new host cells and deliver their DNA into the new host. The injected bacterial DNA is subsequently integrated into the recipient genome. Unlike conjugation, transduction does not require cell-to-cell contact; however, most bacteriophages infect only a narrow range of hosts (Wommack and Colwell 2000). Evidence for the importance of transduction as an HGT process in the natural environment arises from studies on the abundance of bacteriophages in different settings, primarily soil (Ashelford et al. 2003) and from bacterial genome sequences (Canchaya et al. 2003). The role of bacteriophages in contributing various genes to bacterial genera of medical and ecological significance is well documented (Weitz et al. 2013; Broszat and Grohmann 2014; Dalmasso et al. 2014; Chen et al. 2015; Obeng et al. 2016).

Horizontal gene transfer plays an important role in formulating bacterial genomes, promoting intra- and interspecies variability and distributing functional genetic modules within communities. HGT provides a means for enhanced understanding of ecological adaptation and bacterial evolution in the biosphere. Extensive gene exchange during bacterial evolution is made evident by the marked similarity of genes among distantly related species, variation of gene content between closely related strains, and incongruent phylogenetic trees. Horizontal gene transfer is a major force in bacterial evolution; a well-documented example of HGT is the spread of antibiotic resistance genes among pathogenic and nonpathogenic bacteria (Barlow 2009; Boto 2010; Davies and Davies 2010; Abulreesh 2011, 2012; Baltrus 2013; Wellington et al. 2013). The driving force for the acquisition of foreign genes via HGT is believed to be the need for bacteria to overcome environmental stresses for survival and to compete successfully in their ecological niches (Hacker and Kaper 2000).

Mobile genetic elements (MGEs) such as plasmids, bacteriophages, integrative conjugative elements, transposons, insertion sequences (IS) elements, integrons, gene cassettes, and genomic islands are the key vehicles among HGT mechanisms. In many species, a high proportion of horizontally transferred genes can be attributed to plasmid-, phage-, or transposon-related sequences, as remnants of these mobile elements have been located adjacent to genes identified as horizontally transferred (Ochman et al. 2000; Brussow et al. 2004; Frost et al. 2005; Gyles and Boerlin 2013). It has been suggested that MGEs add some metabolic burden to their host, and adaptation occurs to minimize this impact (Dahlberg and Chao 2003; Heuer et al. 2007). The prevalence of plasmids, however, indicates that they benefit bacteria and compensate for any burden they might impose on the cell. Plasmids persist because bacterial communities and their environments are continuously changing; the variability carried by these genetic elements increases the speed at which adapted strains arise, and the adapted strains retain the MGE so they can propagate rapidly (Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015f, 2016a; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

The MGEs that enhance an organism's adaptability evolve and survive at the expense of those that do not. Thus, MGEs confer an improved fitness to the bacterial community and its ability to colonize different environmental niches. MGEs additionally increase the possibility of new strains arising with novel or increased selective advantages over neighboring communities. Metagenomic approaches have revealed a large and untapped diversity of resident MGEs in soil- and plant-associated bacteria. Approximately 18% of bacterial isolates from the phytosphere of sugar beets was found to contain plasmids (Powell et al. 1993), and a large proportion were able to mobilize non-self-transferable but mobilizable Inc-Q plasmids (Kobayashi and Bailey 1994). The extensive presence of plasmid-related sequences in soil DNA (directly extracted) indicates a significant abundance of plasmids in soil (Heuer et al. 2009). The abundance of transferable plasmids in soil is believed to be related to the presence of contaminants (e.g., antibiotics, xenobiotics). Several studies have indicated that genes encoding the enzymes involved in catabolism of environmental pollutants are present on plasmids (Smets and Barkay 2005; Kopmann et al. 2013).

Different methods involving various molecular techniques have been employed to detect and study soil plasmid structure, organization and function (Heuer and Smalla 2012). Moreover, metagenomics methods such as pyrosequencing of soil DNA have proved to be highly sensitive and have led to the discovery of novel plasmid sequences (Kristiansson et al. 2011). Genome sequencing data have revealed the modular character of conjugative plasmids, where different modules (e.g., a compactly arranged gene) are dedicated toward carrying out specific functions (de la Cueva-Méndez and Pimentel 2007; Norman et al. 2009). The overall genetic makeup of conjugative plasmids can be divided into four distinct categories of modules: (1) modules affecting plasmid replication and copy control, (2) modules affecting plasmid stability, (3) modules affecting plasmid propagation, and (4) modules affecting plasmid host adaptation, along with numerous other subcategories (Norman et al. 2009). The first three categories are considered "plasmid core" or plasmid "backbone" genes. Sequence analysis of plasmid backbone genes is considered a consistent and reliable foundation for plasmid classification, as opposed to traditionally used methods (Heuer and Smalla 2012). Apart from plasmid backbone genes, a highly diverse, accessory, or flexible set of genes within soil plasmids occurs as a fourth module which carries genes responsible for environmental adaptation. These accessory genes often differ greatly among plasmids with identical plasmid backbones and impart the ability to adapt to varied environmental conditions such as exposure to antibiotics, heavy metals, and xenobiotics (Dennis 2005; Schluter et al. 2007; Heuer et al. 2009).

Degradative genes resident on MGEs have been isolated successfully from soil treated with the herbicide 2, 4-D but not from untreated control soil. Similarly, self-transferable plasmids which confer resistance toward antibiotics have been isolated from animal manures used for soil fertilization (Heuer and Smalla 2007; van Overbeek et al. 2002). Sequencing of plant-associated bacteria reveal that many phytopathogenic and symbiotic bacteria carry plasmids (Zhao et al. 2005; Bardaji et al. 2011), pathogenicity islands (Gardiner et al. 2014), or integrons (Gillings et al. 2005). These studies reveal the significance of horizontal gene transfer in bacterial adaptation and evolution under changing environmental conditions (Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016b; Teotia et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

In recent years, the importance of biofilm formation and its relationship to gene transfer has received significant attention (Burmolle et al. 2014; Stalder and Top 2016). It is well recognized that horizontal gene transfer via plasmids occurs more effectively on surfaces, e.g., in biofilms than among planktonic cells. Biofilms are highly structured bacterial communities embedded in a self-produced matrix composed of exopolysaccharides (EPSs), proteins, and DNA. These films adhere to biological and non-biological surfaces (Hall-Stoodley et al. 2004) and provide a favorable environment for genetic elements to be transferred horizontally. Rhizobacterial biofilms associated with plant roots support bacterial survival and host plant colonization, reduce biotic and abiotic plant stress, and enhance agricultural productivity (Lopez et al. 2010; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Meena et al. 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b). All these advantages conferred by biofilms are directly or indirectly associated with a high frequency of horizontal gene transfer in the biofilm mode of growth. In this chapter, we focus on horizontal gene transfer in soil- or plant-associated (rhizosphere) bacteria that contribute to

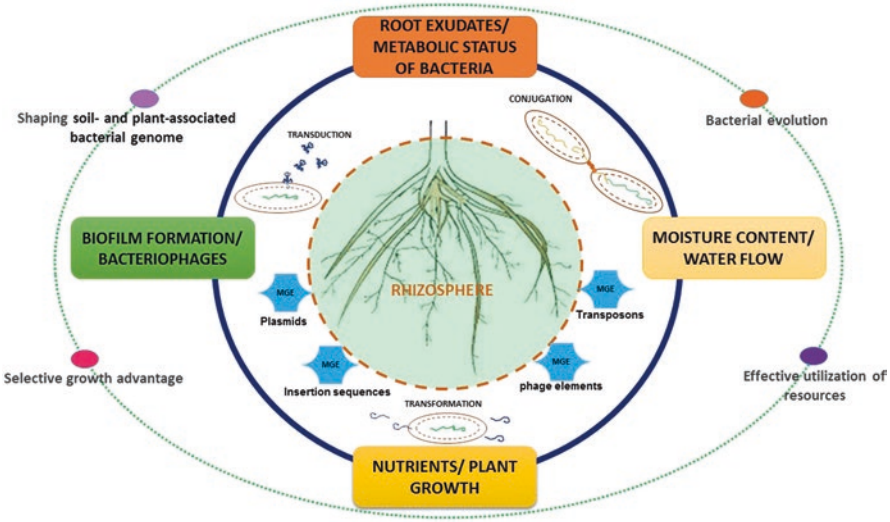


Fig. 6.1 Gene transfer in the rhizosphere: mechanisms, factors, and outcomes

genetic variation in microbial populations and ultimately broaden their range of environmental niches by increasing their fitness and competitiveness (Fig. 6.1).

6.2 HGT in Environment and Its Role in Evolution of the Bacterial Genome

Discovery of the transferable nature of multidrug resistance by Watanabe in 1963 resulted in the recognition of horizontal gene transfer. Since then, HGT has become a topic of extensive investigation worldwide, particularly in medical microbiology. The occurrence of HGT among bacteria in the natural environment was subsequently recognized; such processes are believed to relate to the risk of genetically modified bacteria released into the environment (Heuer and Smalla 2012). In view of the use of genetically modified (GM) crops and microbes in agricultural settings, the role of mobile genetic elements (MGE; plasmids, transposons, bacteriophages, etc.) associated with plant and soil and factors influencing this mobility has received attention from many scientists (Smalla et al. 2000; van Elsas and Bailey 2002). Studies have demonstrated that HGT is a major, if not the dominant force in bacterial evolution (Frost et al. 2005; Davies and Davies 2010; Wiedenbeck and Cohan 2011; Dutta and Sarkar 2015; Navarre 2016). Up to 20% of a typical bacterial genome acquired from other species and MGE acts as a vector for HGT (Ochman et al. 2000).

HGT affects only those bacteria that readily exchange genes, and members of such rapidly exchanging communities have shown similar characteristics such as genome size, GC content, carbon utilization, and oxygen tolerance (Jain et al. 2003).

On the other hand, considerable evidence indicates that HGT is an ongoing process that plays a primary role in real-time ecological adaptations of prokaryotes (Smets and Barkay 2005). MGEs play an essential role in the process by shaping the bacterial genome, promoting intraspecies variability, and distributing functional genetic modules among communities. Consequently, HGT of genetic modules that allows adaptation to rapidly changing biotic interactions has frequently been observed (Smets and Barkay 2005). The interactions include:

1. Antibiotics production by microorganisms
2. Dissemination of antibiotic resistance
3. Release of xenobiotics or new secondary metabolites
4. Dissemination of degradative gene and pathway assemblies (McManus et al. 2002; Top and Springael 2003; Larrain-Linton et al. 2006)
5. Symbiotic or pathogenic interactions and speed of the spread of genomic islands (Arnold et al. 2007; Heuer and Smalla 2012)

The most widely studied examples of genetic exchange through HGT in natural environments is the dissemination of multiple antibiotic resistance via MGE, which allows bacterial populations to adapt rapidly to strong selective pressures (Cordero et al. 2012; Wellington et al. 2013; Ojala et al. 2014). MGEs involved in transmission of antibiotic resistance include combinatorial genetic evolution of MDR facilitated by transposons, IS elements, and integrons. Transposable elements like ISCRs (insertion sequence common regions) mobilize DNA adjacent to their insertion site via rolling circle replication (Toleman et al. 2006). ISCRs are closely associated with antibiotic resistance genes on conjugative plasmids (Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Masood and Bano 2016; Meena et al. 2016e).

It is interesting to observe that under natural conditions, especially in wastewater and soil, the presence of several toxic pollutants (e.g., metals and pesticides) may increase selective pressure and co-selection of resistant strains. These pollutants may further increase the ecological fitness and survivability of bacterial strains (De Lipthay et al. 2008; Imfeld and Vuilleumier 2012). Various degradative plasmids have been characterized from bacteria which degrade PCBs, chloroaniline, and other recalcitrant molecules (Merlin et al. 1999; Boon et al. 2001; Springael and Top 2004). Many self-transferable plasmids participate directly in active gene transfer. Russell et al. (2011) reviewed the evolutionary trends of enzymatic machinery involved in the degradation of xenobiotics and concluded that horizontal gene transfer among bacteria is one of the major determinants in the acquisition of new and efficient enzymatic functions. New enzymatic pathways have emerged from a wide variety of enzyme families.

Metagenomic mapping studies for two discretely located hexachlorocyclohexane (HCH)-degrading strains of *Sphingobium japonicum* (*Sphingobium japonicum* UT26 from Japan and *Sphingobium indicum* B90A from India) have shown that the previous common ancestor was unable to degrade HCH isomers, but descendants acquired degrading genes by transposon-mediated HGT (Sangwan et al. 2014). Likewise, Pearce et al. (2015) showed that different HCH-degrading bacteria yielded a distinct set of metabolites during degradation of HCH isomers. The analysis confirmed the role of horizontal transfer mediated by an insertion sequence in the acquisition of the pathway.

6.3 Gene Transfer in the Rhizosphere

Among the conditions occurring within the phytosphere, the rhizosphere is optimally suited for the growth and intensive interaction among microbial communities. The availability of essential elements (C, N, P, K), moisture, and other critical constituents (e.g., organic acids) in the vicinity of plant roots make the rhizosphere the preferred site for gene transfer, such that it is referred to as a "hotspot" for genetic evolution (van Elsas et al. 2003). The rhizosphere provides an ideal environment for HGT processes and may support rapid adaptation of bacteria against environmental changes as compared with bulk soil. Conjugative plasmid transfer frequency between bacterial species is enhanced under high nutrient availability and water movement (Kroer et al. 1998). Bacterial colonization and adherence to the root surface in response to the presence of root exudates impart significant effects on gene transfer.

Due to intimate contact among cells and higher metabolic activity in response to the presence of an ample nutrient supply, elevated plasmid transfer in the rhizosphere has been observed (Kroer et al. 1998; van Elsas et al. 2003). Musovic et al. (2006) demonstrated the exceptionally broad host range of the pKJK10 plasmid in the barley rhizosphere. They describe the potential of mobile genetic elements, crossing large phylogenetic distances, i.e., gene swapping between Actinobacteria and Proteobacteria, in bacterial evolution. Organic acids and other constituents of root exudates stimulate the transformation in *Acinetobacter* sp. BD413 (pFG4) in sterile soils. The organic acids, acetate, lactate, and alanine, resulted in the highest transformation frequencies (Nielsen and van Elsas 2001). Molbak et al. (2007) studied conjugal transfer in the rhizospheres of pea and barley. The experiments showed that a higher rate of root exudation and root growth rate in pea was responsible for higher conjugal frequency. The distribution pattern of donors on pea roots was shown to affect genetic transfer. Transfer of the plasmid RP4 derivative between *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Serratia* sp. was studied in a sand microcosm and found to be related to the availability of root exudates and bacterial metabolic activity (Kroer et al. 1998). Regardless, however, the direct relationship between the metabolic activity of transforming bacteria and gene transfer is in need of further investigation (Meena et al. 2013c, 2015a; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Singh et al. 2015; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

Genetic transfer of various contaminant-degrading genes has also been shown to take place effectively in the rhizosphere and is concurrently responsible for enhanced plant growth (Wang et al. 2007, 2014a, b; Jia et al. 2013). Using an in silico metagenomic prediction method, Cabezon et al. (2015) and Lopes et al. (2016) revealed a significantly higher abundance of predicted genes associated with HGT in the rhizosphere compared with bulk soil. The pilus assembly protein CpaE and type IV pilus assembly protein PilV as well as genes involved in transformation/conjugation, such as the type IV secretion system proteins VirB4, VirB5, VirB6, and VirB9, among other transduction and transformation stimulating genes, were prevalent in the rhizosphere.

Bacteriophages present in the rhizosphere serve as another important agent responsible for genetic variation and evolution of indigenous bacterial communities. Because phage DNA is often packaged in relatively resilient phage coats, it is possible that transducing phages provide a reservoir of bacterial genes under localized conditions where the host may not survive (Van Elsas et al. 2003). Studies have shown that soil conditions affect the burst size of the lytic phage thus indirectly affecting the frequency of gene transfer and lysogeny (Burroughs et al. 2000). One of the mechanisms responsible for interspecies gene transfer in the rhizosphere is the overlapping susceptibility to phages among bacterial communities (Ashelford et al. 2000). Ashelford et al. (2003) highlighted the importance of soil bacteriophages in controlling bacterial populations and in mediating gene transfer in soil. Moreover, studies have shown that the lysogenic mode is preferable and common under different soil environments (Williamson et al. 2007; Ghosh et al. 2008).

Biofilm development and succession of microbial communities are now recognized as an important arena of rhizosphere biology. Different rhizospheric factors are known to influence bacterial biofilm formation. The beneficial effects of root exudates on biofilm development have been extensively investigated and reviewed (Bais et al. 2006; Zhang et al. 2014; Yuan et al. 2015).

6.4 Gene Transfer in Biofilms

Genetic variability among bacterial populations occurs via mutation and acquisition of new genes through various genetic exchange mechanisms. Gene transfer in a single species results in the propagation of specific traits. Interspecies gene transfer may result in an entirely new genetic combination which may be of significance to human health and the environment. The relationship between biofilms and HGT has been investigated by numerous workers (Ghigo 2001; Tormo et al. 2005; Antonova and Hammer 2011; Madsen et al. 2012; Cook and Dunny 2014). In general, HGT rates are higher in biofilm communities compared with those in the planktonic state. Biofilms are also implicated in the promotion of plasmid stability and may enhance the host range of MGEs that are being transferred (Madsen et al. 2012; Broszat and Grohmann 2014).

Several authors have reported enhanced HGT in biofilms via conjugation (Sorensen et al. 2005; Maheshwari et al. 2016); however, certain spatial constraints within biofilms may hinder the dispersal of plasmids (Krol et al. 2011; Merkey et al. 2011). Lili et al. (2007) indicated that plasmids which are maintained through high transfer frequencies may only be able to persist in biofilms. Interestingly, other mechanisms of gene transfer, for example, transformation, occur at higher rates in biofilms. Gene transfer via both small DNA fragments as well as plasmid transformation has been documented (Maeda et al. 2006; Etchuuya et al. 2011). It has been reported that competence of cells in the biofilm mode is triggered by extracellular DNA (eDNA) molecules within the biofilm matrix (Molin and Tolker-Nielsen 2003; Meena et al. 2014a, 2016c; Saha et al. 2016a; Sharma et al. 2016). Thus, transformation triggers and stabilizes biofilms and vice versa.

Conjugative pili formation is best studied among other biofilm-associated factors encoded by backbone genes of plasmids. There is much evidence in support of greater effectiveness of conjugative plasmids, compared to deficient strains, in biofilm formation (Reisner et al. 2006; Burmolle et al. 2008; Roder et al. 2013; Madsen et al. 2016). Other factor encoded by plasmid accessory regions includes different types of fimbriae and conjugative pili. These adhesions play a significant role in cell surface adherence and cell-to-cell contact, mainly in members of family Enterobacteriaceae. Three pathways in enteric bacteria are known for synthesis of surface-associated fimbriae: (1) the type IV pili pathway, (2) the nucleation pathway, and (3) the chaperone/usher pathway (Clegg et al. 2011; Madsen et al. 2012). These fimbriae perform a number of functions, and genes are located both on plasmids and on chromosomes. Several such plasmid-encoding cell surface adhesion factors are known in Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, for example, *Pseudomonas putida* TOL plasmid, *Lactococcus lactis* pAMb1, and *Azospirillum brasilense* plasmids (D'Alvise et al. 2010; Petrova et al. 2010). Thus, the plasmid's role as a social evolutionary platform has been described in accordance to plasmid functions including (a) host fitness, (b) multicopies of gene present on the plasmid, (c) high gene expression rate, (d) mobility of gene, and (e) high turnover of plasmid-encoded gene (Madsen et al. 2012).

The interconnection between biofilm formation and gene transfer has been a topic of investigation in recent years. Madsen et al. (2012) published an excellent article on this issue and concluded that plasmid biology and biofilm community structure and related functions are interconnected through various interactions at both community and genetic levels. Biofilms provide an excellent environment for bacterial interaction due to their high cell density and extensive communication network within the biofilm matrix. Since bacterial communities within biofilms are heterogeneous and often multispecific, variations within specific bacterial lineages have been recorded (Stewart and Franklin 2008). These variations provide recipients that are more accessible for plasmid transfer than in planktonic culture. Thus, bacterial genetic heterogeneity is maintained and promoted by HGT and mutation provided via the biofilm mode of growth (Jefferson 2004; Conibear et al. 2009; Rankin et al. 2011).

6.5 Gene Transfer in the Soil System

Most of our knowledge of gene exchange, however, comes from investigations of the planktonic mode. The study of gene transfer under complex natural conditions such as bulk and rhizosphere soil remains a challenging task. Many factors are known to affect gene transfer occurring in the soil system; therefore, careful investigation using soil microcosms is suggested. Hill and Top (1998) reviewed gene transfer in soil using microcosms with special focus on transfer of broad host range plasmids and catabolic soil plasmids. The importance of gene transfer in soil and other natural habitats has been recognized due to (a) interest in the possible spread of genetically modified microorganisms, (b) spread and exchange of antibiotic resistance, (c) the role of HGT in the evolution of new bacterial traits, and (d) the possible role of introducing catabolic genes to enhance bioaugmentation strategies to enhance bioremediation of soil contaminants.

Laboratory microcosms are used to assess gene transfer for a number of potential benefits as mentioned above. Although microcosms are not exact replicas of the soil system, they possess many of the same chemical and physical attributes. Microcosms must be calibrated to ensure that they reflect natural conditions (Bolton et al. 1991). Microcosms can be used to obtain vital information on (1) survival and dispersal of bacterial strains, (2) ability to compete with indigenous microflora, (3) capacity to exchange genetic information, and (4) stability of heterogeneous DNA in soil. Most of the well-studied examples mainly comprise various conjugative plasmids and their exchange by conjugation using suitable recipient strains. Some of the widely used plasmids described by Hill and Tops (1998) are RP4, RP4p (RP4::pat), pBLK1-2 (pRK2073::Tn5), RP4::Tn4371, pJP4, pEMT3k (pEMT3::mini Tn5), pEMT1k (pEMT1::miniTn) R57.b, R388::Tn1721, pLF40, pFT30, pJB5JI::Tn5, and pIJ673. Other plasmids studied include fluorescent marker-tagged plasmids such as pB10 (De Gelder et al. 2005), pKJK10 (Musovic et al. 2006; Claudia et al. 2013), gfp-tagged IncP-1α plasmid RP4 (Musovic et al. 2010), pBP136, pCAR1, NAH7 (Shintani et al. 2014), and low GC-type plasmid pHHV216 (Jechalke et al. 2013).

Soil microcosms utilized in gene transfer studies vary in complexity from simple closed vessels containing a few grams of soil in a conical flask or falcon tube to more complicated systems including vertical soil columns. Other microcosms include continuous flow reactors through which water or nutrients are percolated. Microcosms for studying bacterial interactions in the rhizosphere/rhizoplane were elaborated by Hill and Top (1998). The microcosm system adopted depends upon the objectives of the study. Care should be taken to assess the desired factors affecting gene transfer in the soil/rhizosphere (Meena et al. 2013b, 2014b, 2015b, c, d; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016). Important factors include inoculum treatment and mode of application, concentration and sampling methods, soil temperature, soil depth, concentrations of media, and types and amounts of degradable chemicals (Hill and Top 1998; Wang et al. 2014a, b). Table 6.1 shows the various soil factors affecting gene transfer studies in microcosms.

Table 6.1 Soil factors affecting gene transfer

Factors	Effects/explanation
Drying and sieving	Disturbing the soil results in poor survivability of strains and ultimately poor conjugation
Earthworm activity	Varying influence, depending upon the depth at which earthworms are present
Nutrient availability	Nutrient availability enhances survival and therefore gene transfer
Plant rhizosphere	High concentrations of root exudates and nutrients in the rhizosphere positively affect gene transfer
Selective pressure such as heavy metals or recalcitrant organics	In most of cases, heavy metals/recalcitrant organics enhance the number of transconjugants
Soil type	Soil variables such as types and amounts of clay, organic matter, pH, moisture, and incubation temperature influence gene transfer
Spatial separation between donor and recipient strains	Moisture content helps in movement and survivability of strains thus directly affecting gene transfer
Sterilization	Sterilization of soil increases transfer frequencies
Temperature	Higher transfer frequency observed at environmentally relevant soil temperatures

Adopted and modified from Hill and Top (1998)

6.6 Conclusions

The current state of understanding of HGT in soil and other natural environments demonstrates that HGT is a mechanism of bacterial chromosomal evolution which provides real-time adaptation among bacteria. HGT also provides genetic diversity through its gene pool, which helps bacteria adapt to changing environmental conditions. The availability of nutrients in the plant rhizosphere attracts bacteria, thus offering a greater opportunity for HGT compared to bulk soil. Microcosm and biofilm studies demonstrate that bacteria receive advantages and long-term ecological benefits for survival and adaptation through HGT. However, the exact mechanisms and magnitude of HGT in unsterile soil and in the rhizosphere must be explored further, as factors influencing gene transfer in such situations are complex and multifactorial.

Considering the untapped diversity of MGEs in soil- and plant-associated microbiomes, the impact of HGT on influencing plant-microbe interactions must be further explored for possible exploitation in sustainable agriculture.

Acknowledgments We thank the editors and anonymous reviewers for their constructive comments, which helped us to improve the manuscript.

References

Abulreesh HH (2011) Multidrug-resistant staphylococci in the environment. Int Conf Biotechnol Environ Manag IPCBEE 18:1–6

Abulreesh HH (2012) Salmonellae in the environment. In: Annous BA, Gurtler JB (eds) Salmonella-distribution, adaptation, control measures and technologies. Intech Open Access Publisher, Rijeka., Chapter 2, pp 19–50

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Aminov RI (2011) Horizontal gene exchange in environmental microbiota. Front Microbiol 2:158

Antonova ES, Hammer BK (2011) Quorum-sensing autoinducer molecules produced by members of a multispecies biofilm promote horizontal gene transfer to *Vibrio cholera*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 322(1):68–76

Arnold DL, Jackson RW, Waterfield NR, Mansfield JW (2007) Evolution of microbial virulence: the benefits of stress. Trends Genet 23(6):293–300

Ashelford KE, Norris SJ, Fry JC, Bailey MJ, Day MJ (2000) Seasonal population dynamics and interactions of competing bacteriophages and their host in the rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 66(10):4193–4199

Ashelford KE, Day MJ, Fry JC (2003) Elevated abundance of bacteriophage infecting bacteria in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:285–289

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bais HP, Weir TL, Perry LG, Gilroy S, Vivanco JM (2006) The role of root exudates in rhizosphere interactions with plants and other organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:233–266

Baltrus DA (2013) Exploring the costs of horizontal gene transfer. Trends Ecol Evol 28(8):489–495

Bardaji L, Pérez-Martinez I, Rodriguez-Moreno L, Rodríguez-Palenzuela P, Sundin GW, Ramos C, Murillo J (2011) Sequence and role in virulence of the three plasmid complement of the model tumor-inducing bacterium *Pseudomonas savastanoi* pv. savastanoi NCPPB 3335. PLoS One 6:e25705

Barlow M (2009) What antimicrobial resistance has taught us about horizontal gene transfer. Methods Mol Biol 532:397–411

Bolton H Jr, Fredrickson JK, Thomas JM, Shu-Mei WL, Workman DJ, Bentjen SA, Smith JL (1991) Field calibration of soil-core microcosms: ecosystem structural and functional comparisons. Microb Ecol 21(1):175–189

Boon N, Goris J, De Vos P, Verstraete W, Top EM (2001) Genetic diversity among 3-chloroaniline-and aniline-degrading strains of the Comamonadaceae. Appl Environ Microbiol 67(3):1107–1115

Boto L (2010) Horizontal gene transfer in evolution: facts and challenges. Proc Roy Soc B Biol Soc 277(1683):819–827

Broszat M, Grohmann E (2014) Horizontal gene transfer in planktonic and biofilm modes. In: Rumbaugh KP, Ahmad I (eds) Antibiofilm agents, Springer series on Biofilm 8. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 125–162. ISBN: 978-3-642-53833-9

Brüssow H, Canchaya C, Hardt W (2004) Phages and the evolution of bacterial pathogens: from genomic rearrangements to lysogenic conversion. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 68(3):560–602

Burmølle M, Bahl MI, Jensen LB, Sørensen SJ, Hansen LH (2008) Type 3 fimbriae, encoded by the conjugative plasmid pOLA52, enhance biofilm formation and transfer frequencies in Enterobacteriaceae strains. Microbiology 154(1):187–195

Burmølle M, Ren D, Bjarnsholt T, Sørensen SJ (2014) Interactions in multispecies biofilms: do they actually matter? Trends Microbiol 22(2):84–91

Burroughs NJ, Marsh P, Wellington EM (2000) Mathematical analysis of growth and interaction dynamics of streptomycetes and a bacteriophage in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 66(9):3868–3877

Cabezon E, Ripoll-Rozada J, Peña A, de la Cruz F, Arechaga I (2015) Towards an integrated model of bacterial conjugation. FEMS Microbiol Rev 39(1):81–95

Canchaya C, Proux C, Fournous G, Bruttin A, Brüssow H (2003) Prophage genomics. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 67:238–276

Chen J, Carpena N, Quiles-Puchalt N, Ram G, Novick RP, Penadés JR (2015) Intra-and intergeneric transfer of pathogenicity island-encoded virulence genes by cos phages. ISME J9(5):1260–1263

Claudia I, Ren D, Blanchet M, Dendooven L, Marsch R, Sørensen SJ, Burmølle M (2013) The ability of soil bacteria to receive the conjugative IncP1 plasmid, pKJK10, is different in a mixed community compared to single strains. FEMS Microbiol Lett 338(1):95–100

Clegg S, Wilson J, Johnson J (2011) More than one way to control hair growth: regulatory mechanisms in enterobacteria that affect fimbriae assembled by the chaperone/usher pathway. J Bacteriol 193(9):2081–2088

Conibear TC, Collins SL, Webb JS (2009) Role of mutation in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* biofilm development. PLoS One 4(7):6289

Cook LC, Dunny GM (2014) The influence of biofilms in the biology of plasmids. Microbiol Spectr 2(5):12

Cordero OX, Wildschutte H, Kirkup B, Proehl S, Ngo L, Hussain F, Le Roux F, Mincer T, Polz MF (2012) Ecological populations of bacteria act as socially cohesive units of antibiotic production and resistance. Science 337(6099):1228–1123

Dahlberg C, Chao L (2003) Amelioration of the cost of conjugative plasmid carriage in *Escherichia coli* K12. Genetics 165:1641–1649

Dalmasso M, Hill C, Ross RP (2014) Exploiting gut bacteriophages for human health. Trends Microbiol 22(7):399–405

D'Alvise PW, Sjøholm OR, Yankelevich T, Jin Y, Wuertz S, Smets B (2010) TOL plasmid carriage enhances biofilm formation and increases extracellular DNA content in *Pseudomonas putida* KT2440. FEMS Microbiol Lett 312(1):84–92

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Davies J, Davies D (2010) Origins and evolution of antibiotic resistance. Microbiol Mol Biol R 74(3):417–433

De Gelder L, Vandecasteele FP, Brown CJ, Forney LJ, Top EM (2005) Plasmid donor affects host range of promiscuous IncP-1β plasmid pB10 in an activated-sludge microbial community. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(9):5309–5317

de la Cueva-Méndez G, Pimentel B (2007) Gene and cell survival: lessons from prokaryotic plasmid R1. EMBO Rep 8(5):458–464

De Lipthay JR, Rasmussen LD, Oregaard G, Simonsen K, Bahl MI, Kroer N, Sørensen SJ (2008) Acclimation of subsurface microbial communities to mercury. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 65(1):145–155

Dennis JJ (2005) The evolution of IncP catabolic plasmids. Curr Opin Biotechnol 16(3):291–298

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Dutta C, Sarkar M (2015) Horizontal gene transfer and bacterial diversity. In: Encyclopedia of metagenomics. Springer, New York, pp 251–257

Etchuuya R, Ito M, Kitano S, Shigi F, Sobue R, Maeda S (2011) Cell-to-cell transformation in *Escherichia coli*: a novel type of natural transformation involving cell-derived DNA and a putative promoting pheromone. PLoS One 6(1):16355

Frost LS, Leplae R, Summers AO, Toussaint A (2005) Mobile genetic elements: the agents of open source evolution. Nat Rev Microbiol 3(9):722–732

Gardiner DM, Upadhyaya NM, Stiller J, Ellis JG, Dodds PN, Kazan K, Manners JM (2014) Genomic analysis of *Xanthomonas translucens* pathogenic on wheat and barley reveals cross-kingdom gene transfer events and diverse protein delivery systems. PLoS One 9(1):e84995

Ghigo JM (2001) Natural conjugative plasmids induce bacterial biofilm development. Nature 412(6845):442–445

Ghosh D, Roy K, Williamson KE, White DC, Wommack KE, Sublette KL, Radosevich M (2008) Prevalence of lysogeny among soil bacteria and presence of 16S rRNA and trzN genes in viral-community DNA. Appl Environ Microbiol 74(2):495–502

Gillings MR, Holley MP, Stokes HW, Holmes AJ (2005) Integrons in *Xanthomonas*: a source of species genome diversity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:4419–1124

Gyles C, Boerlin P (2013) Horizontally transferred genetic elements and their role in pathogenesis of bacterial disease. Vet Pathol 51(2):328–340

Hacker J, Kaper JB (2000) Pathogenicity islands and the evolution of microbes. Annu Rev Microbiol 54:641–679

Hall-Stoodley L, Costerton JW, Stoodley P (2004) Bacterial biofilms: from the natural environment to infectious diseases. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:95–108

Heuer H, Smalla K (2007) Horizontal gene transfer between bacteria. Environ Biosaf Res 6(1–2):3–13

Heuer H, Smalla K (2012) Plasmids foster diversification and adaptation of bacterial populations in soil. FEMS Microbiol Rev 36(6):1083–1104

Heuer H, Fox RE, Top EM (2007) Frequent conjugative transfer accelerates adaptation of a broad-host-range plasmid to an unfavourable *Pseudomonas putida* host. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 59:738–748

Heuer H, Kopmann C, Binh CT, Top EM, Smalla K (2009) Spreading antibiotic resistance through spread manure: characteristics of a novel plasmid type with low% G+ C content. Environ Microbiol 11(4):937–949

Hill KE, Top EM (1998) Gene transfer in soil systems using microcosms. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 25(4):319–329

Huddleston JR (2014) Horizontal gene transfer in the human gastrointestinal tract: potential spread of antibiotic resistant genes. Infect Drug Resist 7:167–176

Imfeld G, Vuilleumier S (2012) Measuring the effects of pesticides on bacterial communities in soil: a critical review. Eur J Soil Biol 49:22–30

Jain R, Rivera MC, Moore JE, Lake JA (2003) Horizontal gene transfer accelerates genome innovation and evolution. Mol Biol Evol 20(10):1598–1602

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jechalke S, Kopmann C, Richter M, Moenickes S, Heuer H, Smalla K (2013) Plasmid-mediated fitness advantage of *Acinetobacter baylyi* in sulfadiazine-polluted soil. FEMS Microbiol Lett 348(2):127–132

Jefferson KK (2004) What drives bacteria to produce a biofilm? FEMS Microbiol Lett 236(2):163–173

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Jia Y, Huang H, Zhong M, Wang FH, Zhang LM, Zhu YG (2013) Microbial arsenic methylation in soil and rice rhizosphere. Environ Sci Technol 47(7):3141–3148

Juhas M (2015) Horizontal gene transfer in human pathogens. Crit Rev Microbiol 41:101–108

Kobayashi N, Bailey MJ (1994) Plasmids isolated from the sugar beet phyllosphere show little or no homology to molecular probes currently available for plasmid typing. Microbiology 140 (2):289–296

Kopmann C, Jechalke S, Rosendahl I, Groeneweg J, Krögerrecklenfort E, Zimmerling U, Weichelt V, Siemens J, Amelung W, Heuer H, Smalla K (2013) Abundance and transferability of antibiotic resistance as related to the fate of sulfadiazine in maize rhizosphere and bulk soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 83(1):125–134

Kristiansson E, Fick J, Janzon A, Grabic R, Rutgersson C, Weijdegård B, Söderström H, Larsson DJ (2011) Pyrosequencing of antibiotic-contaminated river sediments reveals high levels of resistance and gene transfer elements. PLoS One 6(2):e17038

Kroer N, Barkay T, Sørensen S, Weber D (1998) Effect of root exudates and bacterial metabolic activity on conjugal gene transfer in the rhizosphere of a marsh plant. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 25(4):375–384

Król JE, Nguyen HD, Rogers LM, Beyenal H, Krone SM, Top EM (2011) Increased transfer of a multidrug resistance plasmid in *Escherichia coli* biofilms at the air-liquid interface. Appl Environ Microbiol 77(15):5079–5088

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Larraín-Linton J, De la Iglesia R, Melo F, González B (2006) Molecular and population analyses of a recombination event in the catabolic plasmid pJP4. J Bacteriol 188(19):6793–6801

Lili LN, Britton NF, Feil EJ (2007) The persistence of parasitic plasmids. Genetics 177(1):399–405

Lopes LD, e Silva MDCP, Andreote FD (2016) Bacterial abilities and adaptation toward the rhizosphere colonization. Front Microbiol 7:1341

Lopez D, Vlamakis H, Kolter R (2010) Biofilms. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 2(7):a000398

Madsen JS, Burmolle M, Hansen LM, Sorensen SJ (2012) The interconnection between biofilm formation and horizontal gene transfer. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 65:183–195

Madsen JS, Riber L, Kot W, Basfeld A, Burmølle M, Hansen LH, Sørensen SJ (2016) Type 3 fimbriae encoded on plasmids are expressed from a unique promoter without affecting host motility, facilitating an exceptional phenotype that enhances conjugal plasmid transfer. PLoS One 11(9):162390

Maeda S, Ito M, Ando T, Ishimoto Y, Fujisawa Y, Takahashi H, Matsuda A, Sawamura A, Kato S (2006) Horizontal transfer of nonconjugative plasmids in a colony biofilm of *Escherichia coli*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 255(1):115–120

Maheshwari M, Ahmad I, Althubiani AS (2016) Multidrug resistance and transferability of bla CTX-M among extended-spectrum β-lactamase-producing enteric bacteria in biofilm. J Glob Antimicrob Resist 6:142–149

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

McManus PS, Stockwell VO, Sundin GW, Jones AL (2002) Antibiotic use in plant agriculture. Annu Rev Phytopathol 40(1):443–465

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sustain Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bangladesh J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of well grow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Merkey BV, Lardon LA, Seoane JM, Kreft JU, Smets BF (2011) Growth dependence of conjugation explains limited plasmid invasion in biofilms: an individual-based modelling study. Environ Microbiol 13(9):2435–2452

Merlin C, Springael D, Toussaint A (1999) Tn4371: a modular structure encoding a phage-like integrase, a *pseudomonas*-like catabolic pathway, and rp4/ti-like transfer functions. Plasmid 41(1):40–54

Molbak L, Søren M, Kroer N (2007) Root growth and exudate production define the frequency of horizontal plasmid transfer in the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 59(1):167–176

Molin S, Tolker-Nielsen T (2003) Gene transfer occurs with enhanced efficiency in biofilms and induces enhanced stabilisation of the biofilm structure. Curr Opin Biotechnol 14(3):255–261

Musovic S, Oregaard G, Kroer N, Sørensen SJ (2006) Cultivation-independent examination of horizontal transfer and host range of an IncP-1 plasmid among gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria indigenous to the barley rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 72(10):6687–6692

Musovic S, Dechesne A, Sørensen J, Smets BF (2010) Novel assay to assess permissiveness of a soil microbial community toward receipt of mobile genetic elements. Appl Environ Microbiol 76(14):4813–4818

Navarre WW (2016) The impact of gene silencing on horizontal gene transfer and bacterial evolution. Adv Microb Physiol 69:157–186

Nielsen KM, van Elsas JD (2001) Stimulatory effects of compounds present in the rhizosphere on natural transformation of *Acinetobacter* sp. BD413 in soil. Soil Biol Biochem 33(3):345–357

Norman A, Hansen LH, Sørensen SJ (2009) Conjugative plasmids: vessels of the communal gene pool. Philos Trans R Soc B 364(1527):2275–2289

Obeng N, Pratama AA, van Elsas JD (2016) The significance of mutualistic phages for bacterial ecology and evolution. Trends Microbiol 24(6):440–449

Ochman H, Lawrence JG, Groisman EA (2000) Lateral gene transfer and the nature of bacterial innovation. Nature 405(6784):299–304

Ojala V, Mattila S, Hoikkala V, Bamford JK, Jalasvuori M (2014) Evolutionary rescue of bacteria via horizontal gene transfer under a lethal β-lactam concentration. J Glob Antimicrob Resist 2(3):198–200

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pearce SL, Oakeshott JG, Pandey G (2015) Insights into ongoing evolution of the hexachlorocyclohexane catabolic pathway from comparative genomics of ten Sphingomonadaceae strains. G3 (Bethesda) 5(6):1081–1094

Petrova LP, Shelud'ko AV, Katsy EI (2010) Plasmid rearrangements and alterations in *Azospirillum brasilense* biofilm formation. Microbiology 79(1):121–124

Pinto-Carbo M, Sieber S, Dessein S, Wicker T, Verstraete B, Gademann K, Eberl L, Carlier A (2016) Evidence of horizontal gene transfer between obligate leaf nodule symbionts. ISME J 10:2092–2105

Powell BJ, Purdy KJ, Thompson IP, Bailey MJ (1993) Demonstration of *tra*+ plasmid activity in bacteria indigenous to the phyllosphere of sugar beet; gene transfer to a recombinant pseudomonad. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 12:195–206

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rankin DJ, Rocha EP, Brown SP (2011) What traits are carried on mobile genetic elements, and why & quest. Heredity 106(1):1–10

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reisner A, Höller BM, Molin S, Zechner EL (2006) Synergistic effects in mixed *Escherichia coli* biofilms: conjugative plasmid transfer drives biofilm expansion. J Bacteriol 188(10):3582–3588

Røder HL, Hansen LH, Sørensen SJ, Burmølle M (2013) The impact of the conjugative IncP-1 plasmid pKJK5 on multispecies biofilm formation is dependent on the plasmid host. FEMS Microbiol Lett 344(2):186–192

Russell RJ, Scott C, Jackson CJ, Pandey R, Pandey G, Taylor MC, Coppin CW, Liu JW, Oakeshott JG (2011) The evolution of new enzyme function: lessons from xenobiotic metabolizing bacteria versus insecticide-resistant insects. Evol Appl 4(2):225–248

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sangwan N, Verma H, Kumar R, Negi V, Lax S, Khurana P, Khurana JP, Gilbert JA, Lal R (2014) Reconstructing an ancestral genotype of two hexachlorocyclohexane-degrading *Sphingobium* species using metagenomic sequence data. ISME J 8(2):398–408

Schlüter A, Szczepanowski R, Pühler A, Top EM (2007) Genomics of IncP-1 antibiotic resistance plasmids isolated from wastewater treatment plants provides evidence for a widely accessible drug resistance gene pool. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31(4):449–477

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shintani M, Matsui K, Inoue JI, Hosoyama A, Ohji S, Yamazoe A, Nojiri H, Kimbara K, Ohkuma M (2014) Single-cell analyses revealed transfer ranges of IncP-1, IncP-7, and IncP-9 plasmids in a soil bacterial community. Appl Environ Microbiol 80(1):138–145

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Smalla K, Borin S, Heuer H, Gebhard F, van Elsas JD, Nielsen K (2000) Horizontal transfer of antibiotic resistance genes from transgenic plants to bacteria. In: Fairbairn C, Scoles G, McHugen A (eds) The biosafety of genetically modified organisms. University Extension Press, University of Saskatchewan

Smets BF, Barkay T (2005) Horizontal gene transfer: perspectives at a crossroads of scientific disciplines. Nat Rev Microbiol 3(9):675–678

Sørensen SJ, Bailey M, Hansen LH, Kroer N, Wuertz S (2005) Studying plasmid horizontal transfer in situ: a critical review. Nat Rev Microbiol 3(9):700–710

Springael D, Top EM (2004) Horizontal gene transfer and microbial adaptation to xenobiotics: new types of mobile genetic elements and lessons from ecological studies. Trends Microbiol 12(2):53–58

Stalder T, Top E (2016) Plasmid transfer in biofilms: a perspective on limitations and opportunities. NPJ Biofilms Microbiomes 2:16022

Stewart PS, Franklin MJ (2008) Physiological heterogeneity in biofilms. Nat Rev Microbiol 6(3):199–210

Sun B, Li T, Xiao J, Liu L, Zhang P, Murphy RW, He S, Huang D (2016) Contribution of multiple-inter-kingdom horizontal gene transfers to evolution and adaptation of amphibian-killing Chytrid, *Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis*. Front Microbiol 7:1360

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Toleman MA, Bennett PM, Walsh TR (2006) Common regions eg orf513 and antibiotic resistance: IS91-like elements evolving complex class 1 integrons. J Antimicrob Chemother 58(1):1–6

Top EM, Springael D (2003) The role of mobile genetic elements in bacterial adaptation to xenobiotic organic compounds. Curr Opin Biotechnol 14(3):262–269

Tormo MA, Knecht E, Götz F, Lasa I, Penades JR (2005) Bap-dependent biofilm formation by pathogenic species of Staphylococcus: evidence of horizontal gene transfer? Microbiology 151(7):2465–2475

van Elsas JD, Bailey MJ (2002) The ecology of transfer of mobile genetic elements. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 42(2):187–197

van Elsas JD, Turner S, Bailey MJ (2003) Horizontal gene transfer in the phytosphere. New Phytol 157(3):525–537

van Overbeek LS, Wellington EMH, Egan S, Smalla K, Heuer H, Collard JM, Guillaume G, Karagouni AD, Nikolakopoulou TL, van Elsas JD (2002) Prevalence of streptomycin resistance genes in bacterial populations in European habitats. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 42:277–288

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Wang Y, Xiao M, Geng X, Liu J, Chen J (2007) Horizontal transfer of genetic determinants for degradation of phenol between the bacteria living in plant and its rhizosphere. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 77(3):733–739

Wang Y, Kou S, Jiang Q, Xu B, Liu X, Xiao J, Tian Y, Zhou C, Zhang C, Xiao M (2014a) Factors affecting transfer of degradative plasmids between bacteria in soils. Appl Soil Ecol 84:254–261

Wang Y, Jiang Q, Zhou C, Chen B, Zhao W, Song J, Fang R, Chen J, Xiao M (2014b) In-situ remediation of contaminated farmland by horizontal transfer of degradative plasmids among rhizosphere bacteria. Soil Use Manag 30(2):303–309

Watanabe T (1963) Infective heredity of multiple drug resistance in bacteria. Bacteriol Rev 27(1):87

Weitz JS, Poisot T, Meyer JR, Flores CO, Valverde S, Sullivan MB, Hochberg ME (2013) Phage–bacteria infection networks. Trends Microbiol 21(2):82–91

Wellington EM, Boxall AB, Cross P, Feil EJ, Gaze WH, Hawkey PM, Johnson-Rollings AS, Jones DL, Lee NM, Otten W, Thomas CM (2013) The role of the natural environment in the emergence of antibiotic resistance in gram-negative bacteria. Lancet Infect Dis 13(2):155–165

Wiedenbeck J, Cohan FM (2011) Origins of bacterial diversity through horizontal genetic transfer and adaptation to new ecological niches. FEMS Microbiol Rev 35(5):957–976

Williamson KE, Radosevich M, Smith DW, Wommack KE (2007) Incidence of lysogeny within temperate and extreme soil environments. Environ Microbiol 9(10):2563–2574

Wommack KE, Colwell RR (2000) Virioplankton: viruses in aquatic ecosystems. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:69–114

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Yuan J, Zhang N, Huang Q, Raza W, Li R, Vivanco JM, Shen Q (2015) Organic acids from root exudates of banana help root colonization of PGPR strain *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* NJN-6. Sci Rep 5:13438

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zechner EL, de la Cruz F, Eisenbrandt R, Grahn AM, Koraimann G, Lanka E, Muth G, Pansegrau W, Thomas CM, Wilkins BM, Zatyka M (2000) Conjugative-DNA transfer processes. In: Thomas CM (ed) The horizontal genepool: bacterial plasmids and gene spread. Harwood ScientificPublication, Amsterdam, pp 87–174

Zhang N, Wang D, Liu Y, Li S, Shen Q, Zhang R (2014) Effects of different plant root exudates and their organic acid components on chemotaxis, biofilm formation and colonization by beneficial rhizosphere-associated bacterial strains. Plant Soil 374(1–2):689–700

Zhao Y, Ma Z, Sundin GW (2005) Comparative genomic analysis of the pPT23A plasmid family of *Pseudomonas syringae*. J Bacteriol 187:2113–2126

Hairy Root Culture: A Biotechnological Approach to Produce Valuable Metabolites

7

Hamideh Vaghari, Hoda Jafarizadeh-Malmiri,
Navideh Anarjan, and Aydin Berenjian

Abstract

Hairy root (HR) cultures are attracting more attention due to their unique ability in degrading different pollutants and production of metabolites with therapeutic or industrial applications. This specific type of plant cell culture is derived from explants that are infected by *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*. The HR cultures are categorized by their growth rate as well as their genetic and biochemical stability. Progress in design of innovative bioreactors and process intensification for HR growth will allow successful industrial production of metabolites. This chapter will present advances in work on HR cultures related to the detoxification of pollutants, production of valuable metabolites, and their cultivation in large-scale intensified bioreactors.

Keywords

Hairy root • Metabolite • Scale up • Bioreactor • Process intensification

---

H. Vaghari • H. Jafarizadeh-Malmiri (✉)
Faculty of Chemical Engineering, Sahand University of Technology, Tabriz, Iran
e-mail: h_jafarizadeh@sut.ac.ir; h_jafarizadeh@yahoo.com

N. Anarjan
Department of Chemical Engineering, Faculty of Engineering, Tabriz Branch, Islamic Azad University, Tabriz, Iran

A. Berenjian
Faculty of Science and Engineering, School of Engineering, University of Waikato, Hamilton 3240, New Zealand
e-mail: aydin.berenjian@waikato.ac.nz

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_7

7.1 Introduction

Plants are able to produce a wide range of primary and secondary metabolites (Yazaki et al. 2008; Sharma et al. 2013). However, the large-scale production of these valuable compounds has been limited by low growth rates, climate dependency, restricted cultivation areas, plant diseases, pests, overharvesting, and intense labor requirement (Sharma et al. 2013; Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2016b; Rates 2001). Moreover, the chemical synthesis of plant-derived metabolites is not a feasible choice due to their complex structures and their specific stereochemical requirements (Sharma et al. 2013; Namdeo 2007). All these issues emphasize the need for developing new methods and protocols for the industrial-level fabrication of plant-derived metabolites.

Suspension culture of plant cells has been considered as another promising source for biosynthesis of valuable secondary metabolites (Sharma et al. 2013). More than 25% of the available pharmaceuticals are either based on originally found compounds in plants or are extracted from them (Giri and Narasu 2000). Production of secondary metabolites by using suspended plant cell culture is usually a challenging task as these compounds produce at distinct developmental stages. Therefore, in vitro studies of differentiated and organized tissues (mainly the roots) have been developed and were reported to be a more predictable approach as compared to cell suspension cultures (Sharma et al. 2013; Kumar et al. 2015; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a; Parewa et al. 2014).

The plant roots are suitable for large-scale production since they are the key point for synthesis and/or storage of certain chemicals. The biotechnological fabrication of wide range of valuable secondary metabolites by using plant cultures can be seen as an alternative to the extraction of whole plant material (Namdeo 2007). Several strategies have been investigated in order to further enhance the production of secondary metabolites from medicinal plants. Some of these include high yielding cell line screening, media modification, elicitation, precursor feeding, large-scale cultivation system, plant cell immobilization, hairy root culture, biotransformation, and others (Rao and Ravishankar 2002; Vanisree et al. 2004).

Recently, hairy root (HR) culture has been developed in order to inhibit the use of large volumes of plants that are needed to be purified. Totipotency is among the major characteristics of plant cells; therefore, HRs could successfully produce primary and secondary metabolites similar to intact roots (Giri and Narasu 2000; Qaderi et al. 2016). HR culture is a tool that makes use of soil bacterium *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* ability to transfer genes to the genome of the host plant (Sharma et al. 2013; Thwe et al. 2016). This technique was developed as the innovative path for bulky production of secondary metabolite and phytochemicals which allows developing large amount of roots and secondary metabolites in short time for continuous supply of improved value products (Korde et al. 2016). These HRs have also been used for root physiology and biosynthetic pathway (Giri and Narasu 2000), regeneration of whole plants with desirable phenotypes, and phytoremediation of toxic substances and reactive dyes (Talano et al. 2012; Prakash and Verma

2016; Meena et al. 2015a, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017). Finally, HR cultures include other aspects such as molecular metabolic engineering, bioreactor design, and optimization (Ono and Tian 2011). In this chapter, we present advances in work on HR cultures related to the detoxification of pollutants, production of valuable metabolites, and fabrication in large-scale intensified bioreactors. A suggestion to overcome current challenges and emerging trends for future progression of research has also been provided.

7.2 Definition and Basic Features of HRs

HR production is carried out through the plant tissue culture technique in order to study the plant metabolic processes or to manufacture precious secondary metabolites with the use of plant genetic engineering. HR culture is also called as transformed root culture from gram-negative soil bacterium *A. rhizogenes* that contains root-inducing plasmids (Ri plasmids) (Korde et al. 2016; Pistelli et al. 2010). It infects roots of dicot, and some monocot plants cause them to produce the opines which is a type of unusual amino acids (octopine, agropine, nopaline, mannopine, and cucumopine). Such opines are used by the bacterium as a carbon, nitrogen, and energy source (Ferdosi and Kashefi 2014).

The morphology of HRs is significantly different from the normal roots as they are much more branched and have much lateral meristematic growth, which will lead to higher biomass. The abnormal roots however are easier to grow in artificial media without hormone, and they are neoplastic in nature, with hazy growth. Fabricated HRs by infection of *A. rhizogenes* have a high growth rate as well as genetic and biochemical makeup (Korde et al. 2016).

However, new techniques are developed in order to make HRs by the use of new plant species (Georgiev et al. 2011). HRs have numerous advantages such as indefinite and fast in vitro growth even in the absence of phytohormones as well as high genotype and phenotype stability (Ono and Tian 2011). HR culture is among the main cultures that are used to investigate metabolic processes of plants, secondary metabolites production, recombinant proteins, plant genetic engineering, phytoremediation, artificial seed production, biofortification, and biopharmaceuticals. Applications of these efficient technologies also include several aspects as metabolic engineering, bioreactor design, and process optimization (Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b; Rawat et al. 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

7.3 Mechanism of HR Cultures

The interaction between plants and *A. rhizogenes* in HR establishment involves a complex series of events. *A. rhizogenes* is responsible for a neoplastic outgrowth of fine roots at the infection site, and infected plants show reduced vitality. These symptoms came to be known as the hairy root disease. Roots arising at the site of infection can be cultured aseptically, and the resulted transformed root clones may

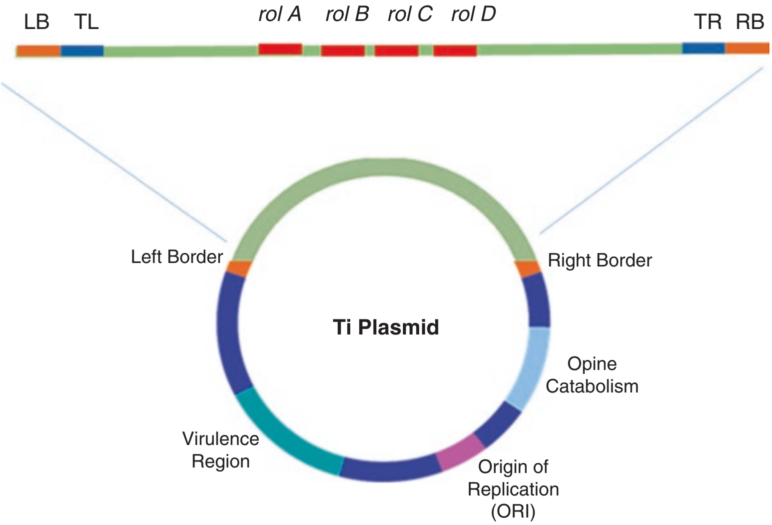


Fig. 7.1 Schematic overview of a Ri plasmid of *A. rhizogenes*

be subcultured indefinitely on basal medium, growing at rates several times quicker than normal roots (Flores and Filner 2012). *Agrobacterium* recognizes various phenolic compounds that have been produced from wounded plant cells, namely, acetosyringone and α-hydroxy acetosyringone.

After microbial colonization, consequently their attachment to plant cells T-DNA will be inserted (Sharma et al. 2013). This T-DNA is a transferable DNA from bacterium to plant cell. The T-DNA has a set of genes that are capable to encode enzymes required for cytokinin biosynthesis, phytohormone auxin control (*iaaM, iaaH, ipt*), and synthesis of sugar and amino acids (unusual amino acids). These segments have eukaryotic regulatory sequences and approximately 10–30 kbp in size and encode for the Ri conjugation, catabolism, opine synthesis, and integration of the T-DNA itself (Pistelli et al. 2010). Genes of T-DNA fragment facilitate the formation of neoplastic crown gall tumor and HR tissues followed by the synthesis of opines (Sharma et al. 2013; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016c; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016). Depending on the bacterial strain, these metabolites are used as a carbon and nitrogen source for the bacteria. *A. rhizogenes* strains were categorized into two main classes, namely, Agropine-type and Mann opine-type strains. Among these, agropines are the most often used strains due to their strongest virulence (Sharma et al. 2013). The virulent strains of *A. rhizogenes* contain the Ri plasmids with different gene sequences (Fig. 7.1). Plasmids can be divided in strains producing mannopine and cucumopine with single DNA and strains producing octopine and agropine with two T-DNAs. The two T-DNAs are classified in the T_R-DNA (right DNA) and the T_L-DNA (left DNA). The root-inducing genes (*rol A*, *rol B*, *rol C*, *rol D*) are found in the center of T_L-DNA of the agropine-producing strains. Parts of the T_R-DNA are genes for the biosynthesis of auxins and the synthesis of mannopine and agropine. After the transfer of the T_L-DNA and T_R-DNA, they are integrated in the genome of the plant cell. The T_L-DNA is vital for the hairy root induction (Chandra 2012).

7.4 Establishment of HR Cultures

Successful HR culture system requires several essential check marks, namely, selection of best *A. rhizogenes* strain, appropriate explants and antibiotic, and a suitable culture medium (Sharma et al. 2013). Strains of *A. rhizogenes* are widely varying in their transforming ability. HRs that are fabricated by using different types of bacterial strains show significantly different morphologies. These observed virulence and morphology differences could be justified by the different strain plasmid harbored (Saha et al. 2016a; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Nguyen et al. 1992; Meena et al. 2015f). Most plant materials like hypocotyl, stem, cotyledon, leaf, tuber, or storage root may be applied to make HRs (Królicka et al. 2001; Sevón and Oksman-Caldentey 2002; Giri et al. 2001). In order to induce HRs, explants should be infected with strains of *A. rhizogenes* either by cocultivation or direct inoculation (Giri et al. 2001; Ur Rahman et al. 2004). Subsequently, roots are subculture using a medium such as MS or B_5 (Fig. 7.2) (Sevón and Oksman-Caldentey 2002; Le Flem-Bonhomme et al. 2004; Palazón et al. 2003a, b).

7.5 Application of HR Cultures

The HR culture shaves diverse and abundant applications (Fig. 7.3). They traditionally have been used to investigate root physiology in conjunction with biosynthetic pathway elucidation (Ibanez et al. 2016). Nowadays, HR culture technique is now being used for the fabrication of bioactive compounds, secondary metabolites, and phytochemicals. HRs are popular for regeneration of whole plants with desirable phenotypes by infection of ornamental plants with *A. rhizogenes* (Meena et al. 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2015b; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Moreover, HR cultures have been used for phytoremediation of toxic substances and reactive dye. Presently, several high-value bioactives are fabricated by using HRs from various plant sources which have application in pharmaceutical and cosmetic products (Ono and Tian 2011). Furthermore, recombinant protein production using this system was found to be a sustainable method for producing cytokines as well as protein therapeutics (Talano et al. 2012).

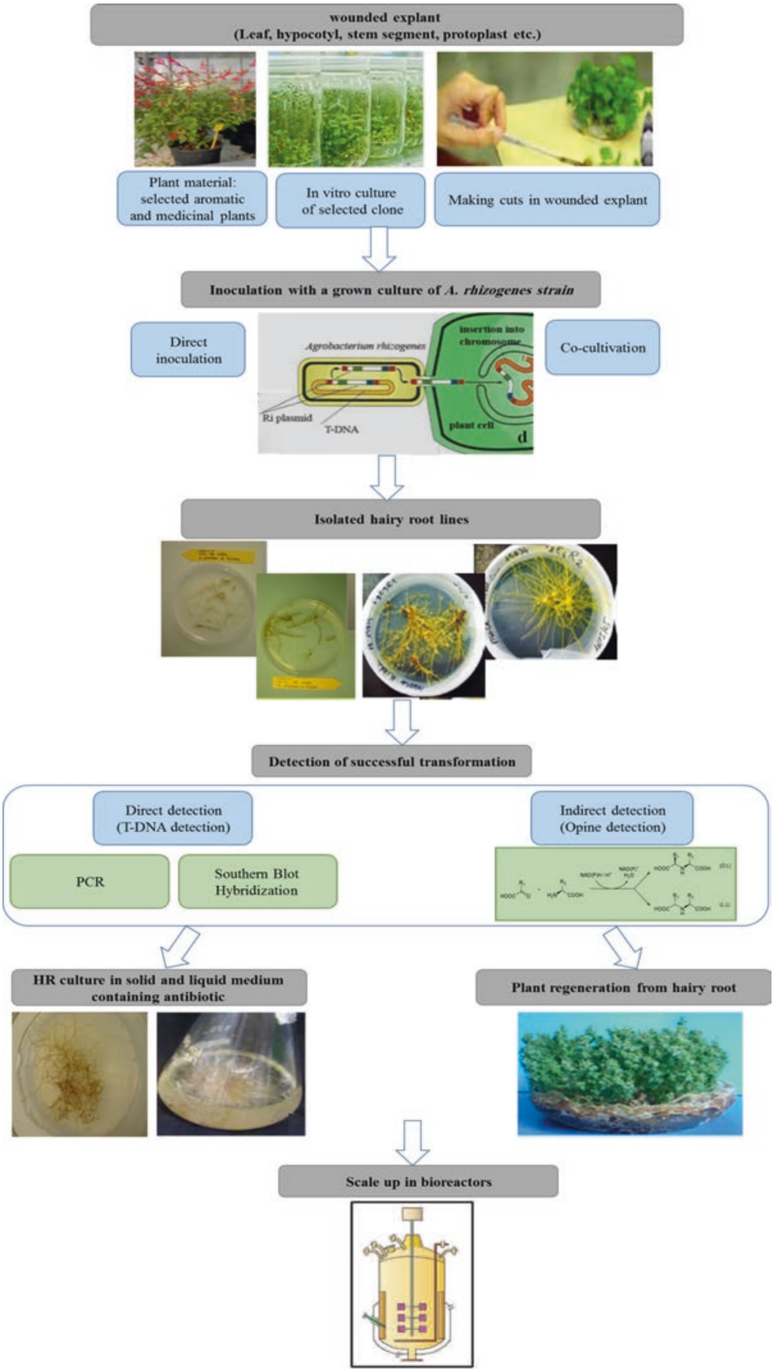


Fig. 7.2 An overview of the HR culture establishment

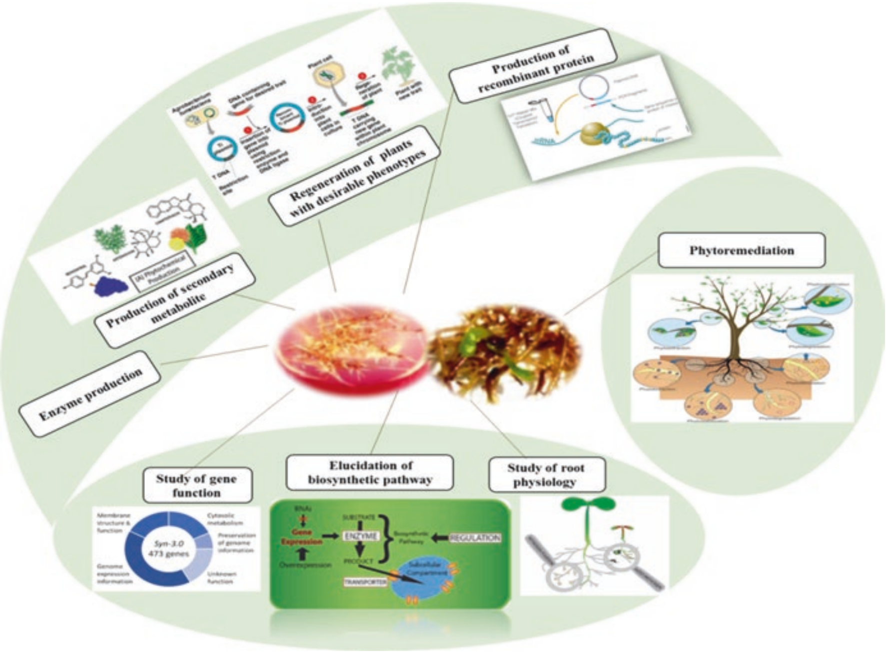


Fig. 7.3 The systematic applications of HR cultures

7.5.1 Application of HR Cultures for Secondary Metabolites Production

Plants are known as chemical factories since they pose the ability to fabricate important phytochemical. However, the major issue is that their growth is dependent to the outside environmental stress. HR cultures are promising source for phytochemical due to sizable biomass production and biosynthetic capacity.

Furthermore, HR cultures frequently accumulate phytochemical at much higher levels than cell or callus cultures (McCoy and O'Connor 2008; Ono and Tian 2011). Secondary metabolites as summarized in Table 7.1 are naturally more complex as compared to primary metabolites. These compounds have been categorized into terpenoids, phenolics, and alkaloids (Chinou 2008).

Several HR cultures have attracted significant amount of attention due to their potential in production of valuable phytochemical including *Artemisia annua*, *Catharanthus roseus*, *Arachis hypogaea*, and *Camptotheca acuminata/Ophiorrhiza pumila* (McCoy and O'Connor 2008). List of secondary metabolites produced by wild HR cultures is summarized in Table 7.2. Although, non-transgenic HR cultures continue to serve as a good source for phytochemicals and secondary metabolites (Ono and Tian 2011).

However, application of metabolic engineering methods requires acritical understanding about the regulation of secondary metabolite pathways and the metabolic

Table 7.1 Classification of secondary metabolites (Rao and Ravishankar 2002)

Terpenes (composed of C and H)	Phenols (composed of sugars, benzene ring, H and O)	Alkaloids	Steroids
Monoterpenes	Phenolic acids	Acridines	Cardiac glycoside
Sesquoiterpenes	Coumarins	Glucosinolates	Pregnenolone derivatives
Diterpenes	Lignins	Betalains	
Triterpenes	Flavonoids	Quinolizidines	
Tetraterpenoids	Tannins	Furonoquinones	
	Anthocyanins	Harringtonines	
	Hydroxycinnamoyl derivatives	Isoquinolines	
	Phenalenones	Indoles	
	Proanthocyanidins	Purines	
	Stilbenes	Pyridines	
	Tanins	Tropane alkaloids	

phenotype of the HR culture to regulate the dynamic distribution of metabolites between different biochemical pathways (Kruger and Ratcliffe 2009; Talano et al. 2012). Table 7.3 tabulated the common secondary metabolites that are produced by transgenic HRs.

7.5.2 Application of HR Cultures in Phytoremediation

Environmental remediation is a method that deals with the removal of toxins in order to support the environment (Macek et al. 2008). Remediation processes can be expensive; therefore, efficient and inexpensive technologies are still developing to address the needs in the field. Bioremediation includes the environmental treatment with the use of microorganisms and plants (Novakova et al. 2007; Najmanova et al. 2007). In case of using plants, this is so-called phytoremediation (Garbisu and Alkorta 2001; Korde et al. 2016). The use of plants to absorb and accumulate organic and inorganic pollutants or to transform toxic molecules to harmless once has attracted attention (Eapen et al. 2007; Doty 2008; Macek et al. 2008; Ibanez et al. 2016).

Phytoremediation process usually occurs through several complex interactions between the key involved sources (Krystofova et al. 2009; Guillon et al. 2006). Roots are normally the main contact point between contaminants and the plant tissues they are the key point of assessment of the phytoremediation potential (Verma et al. 2014; Meena et al. 2014a, 2015e; Teotia et al. 2016).

However, in this sense HR culture has been found suitable in order to study the xenobiotic detoxification without the soil matrix or microbes interaction (Talano et al. 2012). Figure 7.4 summarizes how a plant deposits the toxin efficiently. Plants are able to chemically modify toxic substances through their direct metabolism (Krystofova et al. 2009). Greater genotypic and phenotypic stability are the

Table 7.2 List of the secondary metabolites that are produced by wild HR cultures

Secondary metabolite	Function	HR	References
Ajmalicine, ajmaline	Antihypertensive	*Rauvolfia micrantha*	Sudha et al. (2003)
Artemisinin	Antimalarial	*Artemisia annua*	Weathers et al. (2005)
Azadirachtin	Biopesticide	*Azadirachta indica*	Srivastava and Srivastava (2012c)
Benzylisoquinoline alkaloids (morphinan, codeine, and sanguinarine)	Analgesic, antibiotic	*Papaver somniferum*	Park and Facchini (2000) and Le Bonhomme et al. (2004)
Betalain	Red pigments for food industry, strong aphrodisiac, laxative	*Beta vulgaris*	Rudrappa et al. (2004) and Pavlov et al. (2003)
Camptothecin	Antitumor, AIDS, falciparum malaria, colorectal and ovarian cancers treatment	*Ophiorrhiza alata* Craib, *Ophiorrhiza pumila*	Ya-ut et al. (2011) and Sato et al. (2001)
3,4-Dihydroxyl-L-phenylalanine	Therapeutic agent against Parkinson's disease	*Stizolobium hassjoo*	Sung and Huang (2006)
Dopa and dopamine	Neurotransmitters	*Beta vulgaris*	Rudrappa et al. (2004)
Flavone glycosides	Anti-inflammatory action	*Catharanthus roseus*	Talano et al. (2012)
Flavonoids	Meant for the treatment of gastric ulcers, anti-inflammatory, and antitussive	*Glycyrrhiza pallidiflora*	Li et al. (2002)
Flavonoids	Antimutagenic, antiulcer, antitumor, antimicrobial	*Glycyrrhiza uralensis*	Zhang et al. (2009)
Glycyrrhizin	Artificial sweetener and pharmaceutical products (peptic ulcers treatment)	*Glycyrrhiza inflate*	Wongwicha et al. (2011)
Glycyrrhizin	Diuretic, tonic, alexiteric, antifertility	*Abrus precatorius*	Dixit and Vaidya (2010)
Hyoscyamine	Narcotic and antispasmodic activity, used against Parkinson's disease	*Datura stramonium*	Pavlov et al. (2009)
Indole alkaloids (vinblastine, vincristine)	Anticancer	*Catharanthus roseus*	Ayora-Talavera et al. (2002)
Iridoid glycosides	Anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antidiabetic	*Harpagophytum procumbens*	Georgiev et al. (2006)

(continued)

Table 7.2 (continued)

Secondary metabolite	Function	HR	References
6-Methoxy-podophyllotoxin	Anticancer	*Linum album*, *Linum persicum*	Wink et al. (2005)
Physalins	Diuretic, febrifuge, vermifuge	*Physalis minima*	Azlan et al. (2002)
Plumbagin	Diuretic, antibacterial and used against leprosy	*Plumbago zeylanica*	Sivanesan and Jeong (2009)
Resveratrol	Anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anti-infective, anticancer	*Arachis hypogaea*	Kim et al. (2008)
Rosmarinic acid	Astringent, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antimutagenic, antimicrobial, antiviral	*Nepeta cataria*	Yang (2010)
Rutin	Antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antithrombotic, cytoprotective, vasoprotective	*Fagopyrum esculentum*	Kim et al. (2010)
Rutin, hispidulin, and syringin	Anti-inflammatory; antifungal	*Saussurea involucrata*	Fu et al. (2005)
Serpentine	Diabetes treatment	*Catharanthus roseus*	Datta et al. (2010)
Sesquiterpenes	Phytoalexins	*Hyoscyamus albus*	Kawauchi et al. (2010)
Shikonin	Dye for silk and food industry, anti-inflammatory, anti-allergic, and antineoplasic activities	*Arnebia*	Talano et al. (2012)
Stilbenoids (resveratrol, pinosylvin, and derivatives)	Antioxidant, anticancer, antiatherosclerosis, neuroprotective, and estrogenic activities	*Arachis hypogaea*	Medina-Bolivar et al. (2010)
Tropane alkaloids	Narcotic, anticholinergic and antispasmodic activity	*Datura metel*, *Hyoscyamus muticus*	Moyano et al. (2003)
Tropane alkaloids	Narcotic, anticholinergic and antispasmodic activity	*Hyoscyamus niger*	Zhang et al. (2004)
Tropane alkaloids (scopolamine and hyoscyamine)	Narcotic, anticholinergic and antispasmodic activity	*Datura innoxia*	Dechaux and Boitel-Conti (2005)
Tropane alkaloid (hyoscyamine, atropine, and hyoscine)	Used against Parkinson's disease	*Atropa belladonna*	Richter et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 7.2 (continued)

Secondary metabolite	Function	HR	References
Tropane alkaloids (scopolamine and hyoscyamine)	Parasympatholytic	*Przewalskia tangutica*	Lan and Quan (2010)
Withanolide A	Brain regenerative properties	*Withania somnifera*	Praveen and Murthy (2012)
Xanthotoxin (furocoumarin)	Leucoderma	*Ammi majus*	Krolicka et al. (2001)

important advantages of HR cultures which provide a more promising system over time for phytoremediation (Doran 2009). Additionally, the organized nature of HR cultures offers an added advantage that makes them more useful for cultivation in bioreactors at large scale (Angelini et al. 2011; Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017b). HRs that have been functionalized by genetic engineering are expected to become a new solution for environmental treatment in near future (Guillon et al. 2006).

HRs produced by hyper-accumulators are capable to uptake nickel, uranium, or cadmium from polluted environment (Boominathan and Doran 2003; Boominathan et al. 2004; Eapen et al. 2003; Agostini et al. 2003; Suresh et al. 2005; Gujarathi et al. 2005). Phytoremediation of several environmental pollutants by wild-type and transgenic HR cultures is shown in Table 7.4.

7.6 Recent Advances in HR Cultures Scale-Up

Root tissues are not identical to microbial cultures in many ways. Therefore, bioreactors for HR cultures are more challenging to be controlled, operated, and scaled up. Development of innovative bioreactors and process intensification will allow to optimize cell growth and large-scale production (Sharma et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2013c, 2016e; Verma et al. 2015a; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016).

7.6.1 Development of Groundbreaking Bioreactors in HR Cultures

Design and optimization of bioreactors have been the great advance in HRs for industrial-scale production of metabolites (Huang and McDonald 2012). Production of HRs in bioreactors helps to have a better control on operating conditions and consequently optimize the growth and biosynthesis of the secondary metabolite (Eibl and Eibl 2008). Bioreactor optimization for fabrication of HRs is of critical importance for scale-up strategies.

HR bioreactors can be in general divided into gas or liquid phase. In liquid-phase bioreactors, roots are always placed in the medium; as a result they are called submerged reactors. On the other hand, in gas-phase reactors, the roots are almost exposed

Table 7.3 List of secondary metabolites produced through transgenic HR cultures (Talano et al. 2012)

Secondary metabolite	Function	Transgenic HR	Foreign genes
Solanoside	Antineoplastic agent	*Solanum khasianum*	Gene encoding a specific antibody that binds solanoside
Indole	Beneficial effects on cancer, sedative and hypotensive action	*Catharanthus roseus*	Modified anthranilate synthase (AS) alpha subunit (*trp5*) and tryptophan decarboxylase gene (TDC)
Ginseng	Traditional Chinese medicine, tonic, antiaging, anticancer, and anti-diabetes properties	*Panax ginseng*	*cs* gene for cycloartenol synthase enzyme
Scopolamine		*Hyoscyamus niger*	Putrescine *N*-methyltransferase *pmt*) and hyoscyamine 6ß-hydroxylase (*h6h)* genes
Catharanthine	Anticholinergic agents that act on parasympathetic nervous system	*Catharanthus roseus*	*Geraniol 10-hydroxylase (G10H) and a jasmonate-responsive transcript factor (ORCA3)*
Hyoscyamine, scopolamine		*Scopolia parviflora*	Putrescine *N*-methyltransferase (*pmt*) and hyoscyamine 6ß- hydroxylase (*h6h)*
Anisodamine, anisodine, hyoscyamine, scopolamine		*Anisodus acutangulus*	Putrescine *N*-methyltransferase (*pmt*) and gene codifying tropinone reductase I (TRI)
Glycyrrhizin	Medicine, healthcare products, food (sweetener), and cosmetics	*Glycyrrhiza uralensis*	Chalcone synthase
Flavones: baicalin, baicalein, wogonin	Diuretic, anti-inflammatory, antiseptic, antispasmodic, and anticancer	*Scutellaria baicalensis*	Chalcone isomerase
Vitamin C	Antioxidant properties	*Solanum lycopersicon*	*gal* UR gene
Total sterols	Hypocholesterolemic, anticarcinogenic properties	*Centella asiatica*	Farnesyl diphosphate synthase from *Panax ginseng*

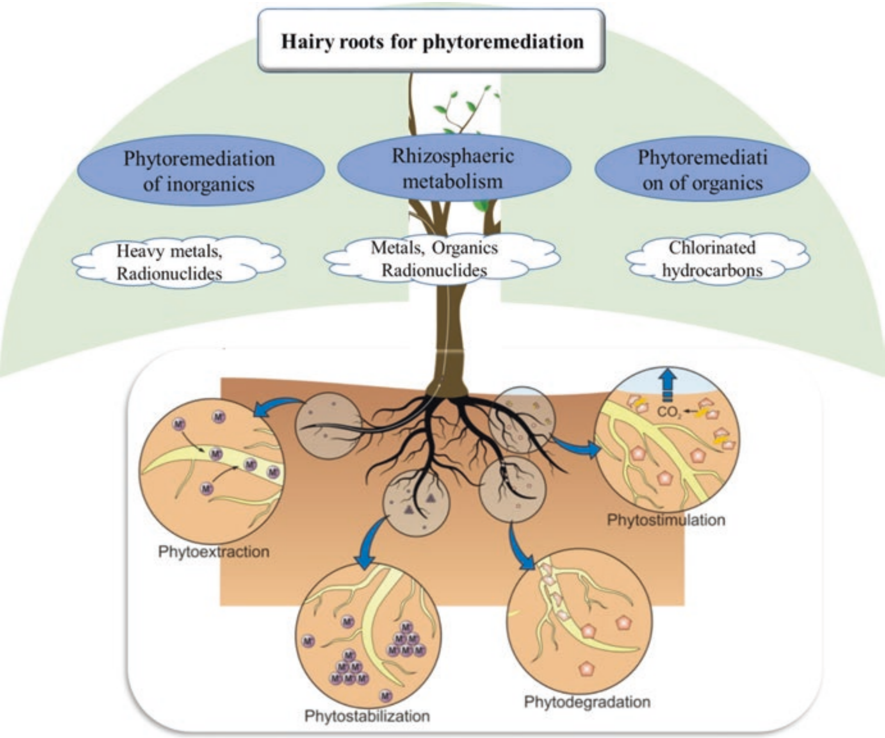


Fig. 7.4 Types of phytoremediation. Plant metabolizes the pollutant via organic and inorganic phytoremediation or rhizospheric metabolism. Phytoremediation includes several approaches, namely, phytostabilization, phytoextraction, phytodegradation, and phytostimulation

to air or another gas mixture (Kim et al. 2002a, b; Stiles and Liu 2013). The design of the reactor also depends on the product location, which is either intracellular or extracellular (Meena et al. 2013b, 2015d; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2015).

HR cultivation is usually associated with clumps formation that are naturally composed of primary roots and their bridged lateral roots. It is very difficult to find appropriate bioreactor for HR cultures because the rheological properties of HR cultures vary from one species to another and even within clones of a single species. Several bioreactor designs have been reported for HRs (Mishra and Ranjan 2008). Schematic diagrams of promising bioreactor types that have been successfully tested are depicted in Fig. 7.5.

7.6.1.1 Liquid-Phase Bioreactors

In liquid-phase reactors, the culture space is filled up with liquid medium, and several techniques are used to provide the required aeration to the media. Since the roots are submerged, therefore, mixing and mass transfer are the main issues in scaling up the process (Eibland Eibl 2008; Curtis 2000; Nath et al. 2017; Sarkar et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017a).

Table 7.4 Phytoremediation of several environmental pollutants by wild-type and transgenic HR cultures

Chemical nature of pollutant	Nature of HR	Pollutant	Plant species	References
Inorganic	Wild type	Arsenic	*Nicotiana tabacum*	Talano et al. (2014)
		Cadmium	*Thlaspi caerulescens*	Nedelkoska and Doran (2000)
		Cadmium and lead	*Brassica juncea*	Eapen et al. (2007)
		Chromium	*Brassica napus* and *Pantoea* sp. FC1	Ontañon et al. (2014)
		Nickel	*Alyssum murale*	Vinterhalter et al. (2008)
		Nickel	*Alyssum bertolonii*	Boominathan et al. (2004)
		Uranium	*Armoracia rusticana*	Soudek et al. (2011)
		Uranium	*Daucus carota*	Straczek et al. (2009)
		Zinc and nickel	*Brassica juncea*	Ismail and Theodor (2012)
	Transgenic	Copper	*Nicotiana tabacum*	Ibanez et al. (2016)
Organic	Wild type			
		Explosives (DNT, TNT; ADNTs; DANTs)	*Armoracia rusticana*	Nepovim et al. (2004)
		N-acetyl-4-aminophenol	*Armoracia rusticana*	Huber et al. (2009)
		PCBs	*Solanum nigrum*	Rezek et al. (2007), (2012)
		Phenol and chloro derivatives	*Brassica juncea*	Singh et al. (2006), Coniglio et al. (2008), and Gonza’lez et al. (2012)
			Daucus carota, *Ipomoea batatas* L.	De Araujo et al. (2006)
			Nicotiana tabacum	Talano et al. (2010)
			Helianthus annuus	Jha et al. (2013)
			Nicotiana tabacum	Talano et al. (2010)
			Solanum lycopersicon	Khoudi et al. (2012)
			Solanum lycopersicum	Gonzalez et al. (2006); (2008)

(continued)

Table 7.4 (continued)

Chemical nature of pollutant	Nature of HR	Pollutant	Plant species	References
		Reactive red 198 dye	*Tagetes patula* L.	Patil et al. (2009)
		Tetracycline, oxytetracycline	*Helianthus annuus*	Gujarathi et al. (2005)
		Textile dye: Methyl orange	*Brassica juncea.*	Telke et al. (2011)
		Textile dye: reactive green 19A- HE4BD	*Sesuvium portulacastrum* L.	Lokhande et al. (2015)
	Transgenic	Phenol	*Nicotiana tabacum*	Alderete et al. (2009)
			Brassica juncea inoculated with two rhizobacteria	Gonzalez et al. (2013)
			Solanum lycopersicum	Oller et al. (2005)
			Brassica juncea inoculated with *Pantoea* sp. FC1	Ontañon et al. (2014)
			Nicotiana tabacum expressing *tpx1* and/or *tpx2* genes	Sosa Alderete et al. (2009), (2012)
			Nicotiana tabacum expressing *tpx1* gene + AMF	Ibanez et al. (2011)
		TCE	*Atropa belladonna*	Banerjee et al. (2002)

DNT 2,4-dinitrotoluene, *PCB* polychlorinated biphenyls, *TNT* 2,4,6-trinitrotoluene, *DANTs* diaminonitrotoluenes, *ADNTs* aminodinitrotoluenes, *AMF* Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi, *TCE* trichloroethylene

Design considerations comprise of mechanisms to provide adequate nutrient to the roots. Mixing and aeration strategy represents the main design differences between the various types of liquid-phase bioreactors. The most commonly used liquid-phase bioreactors are, namely, pneumatic reactors and stirred tanks. Methods for immobilizing HRs include cages, meshes, and polyurethane foam (Eibl and Eibl 2008).

Past studies evaluated the use of stirred tank reactors (STR) for HRs cultivation. In order to supply required amount of oxygen, compressed air is always spared into the bioreactor from a placed device in the impeller region. STRs are normally not useful for HR cultures despite their wide range of application in biotechnology. This is mainly because of the callus formation and wound response which are usually a response to the impeller rotation shear stress (Taya et al. 1989; Mishra and Ranjan 2008). Pneumatic bioreactors are the ones that include both airlift and bubble column reactors.

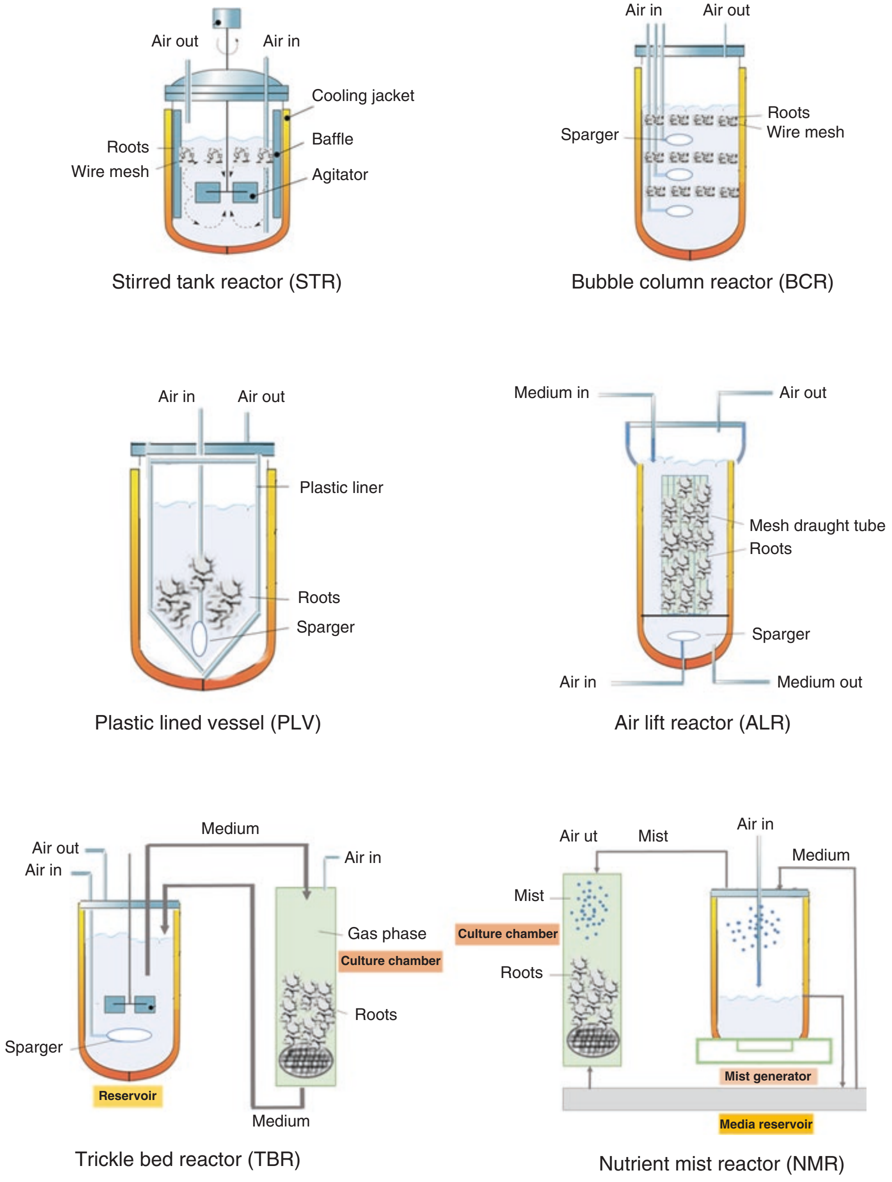


Fig. 7.5 Schematic diagrams of the bioreactors used for HR culture

Bubble column reactors (BCR) are among the simplest bioreactors that are easy to scale up. The use of bubbles instead of mechanical mixers minimizes the shear stress on the cultures (Choi et al. 2008; Huang and McDonald 2012). However, the major drawback with BCRs are the undefined flow pattern of the liquid (Choi et al. 2008) and the reduced growth performance (Kwok and Doran 1995). In the presence of high biomass, the bubbles may coalesce resulting in the reduction of gas-liquid interface area (Huang and McDonald 2012). BCRs are liquid-phase bioreactors in which the roots are submerged in the medium. Liquid mixing is obtained by the upflow of air bubbles generated from an air distributor situated at the bottom of the column. In contrast to BCRs, airlift reactors (ALRs) contain a draft tube (either internal or external) to avoid coalescing bubbles. ALRs distribute shear stress more evenly, reduce shear stress, consume little energy, and promote a cylindrical mixing of the medium (Stiles and Liu 2013).

The draft tube in ALRs prevents bubble coalescence by forcing the bubbles to move in one direction. It also distributes shear stresses equally throughout the reactor. As a result, cells are able to grow in a more stable physical environment than those growing under high shear, a condition causing cell damage and lower productivity in STRs. It has also been shown experimentally that shear stress rates generated in ALRs are lower than those generated in BCRs.

ALRs have been extensively used for HRs since the initiation of HR bioreactor studies for species including *Panax ginseng* (Yoshikawa and Furuya 1987), *Armoracia rusticana* (Taya et al. 1989), *Trigonella foenum-graceum* (Rodriguez-Mendiola et al. 1991), *Lippia dulcis* (Sauerwein et al. 1991), *Lithospermum erythrorhizon* (Shimomura et al. 1991), *Ophiorrhiza pumila* (Sudo et al. 2002), and *Echinacea purpurea* (Abbasi et al. 2009).

Conventional ALRs have been extensively used for scale-up cultures of HR lines; however, they are generally not appropriate for high-density cultures due to inadequate mixing and oxygen mass transfer (Choi et al. 2008). This phenomenon is mainly based on uneven distribution of root tissue at certain regions as well as excessive gas-phase channeling (Taya et al. 1989).

7.6.1.2 Gas-Phase Bioreactors

In gas-phase reactors, roots are exposed to a mixture of air or gas mixture. The liquid nutrient is usually sprayed onto the top of the root bed (Kim et al. 2002a, b). These reactors have been widely used in plant tissue and HR cultures due to their abundant oxygen supply (Stiles and Liu 2013; McKelvey et al. 1993; Katuri et al. 2011; Wyslouzil et al. 1997). However, gas-phase reactors yet require a matrix for anchoring the HRs. These can be mesh trays or mesh cylinders. In addition, these reactors are labor intensive as their requirement for uniform loading (Eibl and Eibl 2008; Choi et al. 2008; Srivastava and Srivastava 2007; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016; Ramakrishnan and Curtis 2004).

Nutrient mist reactors (NMRs) are another one of gas-phase-type reactors. In these systems plant organ is usually dispersed in the air phase with the help of a mesh support. NMRs have definite advantages, such as easy operation, high dissolved oxygen tension present in the mist, lack of shear, and ease of scaling up. Whitney (1992) investigated the performance of different types of bioreactors for *D. stramonium* and *Nicotiana tabacum* cultivation. Authors stressed that the growth rate and yield of tobacco HRs were greater in NMRs than in STRs, TBRs, and ALRs. Recently, HRs of *Stizolobium hassjoo* (velvet bean) were cultivated in 3 and

9 l NMRs by Huang et al. (2004) to evaluate the oxygen uptake rate, effects of intermittent medium supply, and other growth-related parameters.

Several other comparative studies also have been evaluated the optimal bioreactor type for a particular species of HRs. The production of *Artemisia annua* HRs was compared both in bubble and mist bioreactors. Based on the results, authors suggested that the overall biomass was higher in the BCR (Kim et al. 2002a, b). However, the mist reactor usually accumulates lower amount of biomass as compared to the BCR. This behavior could be due to insufficient nutrient availability (Choi et al. 2008; Srivastava and Srivastava 2012a, b).

7.6.1.3 Novel Bioreactors

Hybrid reactor can be seen as a method to address this issue, a reactor which allows the roots to attach uniformly to the anchoring system (Stiles and Liu 2013). Disposable bioreactors could also be seen as another alternative to the traditional protocols. These reactors can significantly reduce the operation costs by eliminating the need for cleaning or sterilization though out the process (Eibl and Eibl 2006). Disposable wave bioreactor systems could also be another advancement in the bioreactor design area (Mishra and Ranjan 2008). These systems work on the basis of using wave for agitation purpose which in turn reduces the stress levels (Palazón et al. 2003a, b). Large-scale wave bioreactors having the capacities of up to 600 L are now commercially applicable (Mishra and Ranjan 2008; Eibl and Eibl 2006).

7.6.2 Process Intensification

Process intensification methods could also be utilized in plant and tissue culture works (Stiles and Liu 2013). The ability to exploit HR cultures as a source of bioactive chemicals depends on the development of a suitable bioreactor system where several physical and chemical parameters must be taken into consideration. Selection of highly productive cell lines, manipulation of nutrients, optimizing the culture environment, elicitation, metabolic engineering, in situ product removal, and ultrasound have been applied for process intensification in HR bioreactor cultures (Mishra and Ranjan 2008; Stiles and Liu 2013).

7.6.2.1 Optimization of Bioreactor Parameters

Development of an appropriate bioreactor depends on several physical and chemical parameters, such as optimum pH, sufficient substrate, controlled temperature, salts for nutrition, product and by-product removal, oxygen, inoculation size and density, and product recovery. The agro-bacterial concentration has an important role in the production of transformed roots (Mishra and Ranjan 2008). Dissolved oxygen is another important factor in the bioreactor microenvironment. HRs cultured in bioreactors have the affinity to form clumps which critically inhibits the oxygen transfer (Bordonaro and Curtis 2000). Nutrient availability is also a major point for scale-up, and minerals are an important regulatory factor for HR growth (Sivakumar et al. 2005). Furthermore, periodic measurement of nutrients concentration during periods in bioreactors would provide key information regarding metabolic production (Wilhelmson et al. 2006; Sivakumar et al. 2005).

Light also plays a key role for both growth and production of secondary metabolites. The stimulatory role of light on the production of secondary compounds has been demonstrated using plant species "*Perilla frutescens* and *Artemisia annua*" (Zhong et al. 1991; Wang et al. 2001; Abbasi et al. 2007; Taya et al. 1994; Jacob and Malpathak 2004).

7.6.2.2 Elicitation

Elicitation is the effective technique which is currently used for improving the production of secondary metabolites (Zhao et al. 2005; Baenas et al. 2014). Overall, based on origin, elicitors are classified biotic and abiotic. Basically, biotic elicitors are either physical factors or chemical factors such as ultraviolet light heavy metals and salts (Stiles and Liu 2013). Salts including $AlCl_3$, $AgNO_3$, $CdCl_2$, $CaCl_2$, $CuCl_2$, $CoCl_2$, KCl, $HgCl_2$, $MgSO_4$, $VOSO_4NiSO_4$, and Zn ions have been used to increase the secondary metabolite production in a variety of plant (Ramirez-Estrada et al. 2016; Li et al. 2006; Vasconsuelo and Boland 2007). Abiotic elicitors are usually cheaper than biotic; however, they are not as efficient for the cultivation of the target microorganism (Georgiev et al. 2007). Specificity of the elicitor, culture growth stage, treatment interval, the concentration, medium composition, and light are the main factors that affect the effectiveness of elicitation (Sharma et al. 2013).

7.6.2.3 Metabolic Engineering

Metabolic engineering of biosynthetic pathways has been established recently to enhance the fabrication of secondary metabolites. In this case some general issues have to be taken into account, namely, competing pathways, cofactors for the reaction, and rate-limiting enzymatic steps which are among the major metabolic engineering issues (Ludwig-Müller et al. 2014; Georgiev et al. 2010; Chandra and Chandra 2011).

7.7 Concluding Remark and Future Developments of HR Cultures

To date, significant progresses have been made in the genetic transformation and tissue culture in order to amplify the key pathways for the biosynthesis of targeted metabolites. Commercial production of HRs has attracted much attention recently as compared to the other plant cells. HR cultures are unique due to their much higher genetic and biosynthetic stability. However, exploration into inexpensive novel elicitors and bioreactors are required in order to warrant their industrial implementation. Further, generated knowledge from plant metabolic pathways and advancements in genetic engineering will help HRs to become a promising and sustainable fabrication system in the near future.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to thank Food Research Institute of Sahand University of Technology for cooperation in preparation of this review.

References

Abbasi BH, Tian CL, Murch SJ, Saxena PK, Liu CZ (2007) Light-enhanced caffeic acid derivatives biosynthesis in hairy root cultures of *Echinacea purpurea*. Plant Cell Rep 26:1367–1372

Abbasi BH, Liu R, Saxena PK, Liu CZ (2009) Cichoric acid production from hairy root cultures of *Echinacea purpurea* grown in a modified airlift bioreactor. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 84:1697–1701

Agostini E, Coniglio MS, Milrad SR, Tigier HA, Giulietti AM (2003) Phytoremediation of 2,4-dichlorophenol by *Brassica napus* hairy root cultures. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 37:139–144

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Alderete LG, Talano MA, Ibáñez SG, Purro S, Agostini E, Milrad SR, Medina MI (2009) Establishment of transgenic tobacco hairy roots expressing basic peroxidases and its application for phenol removal. J Biotechnol 139:273–279

Angelini VA, Orejas J, Medina MI, Agostini E (2011) Scale up of 2, 4-dichlorophenol removal from aqueous solutions using *Brassica napus* hairy roots. J Hazard Mater 185:269–274

Ayora-Talavera T, Chappell J, Lozoya-Gloria E, Loyola-Vargas VM (2002) Overexpression in *Catharanthus roseus* hairy roots of a truncated hamster 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-CoA reductase gene. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 97:135–145

Azlan GJ, Marziah M, Radzali M, Johari R (2002) Establishment of *Physalis minima* hairy roots culture for the production of physalins. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 69:271–278

Baenas N, García-Viguera C, Moreno DA (2014) Elicitation: a tool for enriching the bioactive composition of foods. Molecules 19:13541–13563

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Banerjee S, Shang TQ, Wilson AM, Moore AL, Strand SE, Gordon MP, Lafferty Doty S (2002) Expression of functional mammalian P450 2E1 in hairy root cultures. Biotechnol Bioeng 77:462–466

Boominathan R, Doran PM (2003) Cadmium tolerance and antioxidative defenses in hairy roots of the cadmium hyperaccumulator, *Thlaspi caerulescens*. Biotechnol Bioeng 83:158–167

Boominathan R, Saha-Chaudhury NM, Sahajwalla V, Doran PM (2004) Production of nickel bio-ore from hyperaccumulator plant biomass: applications in phytomining. Biotechnol Bioeng 86:243–250

Bordonaro JL, Curtis WR (2000) Inhibitory role of root hairs on transport within root culture bioreactors. Biotechnol Bioeng 70:176–186

Chandra S (2012) Natural plant genetic engineer *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*: role of T-DNA in plant secondary metabolism. Biotechnol Lett 34:407–415

Chandra S, Chandra R (2011) Engineering secondary metabolite production in hairy roots. Phytochem Rev 10:371–395

Chinou I (2008) Primary and secondary metabolites and their biological activity. In: Waksmundzka-Hajnos M, Sherma J, Kowalska T (eds) Thin layer chromatography in photochemistry. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 59–76

Choi YE, Kim YS, Paek KY (2008) Types and designs of bioreactors for hairy root culture. In: Gupta SD, Ibaraki Y (eds) Plant tissue culture engineering. Springer, Netherlands, pp 161–172

Coniglio MS, Busto VD, González PS, Medina MI, Milrad S, Agostini E (2008) Application of *Brassica napus* hairy root cultures for phenol removal from aqueous solutions. Chemosphere 72:1035–1042

Curtis WR (2000) Bioreactor growth of hairy roots. In: Spier R (ed) Encyclopedia of cell technology. Wiley, New York, pp 827–841

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Datta A, Bhattacharya S, Pal CB, Sen J, Dasgupta S, Biswas A, Batra J (2010) Process for production of anti-diabetic compound in root culture of Catharanthus roseus.US Patent WO2010004584 Aug 2010

De Araujo BS, Dec J, Bollag JM, Pletsch M (2006) Uptake and transformation of phenol and chlorophenols by hairy root cultures of *Daucus carota*, *Ipomoea batatas* and *Solanum aviculare*. Chemosphere 63:642–651

Dechaux CE, Boitel-Conti MI (2005) A strategy for overaccumulation of scopolamine in Datura innoxia hairy root cultures. Acta Biol Cracov Ser Bot 47:101–107

Dixit AK, Vaidya S (2010) *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* induced hairy root development and its effect on production of glycyrrhizin in *Abrus precatorius* (L). Int J Curr Res 6:33–38

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Doran PM (2009) Application of plant tissue cultures in phytoremediation research: incentives and limitations. Biotechnol Bioeng 103:60–76

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Doty SL (2008) Enhancing phytoremediation through the use of transgenics and endophytes. New Phytol 179:318–333

Eapen S, Suseelan KN, Tivarekar S, Kotwal SA, Mitra R (2003) Potential for rhizofiltration of uranium using hairy root cultures of *Brassica juncea* and *Chenopodium amaranticolor*. Environ Res 91:127–133

Eapen S, Singh S, D'souza SF (2007) Advances in development of transgenic plants for remediation of xenobiotic pollutants. Biotechnol Adv 25:442–451

Eibl R, Eibl D (2006) Design and use of the wave bioreactor for plant cell culture. In: Gupta SD, Ibaraki Y (eds) Plant tissue culture engineering. Springer, The Netherlands, pp 203–227

Eibl R, Eibl D (2008) Design of bioreactors suitable for plant cell and tissue cultures. Phytochem Rev 7:593–598

Ferdosi A, Kashefi B (2014) A review hairy roots and secondary metabolite production in salvia. Intl J Farm Allied Sci 3:940–945

Flores HE, Filner P (2012) Metabolic relationships of putrescine, GABA and alkaloids in cell and root cultures of Solanaceae. In: Neumann KH, Barz W, Reinhard E (eds) Primary and secondary metabolism of plant cell cultures. Springer Science and Business Media, p 174–185

Fu CX, Zhao DX, Xue XF, Jin ZP, Ma FS (2005) Transformation of *Saussurea involucrata* by *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*: hairy root induction and syringin production. Process Biochem 40:3789–3794

Garbisu C, Alkorta I (2001) Phytoextraction: a cost-effective plant-based technology for the removal of metals from the environment. Bioresour Technol 77:229–236

Georgiev M, Heinrich M, Kerns G, Pavlov A, Bley T (2006) Production of iridoids and phenolics by transformed *Harpagophytum procumbens* root cultures. Eng Life Sci 6:593–596

Georgiev MI, Pavlov AI, Bley T (2007) Hairy root type plant in vitro systems as sources of bioactive substances. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:1175–1185

Georgiev MI, Ludwig-Müller J, Bley T (2010) Hairy root culture: copying nature in new bioprocesses. In: Arora R (ed) Medicinal plant biotechnology. CAB International, Oxon, pp 156–175

Georgiev MI, Ludwig-Müller J, Alipieva K, Lippert A (2011) Sonication-assisted *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*-mediated transformation of *Verbascum xanthophoeniceum* Griseb for bioactive metabolite accumulation. Plant Cell Rep 30:859–866

Giri A, Narasu ML (2000) Transgenic hairy roots: recent trends and applications. Biotechnol Adv 18:1–22

Giri A, Ravindra ST, Dhingra V, Narasu ML (2001) Influence of different strains of *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* on induction of hairy roots and artemisinin production in *Artemisia annua*. Curr Sci 81:378–382

Gonzalez PS, Capozucca C, Tigier H, Milrad S, Agostini E (2006) Phytoremediation of phenol from wastewater, by peroxidases of tomato hairy root cultures. Enzym Microb Technol 39:647–653

Gonzalez PS, Agostini E, Milrad SR (2008) Comparison of the removal of 2,4-dichlorophenol and phenol from polluted water, by peroxidases from tomato hairy roots, and protective effect of polyethylene glycol. Chemosphere 70:982–989

Gonzalez PS, Ontanon OM, Armendariz AL, Talano MA, Paisio CE, Agostini E (2013) *Brassica napus* hairy roots and rhizobacteria for phenolic compounds removal. Environ Sci Pollut Res 20:1310–1317

Guillon S, Trémouillaux-Guiller J, Pati PK, Rideau M, Gantet P (2006) Hairy root research: recent scenario and exciting prospects. Curr Opin Plant Biol 9:341–346

Gujarathi NP, Haney BJ, Park HJ, Wickramasinghe SR, Linden JC (2005) Hairy roots of *Helianthus annuus*: a model system to study phytoremediation of tetracycline and oxytetracycline. Biotechnol Prog 21:775–780

Huang TK, McDonald KA (2012) Bioreactor systems for in vitro production of foreign proteins using plant cell cultures. Biotechnol Adv 30:398–409

Huang SY, Hung CH, Chou SN (2004) Innovative strategies for operation of mist trickling reactors for enhanced hairy root proliferation and secondary metabolite productivity. Enzym Microb Technol 35:22–32

Huber C, Bartha B, Harpaintner R, Schröder P (2009) Metabolism of acetaminophen (paracetamol) in plants-two independent pathways result in the formation of a glutathione and a glucose conjugate. Environ Sci Pollut Res 16:206–213

Ibanez SG, Medina MI, Agostini E (2011) Phenol tolerance, changes of antioxidative enzymes and cellular damage in transgenic tobacco hairy roots colonized by *Arbuscular mycorrhizal* fungi. Chemosphere 83:700–705

Ibanez S, Talano M, Ontañon O, Suman J, Medina MI, Macek T, Agostini E (2016) Transgenic plants and hairy roots: exploiting the potential of plant species to remediate contaminants. New Biotechnol 33:625–635

Ismail AM, Theodor PA (2012) The effect of heavy metals Zn and Ni on growth of in vitro hairy root cultures of Indian mustard *Brassica juncea* L. Int J Adv Biotechnol Res 3:688–697

Jacob A, Malpathak N (2004) Green hairy root cultures of *Solanum khasianum* Clarke-a new route to in vitro Solasodine production. Curr Sci 87:1442–1447

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP,

Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Jha P, Jobby R, Kudale S, Modi N, Dhaneshwar A, Desai N (2013) Biodegradation of phenol using hairy roots of *Helianthusannuus* L. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 77:106–113

Katuri SR, Ranjan R, Khanna R (2011) Mathematical modeling of mist bioreactor for the growth of hairy roots In: National workshop-cum-conference on recent trends in Mathematics and Computing RTMC (13)

Kawauchi M, Arima T, Shirota O, Sekita S, Nakane T, Takase Y, Kuroyanagi M (2010) Production of sesquiterpene-type phytoalexins by hairy roots of *Hyoscyamus albus* co-treated with copper sulfate and methyl jasmonate. Chem Pharm Bull 58:934–938

Khoudi H, Maatar Y, Gouiaa S, Masmoudi K (2012) Transgenic tobacco plants expressing ectopically wheat H+-pyrophosphatase (H+-PPase) gene *TaVP1* show enhanced accumulation and tolerance to cadmium. J Plant Physiol 169:98–103

Kim YJ, Weathers PJ, Wyslouzil BE (2002a) Growth of *Artemisia annua* hairy roots in liquidand gas-phase reactors. Biotechnol Bioeng 80:454–464

Kim Y, Wyslouzil BE, Weathers PJ (2002b) Invited review: secondary metabolism of hairy root cultures in bioreactors. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 38:1–10

Kim JS, Lee SY, Park SU (2008) Resveratrol production in hairy root culture of peanut, *Arachis hypogaea* L. transformed with different *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* strains. Afr J Biotechnol 7:3788–3790

Kim YK, Xu H, Park WT, Park NI, Lee SY, Park SU (2010) Genetic transformation of buckwheat (*Fagopyrum esculentum* M.) with *Agrobacterium rhizogenes* and production of rutin in transformed root cultures. Aust J Crop Sci 4:485–490

Korde VV, Dhas SS, Gurave NA (2016) Hairy root culture: a promising approach in biotransformation. Asian J Plant Sci 6:6–11

Królicka A, Staniszewska I, Bielawski K, Maliński E, Szafranek J, Łojkowska E (2001) Establishment of hairy root cultures of *Ammi majus*. Plant Sci 160:259–264

Kruger NJ, Ratcliffe RG (2009) Insights into plant metabolic networks from steady-state metabolic flux analysis. Biochimie 91:697–702

Krystofova O, Shestivska V, Galiova M, Novotny K, Kaiser J, Zehnalek J, Babula P, Opatrilova R, Adam V, Kizek R (2009) Sunflower plants as bioindicators of environmental pollution with lead (II) ions. Sensors 9:5040–5058

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Kwok KH, Doran PM (1995) Kinetic and stoichiometric analysis of hairy roots in a segmented bubble-column reactor. Biotechnol Prog 11:429–435

Lan X, Quan H (2010) Hairy root culture of *Przewalskia tangutica* for enhanced production of pharmaceutical tropane alkaloids. J Med Plant Res 4:1477–1481

Le Flem-Bonhomme V, Laurain-Mattar D, Fliniaux MA (2004) Hairy root induction of *Papaver somniferum* var. album, a difficult-to-transform plant, by *A. rhizogenes* LBA 9402. Planta 218:890–893

Li W, Koike K, Asada Y, Hirotani M, Rui H, Yoshikawa T, Nikaido T (2002) Flavonoids from *Glycyrrhiza pallidiflora* hairy root cultures. Phytochemistry 60:351–355

Li FX, Jin ZP, Zhao DX, Cheng LQ, Fu CX, Ma FS (2006) Overexpression of the *Saussurea medusa* chalcone isomerase gene in *Saussurea involucrata* hairy root cultures enhances their biosynthesis of apigenin. Phytochemistry 67:553–560

Lokhande VH, Kudale S, Nikalje G, Desai N, Suprasanna P (2015) Hairy root induction and phytoremediation of textile dye, reactive green 19A-HE4BD, in a halo-phyte, *Sesuvium portulacastrum* L. Biotechnol Rep 8:56–63

Ludwig-Müller J, Jahn L, Lippert A, Püschel J, Walter A (2014) Improvement of hairy root cultures and plants by changing biosynthetic pathways leading to pharmaceutical metabolites: strategies and applications. Biotechnol Adv 32:1168–1179

Macek T, Kotrba P, Svatos A, Novakova M, Demnerova K, Mackova M (2008) Novel roles for genetically modified plants in environmental protection. Trends Biotechnol 26:146–152

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

McCoy E, O'Connor SE (2008) Natural products from plant cell cultures. In: Petersen F, Amstutz R (eds) Natural compounds as drugs, vol 1. Birkhäuser, Basel, pp 329–370

McKelvey SA, Gehrig JA, Hollar KA, Curtis WR (1993) Growth of plant root cultures in liquid- and gas-dispersed reactor environments. Biotechnol Prog 9:317–322

Medina-Bolivar LF, Dolan M, Bennett S, Condori JM, Hubstenberger JF, inventors; Condori Jose M, Hubstenberger John F, assignee (2010) Production of stilbenes in plant hairy root cultures. US patent 7,666,677, 23 Feb 2010

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013a) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1, 2 & 3):6–12

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013b) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015a) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.). Bangladesh. Aust J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015b) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015c) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015d) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016a) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016c) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016d) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016e) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Mishra BN, Ranjan R (2008) Growth of hairy-root cultures in various bioreactors for the production of secondary metabolites. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 49:1–10

Moyano E, Jouhikainen K, Tammela P, Palazón J, Cusidó RM, Piñol MT, Teeri TH, Oksman-Caldentey KM (2003) Effect of *pmt* gene overexpression on tropane alkaloid production in transformed root cultures of *Datura metel* and *Hyoscyamus muticus*. J Exp Bot 54:203–211

Najmanova J, Mackova M, Macek T, Kotrba P (2007) Preparation of transgenic flax with enhanced metal tolerance. J Biotechnol 131:S38–S39

Namdeo AG (2007) Plant cell elicitation for production of secondary metabolites: a review. Pharmacogn Rev 1:69–79

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Nedelkoska TV, Doran PM (2000) Characteristics of heavy metal uptake by plant species with potential for phytoremediation and phytomining. Miner Eng 13:549–561

Nepovim A, Podlipná R, Soudek P, Schröder P, Vanek T (2004) Effects of heavy metals and nitroaromatic compounds on horseradish glutathione S-transferase and peroxidase. Chemosphere 57:1007–1015

Nguyen C, Bourgaud F, Forlot P, Guckert A (1992) Establishment of hairy root cultures of *Psoralea* species. Plant Cell Rep 11:424–427

Novakova M, Mackova M, Sylvestre M, Macek T (2007) Preparation of genetically modified plants containing bacterial dioxygenase – tool for preferable phytoremediation. J Biotechnol 131:S36

Oller AL, Agostini E, Talano MA, Capozucca C, Milrad SR, Tigier HA, Medina MI (2005) Overexpression of a basic peroxidase in transgenic tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* Mill. cv. Pera) hairy roots increases phytoremediation of phenol. Plant Sci 169:1102–1111

Ono NN, Tian L (2011) The multiplicity of hairy root cultures: prolific possibilities. Plant Sci 180:439–446

Ontañon OM, González PS, Ambrosio LF, Paisio CE, Agostini E (2014) Rhizoremediation of phenol and chromium by the synergistic combination of a native bacterial strain and *Brassica napus* hairy roots. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 88:192–198

Palazón J, Cusidó RM, Bonfill M, Mallol A, Moyano E, Morales C, Piñol MT (2003a) Elicitation of different *Panax ginseng* transformed root phenotypes for an improved ginsenoside production. Plant Physiol Biochem 41:1019–1025

Palazón J, Mallol A, Eibl R, Lettenbauer C, Cusidó RM, Piñol MT (2003b) Growth and ginsenoside production in hairy root cultures of *Panax ginseng* using a novel bioreactor. Planta Med 69:344–349

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Park SU, Facchini PJ (2000) *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*-mediated transformation of opium poppy, *Papaver somniferum* L., and California poppy, *Eschscholzia californica* Cham, root cultures. J Exp Bot 51:1005–1016

Patil P, Desai N, Govindwar S, Jadhav JP, Bapat V (2009) Degradation analysis of reactive Red198 by hairy roots of *Tagetes patula* L. (Marigold). Planta 230:725–735

Pavlov A, Georgiev V, Kovatcheva P (2003) Relationship between type and age of the inoculum cultures and betalains biosynthesis by *Beta vulgaris* hairy root culture. Biotechnol Lett 25:307–309

Pavlov A, Berkov S, Weber J, Bley T (2009) Hyoscyamine biosynthesis in *Datura stramonium* hairy root in vitro systems with different ploidy levels. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 157:210–225

Pistelli L, Giovannini A, Ruffoni B, Bertoli A, Pistelli L (2010) Hairy root cultures for secondary metabolites production. In: Teresa M, Giuseppina G, Berra R, Berra B (eds) Bio-farms for nutraceuticals. Springer, US, pp 167–184

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Praveen N, Murthy HN (2012) Synthesis of with anolide A depends on carbon source and medium pH in hairy root cultures of *Withania somnifera*. Ind Crop Prod 35:241–243

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Qaderi A, Akbari Z, Kalateh-jari S, Fatehi F, Tolyat M, Jalali Moghadam M, Naghdi Badi H (2016) Improving trigonelline production in hairy root culture of fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum-graecum*). J Med Plants 59:73–80

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Ramakrishnan D, Curtis WR (2004) Trickle-bed root culture bioreactor design and scale-up: growth, fluid-dynamics, and oxygen mass transfer. Biotechnol Bioeng 88:248–260

Ramirez-Estrada K, Vidal-Limon H, Hidalgo D, Moyano E, Golenioswki M, Cusidó RM, Palazon J (2016) Elicitation, an effective strategy for the biotechnological production of bioactive high-added value compounds in plant cell factories. Molecules 21:182–205

Rao SR, Ravishankar GA (2002) Plant cell cultures: chemical factories of secondary metabolites. Biotechnol Adv 20:101–153

Rates SM (2001) Plants as source of drugs. Toxicon 39:603–613

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Rezek J, Macek T, Mackova M, Triska J (2007) Plant metabolites of polychlorinated biphenyls in hairy root culture of black nightshade *Solanum nigrum* SNC-90. Chemosphere 69:1221–1227

Rezek J, Macek T, Doubsky J, Mackova M (2012) Metabolites of 2,2′-dichlorobiphenyl and 2,6-dichlorobiphenyl in hairy root culture of black nightshade *Solanum nigrum* SNC-90. Chemosphere 89:383–838

Richter U, Rothe G, Fabian AK, Rahfeld B, Dräger B (2005) Overexpression of tropinone reductases alters alkaloid composition in *Atropa belladonna* root cultures. J Exp Bot 56:645–652

Rodriguez-Mendiola MA, Stafford A, Cresswell R, Ariascastro C (1991) Bioreactors for growth of plant-roots. Enzym Microb Technol 13:697–702

Rudrappa T, Neelwarne B, Aswathanarayana RG (2004) In situ and ex situ adsorption and recovery of betalains from hairy root cultures of *Beta vulgaris*. Biotechnol Prog 20:777–785

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. In: The adaptive soil management: from theory to practices. p 69–88 doi. 10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Sato F, Hashimoto T, Hachiya A, Tamura KI, Choi KB, Morishige T, Fujimoto H, Yamada Y (2001) Metabolic engineering of plant alkaloid biosynthesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 98:367–372

Sauerwein M, Yamazaki T, Shimomura K (1991) Hernandulcin in hairy root cultures of *Lippia dulcis*. Plant Cell Rep 9:579–581

Sevón N, Oksman-Caldentey KM (2002) *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*-mediated transformation: root cultures as a source of alkaloids. Planta Med 68:859–868

Sharma S, Shahzad A, Sahai A (2013) Hairy root culture: an efficient system for secondary metabolite production. In: Shahid M, Shahzad A, Malik A, Sahai A (eds) Recent trends in biotechnology and therapeutic applications of medicinal plants. Springer, The Netherlands, pp 51–78

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shimomura K, Sudo H, Saga H, Kamada H (1991) Shikonin production and secretion by hairy root cultures of *Lithospermum erythrorhizon*. Plant Cell Rep 10:282–285

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh S, Melo JS, Eapen S, D'souza SF (2006) Phenol removal using *Brassica juncea* hairy roots: role of inherent peroxidase and H_2O_2. J Biotechnol 123:43–49

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Sivakumar G, Yu KW, Hahn EJ, Paek KY (2005) Optimization of organic nutrients for ginseng hairy roots production in large-scale bioreactors. Curr Sci 89:641–649

Sivanesan I, Jeong BR (2009) Induction and establishment of adventitious and hairy root cultures of *Plumbago zeylanica* L. Afr J Biotechnol 8:5294–5300

Sosa Alderete LG, Talano MA, Ibáñez SG, Purro S, Agostini E, Milrad SR et al (2009) Establishment of transgenic tobacco hairy roots expressing basic peroxidases and its application for phenol removal. J Biotechnol 139:273–279

Sosa Alderete LG, Ibăne˜z SG, Agostini E, Medina MI (2012) Phytoremediation of phenol at pilot scale by tobacco hairy roots. Int J Environ Sci 3:398–407

Soudek P, Petrová S, Benesova D, Vanek T (2011) Uranium uptake and stress responses of in vitro cultivated hairy root culture of *Armoracia rusticana*. Agrochimica 55:15–28

Srivastava S, Srivastava AK (2007) Hairy root culture for mass-production of high-value secondary metabolites. Crit Rev Biotechnol 27:29–43

Srivastava S, Srivastava AK (2012a) Azadirachtin production by hairy root cultivation of *Azadirachta indica* in a modified stirred tank reactor. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 35:1549–1553

Srivastava S, Srivastava AK (2012b) In vitro Azadirachtin production by hairy root cultivation of *Azadirachta indica* in nutrient mist bioreactor. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 166:365–378

Srivastava S, Srivastava AK (2012c) Statistical medium optimization for enhanced azadirachtin production in hairy root culture of *Azadirachta indica*. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 48:73–84

Stiles AR, Liu CZ (2013) Hairy root culture: bioreactor design and process intensification. In: Doran PM (ed) Biotechnology of hairy root systems. Springer, Berlin, pp 91–114

Straczek A, Wannijn J, Van Hees M, Thijs H, Thiry Y (2009) Tolerance of hairy roots of carrots to U chronic exposure in a standardized in vitro device. Environ Exp Bot 65:82–89

Sudha CG, Reddy BO, Ravishankar GA, Seeni S (2003) Production of ajmalicine and ajmaline in hairy root cultures of *Rauvolfia micrantha* Hook f., a rare and endemic medicinal plant. Biotechnol Lett 25:631–636

Sudo H, Yamakawa T, Yamazaki M, Aimi N, Saito K (2002) Bioreactor production of camptothecin by hairy root cultures of *Ophiorrhiza pumila*. Biotechnol Lett 24:359–363

Sung LS, Huang SY (2006) Lateral root bridging as a strategy to enhance L-DOPA production in *Stizolobium hassjoo* hairy root cultures by using a mesh hindrance mist trickling bioreactor. Biotechnol Bioeng 94:441–447

Suresh B, Sherkhane PD, Kale S, Eapen S, Ravishankar GA (2005) Uptake and degradation of DDT by hairy root cultures of *Cichorium intybus* and *Brassica juncea*. Chemosphere 61:1288–1292

Talano MA, Frontera S, González P, Medina MI, Agostini E (2010) Removal of 2,4- diclorophenol from aqueous solutions using tobacco hairy root cultures. J Hazard Mater 176:784–791

Talano MA, Oller AL, Gonzalez PS, Agostini E (2012) Hairy roots, their multiple applications and recent patents. Recent Patents Biotechnol 6:115–133

Talano MA, Oller AL, González P, González SO, Agostini E (2014) Effects of arsenate on tobacco hairy root and seedling growth, and its removal. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 50:217–225

Taya M, Yoyama A, Kondo O, Kobayashi T, Matsui C (1989) Growth characteristics of plant hairy roots and their cultures in bioreactors. J Chem Eng Jpn 22:84–89

Taya M, Sato H, Kinooka M, Tone S (1994) Characterization of Pak-bung green hairy roots cultivated under light irradiation. J Ferment Bioeng 78:42–48

Telke AA, Kagalkar AN, Jagtap UB, Desai NS, Bapat VA, Govindwar SP (2011) Bio-chemical characterization of laccase from hairy root culture of *Brassica juncea* L. and role of redox mediators to enhance its potential for the decolorization of textile dyes. Planta 234:1137–1149

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Thwe A, Arasu MV, Li X, Park CH, Kim SJ, Al-Dhabi NA, Park SU (2016) Effect of different agrobacterium rhizogenes strains on hairy root induction and phenylpropanoid biosynthesis in tartary buckwheat (*Fagopyrum tataricum gaertn*). Front Microbiol 7:318–328

Ur Rahman L, Ikenaga T, Kitamura Y (2004) Penicillin derivatives induce chemical structure-dependent root development, and application for plant transformation. Plant Cell Rep 22:668–677

Vanisree M, Lee CY, Lo SF, Nalawade SM, Lin CY, Tsay HS (2004) Studies on the production of some important secondary metabolites from medicinal plants by plant tissue cultures. Bot Bull Acad Sin 45:1–22

Vasconsuelo A, Boland R (2007) Molecular aspects of the early stages of elicitation of secondary metabolites in plants. Plant Sci 172:861–875

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. India Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of Indo-Gangetic Plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Vinterhalter B, Savić J, Platiša J, Raspor M, Ninković S, Mitić N, Vinterhalter D (2008) Nickel tolerance and hyper accumulation in shoot cultures regenerated from hairy root cultures of *Alyssum murale* Waldst et Kit. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 94:299–303

Wang YC, Zhang HX, Zhao B, Yuan XF (2001) Improved growth of *Artemisia annua* L hairy roots and artemisinin production under red light conditions. Biotechnol Lett 23:1971–1973

Weathers PJ, Bunk G, McCoy MC (2005) The effect of phytohormones on growth and artemisinin production in *Artemisia annua* hairy roots. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 41:47–53

Whitney PJ (1992) Novel bioreactors for the growth of roots transformed by *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*. Enzym Microb Technol 14:13–17

Wilhelmson A, Hakkinen ST, Kallio PT, Oksman-Caldentey KM, Nuutila AM (2006) Heterologous expression of *Vitreoscilla* hemoglobin (VHb) and cultivation conditions affect the alkaloid profile of *Hyoscyamus muticus* hairy roots. Biotechnol Prog 22:350–358

Wink M, Alfermann AW, Franke R, Wetterauer B, Distl M, Windhövel J, Krohn O, Fuss E, Garden H, Mohagheghzadeh A, Wildi E (2005) Sustainable bioproduction of phytochemicals by plant *in vitro* cultures: anticancer agents. Plant Genet Resour C 3:90–100

Wongwicha W, Tanaka H, Shoyama Y, Putalun W (2011) Methyl jasmonate elicitation enhances glycyrrhizin production in *Glycyrrhiza inflata* hairy roots cultures. Z Naturforsch 66:423–428

Wyslouzil BE, Whipple M, Chatterjee C, Walcerz DB, Weathers PJ, Hart DP (1997) Mist deposition onto hairy root cultures: aerosol modeling and experiments. Biotechnol Prog 13:185–194

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yang YK (2010) Exogenous auxins and polyamines enhance growth and rosmarinic acid production in hairy root cultures of Nepeta cataria L. Plant Omics 3(6):190–193

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Ya-ut P, Chareonsap P, Sukrong S (2011) Micropropagation and hairy root culture of *Ophiorrhiza alata* Craib for camptothecin production. Biotechnol Lett 33:2519–2526

Yazaki K, Sugiyama A, Morita M, Shitan N (2008) Secondary transport as an efficient membrane transport mechanism for plant secondary metabolites. Phytochem Rev 7:513–524

Yoshikawa T, Furuya T (1987) Saponin production by cultures of *Panax ginseng* transformed with *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*. Plant Cell Rep 6:449–453

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium

solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zhang L, Ding R, Chai Y, Bonfill M, Moyano E, Oksman-Caldentey KM, Xu T, Pi Y, Wang Z, Zhang H, Kai G (2004) Engineering tropane biosynthetic pathway in *Hyoscyamus niger* hairy root cultures. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:6786–6791

Zhang HC, Liu JM, Lu HY, Gao SL (2009) Enhanced flavonoid production in hairy root cultures of *Glycyrrhiza uralensis* Fisch by combining the over-expression of chalcone isomerase gene with the elicitation treatment. Plant Cell Rep 28:1205–1213

Zhao J, Davis LC, Verpoorte R (2005) Elicitor signal transduction leading to production of plant secondary metabolites. Biotechnol Adv 23:283–333

Zhong JJ, Seki T, Kinoshita S, Yoshida T (1991) Effect of light irradiation on anthocyanin production by suspended culture of *Perilla frutescens*. Biotechnol Bioeng 38:653–658

Part II

Beneficial Soil Microbe Interaction in Some Economically Important Crops

Metagenomic Approaches in Understanding the Mechanism and Function of PGPRs: Perspectives for Sustainable Agriculture

8

P.V. Bramhachari, Ganji Purnachandra Nagaraju,
and E. Kariali

Abstract

The rationale of this article especially emphasizes the potential contributions of metagenomics to the study of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPRs) which play an important role in the sustainable agriculture. Several studies are currently focused to unravel the molecular mechanism implicated in plant–microbe interactions to comprehend the functionality of PGPRs. In this context, researchers are presently using advanced molecular techniques, modern sequencing technologies, and metagenomics, to explore the structural and functional aspects of genes that analyze the protein composition. Metagenomics has a huge prospective to endow with fundamental knowledge on plant–microbe interactions necessary for new innovations to increase sustainable agricultural productivity. This review summarizes the main features of PGPRs in sustainable agriculture and gives a brief outlook on the recent trends in plant–microbe metagenomics. It also critically discusses the current knowledge of plant–soil–microbe-mediated interactions and the impact of enhanced genomic technologies and our perception to understand how these relationships impact plant performance and sustainable improvement of plant productivity. Metagenomic applications in framework of plant–microbe interactions are also highlighted that profit from these novel technologies.

P.V. Bramhachari (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam 521001,
Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: veerabramha@gmail.com

G.P. Nagaraju
Department of Hematology and Medical Oncology, Winship Cancer Institute,
Emory University, Atlanta, GA 30322, USA

E. Kariali (✉)
School of Life Sciences, Sambalpur University, Sambalpur, Odisha 768019, India
e-mail: ekamberk@rediffmail.com

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_8

Keywords
Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) • Sustainable agriculture • Crop productivity • Plant–microbe interactions • Metagenomics

8.1 Introduction

The rhizosphere is a biologically dynamic zone of the soil contiguous to plant roots that encompass soilborne microbes, where the biochemical and physical characteristics together influence the roots (Zeyaullah et al. 2009). Studies on the plant–microbe interactions in the rhizosphere are greatly imperative for understanding an array of intrinsic metabolic and physiological processes, such as nutrient geocycling, carbon sequestration, and ecosystem functioning. There are aplethora of reports on the role of rhizosphere–microbe interactions in nutrient cycling; plant diversity and carbon sinks raised noteworthy interest and enthused further researches on plant–microbe interactions (Opik et al. 2003; Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017a). The microbial diversity present in soil is exceptionally incredible, with ~10^9 bacteria per gram of soil representing surplus 5000 bacterial species (Fierer et al. 2012). However, soil microbiome is very essential in shaping the following parameters, viz., plant nutrition plan, health/disease, soil gene pool, pesticide/pollutant decomposition, bioindicators, nutrient cycling, soil fertility, and soil structure. Each gram soil contains $10^{9–10}$ bacterial cells ($10^{7–8}$culturable, 10^4 species).

The soil metagenome has a greater biodiversity than any other habitat, >1,000,000 Gb per gram soil estimated from 10^9 bacterial cells with 5 Mb genomes), when compared to 6 Gb Sargasso sea metagenome sequenced, 3 Gb human genome, gut metagenome 0.5 Gb, 577 Gb sequenced from 124 individual gut microbiomes (Qin et al. 2010). Nonetheless, the ecologists face a colossal challenge to link microbial diversity studies in the rhizosphere. Primarily the molecular interactions between microbes and plants have been contemplated as an effect. However, as indicated in the recent literature, it was recognized as an effective process with high level of complexity wherein at least two genomes share information devoid of sharing the same ecological niches from a cellular perspective (Sharma et al. 2016a, b). More recently, the extent of influence among the organisms involved in the interactions is therefore claimed important that the biotechnological management of microorganisms has evicted to be an indispensable target for improving the functions of plant (Swarupa et al. 2016). Therefore, the technologies that overcome these limitations in agricultural production are highly inevitable. Several solutions that can increase agricultural yield include better agricultural practices and land management, use of biofertilizers, integrated pest management and farm mechanization, transgenic crops, and extended use of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (Glick 2014). Numerous approaches will only have short stint benefits as the world is finite with limited resources and, they count to several environmental reparations. Sustainable agriculture devoid of causing environmental damage is one of the key solutions to congregate the augmented food demand. It is worth mentioning that such problems can be achieved by introducing new practices by employing potential PGPR (Nath et al. 2017; Sarkar et al. 2017).

Plant-associated microbes present a striking and promising source to this end but are virtually unexploited. Consequently, bioprospecting of plant microbiomes is gaining progressive attention (Muller et al. 2016). Nevertheless, traditional microbiological approaches present severe limitations, as only a petite portion of the soil bacteria is cultivable by means of standard methods (Torsvik et al. 1996; Verma et al. 2017a). Consecutively to attain sustainable agriculture production and productivity, metagenomics is no doubt a promising tool to comprehend the plant–microbe interaction that aids in sustainable agriculture.

A triumphant metagenomic approach of the plant–microbe interaction that targets a physiological function warrants a befitting experimental design. An interesting analysis of the rhizosphere by comparative metagenomics holds an immense challenge to divulge several important questions apropos the unculturable fraction of the rhizosphere community. Consequently, in the last two decades, numerous molecular approaches were proposed (Bloem et al. 2006; van Elsas et al. 2007; Sorensen et al. 2009), and until recently, the exploration of entire genomes present in a soil sample, metagenomics, also provided a novel approach for comprehensive assessment (Handelsman 2004; Daniel 2005).

In fact, although metagenomics have led to the discovery of novel molecules, meager understanding of soil complexity, practical approach biases, and diverse microbial spatial distribution makes a debatable question on the value of such efforts in linking soil functions with microbial diversity. In recent years, sequencing of soil metagenome provided innovative insights into the ecology of soil microorganisms and proved to be a powerful tool for resurgence of novel genes and biomolecules (Daniel 2005). Apparently, metagenomics is an uncomplicated culture-independent approach and generally consists of cloning and analyzing the microbial DNA extracted directly from an environmental sample. It involves the following main steps: (a) DNA isolation from soil, (b) fragmentation and insertion of DNA into appropriate vectors, (c) cloning of DNA and transformation of appropriate host cells, (d) developing a metagenomic library, and (e) screening of the clone library (Handelsman 2004).

The rapid growth of metagenomics entails an expanded focus on plant microbes in a wide range of basic and applied research fields, ranging from molecular microbiology to agriculture biotechnology. Nevertheless it can be anticipated that the numerous novel genes identified through metagenome technologies will possibly surpass the number of genes identified through sequencing individual microbes (Streit and Schmitz 2004). As a consequence, metagenomic tools shall perhaps facilitate the recovery of a high amount of new antibiotics, enzymes, and other molecules from a small fraction of the soil metagenome (Simon and Daniel 2009) in the near future. Nonetheless these interesting molecules along with their molecular structures and functions hold enormous value to industrial applications. Likewise, the invention of novel genes with PGPR abilities may possibly be applied in agriculture by synthesizing the enzyme of interest in large bioreactors for application to crops. To add impetus to these efforts, bioinformatics-based tools along with advanced software's were of great significance toward the interpretation of the metagenome (Hoff et al. 2008). Metagenomic analysis is a revolutionary technique for understanding the microbiological ecology (Kennedy et al. 2010) and biocatalytic applications (Fernandez-Arrojo et al. 2010). The present review recapitulates the main features of PGPRs in sustainable agriculture and gives a brief stance about the trends in plant–microbe metagenomics. This review also discusses the contemporary knowledge of plant–soil–microbe-mediated interactions and the impact of improved genomic technologies on plant performance which sustainably improve plant productivity. Potential applications in the framework of plant–microbe interactions are also emphasized that yield from the new technologies, focusing on metagenomics.

8.2 Portraying the Mechanistic Insights of PGPRs

Approximately 15% of the root surface is covered by microbes that belong to different microbial species (Haldar and Sengupta 2015). The roots secrete a variety of different sugars produced by photosynthesis (~5 to 30%) which are sequentially utilized by rhizosphere microbes (Glick 2014). Bacteria that efficiently colonize the rhizosphere and stimulate plant growth through direct or indirect mechanisms are referred to as PGPRs (Ahemad and Kibretm 2014). PGPRs include a group of naturally occurring soil microbial flora that inhabit in the rhizosphere and thus inflict beneficial effect on the overall growth of the plant. PGPRs include bacteria that belong to genera *Agrobacterium*, *Arthrobacter*, *Acinetobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Burkholderia*, *Frankia*, *Serratia*, *Rhizobium*, *Pseudomonads*, *Thiobacillus* and *Bacillus* (Vessey 2003). These bacteria assist the plants by employing nutrient transport of minerals and uptake through roots (Glick 1995). Several researchers are actively involved in understanding the underlying mechanism of plant growth promotion by PGPRs (Fig. 8.1). These mechanics are broadly divided into direct and indirect mechanisms. Nonetheless the direct mechanism involves the straight use of required nutrients and/or growth regulators for promoting plant growth. However, if the plants were protected from various stresses factors (biotic and abiotic stress), their healthy growth may come under indirect mechanics (Prakash and Verma 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016e; Teotia et al. 2016).

The direct mechanism of PGPRs includes indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), siderophores (Jahanian et al. 2012), 1-amino-cyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase, hydrogen cyanate (HCN), nitrogenase (Glick 2012), and phosphate solubilization (Ahemad and Khan 2012). Perhaps some PGPRs also possess more environment-specific PGP traits such as heavy metal-detoxifying activity (Ma et al. 2011), salinity tolerance (Tank and Saraf 2010), and biocontrol of phytopathogens and insects (Hynes et al. 2008). PGPRs have become of interest as inoculants for phytoremediation because of their diverse plant growth-promoting capabilities (Liu et al. 2013). Among these, phytohormone production by PGPRs plays a very

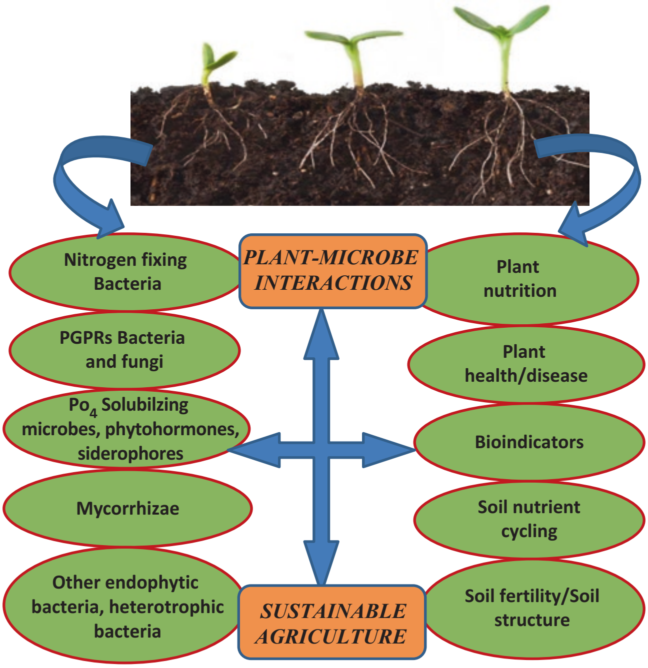


Fig. 8.1 Schematic diagram of plant microbial interactions in the rhizosphere

important role in promoting plant growth as phytohormones can intercede with the processes including cell division, plant cell enlargement, and extension in symbiotic as well as nonsymbiotic roots (Glick 2014). Systematic analysis of whole genome data and the identification of genes that contribute to the beneficial activity of PGPR will aid our understanding of the molecular mechanisms of many bacterial species and also help in the development of PGPR-assisted phytoremediation technology (Fig. 8.1). NGS have recently been employed to study the genomes of several PGPRs such as *Pseudomonas* sp. (Duan et al. 2013), *Bacillus* sp. (Song et al. 2012), and *P. polymyxa* (Li et al. 2014). A thorough understanding of the plant growth-promoting (PGP) metagenomics is highly inevitable to explore the rhizospheric flora in order to maximize the processes that robustly augment plant productivity.

8.3 Role of PGPRs in Sustainable Agriculture

As a consequence of population growth, food consumption is also alarmingly increasing. Conversely, both the cultivable agricultural land and crop productivity are significantly reduced as a result of drought, salinity, global warming, and global industrialization (Gamalero and Glick 2012). Perhaps this sort of setback could only be addressed by practicing the sustainable agriculture that protects the fitness of the ecosystem. It is noteworthy that the vital principle of sustainable agriculture is to significantly minimize the impediments of insecticide and herbicide usage, chemical fertilizers, while reducing the emission of greenhouse gasses. Nonetheless the exploitation of plant microbiome has immense prospective in reducing the incidence of pests and diseases (Van Oosten et al. 2008), promoting plant growth and plant fitness and improved productivity (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). However, the treatment with single strains or mixed consortia was shown to induce resistance to multiple plant diseases (Jetiyanon and Kloepper 2002). Most recently, several microbial biofertilizers and bioinoculants were formulated, produced, marketed, and effectively used by farmers worldwide (Bhardwaj et al. 2014). Even though plants are considered as metaorganisms (East 2013), the concept of understanding of this microbiome on plant health in terms of phenotypes is hitherto scarce. In order to trance for a sustainable agricultural vision, the produced crops need to be operational with disease resistance, salt tolerance, drought tolerance, and heavy metal stress tolerance along with an enhanced nutritional value (Meena et al. 2013c, 2015d, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Singh et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2015). Despite the accomplishment of above desired crop properties; one possibility of employing soil microbes (algae, fungi, bacteria, etc.) that augment the nutrient uptake competence and water holding efficiency (Armada et al. 2014), among these potential rhizospheric bacteria known as PGPR's are the most promising, despite the fact that PGPR may be used to enhance plant health and promote plant growth rate exclusive of environmental contamination (Calvo et al. 2014). For decades, varieties of PGPRs have been studied, and only a few of them have been commercialized so far, including the species *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, *Variovorax* and *Serratia* (Glick et al. 2012). However, the utilization of PGPR in the agriculture represents only an undersized portion of agricultural practices worldwide (Bashan et al. 2014).

Nonetheless this is attributable to incoherent properties of inoculated PGPR, furthermore, which could influence the crop productivity (Fig. 8.1). The triumphant utilization of PGPR is merely reliant on its survival in soil, the compatibility with the crop on which it is inoculated, the interaction ability with native microbes in soil, and environmental factors (Martinez-Viveros et al. 2010). An additional challenge is that the modes of action of PGPR are diverse, and not all rhizobacteria possess the same mechanisms (Dey et al. 2004; Choudhary et al. 2011). Conversely many achievements have been reached with the application of microbial biotechnology in agriculture, but many challenges as well as opportunities need to be explored for the future sustainable agricultural developments (Kumar et al. 2017b; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015a, b, c; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Sindhu et al. 2016).

In recent times, there has been enormous surge to comprehend and investigate the genomic prosperity of rhizosphere microbes by linking soil community structure to both the general soil biophysical context and the social science perspective in order to understand human impacts and drivers of human decision-making for sustainable soil management. Therefore, this update in due course will focus on handy knowledge anchored in the root microbiome, its functional importance, and its potential association to the establishment of a host phenome, toward attaining sustainable agriculture. Therefore, by linking the soil biodiversity and functions to the ecosystem services, the soil ecosystem can be better conserved and managed for sustainable agricultural intensification (Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016c).

8.4 Molecular Sequencing Techniques for Studying Plant Microbiomes

Traditionally, the components of the plant microbiome were characterized by isolating and culturing microbes on different culture media and growth conditions. These culture-based techniques missed out immense preponderance of microbial diversity in an environment or in plant-associated habitats, which is at this time obvious by modern culture-independent molecular techniques for analyzing whole environmental metagenomes. Over the preceding 5 years, these culture-independent techniques have noticeably changed our perception on microbial diversity in a particular environment, from which only <1% are culturable (Hugenholtz et al. 1998). Subsequent to discovering the significance of the conserved 16S ribosomal RNA (rRNA) sequence (Woese and Fox 1977) and the first use of DGGE of the amplified 16S rRNA gene in the microbial community analysis (Muyzer et al. 1993), nevertheless, there was an immediate flare-up of advanced research toward microbial ecology using various molecular fingerprinting techniques. Apart from DGGE, TGGE, and FISH, clone library construction of microbial community-amplified products and DNA sequencing techniques emerged as other supporting tools for the better understanding of microbial ecology (Muyzer 1999). Furthermore, there are many newer techniques to understand the microbiome, from metagenomics to metaproteomics (Rincon-Florez et al. 2013; Schlaeppi et al. 2014; Yergeau et al. 2014) (Fig. 8.2). However, these techniques cover the whole microbiome, instead of selecting particular species, unlike conventional microbial analysis.

8.5 Modern Sequencing Technologies for Studying Plant Microbiomes

In the analysis of whole microbiome, the initial effort was started with the discovery of a conserved 16S rRNA gene sequence and its PCR applications in the identification of microorganisms (Woese and Fox 1977). Thus far, there are meticulous improvements achieved with these techniques, consenting to metagenomics, in order to study and understand the microbiome in a holistic insight in a petite period. The comprehensive assessment of soil ecosystems and more significantly functional genes allied with ecosystem processes are fastly curved into cost-efficient facets. This is primarily through the development of a range of whole metagenome sampling, followed by purification, separation, sequencing, and finally data analysis and interpretation. Particularly, the sequencing technology is going through speedy development, as it provides wide and thorough views of metagenomics, and

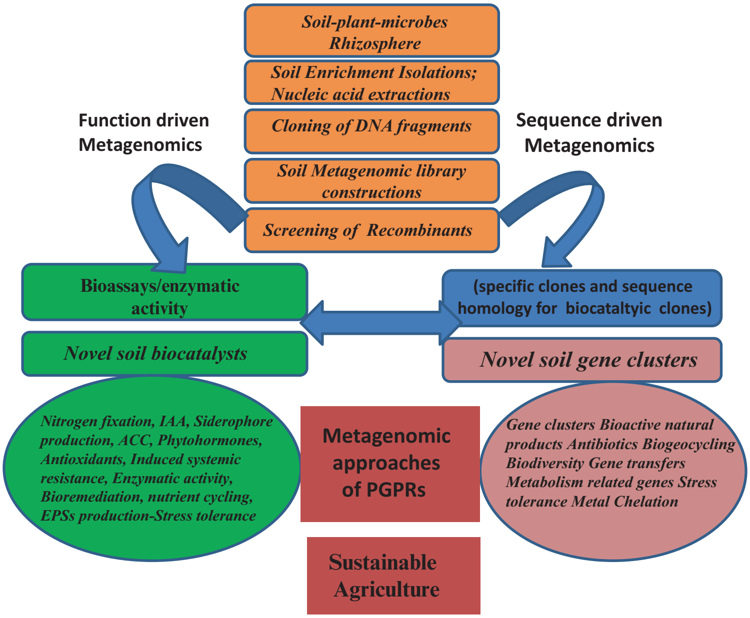


Fig. 8.2 Scheme of metagenomics for the discovery of novel soil biocatalysts and gene clusters from soil microorganisms

nowadays the largely named are (a) high-throughput sequencing (HTS) and (b) next-generation sequencing (NGS) technologies. These HTS techniques include the use of 454 Genome Sequencer (Roche Diagnostics), the HiSeq 2000 (Illumina), and the AB SOLiD System (Life Technologies Rincon-Florez et al. 2013; Yergeau et al. 2014; Saha et al. 2016a; Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b). Furthermore, other advanced techniques, such as DNA/RNA-SIP and DNA arrays (PhyloChip and functional gene arrays), moreover have promising features in the analysis of microbiomes, particularly their functional parts (Rincon-Florez et al. 2013; Uhlik et al. 2013). At present, there is a transition from metagenomics to metatranscriptomics, as the latter answers the diversity and functional part of the microbiome, rather than only showing the diversity. Nonetheless, it was also apparent in recent times that the functional flexibility and function-based diversity of the microbiome may possibly be central factors in niches somewhat than mere diversity (Barret et al. 2011; Chaparro et al. 2012).

However, in metatranscriptomics approaches, RNA-SIP, quantitative reverse transcription-PCR, and complementary DNA analysis coupled with pyrosequencing provide advanced functional insights into microbiome activities in the soil and rhizosphere (Schauss et al. 2009; Uhlik et al. 2013). Predominantly, the significance of RNA-SIP was underlined in forthcoming studies for sequential analysis of the flow of root-derived carbon and differentiation of primary and secondary microbial utilizers, which have elevated rates of labeling than their genes and need not depend on cell division, unlike DNA-SIP (Bressan et al. 2009; Uhlik et al. 2013). In order to surmount the broader constraints of quantitative PCR and microarray technology in analyzing the gene expression of a complex community, these sophisticated technologies still facade enormous challenges in the years to go.

8.6 Understanding the Mechanism and Functions of Plant–Microbe Interactions

A wider variety of novel endophyte phylogenetic lineages were discovered (Sun et al. 2008), underscoring a larger gap in understanding the total endophyte community in plants than previously realized. In addition to that, putative protein coding sequences associated with root colonization competence and PGPR were also explored (Barret et al. 2011; Sessitsch et al. 2012). Interestingly the advent of molecular techniques in microbial ecology has enabled more widespread studies of endophyte abundance, community composition, and functional genetic analysis; genes involved in detoxification of ROS, protein secretion systems, and flagellar motility have been explored as significant determinants for successful plant colonization and microbial competition (Hardoim et al. 2008; Cheng et al. 2010). However, the genes involved in the production of siderophores, abscisic acid, indole acetic acid, and quorum sensing (QS) autoinducer signaling genes were also associated with biocontrol, phytostimulation, and colonization (Forchetti et al. 2007; Ramesh et al. 2009; Faure et al. 2009) (Fig. 8.2). Perhaps this area of research will advance our insight in not only microbial interspecies communication but also the factors influencing the colonization success of potential endophyte inoculants. Undoubtedly, the metagenomic analysis of diverse plant species may signify that bacterial protein families identified to hinder with the plant immune response can distinguish between the rhizosphere and soil microbiota (Bulgarelli et al. 2015), suggesting that immune system mediated microbial insight, at least in part, and bacterial colonization of the rhizosphere. Interestingly the culture-independent approaches evidenced that microbial diversity of soil and rhizosphere microbiomes is highly underestimated. Notably the dawn of next-generation DNA sequencing methods has undeniably sparked a new era in molecular characterization of environmental ecosystems (Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Meena et al. 2014a, 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b). Recent metagenomic studies have also revealed a wide range of antibiotic resistance genes (ARGs) and mobile genetic elements and virulence factors from different ecosystems (Kristiansson et al. 2011; Bengtsson-Palme et al. 2014).

In a very recent study of Mendes et al. (2014), the epiphytic rhizosphere microbiome of soybean was compared to that in bulk soil with regard to taxonomic and functional composition. Likewise, functions that may be of benefit for the plant in terms of growth promotion and nutrition were detected. Unno and Shinano (2013) investigated the rhizosphere metagenome of plants that demonstrated enhanced growth in the presence of phytic acid and detected genes encoding enzymes associated to phytic acid utilization, for instance, alkaline phosphatase or citrate synthase. Chhabra et al. (2013) applied a targeted metagenomic approach by constructing a fosmid library in *Escherichia coli*, which was screened in an assay for mineral phosphate solubilization activity. Interestingly the genes and operons with homology to phosphorus uptake, regulatory system and solubilization mechanisms were investigated.

The phyllosphere metagenomic datasets generated in these studies were additionally characterized in combination with a metagenomic dataset from *Tamarix*-associated phyllosphere bacteria to screen for photosynthetic genes that were further identified from other microorganisms to be involved in light-driven energy generation and diverse microbial rhodopsins (Atamna-Ismaeel et al. 2012a, b). Another metagenomic project was performed with the aim to attain a full sequence of a complete genome sequence of uncultured phytopathogen and insect symbiont *Candidatus Liberibacter asiaticus* which causes citrus huanglongbing disease (Duan et al. 2009).

8.7 Applications of Plant–Microbe Metagenomics in Agricultural Research

In the rhizosphere makes a source of gene pool with a huge potential, particularly for agricultural applications with the aim to improve crop productivity and quality of agricultural products and shield crops from pests. Perhaps this could be performed by exploring the genes responsible for PGPR activities and application of the recombinant molecules to soil. A functionally competent chitinase may perhaps be used as an effective fungicide in a research experiment by Ikeda et al. (2007), who used T-RFLP and clone library analysis to identify chitinase genes in maize rhizosphere. The same group of researchers established novel bacterial chitinase genes and found significantly large differences in chitinase gene diversity between the bulk and rhizosphere soils.

An additional example of Hjort et al. (2010) also explored the potential of chitinases in phytopathogen-suppressive soils. An activity that improves the plant fitness and, hence, improves crop production is apparently ACC deaminase activity. Interestingly Nikolic et al. (2011) also analyzed ACC deaminase genes (*acdS*) of bacterial endophytes colonizing field-grown potato plants and discovered the presence of two unique types of *acdS* genes, the dominant one showing high homology to an *acdS* gene derived from *P. fluorescens* through PCR analysis. The fundamental study on siderophores is mainly fascinating due to its triple function application, nutritional, systemic resistance inductor (ISR) and biocontrol (Bakker et al. 2007; Ramos Solano et al. 2008). Despite its significance in agriculture, the only instance to date that has been reported in marine settings, through expression-dependent methods, and resulted in a cluster composed by five ORFs that synthesized vibrioferrin, a siderophore explored in *V. parahaemolyticus* (Fujita et al. 2011).

The sequencing of whole genomes from a number of species permits to delineate their organization and provides the basis for understanding their functionality (Morrell et al. 2012), as a consequence favoring metagenomic–agricultural practices. Additionally metagenomic analyses also depicted several metabolic processes, adaptations, and plant growth-promoting characteristics in rice (Sessitsch et al. 2012). In a metagenomic analysis of the barley rhizosphere, gluconate production was identified as a key mineral phosphate solubilization mechanism in an uncultivated microbiome (Chhabra et al. 2013). Similarly, the metagenomic characterization of the microbial communities associated with cucumber and wheat roots revealed that genes involved in the microbial degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides were enriched in both species, and their differential recruitment could be used to classify their associated microbiota (Ofek-Lalzar et al. 2014). Nonetheless, efforts addressed to the success of an apt data of associated molecular information on transcriptome and proteome sequencing are also crucial to depict the gene pool of a genome and its central functionalities. Notably these efforts undeniably led to the most important step forward in biological sciences (Barh et al. 2013) as well as agriculture (Van Emon 2015).

Furthermore, the revelation of the complexity of genes and their networking is also crucial for being translated into breeding practice for crops or livestock, contributing to their health, resistance, and productivity. In actual fact, the contribution of genomics to agriculture spans the identification and manipulation of genes linked to specific phenotypic traits (Zhang et al. 2014) in addition to molecular breeding by marker-assisted selection of variants (Iovene et al. 2004). Eventually in the coming years, the agricultural metagenomics without doubt aims to reveal several innovative solutions through the study of crops or livestock genomes, achieving information for protection and sustainable productivity for food industry, however, for alternative facets like energy production or design of pharmaceuticals (Wilson and Roberts 2014). In a metagenomic assay of the barley rhizosphere, Bulgarelli et al. (2015) identified a positive selection on microbe interaction traits (e.g., type VI secretion system (T6SS) as well as those putatively involved in microbe interactions. Interestingly, T6SS sequences were also found in high abundance in a metagenomic study of the soybean rhizosphere (Mendes et al. 2014).

However, little information is available for microbe–plant communities wherein they are integrated. Seeing that an example, it is accepted that soil is one of the principal carbon reservoirs on earth, and prokaryotes include a significant amount of the soil biomass (Whitman et al. 1998). However, in the last three decades, culture-independent methods showed that, albeit fast-evolving sequencing strategies, the great majority of bacterial species are still unidentified (Rappe and Giovannoni 2003). The application of metagenomics in agriculture also proved to be suitable for depicting the multifarious patterns of interactions occurring among microorganisms in soil (Carbonetto et al. 2014) and in plant rhizosphere (Mendes et al. 2014). Metagenomics are recently revealed to be useful to trace the shift in taxonomic composition and functional redundancy of microbial communities in rhizosphere soils in association to environmental changes (Pan et al. 2014) and agricultural management (Souza et al. 2015).

Metagenomic studies can also help decipher the role of soil microbes in plant nutrition (Pii et al. 2016) or in the cycle of elements (Stempfhuber et al. 2015). Plant, soil, and microbiome also play a crucial role in agriculture provided that it determines plant fitness (Haney et al. 2015) and soil biogeochemical properties (Acosta-Martinez et al. 2014) and affects both yield and quality traits (Deusch et al.

2015). Furthermore, the applications can lead to the discovery of new genes, bioproducts, and plant growth-promoting microorganism consortia, useful for understanding relevant aspects such as response to stresses (Timmusk et al. 2014) or dysbiosis (Handelsman 2004; Vayssier-Taussat et al. 2014). Therefore, the amount of metabolic diversity present in soil to harness novel gene encoding is undeniably vast which could be explored with the help of metagenomic techniques. Interestingly the metagenome represents the genomes of uncultured microbes as a rich source for isolation of many novel genes. In consequence, metagenomics not only provides us innovative insights into microbial taxonomic/genetic diversity life but also access to genes (metabolic diversity) producing novel biomolecules (Fig. 8.2).

8.8 Future Perspectives in PGPR Metagenomics

PGPRs that are difficult to culture are hardly understood and make up a huge part of soil sequencing techniques that allow us to do more researches. Therefore, the translational research like metagenomics is highly indispensable to apply these tools for the benefit of agriculture, particularly by evaluating the effects of decisions on microbes known to have positive or negative effects on productivity and identify microbes that are indicators for higher and lower productivity (Souza et al. 2015). However, preceding works highlighted numerous approaches to harness microbe–rhizosphere interactions for increased farm productivity (Kaymak 2010; Altomare and Tringovska 2011; Shen et al. 2013); nevertheless, how these interactions may perhaps be exploited for biotechnological applications is not completely explored. Remarkably these rhizosphere–microbe interactions are modulated by numerous chemical molecules produced by plant roots which in turn communicate with soil microbes. However, identifying these signal molecules and harnessing them to improve interaction between beneficial microbes and plant roots can further improve resource availability. Interestingly one such mechanism explored so far is the metagenomics of plant microbial signaling that can undoubtedly dole out this rationale. However, using metagenomics it is now possible to identify mechanisms and isolate genetic resources for maximizing nutrient cycling and nutrient use efficiency without cultivating soil microbes (Abhilash et al. 2012).

Nonetheless, utilizing metagenomics to characterize soil microbial communities facilitates regulation of plant performance through enhanced bioavailability of nutrients and secretion of bioactive compounds for pest control and hormones to excite plant growth. In the years to come the plant microbiome may shed light on solutions to modify plant genetics, function, and ecology for survival in unique habitats or environmental conditions (Fig. 8.2). Noteworthy, such resolutions may help to meet rising food demands, curtail land and biodiversity loss, and mitigate the impacts of climate change. Furthermore understanding the physiological interactions among the microbiomes may allow feasible expression of specific bacterial traits, viz., nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization, ACC deaminase, quorum sensing, siderophores, chitinases, auxins, gibberellins, or antibiotic production. Eventually detection of novel genes coding for known activities associated to the microbial interaction with plants is undoubtedly a prudent attempt; nevertheless, a real progress is inevitable toward the invention of presently unknown mechanisms of the plant–microbe interactions. However, the application of metagenomic services can perhaps contribute to improved disease detection/protection in crops which may further improve crop health by exploiting the association between microbes and plants. Metagenomics can be applied to the development of next-generation pesticides and fungicides in addition to improving the efficiency of organic agriculture.

8.9 Conclusions

The advanced tools of metagenomics offer many avenues into a broadened view of PGPR and their activities in particular. Quantifying the impacts of plant microbiome has advanced our conceptual understanding in plant–microbe metagenomics, with real-world applications that have the potential to increase crop production during enhanced plant trait expression and/or increased utilization of insignificant habitats. Recent advances in metagenomics augmented our overall understanding of plant–microbe and microbe–microbe interactions in the rhizosphere and also outlined quite a few questions for the future. Notably the field of metagenomics, with reference to soil microbial ecosystems has immense potential, it is hitherto not studied and explored to a great extent. Interestingly, the discovery of novel PGPR activities, either by functional screening or sequence information, will add a great deal to our current understanding of mechanistic variations that exist in PGPR phenotypes. Additionally, metagenomics can also unravel the gene clusters of biosynthetic-related genes, synthesis of antimicrobial compounds. Hoping for further advancement of metagenomics in developing successful research and development, PGPR use will certainly befall a reality and will be helpful to fundamental biochemical and physiological processes that ascertain the stability and productivity of agroecosystems, thus leading us toward an ideal sustainable agricultural system. The use of metagenomics in parallel with established or novel molecular approaches will certainly lead to the discovery of novel mechanisms of PGPR activity, newer types of PGPR identity, and a spanking new look on the biology and practical applications of PGPR.

Acknowledgments Authors acknowledge the kind support and encouragement extended by Krishna University, Machilipatnam, and Sambalpur University, Odisha.

References

Abhilash PC, Powell JR, Singh HB, Singh BK (2012) Plant-microbe interactions: novel applications for exploitation in multipurpose remediation technologies. Trends Biotechnol 30:416–420

Acosta-Martínez V, Cotton J, Gardner T, Moore-Kucera J, Zak J, Wester D, Cox S (2014) Predominant bacterial and fungal assemblages in agricultural soils during a record drought/heat wave and linkages to enzyme activities of biogeochemical cycling. Appl Soil Ecol 84:69–82

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012) Evaluation of plant-growth-promoting activities of rhizobacterium, *Pseudomonas putida* under herbicide stress. Ann Microbiol 62:1531–1540

Ahemad M, Kibretm M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saud Univ Sci 26:1–20

Altomare C, Tringovska I (2011) Beneficial soil microorganisms, an ecological alternative for soil fertility management. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Genetics, biofuels and local farming system. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 161–214

Armada E, Portela G, Roldán A, Azcón R (2014) Combined use of beneficial soil microorganism and agrowaste residue to cope with plant water limitation under semiarid conditions. Geoderma 232:640–648

Atamna-Ismaeel N, Finkel O, Glaser F, Von Mering C, Vorholt JA, Koblizek M et al (2012a) Bacterial anoxygenic photosynthesis on plant leaf surfaces. Environ Microbiol Rep 4:209–216

Atamna-Ismaeel N, Finkel OM, Glaser F, Sharon I, Schneider R, Post AF et al (2012b) Microbial rhodopsins on leaf surfaces of terrestrial plants. Environ Microbiol 14:140–146

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bakker PAH, Corné M, Pieterse J, van Loon LC (2007) Induced systemic resistance by fluorescent Pseudomonas spp. Phytopathology 97:239–243

Barh D, Zambare V, Azevedo V (2013) Omics. Applications in biomedical, agricultural, and environmental sciences. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Barret M, Morrissey JP, O'Gara F (2011) Functional genomics analysis of plant growth-promoting rhizobacterial traits involved in rhizosphere competence. Biol Fertil Soils 47(7):729–743

Bashan Y, de-Bashan LE, Prabhu SR, Hernandez JP (2014) Advances in plant growth-promoting bacterial inoculant technology: formulations and practical perspectives (1998–2013) (a Marschner review). Plant Soil 378:1–33

Bengtsson-Palme JF, Boulund J, Fick E, Kristiansson DGJ, Larsson (2014) Shotgun metagenomics reveals a wide array of antibiotic resistance genes and mobile elements in a polluted lake in India. Front Microbiol 5:1–14

Bhardwaj SC, Prashar M, Prasad P (2014) Ug99-future challenges. In: Future challenges in crop protection against fungal pathogens. Springer, New York, pp 231–247

Bloem J, Benedetti A, Hopkins D (2006) Microbial methods assessing soil quality. CABI Publishing, CAB International, Wallingford. ISBN 0-85199-098-3

Bressan M, Roncato MA, Bellvert F, Comte G, el Zahar Haichar F, Achouak W, Berge O (2009) Exogenous glucosinolate produced by Arabidopsis thaliana has an impact on microbes in the rhizosphere and plant roots. ISME J 3(11):1243–1257

Bulgarelli D, Garrido-Oter R, Munch PC, Weiman A, Droge J, Pan Y, …, Schulze-Lefert P (2015) Structure and function of the bacterial root microbiota in wild and domesticated barley. Cell Host Microbe 17(3):392e403

Calvo P, Nelson LM, Kloepper JW (2014) Agricultural uses of plant biostimulants. Plant Soil 383:3–41

Carbonetto B, Rascovan N, Álvarez R, Mentaberry A, Vázquez MP (2014) Structure, composition and metagenomic profile of soil microbiomes associated to agricultural land use and tillage systems in argentine pampas

Chaparro JM, Sheflin AM, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2012) Manipulating the soil microbiome to increase soil health and plant fertility. Biol Fertil Soils 48(5):489–499

Cheng Z, McConkey BJ, Glick BR (2010) Proteomic studies of plant–bacterial interactions. Soil Biol Biochem 42(10):1673–1684

Chhabra S, Brazil D, Morrissey J, Burke JI, O'Gara FN, Dowling D (2013) Characterization of mineral phosphate solubilization traits from a barley rhizosphere soil functional metagenome. Microbiol Open 2(5):717–724

Choudhary DK, Sharma KP, Gaur RK (2011) Biotechnological perspectives of microbes in agro-ecosystems. Biotechnol Lett 33:1905–1910

Daniel R (2005) The metagenomics of soil. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:470e478

Deusch S, Tilocca B, Camarinha-Silva A, Seifert J (2015) News in livestock research-use of omics-technologies to study the microbiota in the gastrointestinal tract of farm animals. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 13:55–63

Dey R, Pal KK, Bhatt DM, Chauhan SM (2004) Growth promotion and yield enhancement of peanut (*Arachis hypogea L.*) by application of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Microbiol Res 159:371–394

Duan Y, Zhou L, Hall DG, Li W, Doddapaneni H, Lin H et al (2009) Complete genome sequence of citrus huanglongbing bacterium, '*Candidatus Liberibacter asiaticu*s' obtained through metagenomics. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 22:1011–1020

Duan J, Jiang W, Cheng Z, Heikkila JJ, Glick BR (2013) The complete genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. UW4. PLoS One 8:462–469

East R (2013) Microbiome: Soil science comes to life. Nature 501(7468):S18–S19

van Elsas JD, Jansson JK, Trevors JT (2007) Modern soil microbiology. CRC Press. Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton

Faure D, Vereecke D, Leveau JH (2009) Molecular communication in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 321(1–2):279–303

Fernández-Arrojo L, Guazzaroni ME, López-Cortés N, Beloqui A, Ferrer M (2010) Metagenomic era for biocatalyst identification. Curr Opin Biotechnol 21(6):725–733

Fierer N, Lauber CL, Ramirez KS, Zaneveld J, Bradford MA, Knight R (2012) Comparative metagenomic, phylogenetic and physiological analyses of soil microbial communities across nitrogen gradients. ISME J 6(5):1007e1017

Forchetti G, Masciarelli O, Alemano S, Alvarez D, Abdala G (2007) Endophytic bacteria in sunflower (*Helianthus annuus L.*): isolation, characterization, and production of jasmonates and abscisic acid in culture medium. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 76(5):1145–1152

Fujita JM, Kimura N, Sakai A, Ichikawa Y, Hanyu T, Otsuka M (2011) Cloning and heterologous expression of the Vibrioferrin biosynthetic gene cluster from a marine metagenomic library. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 75:2283–2287

Gamalero E, Glick BR (2012) Ethylene and abiotic stress tolerance in plants. In: Environmental adaptations and stress tolerance of plants in the era of climate change. Springer, New York, pp 395–412

Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41(2):109–117

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica. doi:10.6064/2012/963401

Glick BR (2014) Bacteria with ACC deaminase can promote plant growth and help to feed the world. Microbiol Res 169:30–39

Haldar S, Sengupta S (2015) Plant-microbe cross-talk in the rhizosphere: insight and biotechnological potential. Open Microbiol J 9:1

Handelsman J (2004) Metagenomics: application of genomics to uncultured microorganisms. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 68(4):669–685

Haney CH, Samuel BS, Bush J, Ausubel FM (2015) Associations with rhizosphere bacteria can confer an adaptive advantage to plants. Nat Plant 1(6)

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16(10):463–471

Hjort K, Bergström M, Adesina MF, Jansson JK, Smalla K, Sjöling S (2010) Chitinase genes revealed and compared in bacterial isolates, DNA extracts and a metagenomic library from a phytopathogen-suppressive soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 71:197–207

Hoff KJ, Tech M, Lingner T, Daniel R, Morgenstern B, Meinicke P (2008) Gene prediction in metagenomic fragments: a large scale machine learning approach. BMC Bioinform 9(1):1

Hugenholtz P, Goebel BM, Pace NR (1998) Impact of culture-independent studies on the emerging phylogenetic view of bacterial diversity. J Bacteriol 180(18):4765–4774

Hynes RK, Leung GCY, Hirkala DLM, Nelson LM (2008) Isolation, selection, and characterization of beneficial rhizobacteria from pea, lentil, and chickpea grown in western Canada. Can J Microbial 54:248–258

Ikeda S, Ytow N, Ezura H, Minamisawa K, Miyashita K, Fujimura T (2007) Analysis of Molecular diversity of bacterial chitinase genes in the maize rhizosphere using culture independent methods. Microbes Environ 22:71–77

Iovene M, Barone A, Frusciante L, Monti L, Carputo D (2004) Selection for aneuploid potato hybrids combining a low wild genome content and resistance traits from *Solanum commersonii*. Theor Appl Genet 109(6):1139–1146

Jahanian A, Chaichi MR, Rezaei K, Rezayazdi K, Khavazi K (2012) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination and primary growth of artichoke (Cynara scolymus). Int J Agric Crop Sci 4:923–929

Jetiyanon K, Kloepper JW (2002) Mixtures of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for induction of systemic resistance against multiple plant diseases. Biol Control 24(3):285–291

Kaymak HC (2010) Potential of PGPR in agricultural innovations. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria. Springer, Berlin, pp 45–79

Kennedy J, Flemer B, Jackson SA, Lejon DP, Morrissey JP, O'Gara F, Dobson AD (2010) Marine metagenomics: new tools for the study and exploitation of marine microbial metabolism. Mar Drugs 8(3):608–628

Kristiansson E, Fick J, Janzon A, Grabic R, Rutgersson C, Weijdegard B, Soderstrom H, Larsson DGJ (2011) Pyrosequencing of antibiotic-contaminated river sediments reveals high levels of resistance and gene transfer elements. PLoS One 6:e17038

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Li S et al (2014) Complete genome sequence of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* SQR-21, a plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium with antifungal activity and rhizosphere colonization ability. Genome Announc 2:e00281–e00214

Liu WX et al (2013) Rhizobacteria (*Pseudomonas sp. S*B) assist phytoremediation of oily-sludge-contaminated soil by tall fescue (*Testuca arundinacea* L.) Plant Soil 371:533–542

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Luo YM, Freitas H (2011) Inoculation of endophytic bacteria on host and non-host plants-effects on plant growth and Ni uptake. J Hazard Mater 195:230–237

Martinez-Viveros O, Jorquera MA, Crowley DE, Gajardo G, Mora ML (2010) Mechanisms and practical considerations involved in plant growth promotion by rhizobacteria. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 10:293–319

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bangladesh J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mendes LW, Kuramae EE, Navarrete AA, van Veen JA, Tsai SM (2014) Taxonomical and functional microbial community selection in soybean rhizosphere. ISME J 8(8):1577e1587

Morrell PL, Buckler ES, Ross-Ibarra J (2012) Crop genomics: advances and applications. Nat Rev Genet 13(2):85–96

Müller CA, Obermeier MM, Berg G (2016) Bioprospecting plant-associated microbiomes. J Biotechnol 235:171–180

Muyzer G (1999) DGGE/TGGE a method for identifying genes from natural ecosystems. Curr Opin Microbiol 2(3):317–322

Muyzer G, De Waal EC, Uitterlinden AG (1993) Profiling of complex microbial populations by denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis analysis of polymerase chain reaction-amplified genes coding for 16S rRNA. Appl Environ Microbiol 59(3):695–700

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Nikolic B, Schwab H, Sessitsch A (2011) Metagenomic analysis of the 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase gene (acdS) operon of an uncultured bacterial endophyte colonizing *Solanum tuberosum*. L Arch Microbiol 193:665–676

Ofek-Lalzar M, Sela N, Goldman-Voronov M, Green SJ, Hadar Y, Minz D (2014) Niche and host-associated functional signatures of the root surface microbiome. Nat Commun:5, 4950

Öpik M, Moora M, Liira J, Kõljalg U, Zobel M, Sen R (2003) Divergent arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal communities colonize roots of *Pulsatilla spp*. in boreal Scots pine forest and grassland soils. New Phytol 160(3):581–593

Pan Y, Cassman N, de Hollander M, Mendes LW, Korevaar H, Geerts RH, van Veen JA, Kuramae EE (2014) Impact of long-term N, P, K, and NPK fertilization on the composition and potential functions of the bacterial community in grassland soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 90(1):195–205

Pii Y, Borruso L, Brusetti L, Crecchio C, Cesco S, Mimmo T (2016) The interaction between iron nutrition, plant species and soil type shapes the rhizosphere microbiome. Plant Physiol Biochem 99:39–48

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Qin J, Li R, Raes J, Arumugam M, Burgdorf KS, Manichanh C, …, Mende DR (2010) A human gut microbial gene catalogue established by metagenomic sequencing. Nature 464(7285):59–65

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Ramesh R, Joshi AA, Ghanekar MP (2009) Pseudomonads: major antagonistic endophytic bacteria to suppress bacterial wilt pathogen, *Ralstonia solanacearum* in the eggplant (*Solanum melongena* L.) World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25(1):47–55

Ramos Solano B, Maicas B, Gutiérrez Mañero J (2008) Physiological and molecular mechanisms of PGPRs. In: Ahamd I, Pichtel J, Hayat S (eds) En: plant-bacteria interactions. Strategies and techniques to promote plant growth. Wiley, New York, pp 41–54

Rappé MS, Giovannoni SJ (2003) The uncultured microbial majority. Ann Rev Microbiol 57(1):369–394

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Rincon-Florez VA, Carvalhais LC, Schenk PM (2013) Culture-independent molecular tools for soil and rhizosphere microbiology. Diversity 5(3):581–612

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. In: The adaptive soil management: from theory to practices, pp 69–88. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Schauss K, Focks A, Leininger S, Kotzerke A, Heuer H, Thiele-Bruhn S, ..., Munch JC (2009) Dynamics and functional relevance of ammonia-oxidizing archaea in two agricultural soils. Environ Microbiol 11(2):446–456

Schlaeppi K, Dombrowski N, Oter RG, van Themaat EVL, Schulze-Lefert P (2014) Quantitative divergence of the bacterial root microbiota in *Arabidopsis thaliana* relatives. Proc Natl Acad Sci 111(2):585–592

Sessitsch A, Hardoim P, Döring J, Weilharter A, Krause A, Woyke T, ..., Hurek T (2012) Functional characteristics of an endophyte community colonizing rice roots as revealed by metagenomic analysis. Mol Plant-Microbe Interactions 25(1):28–36

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016a) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Sharma M, Tarafdar A, Ghosh R (2016b) Use of genomic approaches in understanding the role of *Actinomycetes* as PGP in grain legumes. In: Plant growth promoting actinobacteria, Springer, Singapore, pp 249–262

Shen J, Li C, Mi G, Li L, Yuan L, Jiang R et al (2013) Maximizing root/rhizosphere efficiency to improve crop productivity and nutrient use efficiency in intensive agriculture of China. J Exp Bot 64:1181–1192

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Simon C, Daniel R (2009) Achievements and new knowledge unraveled by metagenomic approaches. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85(2):265–276

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Song JY et al (2012) Genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium Bacillus sp. strain JS. J Bacteriol 194:3760–3761

Sorensen J, Nicolaisen MH, Ron E, Simonet P (2009) Molecular tools in rhizosphere microbiology from single-cell to whole-community analysis. Plant Soil 321:483e512

Souza RC, Hungria M, Cantão ME, Vasconcelos ATR, Nogueira MA, Vicente VA (2015) Metagenomic analysis reveals microbial functional redundancies and specificities in a soil under different tillage and crop-management regimes. Appl Soil Ecol 86:106–112

Stempfhuber B, Richter-Heitmann T, Regan KM, Kölbl A, Kaul P, Marhan S, Sikorski J, Overmann J, Friedrich MW, Kandeler E (2015) Spatial interaction of archaeal ammonia-oxidizers and nitrite-oxidizing bacteria in an unfertilized grassland soil. Front Microbiol 6:1567

Streit WR, Schmitz RA (2004) Metagenomics–the key to the uncultured microbes. Curr Opin Microbiol 7(5):492–498

Sun L, Qiu F, Zhang X, Dai X, Dong X, Song W (2008) Endophytic bacterial diversity in rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) roots estimated by 16S rDNA sequence analysis. Microb Ecol 55(3):415–424

Swarupa V, Pavitra K, Shivashankara KS, Ravishankar KV (2016) Omics-driven approaches in plant–microbe interaction. In Microbial inoculants in sustainable agricultural productivity, Springer, India, pp 61–84

Tank N, Saraf M (2010) Salinity-resistant plant growth promoting rhizobacteria ameliorates sodium chloride stress on tomato plants. J Plant Interact 5:51–58

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Timmusk S, El-Daim IAA, Copolovici L, Tanilas T, Kännaste A, Behers L, Nevo E, Seisenbaeva G, Stenström E, Niinemets Ü (2014) Drought-tolerance of wheat improved by rhizosphere bacteria from harsh environments: enhanced biomass production and reduced emissions of stress volatiles. PLoS One 9:e96086

Torsvik V, Sorheim R, Goksoyr J (1996) Total bacterial diversity in soil and sediment communities a review. J Ind Microbiol 17:170e178

Uhlik O, Leewis MC, Strejcek M, Musilova L, Mackova M, Leigh MB, Macek T (2013) Stable isotope probing in the metagenomics era: a bridge towards improved bioremediation. Biotechnol Adv 31(2):154–165

Unno Y, Shinano T (2013) Metagenomic analysis of the rhizosphere soil microbiome with respect to phytic acid utilization. Microbes Environ 28:120–127

Van Emon JM (2015) The omics revolution in agricultural research. J Agric Food Chem 64(1):36–44

Van Oosten VR, Bodenhausen N, Reymond P, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC, Dicke M, Pieterse CM (2008) Differential effectiveness of microbially induced resistance against herbivorous insects in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 21(7):919–930

Vayssier-Taussat M, Albina E, Citti C, Cosson J-F, Jacques M-A, Lebrun M-H, Le Loir Y, Ogliastro M, Petit M-A, Roumagnac P (2014) Shifting the paradigm from pathogens to pathobiome: new concepts in the light of meta-omics. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 4:29

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Ind J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi, India. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of indo-Gangetic plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Vessey JK (2003) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria as biofertilizers. Plant Soil 255(2):571–586

van der Vlugt R, Minafra A, Olmos A, Ravnikar M, Wetzel T, Varveri C, Massart S (2015) Application of next generation sequencing for study and diagnosis of plant viral diseases in agriculture

Whitman WB, Coleman DC, Wiebe WJ (1998) Prokaryotes: the unseen majority. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95(12):6578–6583

Wilson SA, Roberts SC (2014) Metabolic engineering approaches for production of biochemicals in food and medicinal plants. Curr Opin Biotechnol 26:174–182

Woese CR, Fox GE (1977) Phylogenetic structure of the prokaryotic domain: the primary kingdoms. Proc Natl Acad Sci 74(11):5088–5090

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Yergeau E, Sanschagrin S, Maynard C, St-Arnaud M, Greer CW (2014) Microbial expression profiles in the rhizosphere of willows depend on soil contamination. ISME J 8(2):344–358

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zeyaullah M, Kamli MR, Islam B, Atif M, Benkhayal FA, Nehal M, ..., Ali A (2009) Metagenomics-An advanced approach for noncultivable micro-organisms. Biotechnol Mol Biol Rev 4(3):49–54

Zhang Z, Ober U, Erbe M, Zhang H, Gao N, He J, Li J, Simianer H (2014) Improving the accuracy of whole genome prediction for complex traits using the results of genome wide association studies. PLoS One 9(3):e93017

Role of Bioinoculants as Plant Growth-Promoting Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture

9

Talat Parween, Pinki Bhandari, Sumira Jan,
Mahmooduzzafar, Tasneem Fatma, and S.K. Raza

Abstract

The green revolution bought amazing consequences in food grain production but with insufficient concern for agriculture and environmental sustainability. The efficient biofertilizers are gaining importance in sustaining agriculture. Various complementing combinations of microbial inoculants for management of major nutrients are necessary for agriculture sustainability. In such case, microorganisms are useful for biomineralization of bound soil and make nutrients available to their host and/or its surroundings. Nitrogen and phosphorus are major plant nutrients which occupy a key place in the balanced use of fertilizer. Leguminous crop fixes the atmospheric nitrogen by *Rhizobium* which requires optimum level of phosphorus in plant tissue. Mineral solubilizers play an important role in seedling setting because more of the tropical soils are phosphate fixing and make it unavailable to the plants. Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms (PSMs) that solubilize bound form of phosphorus and AM fungi act as uptaker of phosphorus and make it available to the host plants. Microorganisms facilitate plant mineral nutrition by changing the amounts, concentrations and properties of minerals available to plants. Because of the various challenges faced in screening, formulation and application, PGPB have yet to fulfil their promise and potential as commercial inoculants. This chapter focuses on some important information

---

T. Parween (✉) • P. Bhandari • S.K. Raza
Institute of Pesticide Formulation Technology,
Sector-20, Udyog Vihar, NH-8, Gurgaon 122016, India
e-mail: talat.jmi@gmail.com

S. Jan
ICAR-Central Institute of Temperate Horticulture, Rangreth, Srinagar 190007, India

Mahmooduzzafar
Jamia Hamdard University, Hamdard Nagar, New Delhi 110062, India

T. Fatma
Jamia Millia Islamia University, Jamia Nagar, New Delhi 110025, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_9

regarding the various types of biofertilizing potential of some important group of microbes, their formulations, their application for the development of sustainable technology, their scope of improvement by promising new technique and commercially available biofertilizer and its application in India.

Keywords

Beneficial bacteria • Inoculant • Plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPR) • Sustainable agriculture

9.1 Introduction

In the late 1960s, agriculture system focused on food crop productivity, though high-yielding varieties (HYVs), agrochemicals, irrigation system and chemical fertilizers were extensively used throughout India. About 50% of the yield growth was contributed by the use of fertilizer alone. In fact, India is the world's largest user of chemical fertilizers, consuming each year ~16% of the world's N consumption, ~ 19% of phosphatic and ~15% of potassic nutrients of the global total (Anonymous 2008). As per the Raghuwanshi (2012) report, out of the ~329 M ha of India's geographical area, ~114 M ha are under cultivation. Farmers inoculate the soil with fertilizers in order to reap a better harvest. Fertilizers function as catalysts for growth and development of plants by providing proper nutrients. These can be categorized into chemical and biofertilizer which has its advantages and disadvantages (Tables 9.1 and 9.2).

For the balanced nutrient management for crop growth, these advantages need to be integrated in order to achieve optimum performance by each type of fertilizer. High inputs of chemical fertilizers during the last 150 years left soils degraded, polluted and less productive but have also posed severe health and environmental hazards. The use of biofertilizers would solve these issues and make the ecosystem healthier. It is reported that the ~22 M ha of land are now cultivated organically which represents <1% of the world's conventional agricultural production and ~9% of the total agricultural area (Mishra and Dash 2014).

Essential elements are required for proper growth and functioning of plant. The shortage of any of these essential nutrients to plant, listed in Table 9.3, can lead to damage to crop health. Primary macronutrients or micronutrients such as nitrogen, phosphorus and potassium are required in the greatest quantities, whereas secondary macronutrients or micronutrients are needed in smaller quantities, and are found in adequate quantities in soil, and therefore do not often limit crop growth. Micronutrients, or trace nutrients, are needed in very small amounts and can be toxic to plants in excess. Silicon (Si) and sodium (Na) are sometimes considered essential plant nutrients. Due to their omnipresent nature, they are never in short supply of these nutrients in soil (Parikh and James 2012).

Biofertilizers play an important role in improving the nutrient supplies and their availability in plant which includes selective organisms, like bacteria, fungi and

Table 9.1 Advantage and disadvantage of chemical fertilizer

Advantage	Disadvantage
Nutrients are soluble and immediately available to plants, creating a direct and fast effect	Overuse can result in negative effects such as leaching, pollution of water resources, destruction of microorganisms and beneficial insects, crop susceptibility to disease attack, acidification or alkalization of the soil or reduction in soil fertility, all of which cause irreparable damage to the overall ecosystem
The price is lower and more competitive than organic fertilizer, which makes it more popular with farmers	Oversupply of nitrogen leads to softening of plant tissue resulting in increased susceptibility to diseases and pests
They are quite high in nutrient content; only relatively small amounts are required for crop growth	They reduce the colonization of plant roots with mycorrhizae and inhibit symbiotic nitrogen fixation by *rhizobia* due to high nitrogen fertilization
	They enhance the decomposition of soil, which leads to degradation of soil structure
	Nutrients are easily lost from soils through fixation, leaching or gas emission and can lead to reduced fertilizer efficiency

Table 9.2 Advantage and disadvantage of using biofertilizer

Advantage	Disadvantage
The nutrient supply is more balanced, which helps keep plants healthy	They are comparatively low in nutrient content, so a larger volume is needed to provide enough nutrients for crop growth
They enhance soil biological activity, which improves nutrient mobilization from organic and chemical sources and decomposition of toxic substances	The nutrient release rate is too slow to meet crop requirements in a short time; hence, some nutrient deficiency may occur
They enhance the colonization of mycorrhizae, which improves phosphorus supply	The major plant nutrients may not exist in organic fertilizer in sufficient quantity to sustain maximum crop growth
They enhance soil structure, leading to better root growth	The nutrient composition of compost is highly variable
They increase the organic matter content of the soil, thereby improving the exchange capacity of nutrients, increasing soil water retention, promoting soil aggregates and buffering the soil against acidity, alkalinity, salinity, pesticides and toxic heavy metals	The cost is high compared to chemical fertilizers
They release nutrients slowly and contribute to the residual pool of organic nitrogen and phosphorus in the soil, reducing nitrogen leaching loss and phosphorus fixation; they can also supply micronutrients	Short shelf life, lack of suitable carrier materials, susceptibility to high temperature and problems in transportation and storage are all biofertilizer bottlenecks that still need to be solved in order to promote effective inoculation
They encourage the growth of beneficial microorganisms and earthworms	
They help to suppress certain soil-borne plant diseases and parasites	

Table 9.3 Essential plant nutrient elements and their primary form utilized by plants

Essential plant element		Symbol	Primary form
	Carbon	C	CO_2 (g)
	Hydrogen	H	H_2O (l), H^+
	Oxygen	O	H_2O (l), O_2(g)
Mineral elements			
Primary macronutrients	Nitrogen	N	NH_4^+, NO_3^-
	Phosphorus	P	HPO_4^{2-}, $H_2PO_4^-$
	Potassium	K	K^+
	Calcium	Ca	Ca^{2+}
Secondary macronutrients	Magnesium	Mg	Mg^{2+}
	Sulphur	S	SO_4^{2-}
	Iron	Fe	Fe^{3+}, Fe^{2+}
	Manganese	Mn	Mn^{2+}
	Zinc	Zn	Zn^{2+}
Micronutrients	Copper	Cu	Cu^{2+}
	Boron	B	$B(OH)_3$
	Molybdenum	Mo	MoO_4^{2-}
	Chlorine	Cl	Cl^-
	Nickel	Ni	Ni^{2+}

Parikh and James (2012)

algae. These organisms are capable of fixing atmospheric nitrogen and make it available to the soil for the plant growth. They are eco-friendly, cost-effective and renewable source of plant nutrients. The biofertilizer plays a vital role in maintaining long-term soil fertility (Mishra et al. 2015). Biofertilizers are economical, eco-friendly, productive and accessible to small farmers over chemical fertilizers after the long-term use (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2016b).

9.2 Types of Bioinoculants and Their Role

The efficient biofertilizers are the outcome of most advance microbial technology required to support sustainable and non-polluting agriculture. The biofertilizers contained living microorganism that, when applied to seed, plant surfaces or soil, accelerate their microbial processes which result in the availability of nutrients for easy assimilation by plants (Sharma et al. 2012; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016a; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a; Jha and Subramanian 2016). Since nitrogen is inert in nature, the plants cannot utilize it from the atmosphere. At ambient temperature and pressure, diazotrophs mediate nitrogen fixation under enzymatic reaction by a process known as biological nitrogen fixation (Table 9.4).

Table 9.4 Types of biofertilizers

	Group	Example
Biofertilizer for micronutrients		
	N2-fixing biofertilizers	
(a)	Free-living	*Azotobacter*, *Beijerinckia*, *Derxia*, *Nostoc*
(b)	Symbiotic	*Rhizobium*, *Frankia*, *Anabaena azollae*
(c)	Associative symbiotic	*Azospirillum*, *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*
	P-solubilizing biofertilizers	
(a)	Bacteria	*Bacillus megaterium* var. *phosphaticum*, *Bacillus subtilis*
		Bacillus circulans, *Pseudomonas striata*
(b)	Fungi	*Penicillium sp.*, *Aspergillus awamori*
	P-mobilizing biofertilizers	
Biofertilizer for macronutrients		
(a)	Arbuscular mycorrhiza	*Glomus* sp., *Gigaspora* sp., *Acaulospora* sp.,
		Scutellospora sp. and *Sclerocystis* sp.
	Sulphur oxidizers	*Thiobocblus thioxidans*
(a)	Zinc solubilizers	*Bacillus* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., *Aspergillus niger*
(b)	Potassium and silicate solubilizers	*Erwinia*, *Pseudomonas* sp., *Bacillus* sp., *Fracturia auerentia*
(c)	Manganese solubilizers	*Penicillium citrinum*
Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria		
	PGPR	
	Bacteria	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *Bacillus* sp., *Burkholderia*
		Herbaspirillum
	Fungi	*Piriformospora indica*
Biofilmed biofertilizers		
	Fungal-bacterial biofilms (FBB), fungal-rhizobial biofilms (FRB)	

9.3 Biofertilizer for Macronutrients

9.3.1 N_2-Fixing Biofertilizers

9.3.1.1 Asymbiotic/Free-Living Nitrogen-Fixing Biofertilizers

Most important bacteria in this group are *Azotobacter*, *Derxia* and *Beijerinckia* which are found in soil system.

Azotobacter *Azotobacter* is a potential biofertilizer in rhizosphere of leguminous and nonleguminous crops due to availability of various readily utilizable carbon compounds. Amutha et al. (2014) worked on mass production of *Azotobacter* and phosphobacteria using specific medium of Pikovskaya's media for phosphobacteria and Ashby's agar for the *Azotobacter* production. Initially, the organism was isolated from the soil sample, and conformation was done using the biochemical test; the cell count reached to 10^8–10^9 cells mL^{-1}, and the broth is used as inoculant. It increases crop yield by 20–30%, replaces chemical nitrogen and phosphorus by ~25% and stimulates plan growth.

Cyanobacteria *Cyanobacteria* are excellent N_2 fixers. Earlier they are known as blue-green algae such as *Anabaena*, *Nostoc*, *Aulosira* and *Tolypothrix*. *Cyanobacteria* include unicellular colonial species in which some filamentous species have the ability to differentiate into different cell types:

(a) *Vegetative cells*: normal photosynthetic cells found under favourable growing conditions.
(b) *Akinetes*: climate resistant spores formed under environmental stress conditions.
(c) *Heterocysts*: thick-walled cells containing nitrogenase enzyme vital for N_2 fixation. Heterocysts are specialized structures for N_2 fixation and able to fix nitrogen (N_2) into ammonia (NH_3^+), nitrites (NO_2-) or nitrates (NO_3-) which can be utilized by plants.

9.3.1.2 Symbiotic Nitrogen-Fixing Biofertilizers

Rhizobium Rhizobia are the most important of all the biofertilizers which fix the atmospheric nitrogen by forming root nodules which act as mini-factories of nitrogen fixation in legume plants. Atmospheric nitrogen fixation is carried out by the enzyme nitrogenase of *Rhizobium* with the help of nodulins (legume plant protein) and transfers to plant for effective symbiosis. It has been shown in recent findings that there are more crop-enhancing and biofertilizer attributes in cereal crops due to rhizobial inoculation. In addition, plant nutrients like P, K, Ca, Mg and even Fe accumulation were observed (Baset Mia and Shamsuddin 2010; Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2015f, 2016b; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016).

***Frankia*: *Casuarina* (nonleguminous tree) Symbiosis** Nonleguminous tree nodules with *Frankia* are called actinorhizal plant. Nodules are formed by filamentous spore-forming actinomycetes. The actinorhizal nodules represent the cluster of modified roots with *Frankia*-infected cells found in the cortex. Nodules first appear as swelling and later develop vesicles which are the sites of N_2 fixation.

Anabaena azollae *Anabaena azollae* is a cyanobacterium that forms symbiotic association with a water fern *Azolla* and used as biofertilizer for rice cultivation. Apart from nitrogen fixation, *Azolla* is also known to suppress weed population in wetland rice and provides additional economic advantage to rice cultivation.

9.3.1.3 Associative Nitrogen-Fixing Biofertilizers

Azospirillum *Azospirillum* colonizes the root zone and fixes nitrogen in loose association with C_4 plants such as maize, sorghum, sugarcane, etc. *Azospirillum* fixes atmospheric N_2, mineralizes nutrients from soil, sequesters Fe, survives in stressed environmental conditions and also favours beneficial mycorrhizal plant associations. *Azospirillum* biofertilizers are suitable for C_4 crops such as maize, sorghum and other cereals like rice, wheat, barley and ragi and various horticultural crops.

Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus Nitrogen-fixing bacteria *G. diazotrophicus* earlier known as *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* were discovered from sugarcane crop. The bacterium colonizes the internal tissues of sugarcane and fixes nitrogen up to 200 kg ha^{-1}. It is an acid and sucrose loving (~30% of sucrose) with highest pH (5.5) and oxygen-tolerant bacterium. An experiment was conducted by Murumkar et al. (2016) who studied the effect of set treatment of *G. diazotrophicus* and PSB on seed yield, quality and saving of chemical N and P fertilizers for sugarcane seed plots. The set inoculation of *G. diazotrophicus* and PSB coupled with ~78% recommended N and 75% recommended P_2O_5 significantly improved the growth, two eye bud-set yield and quality.

9.3.2 Phosphorus Biofertilizers

9.3.2.1 Phosphorus-Solubilizing Biofertilizer

Another plant nutrient such as phosphorus plays an important role for the growth and development of plants. Only 15–20% of applied phosphorus is recovered by the crops and the remaining gets fixed in the soil. Several microorganisms have the ability to solubilize this fixed phosphorus by producing various organic acids (butyric acid, lactic acid, succinic acid, etc.) and enzymes that make them available to the crops (Sharma et al. 2012). Several soil bacteria belonging to genera *Bacillus*, *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium* and *Trichoderma* have the ability to solubilize inorganic phosphate and make it available to plants. The basic mechanism for mineral phosphate solubilization is the production of organic acids and acid phosphates which play an important role in mineralization of organic phosphorus in soil. Vahed et al. (2012) during their study suggested that consumption of biofertilizer was able to stimulate growth and increase grain yield, and it will be decreased in the presence of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017a; Meena et al. 2015a; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

9.3.2.2 Phosphorus-Mobilizing Biofertilizer

P mobilizers facilitate mobilization of soluble phosphorus from distant places in soil where plant roots cannot reach. Mycorrhiza is a prominent P mobilizer in a symbiotic association with plant roots. Fungus get benefited by obtaining its carbon requirements from hosts through photosynthates, and the plant in turn gains the much needed nutrients which would otherwise be inaccessible to the host (Bahadur et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017b; Kumar et al. 2017b). This uptake of nutrients is facilitated with the help of hyphae of the fungus. These fungi are associated with majority of agricultural crops. Probably vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza (VAM) is the most abundant fungus in agricultural crops and accounts for 5–50% of the biomass of soil microbes (Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b, e; Teotia et al. 2016).

Seven genera of VAM which these fungi produce symbiosis with plants form a large number of spores that penetrate into the plant root and form two types of structures, i.e. vesicles and arbuscules. Vesicles are smooth oval bodies that are most likely storage structures. Arbuscules are formed inside the plant cells. Nutrients travel from soil through fungal hyphae to these arbuscules which gradually degenerate and provide nutrients to plants. Thus, the association helps in higher uptake of P and better utilization of other nutrients like N, Cu, Zn, S, etc. (Sharma et al. 2012).

9.3.3 Sulphur Oxidizers

For the growth of plant and soil health, sulphur is an essential nutrient, and the genus *Thiobacillus* is an important group of sulphur oxidizer. The application of sulphur coupled with thiobacilli renders alkali soils fit for cultivation of crops. The formation of sulphuric acid by *Thiobacillus* in soil increases the level of soluble P, K, Ca, Mg, Al and Mn ion. The sulphuric acid produced in the mixture dissolves the phosphate and thereby enhances phosphorus nutrition of plants (Sharma et al. 2012).

9.4 Biofertilizer for Micronutrients

9.4.1 Zinc (Zn) Solubilizers

Zn is an important element present as cofactor and metal activator. Exogenous application of soluble zinc sources, similar to fertilizer applications, has been advocated to various crops. This causes conversion of ~96 to 99% of applied available zinc to various unavailable zinc that can be reverted back to available forms by inoculating Zn solubilizers like *Pseudomonas* sp., *Bacillus* sp. and *Aspergillus niger* (Sharma et al. 2012). Among fungal genera, *A. niger* possesses immense potential of solubilizing zinc. Vaid et al. (2014) studied the effect of zinc-solubilizing bacteria (ZSB) on zinc nutrition of rice which increased the mean dry matter yield/pot (~13%), productive tillers/plant (~15%), number of panicles/plant (~13%), grains/panicle number (~13%), grain yield (~17%) and straw yield (~12%) over the control and Zn fertilizer treatment.

9.4.2 Potassium- and Silicate-Solubilizing Bacteria

Soil microorganisms have the ability to absorb and mobilize the fixed form of nutrient from trace mineral sources. Silicate bacteria are known to release organic acids during solubilization (Nath et al. 2017; Sarkar et al. 2017; Verma et al. 2017a). It is known to dissolve potassium, silica and aluminium. Soil microorganisms for solubilization of silicate minerals are *Erwinia*, *Pseudomonas* sp. and *Bacillus* sp. (Sharma et al. 2012; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016c, e; Saha et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016).

9.4.3 Manganese (Mn) Solubilizers

Penicillium citrinum present in soil is known to solubilize manganese from the low-grade manganese ores from the soil. It produces reductive compounds such as organic acids which help in solubilizing manganese.

9.4.4 Plant Growth-Promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR) as Biofertilizer

Rhizobacteria aggressively colonize plant roots and multiply and colonize on the roots in the presence of a competing microflora and enhance plant growth. 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-catrboxylate (ACC) deaminase is the PGPR enzyme that is able to hydrolyse ACC by lowering ethylene concentration in seedlings; these PGPR stimulate seedlings' root length (Sharma et al. 2012). Several PGPR inoculants are commercialized which function as bio-protectants, biofertilizers and bio-stimulators (Sharma et al. 2012). Several bacterial species such as *Pseudomonas*, *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Alcaligenes*, *Arthrobacter*, *Burkholderia*, *Bacillus*, *Flavobacterium*, *Microbacterium* and *Serratia* have reported as the most significant phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (Saharan and Nehra 2011; Bhattacharya and Jha 2012; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Meena et al. 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

Piriformospora indica *Piriformospora indica* is a wide-host root-colonizing endophytic fungus which promotes plant growth and performance. The use of *P. indica* as a growth and biomass-stimulating fungus in agriculture is well known because:

(a) Single infection processes are sufficient for the efficient root colonization.
(b) It can survive under adverse environmental conditions, viz. such as cold (<0 °C), extreme heat (>45 °C), salt and heavy metal-polluted soils and soils with varied pH values (3.3–9.2).
(c) It promotes micro (e.g. Fe)- and macro (such as P, S and N)-nutrient uptake from soil.
(d) It confers resistance to root and leaf pathogens through induced systemic resistance (ISR).
(e) It stimulates plant growth and biomass though root exudates.

9.4.5 Biofilmed Biofertilizers

Recently, application of developed biofilm as biofertilizer has a great potential in crop production; biofilm is an assemblage of microbial cells (algal, fungal, bacterial and/or other microbial biopolymer (EPS) produced by the cells). Fungal-bacterial biofilms (FBBs) enhanced metabolic activities compared to monocultures. Beneficial biofilms developed in vitro-cultured conditions in both fungal and bacterial strains were used as biofertilizers for nonlegume species with good efficacy results (Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Meena et al. 2013c, 2014a; Singh et al. 2015). Recently, Hettiarachchi et al. (2014) worked on the fungal-bacterial interaction as biofilmed biofertilizers (BFBFs) in *Hevea* seedlings and observed that BFBF application increased root growth of the seedling rubber plants.

9.5 Mode of Action of Biofertilizer

Several mechanisms encourage the crop growth by the use of biofertilizers. The mode of action of commercially available biofertilizers is not always understood; growth promotion has been identified as the result of indirect or direct mechanisms. Conversely, direct growth promotion mechanism may provide some compounds essential for crop growth which stimulate nutrient uptake. Biofertilizers solubilize the insoluble forms of phosphates like tricalcium, iron and aluminium phosphates into available forms (Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b).

Biofertilizers compose organic matter and help in mineralization in soil. Core mechanism for mineral phosphate solubilization is the production of organic acids and acid phosphatases. It is generally accepted that the major mechanism of mineral phosphate solubilization is the action of organic acids synthesized by soil microorganisms (Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016). The production of organic acids results in acidification of the microbial cell and its surroundings. The most frequent mean of mineral P solubilization is gluconic acid and ketogluconic acid. Other organic acids, such as glycolic, oxalic, malonic and succinic, have also been identified among P solubilizers. Chelating substances and inorganic acids such as sulphideric, nitric, and carbonic acid are considered as other mechanisms for P solubilization. However, the efficacy and their contributions to P release in soils seem to be less than organic acid production. In recent years, the use of artificially produced inoculum of mycorrhizal fungi has increased its significance due to their varied role in plant growth and yield and resistance against climatic and edaphic stresses, pathogens and pests (Meena et al. 2014b; Singh et al. 2016).

9.6 Types of Biofertilizer Formulation

Various industries and research institutes are involved in a formulation containing an effective bacterial strain (Bashan 1998). A microorganism which is optimally functional under laboratory conditions might not be able to produce same efficacy under field conditions after formulation production. Once an inoculant formulation which works in situ has been developed, it must be allowed for the sophistication of the end user (Stephens and Rask 2000).

9.6.1 Carriers

The delivery vehicle of live microorganisms from the factory to the field is called carrier (Trevors et al. 1992). A good carrier should therefore possess as much of the following properties:

(a) Excellent moisture absorption capacity
(b) Lump-free forming materials
(c) Easy to sterilize by autoclaving
(d) Low cost and availability in adequate amounts
(e) Good p^H buffering capacity

In case the inoculant is used as seed coating, the carrier shall assure the survival of the PGPM on the seed. A good carrier should have one essential characteristic: the capacity to deliver the right number of viable cells in good physiological condition at the right time (Trevors et al. 1992; Meena et al. 2015d).

9.6.2 Peat Formulations

Peat formulations have been the carriers of choice and are the most commonly used in the *rhizobia* inoculation industry (Kaljeet et al. 2011). Peat inoculant applied to the seed as slurry is the most commonly used method to inoculate grain legumes with rhizobia (e.g. *Bradyrhizobium* sp., *Mesorhizobium* sp., *Rhizobium* sp., etc.). Peat slurry inoculants are made using finely milled peat that has been sterilized by gamma irradiation, and these sterilized inoculants can support high concentrations of rhizobia, generally 10^9–10^{10} cells g^{-1} peat at manufacture (Hartley et al. 2005).

9.6.3 Vermiculite Formulation

Vermiculite is a naturally occurring layer silicate mineral.

For example, increased amount of N and P availability in the final product can be achieved by adding N-fixing and P-solubilizing bacteria to a vermicompost (Vassileva et al. 2010). Vermiculite has become a very attractive material for the inoculant production due to the various properties exhibited by it like antic-rusting (Hemphill 1982), moisture-holding and plant growth-promoting (Lima et al. 1984; Reid et al. 1983) abilities.

9.7 Talc Formulation

Talc, chemically referred as magnesium silicate [$Mg_3Si_4O_{10}(OH)_2$], is used as a carrier for formulation development due to its inert nature and easy availability as raw material from soapstone industries. The potential of talc to be used as a carrier was demonstrated by Kloepper and Schroth (1981). Rhizobacteria could survive in talc for 2 months. The *fluorescent pseudomonads* after storage for 2 months in talc mixture with ~20% xanthan gum at 4 °C did not decline in number. While *P. fluorescens* isolate Pf1could survive up to 240 days in storage (Vidhyasekaran and Muthamilan 1995), *P. putida* strains 30 and 180 could survive up to 6 months (Bora et al. 2004), and *B. subtilis* survived up to 45 days in talc-based formulations (Amer and Utkhede 2000). Saravanakumar et al. (2007a) demonstrated that application of talc-based bioformulation of *P. fluorescens* Pf1 consistently reduced the blister blight disease and increased the yield on tea plants. The same research group has demonstrated that *P. fluorescens* Pf1 effectively controlled the dry root rot disease on mung bean plants (Saravanakumar et al. 2007b). Further, seed treatment, soil application and seedling dip of talc-based bioformulation of Pf1 effectively reduced the sheath rot disease on rice plants under glasshouse and field conditions (Manikandan et al. 2010).

9.8 Press Mud Formulation

Press mud is a by-product of sugar industries. Its usefulness as fertilizer is based on the nutrient content of the mud. It is rich in micronutrients and can reduce the requirement of chemical fertilizers. It also provides suitable conditions to bacteria for carrying out nitrogen fixation and phosphate solubilization that keep the soil healthy and develop the self-reclamation cycle.

The fertilizer produced is free from all pathogens, harmful bacteria, weeds and seeds due to the high temperature produced during bio-composting. Fertilizer is easy to handle, to pack and to transport. The biocompost contains 25–30% organic carbon, 1.2–2.0% nitrogen, 1.5–2.0% phosphorus and 2.5–3.0% potash (Partha and Sivasubramanian 2006). This carrier maximizes the survival of *Azospirillum* sp. by providing favourable conditions in comparison to lignite, which is predominantly used as a carrier material in India (Muthukumarasamy et al. 1999).

9.9 Promising New Technologies

A popular method for storing and delivering microorganisms through liquid formulations is water-in-oil emulsions (Vandergheynst et al. 2006). This formulation slows down water evaporation as the oil traps the water around the organism which is particularly beneficial for organisms that are sensitive to desiccation. Thickening the oil phase using hydrophobic silica nanoparticles significantly reduced cell sedimentation and improved cell viability during storage (Vandergheynst et al. 2007).

Recently, a new process named PGSS (particles from gas saturated solutions), based on the application of supercritical fluid properties, is used which is carried out at low temperatures and uses carbon dioxide as a supercritical fluid. Another new technology is proposing the exploitation of the natural production of bacterial biofilms as a possible carrier. Application of a biofilmed inoculant containing a fungal rhizobia consortium significantly increased N_2 fixation in soybean compared to a traditional rhizobium inoculant (Jayasinghearachchi and Seneviratne 2004).

Interestingly, beneficial endophytes were observed to produce higher acidity and plant growth-promoting hormones than their mono- or mixed cultures with no biofilm formation (Bandara et al. 2006). Wheat seedlings inoculated with biofilm-producing bacteria exhibited an increased yield in moderate saline soils (Ashraf et al. 2004). Inocula made with biofilms were shown to allow their rhizobia survive at high salinity (400 mM NaCl) by 10^5-fold compared to rhizobial monocultures (Seneviratne et al. 2008). Bio-nanotechnology applications which employ nanoparticles made of inorganic or organic materials could also provide new avenues for the development of carrier-based microbial inocula (Malusa et al. 2012).

9.10 Commercially Available Biofertilizer in India and Its Application

Around 170 organizations in 24 countries are engaged in commercial production of biofertilizers. NifTAL (USA) has played a major role in the popularization of *Rhizobium* inoculants. The Philippines implemented the National *Azolla* Action Programme (NAAP) in 1982 to develop farm-based technology for the use of *Azolla* fertilizer for rice. The current global market for organically raised agricultural products is valued at ~US$ 30 billion with a growth rate of ~8%. The organic cultivation represents less than 1% of the world's conventional agricultural production and ~9% of the total agricultural area (Mishra and Das 2014). The Government of India and the different state governments have been promoting the use of biofertilizers. The GOI has been providing the National Biofertilizers Development Centre act Ghaziabad with six regional centres at Bangalore, Bhubaneswar, Jabalpur, Hisar, Imphal and Nagpur. Different commercial available biofertilizers in India are listed in Table 9.5.

9.11 Conclusions

Microbial inoculants have long been incorporated into field practices worldwide. The demand for natural biofertilizers is rising steadily in all parts of the world. Public awareness about the environment is increasing, while the apprehension about pollution and health hazards due to synthetic chemicals especially in rich countries is growing. Significant advances have been made by some Asian countries in the development and use of biofertilizers, but their potential remains largely underutilized due to the difference in efforts and experiences in different countries. Peat

Table 9.5 Microbial biofertilizer available in India

Biofertilizer	Active ingredient	Mode of action	Dose	Manufacturer
A. Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms				
Grotop PSB powder	Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms (*Bacillus* sp.), powder 10^7–10^9 CFU g^{-1} and liquid 10^9 CFU ml^{-1}	Solubilize unavailable organic and inorganic forms of phosphorus (80%)	*Seed*: 5–10 g kg^{-1} seed	MD Biocoals Pvt. Ltd., Haryana
			Soil: 0.5–1 kg $acre^{-1}$ along with 40–50 kg manure	
			Foliar: 3 ml l^{-1} water	
Mani Dharma's biopromoter	*Bacillus megaterium* + *Aspergillus niger*	Biopromoter facilitates root formation and plant growth	*Foliar*: 200 g/ 200 ml^{-1} of 'rice kanji' or 5% jaggary water	Mani Dharma Biotech Private Limited, Tamil Nadu
		It improves soil quality with subsequent uses. It should not be mixed with antibacterial agents and inorganic fertilizers		
Multiplex Nalapak	Homogenous mixture of *Azotobacter* + *Azospirillum* + phosphate solubilizer + potash mobilizer	It produces amino acids, vitamins and growth-promoting substances like IAA, GA and cytokines, which help in better growth and development of crop plants. Improves physical, chemical and biological properties of the soil	*Soil*: 500 ml 5 kg^{-1} $acre^{-1}$ along with 100 kg well decomposed FYM	Multiplex Bio-Tech Pvt. Ltd., Karnataka
			Foliar: 10 g l^{-1} water	
Ambiphos	Phosphate-solubilizing microorganism (*Aspergillus niger*)	PSM secretes organic acids, which dissolve unavailable phosphate into soluble form and make it available to the plants	*Foliar*: 3-5 ml l^{-1} water	Ambika Biotech & Agro Services, Madhya Pradesh

Biophos	*Bacillus megaterium* var. *phosphaticum*	PSM secretes organic acids, which dissolve unavailable phosphate into soluble form and make it available to the plants	*Seed*: 5–10 ml kg^{-1} of seed	Biotech International Limited, Delhi
			Seedling: 125–250 ml in 25–50 litre of water as coating, sett treatment 125–250 ml in 60–80 l ha^{-1} for 30 min	
			Soil: 500–625 ml ha^{-1} mixing with 250–375 kg FYM	
BioP-P	Phosphate-solubilizing microorganism (2×10^8 CFU g^{-1})	PSM secretes organic acids, which dissolve unavailable phosphate into soluble form and make it available to the plants	*Foliar*: 3–5 ml l^{-1} water	Sundaram Overseas Cooperation, Gujarat
PSM	Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms	PSM secrete organic acids, which dissolve unavailable phosphate into soluble form and make it available to the plants	*Soil*: 0.5^{-1} kg $acre^{-1}$ along with 40–50 kg FYM	Shree Biocare India, Shree Biocare Solution Pvt. Ltd., Gujarat
PSM	Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms	PSM secretes organic acids, which dissolve unavailable phosphate into soluble form and make it available to the plants	*Soil*: 0.5^{-1} kg ha^{-1} along with 100 kg FYM	KRIBHCO, UP

(continued)

Table 9.5 (continued)

Biofertilizer	Active ingredient	Mode of action	Dose	Manufacturer
B. Phosphate-mobilizing biofertilizer				
Mani Dharma VAM	Vesicular-arbuscular endomycorrhiza (VAM)	Solubilize phosphate and supplies P, Zn, Mn, Fe, Cu, Co and Mo to the plants. Increases the plant vigour by inducing drought resistance in young seedlings. Protects the plants from the fungal pathogens	*Soil*: 200 g/m^2 or 2–5 g seedling^{-1}; 50–200 g trees^{-1}; 3–5 kg acre^{-1} (2–3 cm depth)	Mani Dharma Biotech Pvt. Ltd., Tamil Nadu
Ecorrhiza-VAM/ Nurserrhiza-VAM	Arbuscular mycorrhiza	Improved uptake of nutrients, root development and growth in plant	*Soil*: 3–5 kg acre^{-1} with the 200–250 kg FYM, one tablet plant^{-1} in 2–4 inch deep hole near the plant root	TERI, New Delhi
Root care	Mycorrhiza (*Glomus intraradices*)	Improved plant health, uptake of nutrients and reduction of environmental stress	*Soil*: 5 kg acre^{-1}.	Ambika Biotech, MP
Mycorrhizae	105 propagules/kg with carrier material (talc powder/vermiculite)	Mobilize major nutrients like phosphorus and potassium and certain micronutrients like zinc, calcium, etc.	*Soil*: 5–10 kg of VAM ha^{-1} is recommended along with the 1 q of FYM; 25 g plant^{-1}	Dr. Rajan Laboratories, Tamil Nadu
JOSH Super/JOSH Plus	Mycorrhiza (*Glomus intraradices*)	Root development in plant enhance growth	*Soil*: 5 kg acre^{-1} for all crops, 60 infective propagules g^{-1}	Cadila Pharmaceuticals Limited, Gujarat

Shubhodaya	Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza (with three species – (1)isolated from desert and adoptable to harsh water strained condition, (2) adoptable to water lodging conditions and (3) adaptable to general and acidic/basic soil conditions)	Improved uptake of nutrients	*Soil*: 5–10 kg $acre^{-1}$	Cosme Biotech, Goa
TARI VAM	Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza	Mobilize nutrients like phosphorus and zinc	*Soil*: 5–10 kg $acre^{-1}$	TARI Biotech, Tamil Nadu
BioCarry	Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza (VAM)	Helps in efficient mobilization and uptake of fertilizers and other nutrients by plants	*Soil*: 5 kg $acre^{-1}$	Sundaram Overseas Operation, Gujrat
Symbion VAM	Solid formulations of arbuscular mycorrhiza	Improved uptake of nutrients, root development in plant and growth	*Soil*: 5 kg $acre^{-1}$	T. Stanes and Company Limited, Tamil Nadu
CAMBAY's VARDHAK	Arbuscular mycorrhiza (powder and tablets)	Helps in efficient mobilization of nutrients	*Soil*: 5 kg $acre^{-1}$; one tablet $plant^{-1}$	Neesa Agritech Food and Limited
Mycorrhiza – VAM	Arbuscular mycorrhiza	Mobilize nutrients like, P, Zn, Cu and B	*Soil*:10 kg $acre^{-1}$	KCP Sugar and Industries Corporation Ltd
Mycorrhiza-AM Biofertilizer	Arbuscular mycorrhiza	Helps in efficient mobilization of nutrients and improved plant growth	*Soil*: 5 kg $acre^{-1}$	Majestic Agronomics Pvt. Ltd., HP
Colonizer	Arbuscular mycorrhiza (powder)	Colonizes living plants roots. Improves phosphorus uptake and imparts stress and disease resistance	*Soil*: 2–3 kg $acre^{-1}$	Krishidhan Seeds Pvt. Ltd., Maharashtra

(continued)

Table 9.5 (continued)

Biofertilizer	Active ingredient	Mode of action	Dose	Manufacturer
C. Enriched compost				
Multiplex Sagar (Compost Poly Culture)	Homogenous mixture of *Azospirillum* + *Trichoderma* + *Pleurotus*	Nitrogen-fixing potential, biopesticidal activity, enhances compost degradation	*Soil*: 1 kg acre^{-1} along with 1000 kg well decomposed FYM *Foliar*: 100 ml 10 l^{-1} water	Multiplex Bio-Tech Pvt. Ltd., Karnataka
Enriched compost culture	*Trichoderma harzianum*+ *Aspergillus*+*Penicillium*	Enhances compost degradation	*Foliar*: 100 ml 10 l^{-1} water	Organic Biotech Pvt. Limited, Maharashtra
Bio-manure culture	*Trichoderma harzianum*+*Aspergillus*	Enhances compost degradation	*Foliar*: 100 ml 10 l^{-1} water	Uno Natural and Greens Private Limited, Tamil Nadu
LignoBiocompost culture	*Trichoderma reesei*, *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and *Aspergillus awamori*	Enhances compost degradation	*Foliar*: 75–100 ml 10 l^{-1} water	Peak Chemical Industries Limited, West Bengal

formulations have been developed into effective carriers which are accepted worldwide, but their development has almost reached its limits. It is quite early to declare these carriers as potentially universal due to the lack of information about new developments from research institute. Special attention should be paid to the needs and constraints of developing countries that need easy-to-use and inexpensive formulations as agriculture in developed countries is the major promoter of microbial inoculants that are environmentally friendly. For the future, more research should be focused on the development of better and more economical feasible, synthetic inoculant carriers, while sustaining peat-based inoculant production for agriculture.

References

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Amer GA, Utkhede RS (2000) Development of formulations of biological agents for management of root rot of lettuce and cucumber. Can J Microbiol 46:809–816

Amutha R, Karunakaran S, Dhanasekaran S, Hemalatha K, Monika R, Shanmugapriya P, Sornalatha T (2014) Isolation and mass production of biofertilizer (*Azotobacter* and phosphobacter). Int J Lat Res Sci Tech 3(1):79–81

Anonymous (2008) Data on bio-fertilizer production and demand, maintained by Department of Fertilizers. Ministry of Chemical and Fertilizers, New Delhi. Based upon information received from State Govt Regional Centers/NGO

Ashraf M, Hasnain S, Berge O, Mahmood T (2004) Inoculating wheat seedlings with exopolysaccharide -producing bacteria restricts sodium uptake and stimulates plant growth under salt stress. J Food Sci 71(3):89–99

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2017) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bandara WMMS, Seneviratne G, Kulasooriya SA (2006) Interactions among endophytic bacteria and fungi: effects and potentials. J Biosci 31(5):645–650

Baset Mia MA, Shamsuddin ZH (2010) Rhizobium as a crop enhancer and biofertilizer for increased cereal production. Afr J Biotechnol 9(37):6001–6009

Bashan Y (1998) Inoculants of plant growth-promoting bacteria for use in agriculture. Biotech Adv 16:729–770

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Bora T, Ozaktan H, Gore E, Aslan E (2004) Biological control of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *Melonis* by wettable powder formulations of the two strains of *Pseudomonas putida*. J Phytopathol 152:471–475

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Hartley EJ, Gemmell LG, Slattery JF, Howieson JG, Herridge DF (2005) Age of peat-based lupin and chickpea inoculants in relating to quality and efficacy. Aust J Exp Agric 45:183–188

Hemphill DD Jr (1982) Anticrustant effects on soil mechanical resistance and seedling emergence. Hortic Sci 17:391–393

Hettiarachchi RP, Dharmakeerthi RS, Jayakody AN, Seneviratne G, de Silva, Gunathilake T, Thewarapperuma (2014) Effectiveness of fungal bacterial interactions as biofilmed biofertilizers on enhancement of root growth of Hevea seedlings. J Environ Prof Sri Lanka 3(2):25–40

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jayasinghearachchi HS, Seneviratne G (2004) A bradyrhizobial-*Penicillium* spp. biofilm with nitrogenase activity improves N2 fixing symbiosis of soybean. Biol Fert Soils 40(6):432–434

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Kaljeet S, Keyeo F, Amir HG (2011) Influence of carrier materials and storage temperature on survivability of rhizobial inoculant. Asian J Plant Sci 10:331–337

Kloepper JW, Schroth MN (1981) Development of powder formulation of rhizobacteria for inoculation of potato seed pieces. Phytopathology 71:590–592

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017a) Co-inoculation with *Enterobacter* and *Rhizobacteria* on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kumar A, Meena VS, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2017b) Towards the biological nitrogen fixation and nitrogen management in legume under sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.05.013

Lima JA, Sonza AF, Castor OS, de Menezes-Sobrinho JA (1984) Effects of organic matter and vermiculite on garlic yields. Pesqui Agropecu Bras 19:41–45

Malusa E, Sas-Paszt L, Ciesielska J (2012) Technologies for beneficial microorganisms inocula used as biofertilizers. Sci World J Article ID 491206, p 12

Manikandan R, Saravanakumar D, Rajendran L, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2010) Standardization of liquid formulation of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf1 for its efficacy against *Fusarium* wilt of tomato. Biol Control 54:83–89

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sustain Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mishra P, Dash D (2014) Rejuvenation of biofertilizer for sustainable agriculture and economic development. Consilience J Sustain Dev 11(1):41–61

Mishra S, Singh A, Keswani C, Saxena A, Sarma BK, Singh HB (2015) Harnessing plant-microbe interactions for enhanced protection against phytopathogens. In: Plant microbes symbiosis: applied facets. Springer India, p 111–125

Murumkar DR, Nalawade S V, Indi DV, Pawar SM (2016) Response of sugarcane seed plot to microbial inoculation by *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and phosphate-solubilizing bacteria. Sugar Tech 6:1–7

Muthukumarasamy R, Revathi G, Lakshminarasimhan C (1999) Diazotrophic associations in sugarcane cultivation in South India. Trop Agric 76:171–178

Nath D, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2017) Documentation of five potassium- and phosphorus-solubilizing bacteria for their K and P-solubilization ability from various minerals. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 10:174–181

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Parikh SJ, James BR (2012) Soil: the foundation of agriculture. Nat Educ Knowl 3(10):2

Partha N, Sivasubramanian V (2006) Recovery of chemicals from press mud – a sugar industry waste. Indian Chem Eng 48(3):161–163

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Raghuwanshi R (2012) Opportunities and challenges to sustainable agriculture in India. NEBIO 3(2):78–86

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reid WS, Liptay A, Nicholls CF, Marriage PB (1983) A plug-mix planter attachment for dispensing a charcoal vermiculite mixture to protect emerging seedlings from herbicide toxicity. Can J Plant Sci 63:567–571

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from indo-gangetic plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saharan BS, Nehra V (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: a critical review. Life Sci Med Res 21. http://astonjournals.com/lsmr

Saravanakumar D, Vijayakumar C, Kumar N, Samiyappan R (2007a) PGPR induced defense responses in tea plants against blister blight disease. Crop Protect 26:556–565

Saravanakumar D, Harish S, Loganathan M, Vivekananthan R, Rajendran L, Samiyappan R (2007b) Rhizobacterial bioformulation for the effective management of *Macrophomina* root rot in mung bean. Arch Phytopathol Plant Protect 40(5):323–337

Sarkar D, Meena VS, Haldar A, Rakshit R (2017) Site-specific nutrient management (SSNM): a unique approach towards maintaining soil health. In: The Adaptive soil management: from theory to practices, pp 69–88. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-3638-5_3

Seneviratne G, Zavahir JS, Bandara WMMS, Weerasekara MLMW (2008) Fungal-bacterial biofilms: their development for novel biotechnological applications. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24(6):739–743

Sharma P, Kaur N, Gargi K (2012) Revitalizing soil health with biofertilizers. Biofert News Lett 20(2)

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Stephens JHG, Rask HM (2000) Inoculant production and formulation. Field Crops Res 65:249–258

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Trevors JT, van Elsas JD, Lee H, vanOverbeek LS (1992) Use of alginate and other carriers for encapsulation of microbial cells for use in soil. Microb Releases 1:61–69

Vahed HS, Shahinrokhsar P, Heydarnezhad F (2012) Performance of phosphate solubilizing bacteria for improving growth and yield of rice (Oryza sativa L.) in the presence of phosphorous fertilizer. Int J Agric Crop Sci 4(17):1228–1232

Vaid SK, Kumar B, Sharma A, Shukla AK, Sivastava PC (2014) Effect of zinc solubilizing bacteria on growth promotion and zinc nutrition of rice. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 13(4):889–910

Vandergheynst JS, Scher H, Hong-Yun G (2006) Design of formulations for improved biological control agent viability and sequestration during storage. Ind Biotechnol 2(3):213–219

Vandergheynst JS, Scher HB, Guo HY, Schultz DL (2007) Water-in-oil emulsions that improve the storage and delivery of the biolarvacide *Lagenidium giganteum*. BioControl 52(2):207–229

Vassileva M, Serrano M, Bravo V, Jurado E, Nikolaeva I, Martos V, Vassilev N (2010) Multifunctional properties of phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms grown on agro-industrial wastes in fermentation and soil conditions. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85(5):1287–1299

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P (2017a) Microbial dynamics as influenced by bio-organics and mineral fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. India Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(2):1516–1524

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Dotaniya ML, Deewan P, Jajoria M (2017b) Enhancing production potential of cabbage and improves soil fertility status of indo-gangetic plain through application of bio-organics and mineral fertilizer. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 6(3):301–309

Vidhyasekaran P, Muthamilan M (1995) Development of formulations of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* for control of chickpea wilt. Plant Dis 79:782–786

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Microbial Diversity of Tropical Andean Soils and Low-Input Sustainable Agriculture Development

10

Luis Andrés Yarzábal, Eduardo J. Chica,
and Pablo Quichimbo

Abstract

The Tropical Andes spans over 1,540,000 km^2 from western Venezuela to northern Chile and Argentina and is currently considered the most biologically rich and diverse region on Earth. The rural populations from the Andean highlands depend largely on agriculture and related activities for their livelihoods. In spite of a long history of agriculture in the region, crop production in these highlands is constrained by adverse natural factors such as low soil fertility, rugged terrains, water deficit, and cold climates. In the last decades, a better understanding of the functioning of microbial communities in agricultural soils has led to the development of technologies that could alleviate some of these natural constraints and increase productivity sustainably. A promising approach to take advantage of the functioning of these microbial communities is the development of *bioinoculants*, products containing live or latent cells of agriculturally beneficial strains of microorganisms. When applied to seeds or soils, these bioinoculants boost the populations of beneficial microorganisms in the rhizosphere and accelerate certain microbial processes that result in increased nutrient acquisition by plants and in augmented antagonism to pathogens. A key step in the process of developing this kind of bioinoculants is the study of the indigenous microbial

L.A. Yarzábal (✉)
Facultad de Ciencias Agropecuarias, Universidad de Cuenca, Cuenca, Ecuador

Departamento de Biología, Facultad de Ciencias, Universidad de Los Andes,
Mérida, Venezuela
e-mail: yluis@ula.ve

E.J. Chica
Facultad de Ciencias Agropecuarias, Universidad de Cuenca, Cuenca, Ecuador

P. Quichimbo
Facultad de Ciencias Agropecuarias, Universidad de Cuenca, Cuenca, Ecuador

Institute of Landscape Ecology, WWU-University of Münster, Münster, Germany

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_10

biodiversity of the agricultural and natural ecosystems in which these inoculants will be applied, in order to select microbes that are well adapted to the particular conditions of these ecosystems. Here we review the most recent descriptions of the microbial diversity of Tropical Andean soils, the potential use of these microbes for improving the functioning of crop production systems, and important experiences in the development of inoculant technologies in the region.

Keywords
Bioinoculants • Plant growth-promoting microorganisms • Tropical Andes • Sustainable agriculture • Biofertilization • Biocontrol

10.1 Introduction

The Tropical Andes is a vast and diverse territory spanning north to south from western Venezuela to northern Chile and Argentina, next to the Pacific coast of South America. Home to ~70 million people – almost half of the population of the Andean countries – the region represents a melting pot of cultures in which both ancient and modern traditions hybridize (Sandor and Eash 1995; Stanish 2007) (Fig. 10.1a). The livelihoods of the people living in the Tropical Andes are strongly linked to agriculture. Indeed, mixtures of indigenous and introduced crops are cultivated by Andean farmers to satisfy national food demands, in agricultural production systems mostly dominated by smallholders and family farmers (Fonte et al. 2012) (Fig. 10.1b, c).

During the last decades, a tremendous demographic growth in the region has led to unprecedented pressures on natural resources and to an increase of rural poverty and hunger. To satisfy food demands of this growing population, the use of natural resources has been intensified in an attempt to achieve higher productivities. Alas, agriculture in the Andean highlands faces several challenges that limit productivity gains. For instance, besides lacking the financial resources needed to afford fertilizers, pesticides, irrigation systems, machinery, and/or improved crop varieties, small Andean farmers must frequently deal with harsh climate conditions and nutrient-limited soils (Fonte et al. 2012). These production conditions have caused many farmer families to suffer food shortages of varying degrees, exacerbating the poverty-resource degradation-scarcity-poverty cycle (Jodha and Shrestha 1993; Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b; Ahmad et al. 2016).

It is, therefore, imperative to explore new options aimed at increasing the productivity and carrying capacity of farms, in order to improve the livelihoods of Andean farmers and allowing them to compete favorably in the modern world without causing further environmental degradation (Partap 1999). Among these options, the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations identified the following: (1) cultivation of high-value cash crops (like fruits and vegetables), (2) adoption of sustainable farming practices (which avoid the abuse and misuse of synthetic

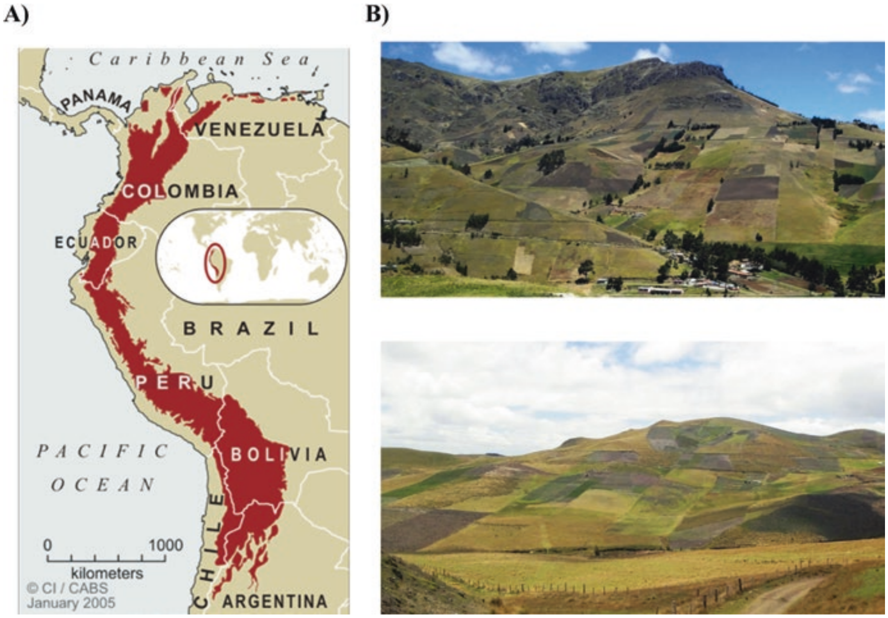


Fig. 10.1 (**a**) The Tropical Andes Region. ©2005 CI/CABS (Reproduced with permission of Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund). Available at: http://www.cepf.net/where_we_work/regions/south_america/tropical_andes/Pages/default.aspx. (**b**) Small farms in the Andean region of Ecuador (Highlands or Páramos). Copyright: Luis Andrés Yarzábal (Reproduced with permission)

agrochemicals and fertilizers), and (3) rescue of native species, varieties, and breeds known as neglected crops, which have played an important role in the human diet and traditional cultures for millennia (FAO Reports 2003, 2013).

A complementary and promising strategy for improving the agricultural productivity of Andean farms – without serious social, economic, or environmental impacts – is the proper use of biotechnological products, such as *bioinoculants* (also termed microbial inoculants). A bioinoculant can be defined as a product containing individual strains or consortia of known microbes that have plant growth-promoting effects (plant growth-promoting microorganisms; PGPM) when added directly to the soil or as a seed coating during planting (Owen et al. 2014). Among currently used bioinoculants, we can mention commercial formulations containing nitrogen-fixing bacteria (NFB or N-fixers), phosphate solubilizing bacteria (PSB), and/or mycorrhizal fungi (MF).

The use of such kind of bioinoculants has allowed to increase agricultural productivity and sustainability worldwide, without harming the environment (Fuentes-Ramírez and Caballero-Mellado 2006; Singh et al. 2011a; Velivelli et al. 2014a), thus becoming a real alternative to synthetic agrochemicals. Contrary to the general opinion, adoption of bioinoculants by the local farmers in underdeveloped countries, particularly in the Andean region, can be achieved successfully and perceived favorably if adequately planned and addressed. More importantly, in the long-term, the use of bioinoculants, together with appropriate land management and selection of suitable cultivars, may positively impact the livelihoods of individual farmers and their families (Meena et al. 2016a, b; Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

10.2 The Agricultural Landscape of the Tropical Andes

The Tropical Andes hold an old and rich tradition in agriculture. Alongside Central America, the Tropical Andes are considered the cradle of agriculture in the Americas, with archeological evidence of farming dating back to ~9000 years before the present (Dillehay et al. 2007; Piperno 2011). Dominated mainly by the influence of the Inca Empire (*Tawantinsuyu*) formed by the assimilation of different peoples, just prior to the arrival of European conquistadores, agriculture in the Tropical Andes exhibited an advanced degree of ecological specialization and technological intensification that allowed cultivation on steep mountain slopes. Inca agriculture took advantage of the natural altitudinal gradient formed in the slopes of the Andes, to cultivate crops with different temperature requirements in a highly organized fashion that allowed feeding a population of about eight million at its height (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015).

Water and soil management was an important issue in Inca agriculture, and several strategies such as long-distance irrigation canals (*acequias*), raised bed (*waru-waru*), sunken fields (*qochas*), and field terraces (*andenes*) were used to conserve these resources (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015). Incan farmers managed also practices such as intercropping (*chacras*), crop rotation, and planned fallows to maintain and restore soil fertility and point manage the incidence of pests (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015; Pestalozzi 2000). To date, many of these traditional agricultural practices are still commonly used among Andean farmers.

Modern agriculture in the Tropical Andes is hard to define because of the diversity of technologies and traditions it is made of. Different criteria could be used to classify these production systems (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015; Mulligan et al. 2009); however, by integrating several of these criteria, three broad categories can be identified, namely, (1) smallholder commercial and subsistence farms, (2) large-scale commercial export-oriented farms, and (3) managed pastures and rangelands. These three systems are roughly distributed along an altitudinal gradient, with large farms located at lower altitudes, where soils are more fertile, and small farms and pastures located at higher altitudes, on marginally fertile lands. These systems also differ among themselves in terms of their demand for external inputs, their impact on natural resources, their productivity and their level of technological intensification (Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Meena et al. 2015a; Jaiswal et al. 2016).

By large, agriculture in the Tropical Andes is dominated by smallholder commercial and subsistence farms. These farms concentrate around towns and cities, in the valleys, on hillslopes, and in the high plateaus (*altiplanos*) up to ~4200 m asl (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015; Mulligan et al. 2009) (Fig. 10.1b, c). Agricultural

Table 10.1 Commercially cultivated crops in Tropical Andean agricultural production systems

Smallholders farms		Large-scale farms	Pastures and rangelands	
Native cultivars	Introduced cultivars		Forages	Livestock
Corn	Tomato	Rose	Kikuyu	Cattle
Bean	Peppers	*Gypsophila*	Ryegrass	Sheep
Potato	Broccoli	*Hypericum*	Alfalfa	Goats
Squash	Cauliflower	Tomato	Clover	Llamas
Quinoa	Cabbage	Broccoli		Alpacas
Amaranth	Radish	Alcachofa		Vicuñas
Oca	Spinach	Sugarcane		
Mashwa	Onion			
Ullucus	Lettuce			
Chili pepper	Carrot			
	Coffee			

production in these farms is devoted to local and national markets and to self-consumption by farmer families. In general, a greater share of agricultural production is used for self-consumption in upland communities that are farther away from urban centers (Mulligan et al. 2009).

Although productivity in these smallholder farms is low compared to large-scale commercial farms, they supply most of the national demand of fresh fruits and vegetables in their corresponding countries and, thus, have a significant socioeconomic impact (Devenish and Gianella 2012). Crops cultivated in these small farms are highly diverse and represent a mixture of native and introduced crops (Table 10.1), which are cultivated using a combination of traditional practices and modern technology. However, low productivity, inappropriate adoption of production practices and technologies, and lack of research oriented to understand and improve these production systems threaten the sustainability and environmental health of these small farms (Bojaca et al. 2010; Cole et al. 2011).

In contrast with smallholder farms, large-scale commercial and export-oriented farms in the Tropical Andes are concentrated almost uniquely in the warmer valleys. The main crops cultivated in these systems are vegetables (e.g., broccoli, artichoke, tomato, peppers, lettuce), cut flowers (e.g., roses, *Gypsophila*, *Hypericum*), and sugarcane. The production of these systems is destined in part to supply national supermarket chains, but the majority of it is exported to foreign markets. These systems exhibit high productivity and intensification and contribute to rural economies by providing rural employment and generating external revenue; however, they generate a larger environmental impact than small farms and increase the dependence on external inputs (Mulligan et al. 2009). In the last decades, market preferences and environmental regulations have promoted the introduction, in many of these large-scale operations, of practices that reduce the negative impacts they generate on the environment (Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b, f; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016).

The third type of agricultural production system in the Tropical Andes is the managed pastures and rangelands for livestock grazing. These systems can be found typically at greater elevations (>3000 m asl) on mountain slopes and high plateaus up to ~4500 m asl (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015). The most common species managed in these systems are dairy cattle, sheep, goats, and Andean cameloids (llamas, alpacas, and vicuñas) (Borsdorf and Stadel 2015). Among these species, dairy cattle are the most commercially important species in the Tropical Andes. Both large and small dairy cattle farmers (2–30 cattle) with different levels of technological intensification coexist in the Tropical Andes (Aubron et al. 2009). Most of the dairy cattle are fed on rangelands or on crop residues, with few farmers actually establishing and managing pastures and fodder crops (Aubron et al. 2009).

In certain parts of the Peruvian and Bolivian Andes, elaborated long rotations (~12 years) of crops (potato, quinoa, oats, barley) and fallows are used (Pestalozzi 2000). Common fodder crops used by dairy cattle ranchers are kikuyu, ryegrass, clover, and alfalfa, whereas common breeds include Holstein, Brown Swiss, and Criollos (Aubron et al. 2009). Historically, cattle farming in the Tropical Andes has been one of the main drivers for the deforestation and ecosystem degradation since native forests are normally cleared to create new rangelands and later abandoned when productivity starts to decrease (Lozada 2006). These abandoned rangelands are difficult to recover either to reestablish commercial production or for restoring the original ecosystem (Posada et al. 2000).

Agricultural production systems in the Tropical Andes are also strongly influenced by local natural and cultural factors. Depending on their location and the scale of operations, different systems show different levels of sophistication in terms of cultural practices and inclusion of technology, which in turn affect the sustainability of these systems. Being the most numerous, a better understanding of the functioning of smallholder production systems, as well as their optimization and sustainable intensification, would have a greater overall impact on the sustainability of agriculture in the Tropical Andes in the face of emerging challenges (Devenish and Gianella 2012; Fonte et al. 2012; Haller 2014; Mulligan et al. 2010).

10.3 Andean Soils

The Tropical Andes exhibits a high diversity of soil types (Gardi et al. 2014), whose detailed description goes beyond the scope of this chapter. However, considering that the most vulnerable population (small farmers) are established in the Andean highlands (over 2500 m asl) (Fonte et al. 2012) and that they depend mostly on agriculture for their livelihoods, it is of the utmost importance to describe some characteristics of the most representative soils in this region.

Soils in the Tropical Andes can be defined as those located between the Tropic of Cancer (23°26′16″N) and the Tropic of Capricorn (23°26′16″) (Gardi et al. 2014) and above 2500 m asl. Alpine soils dominate above the tree line and, among them, páramo soils stand out, with Andosols as the most extended soil type (Poulenard and Podwojewski 2006; Podwojewski and Poulenard 2006). Nevertheless, Histosols, Leptosols, and Regosols are also present (Buytaert et al. 2011), mainly in large extensions at the Puna highland region of the Central Andes (Gardi et al. 2014; Ochoa-Tocachi et al. 2016).

Andosols are, in essence, volcanic ash soils (Shoji et al. 1993). These soils exhibit different features depending on the factors present during their formation. For example, zones of Holocene (with materials from recent glaciations) and Pleistocene (older glaciers) deposits have promoted the development of allophanic and non-allophanic Andosols, respectively (Poulenard et al. 2003; Harden 2007). Topography and vegetation are other important key factors involved in the formation of these soils: for instance, according to Zehetner et al. (2003), additions of high amounts of organic matter from the páramo vegetation in combination with its slow decomposition rate promoted the presence of allophanic materials over 3200 m asl in the Ecuadorian Andes. However, as altitude decreases, those allophanic materials transformed into other types of colloids – like halloysites – thus modifying the properties of Andosols to such a degree that they transformed into Entisols or Inceptisols.

Human activities commonly performed in Andean páramos – such as burning, grazing, cultivation, and afforestation – also affect the variability of Andosols. Although Andosols present a good physical fertility due to their high water retention capacity, good hydraulic conductivity, and low bulk density (Podwojewski and Poulenard 2006; Buytaert et al. 2011), they seriously limit agriculture development owing to their strong capacity to fix phosphate ions, their low pH, and their high aluminum content (Saigusa and Matsuyama 1998; IUSS Working Group WRB 2014).

10.4 Soil Microorganisms and Agriculture

According to Rajendhran and Gunasekaran (2008), microbial communities are the *architects* of soils. Indeed, the formation of fertile soils from bedrock implies a complex interaction of physical, chemical, and biological processes, with microbes playing a paramount role catalyzing the weathering of mineral surfaces. Soil microorganisms play also a significant role in the major global biogeochemical cycles, regulating the dynamics of organic matter decomposition and – consequently – the availability of plant nutrients such as N, P, and S (De La Peña and Loyola-Vargas 2014).

Even though many such microorganisms are found in the bulk soil, the majority of them thrive in the rhizosphere (i.e., the zone surrounding and influenced by root exudates). In fact, plant roots are able to recruit soil bacteria by secreting a panoply of molecules (sugars, amino acids, flavonoids, etc.) that act as attracting signals (Zhang et al. 2014). In this densely populated environment, microorganisms interact with plants in several ways: whereas some of these microorganisms are pathogens that cause plant diseases and consequently reduce productivity, many others act positively on plant growth and development, through direct or indirect mechanisms, and are collectively known as “plant growth-promoting microorganisms” (PGPM). While some PGPM exert their positive effect by inhibiting or antagonizing plant pathogens (termed "bioprotectants" or "biocontrollers"), others promote plant growth either by releasing phytohormone-like metabolites ("biostimulants"), by mobilizing mineral nutrients such as N and P ("biofertilizers"), or by activating the plant defense systems ("bioelicitors") (Glick 2012). Another group of microorganisms promote indirectly plant growth by degrading toxic xenobiotics ("bioremediators"). Very often, a single microorganism can stimulate plant growth by a combination of these activities (Meena et al. 2016c, d; Saha et al. 2016a; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Although there are still many uncertainties on the exact mechanism through which PGPM promote plant growth in different crops and under different environmental conditions, it is supposed that this effect might be based on interactions among biotic (nutrient supply, competitiveness, rate of multiplication, etc.) and abiotic (temperature, humidity, soil pH, etc.) factors (Lucy et al. 2004). It is also becoming clear that the plant growth-promoting traits involved do not work independently of each other but additively (Ahemad and Kibret 2014).

The rational use of PGPM in the field of agriculture is nowadays a well-established technology that has permitted to reduce significantly the use of fertilizers and pesticides – and, consequently, drastically lowered production costs – but also minimized the risk of deleterious and hazardous environmental impacts caused by the misuse and abuse of agrochemicals (Adesemoye et al. 2009). In this context, PGPM are of paramount importance for the development of sustainable agriculture practices. For example, nitrogen-fixing bacteria (NFB) are widely used to enhance crop yield, particularly through the improvement of root nodulation and biological fixation of N_2 in legumes (Herridge et al. 2008). Another important group of PGPM, phosphate solubilizing bacteria (PSB), is also used, but less frequently. These bacteria have the ability to readily and efficiently solubilize mineral forms of P making them available for plant uptake (Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Meena et al. 2014a, 2015e; Teotia et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

Several mechanisms are employed by PSB to perform this inorganic P solubilization, although the details are beyond the scope of this chapter. However, it is important to highlight the production and excretion of large amounts of organic acids like gluconic and keto-gluconic acids (in the case of Gram-negative bacteria, mainly produced through the direct oxidation pathway of glucose) or citric acid (in the case of fungi) (Jones 1998; Rodríguez and Fraga 1999). These acids mobilize P from Fe or Al oxides by efficiently chelating the metal ions, particularly in acidic soils (Johnson and Loeppert 2006).

When considering P mobilization in the rhizosphere, another very important group of PGPB has to be mentioned: organic P-mineralizing microorganisms. These microbes hydrolyze organic forms of P (phosphate esters, phosphonates, and anhydrides) by secreting specific enzymes (mainly phosphatases) to release PO_4^{2-} (Turner et al. 2006; Richardson and Simpson 2011). This process, called "substrate mineralization," is very often underestimated in spite of being essential to release plant-available orthophosphate. Some microorganisms are capable of simultaneously solubilizing inorganic P and mineralizing organic P (Oliveira et al. 2009).

Among the many microorganisms able to promote plant growth and development, arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) deserve a special place. Estimated to be present in up to 80% of all terrestrial plant species, arbuscular mycorrhiza is the most frequent type of symbiosis established between plants and members of the *Glomeromycota* phylum (Wang and Qiu 2006; Brundrett 2009). More than 225 species in this phylum have been described; however, it is likely that this number does not reflect the actual richness of AMF (Kivlin et al. 2011).

AMF colonize cortical cells of the roots of vascular plants where they develop their characteristic arbuscular structures that allow nutrient exchange between the host plant and the fungus. By extending the volume of soil that can be explored by AMF hyphae (*soil scouting*), these fungi help their host plants to reach distant nutrients – primarily phosphorus but also sulfur, nitrogen, and micronutrients – and to uptake and transfer water (Parniske 2008; Baum et al. 2015). Additionally, they can alleviate plant biotic and abiotic stresses (Gianinazzi et al. 2010; Singh et al. 2011b) and also act as biocontrollers of a wide range of pathogens, mostly fungi but also bacteria and nematodes (Harrier and Watson 2004; Whipps 2004; Jung et al. 2012; Schouteden et al. 2015). In addition to the direct benefits provided to their host plants, AMF also favors plant growth and development by improving soil structure and aggregation through the formation of an intricate network of hyphae and an abundant secretion of exopolysaccharides (Wright and Upadhyaya 1998) (Fig. 10.2).

10.5 PGPM Prospection in the Tropical Andean Region Context

Many of the abovementioned types of PGPM have been tested both in greenhouse and field trials and proven to be very efficient at promoting plant growth (Glick 2012). Consequently, numerous commercial PGPM-based biofertilizers have been developed and are currently marketed worldwide. However, their effectiveness in the soil-plant system is uncertain, particularly under field conditions. Still, they remain a very attractive alternative to chemical fertilizers and pesticides, particularly in less developed regions (Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b, 2016e; Masood and Bano 2016).

Often, commercial products formulated from exogenous PGPM result in poor performances when applied to different crops. This is frequently due to a low survival rate of exogenous microbial strains when applied to soils different than those from which these strains were isolated. Among the reasons explaining this phenomenon, we can mention (1) the different edaphic characteristics or climatic conditions these microorganisms encounter, (2) a fierce competition by better-adapted indigenous microorganisms during plant colonization, and/or (3) predation by other microorganisms (Bashan 1998). Therefore, in order to guarantee an adequate performance of bioinoculants, isolation and screening of indigenous PGPM strains are more than justified (Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015c; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

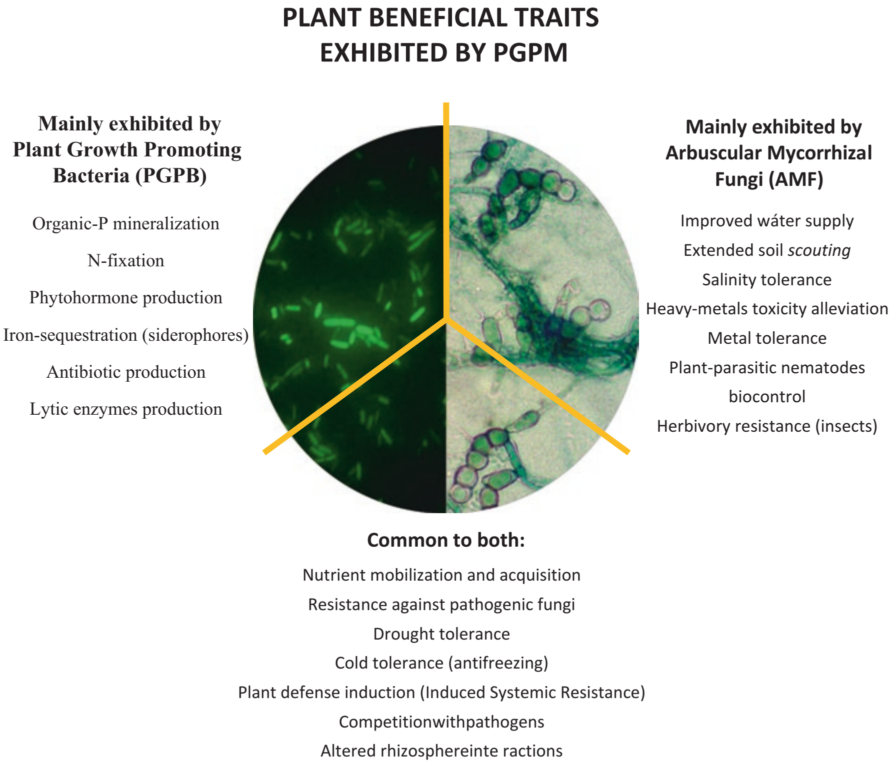


Fig. 10.2 Prominent plant-beneficial traits exhibited by rhizospheric soil microorganisms. Some of the most important functions performed by these microorganisms are also included

Traditionally, this prospection has been performed by first analyzing the soil characteristics where the plants will be grown and taking into consideration their specific requirements, to identify then the required bacterial traits that might be beneficial to these particular conditions. Following such a scheme, Andean environments have been increasingly prospected during recent years to isolate and characterize potential indigenous PGPM in order to develop new biotechnological products, well fitted to increase crop yields under the particular environmental conditions of the Andes. Since most of these microorganisms are frequently associated with plant roots, several research groups have focused on studying the microbiology of the rhizosphere of the most important food crops in the Central Andes. The cases of potato and quinoa are reviewed in the following pages considering their relevance in terms of global markets, food security, and tradition (Sindhu et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015d; Singh et al. 2015, 2016; Meena et al. 2013c).

10.5.1 PGPM and Potato

With a worldwide annual production of ~385 Mt per year (FAO Stat 2014), potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) is the fourth most important food crop after maize, wheat, and rice and is considered critical for food security in an increasingly populated world (Birch et al. 2012). Potato, which originated in the highlands of Peru and Bolivia, has been cultivated locally by farming communities for centuries (Spooner et al. 2005) and is nowadays the main staple crop in the Andes Mountains.

Potato plants are often grown at high altitudes under harsh climatic conditions and in fields where nutrients are often unavailable due to high soil acidity, which may explain why their average production yields are so low. Because it requires large inputs of expensive chemical fertilizers, the productivity of potatoes in small farms is severely constrained. Additionally, fungal diseases that affect potato yield and tuber quality (such as late blight, black scurf, and dry rot) are still common in the Andes (Finckh et al. 2006). The aforementioned reasons explain why researchers have devoted great efforts to characterize the microbes colonizing potato root system in order to search for potential growth promoters and biocontrollers.

The International Potato Center – founded in 1971 with the aim of delivering sustainable solutions to the pressing world problems of hunger, poverty, and the degradation of natural resources (www.cipotato.org) – implemented in 2005 a strategy directed toward exploring the use of rhizobacteria to improve potato production in a sustainable way. The final goal of this project was to develop biofertilizers for small-scale farmers in the Central Andean Highlands. Initial studies were performed with commercial products based on either a Peruvian strain of *Azotobacter* sp. (Azotolum from Peru) or a *Bacillus subtilis* strain from Germany (FZB24). In a field trial performed at 4000 m asl, biofertilization of three Peruvian potato varieties – Yungay, Putis, and Queccorani –increased tuber yields by up to 25% compared to the control plants (Oswald et al. 2007). In a second field trial, performed at 3200 m asl, a total of 23 potato varieties – mainly Peruvian potato landraces – were planted and biofertilized. The results were not as clear-cut as the previous ones, and different responses to PGPB were observed depending on the potato variety (Oswald et al. 2007).

Following these encouraging results, bacteria colonizing the rhizosphere of potatoes were subsequently isolated from rhizospheric soils sampled in different provinces of the Peruvian Andes, tested in vitro for their PGP abilities, and inoculated to potatoes grown in aeroponic systems (Calvo-Vélez et al. 2008; Calvo et al. 2009). The results obtained showed significant increases in tuber numbers per plant, ranging from 40% to 100%, depending on the potato cultivar (Oswald and Calvo 2009). In a follow-up of this work, Oswald et al. (2010) isolated bacteria from the rhizospheric soil of potatoes cultivated in Huancavelica and Puno, at locations situated between 3900 and 4200 m asl in the Central Andean Highlands of Peru.

On the basis of the PGP activities recorded in vitro, 56 isolates – belonging to the genera *Bacillus* and *Azotobacter* and actinomycetes – were selected for a pot experiment conducted under greenhouse conditions and including seven commercial potato varieties. Inoculation of plants with more than 80% of these strains increased total plant and tuber weights between 50% and 200%. Using some of these strains, a field trial was conducted in Puno (3820 m asl), where the authors recorded higher tuber yields in inoculated potato plants than those obtained in the uninoculated controls.

The characterization of bacteria colonizing the rhizosphere of potato was also performed by other research groups in Peru. For example, Calvo and Zuñiga (2010) and Calvo et al. (2010) studied the PGP abilities of several *Bacillus* sp. strains, formerly isolated in the highland Peruvian regions of Huancavelica and Puno – Titicaca Lake – at 3900–4200 m asl by Calvo-Vélez et al. (2008). Besides exhibiting several PGP characteristics in vitro, the isolates inhibited growth of *R. solani* and *F. solani.* Taken together, the results showed the potential of these strains to develop PGP inoculants.

More recently, Ghyselinck et al. (2013) investigated the bacterial communities colonizing potatoes grown at different altitudes in the Central Andean Highlands of Peru and Bolivia. Fifty eight strains out of 585 isolates exhibited antagonism against *R. solani* and *P. infestans*. Additionally, 14 isolates (belonging to the *Pseudomonas koreensis* subgroup, the *P. fluorescens* subgroup and the *Bacillus* genus) protected potato plantlets challenged with *R. solani*. On the other side, 12 strains significantly increased plant growth and development when tested in vitro. These results clearly indicated that some of these isolates might be used to develop new biocontrol products.

Field trials to investigate the effects of PGPM on potato productivity were also conducted in the Andean region of Bolivia, particularly at Lope Mendoza (3440 m asl, Carrasco Province), Tiraque highlands (3453 m asl, Tiraque Province), La Villa (2650 m asl, Cochabamba Province), and Colomi (3200 m asl, Chapare Province) (Franco et al. 2011). In these trials, native isolates of *B. amyloliquefaciens* and *B. subtilis*, as well as a commercial *B. subtilis* strain (FZB 24WG), were tested as single microbial treatments on the native potato cultivar Waycha (*S. tuberosum* sub-sp. *andigena* Hawkes) with the participation of local farmers. Treatments combining native *B. subtilis* strains with organic amendments resulted in superior and uniform plant emergence, higher plant vigor and development, improved plant health, and higher yield of tubers. Also, a suppressive effect on the incidence of *R. solani* in tubers was observed. The commercial *B. subtilis* strain did not perform well in regard to plant growth and yield.

Aside from the beneficial effects of PGP bacteria on potatoes, it has been repeatedly shown that AMF can also promote potato production (Hijri 2016). These benefits do not only rely on the ability of AMF to increase nutrient uptake (mainly P) by plant roots, but also has to do with an enhanced water uptake, a greater disease resistance, and a significant alleviation of cultural and environmental stresses (Berruti et al. 2015). However, these benefits depend on several factors among which we can mention the potato genotype (Vosatka and Gryndler 2000), the AM fungal species or strain (Davies et al. 2005a), and the soil P levels (Herrera-Peraza et al. 2011).

Whatever the case, positive responses of *S. tuberosum* were recorded by McArthur and Knowles (1993) after inoculation with AMF, in experiments conducted in growth chambers under P deficiency. Following these initial observations, some early studies were performed in Peru and Colombia (Moreno Díaz 1988; Sieverding et al. 1991). The results confirmed the positive effects of AMF inoculation on potatoes; however, at least in one of these studies, nonnative AMF isolates were used.

In which can be considered as the first report of its type, Davies et al. (2005a) used a mixed inoculum of Andean native strains of *Acaulospora* sp., *Glomus* sp., *Scutellospora* sp., *Gigaspora* sp., and *Sclerocystis* sp. as biofertilizers to inoculate plants derived from minitubers of Yungay potatoes – an important Peruvian cultivar. The mycorrhizal inoculation resulted in enhanced growth and yield of plants at low P supply as compared to uninoculated controls. Furthermore, direct application of a flavonoid produced by a number of plants (formononetin), previously shown to enhance AMF sporulation and effectiveness of mycorrhizal plants, induced greater extra-radical hyphae formation and a better development of plants and tubers.

The positive effect of formononetin on potato production was further assessed in a field study conducted at 3900 m asl in San Jose de Aymara (Department of Huancavelica), in the central highlands of Peru (Davies et al. 2005b). The production site had very acidic soil (pH 3.6), with low P availability and high Al content. In this case, six Andean potato cultivars were treated directly with formononetin applied as a soil drench when shoots began to emerge from tubers. The treatment did not only induce greater soil sporulation levels of naturally occurring AMF (predominantly *Gigaspora*, *Glomus*, and *Scutellospora*) but also increased tuber dry mass and/or grade quality in three out of six cultivars. This particular form of *biostimulation* demonstrated the possibility of using a radically different approach to reach more cost-effective levels of AMF inoculums, rather than solely relying on indigenous AMF present in the soil of the crop production site.

The development of mixed bioinoculants, combining the PGP abilities of bacteria and the biocontrol capacities of some particular fungi, is another promising approach to increase the yields of different crops. For instance, co-inoculation trials of potato cultivars Waycha (*S. tuberosum* sub-sp. *andigena* Hawkes) and Desiree (*S. tuberosum* sub-sp. *tuberosum*) with *B. subtilis* and the AMF *Glomus fasciculatum* allowed a significant increase in tuber yield and a suppressive/inhibitory effect on soilborne diseases, when assayed in the field (Franco et al. 2011).

The positive effect of mixed bioinoculants was also demonstrated by Pérez et al. (2015). In this work, the authors monitored the effect of bioinputs on 15 native potato cultivars' tolerance to drought stress, at 3309 m asl in Cochabamba (Bolivia). Even though application of poultry manure to potatoes during planting reduced the severity of drought injure and increased the yield, the combined use of earthworm humus and Mibac (a commercial product that combines native strains of *B. subtilis* and *G. fasciculatum*) permitted also to record satisfactory results on both parameters, even though some of the responses were cultivar dependent.

In light of these results and in collaboration with PROINPA, a Bolivian national foundation dedicated at promoting the sustainable use of natural resources through research and innovation, a biofertilizer was formulated with a native isolate of *B. amyloliquefaciens* and used by farmers dedicated to organic production both as a single treatment or mixed with *G. fasciculatum* and vermicompost.

10.5.2 PGPM and Quinoa

Quinoa (*Chenopodium quinoa* Willd.) is another economically important and ancestrally grown crop in the Central Andes. Exceptionally rich from a nutritional point of view, this seed crop – whose grains may even surpass the nutritional values recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) (Hirose et al. 2010) – has been cultivated in the Andes for thousands of years. It is currently considered a food security crop, especially in the face of the predicted future world scenario of increasing salinization and aridity. Indeed, owing to its exceptional tolerance to abiotic stresses – including frost, salinity, and drought – quinoa is remarkably well adapted to the harsh conditions prevailing in the high Andean mountains (Ruiz et al. 2014). Quinoa grows satisfactory in Andean poor soils; however, to reach adequate levels of production, some amendments are applied including animal and green manures (Jacobsen 2011). The crop has been traditionally grown by small farmers in the Andes and the ancestral knowledge is passed through generations from parents to children. However, in recent years, increasing worldwide demand for quinoa and the subsequent industrial development associated to it are putting in danger this cultural and biodiversity legacy (Jacobsen 2011).

Preservation of small-scale farming in order to continue cultivating quinoa in a sustainable way requires a multidisciplinary approach. Even though according to some authors quinoa is an under-researched and neglected crop (Rojas et al. 2009), some efforts have been made in order to promote organic production of this grain in Andean countries like Bolivia. For instance, Ortuño et al. (2013) reported the development and successful use of bioproducts consisting of mixtures of biofertilizers and biocontrollers, to reduce the harmful effects of chemical fertilizers and pesticides in the environment and to produce quinoa free of contaminants and at lower costs.

In which can be considered the first report on its type, suitable microbes for stimulating quinoa production were isolated and characterized by Ortuño et al. (2013, 2014). Two microbial strains (*Bacillus* sp. and *Trichoderma* sp.), exhibiting PGP- and antagonistic abilities, were large-scale produced in simple and inexpensive culture media and then formulated to obtain bioproducts that were distributed among local farmers. When tested in the field, the bioproducts increased quinoa yield compared to the untreated controls. Besides, inoculated plants exhibited a healthier and more vigorous appearance than untreated plants.

10.6 *Omic* Technologies and Agriculture Development in the Andean Region

Until now, prospection of the microbial communities colonizing Andean crops has relied on culture-based techniques. Consequently, the major flaw in these studies is that the great majority of microbes – the *unculturable* ones – remain to be identified and their functions revealed. Therefore, our understanding of these communities and their changes over time, plant species and age, soil properties, and/or management is at its infancy.

Phenotypic and genotypic approaches are currently available to characterize soil microbial community structures. *Metagenomics*—defined as the direct genetic analysis of genomes contained within an environmental sample—provides access not only to the microbial diversity of a given community (the so-called phylogenetic surveys) but, more importantly, also to the functional gene composition of microbial communities (Thomas et al. 2012). For example, in a recent study based on pyrosequencing, Barnett et al. (2015) studied the variability of the potato root-associated bacterial community with regard to different locations and potato clones. From a total of 26 potato clones collected at three sites, 123 bacterial operational taxonomic units (OTUs) were correlated with tuber yield and/or tuber nutrient content, a majority of them belonging to the order *Rhizobiales*. Interestingly, 23 of these bacterial OTUs were present in at least 50% of samples at each site and, therefore, were considered as part of a core *bacteriome* likely involved in supporting potato crop health.

With a similar objective in mind, two studies were conducted in three different Andean countries (Peru, Bolivia, and Ecuador), at different altitudes (from 2658 to 4075 m asl), and at three potato plant developmental stages (emergence, flowering, and senescence) (Senés-Guerrero et al. 2014; Senés-Guerrero and Schüssler 2016). In both studies, the AMF communities associated with potatoes were described, although the methods used differed: the first report relied on soil DNA extraction, PCR amplification, cloning and sequencing of selected molecular markers (SSU, LSU, and ITS region), while the second report was based on metagenomic analyses of LSU rRNA gene PCR amplicons by pyrosequencing methods (454-GS FLX+).

According to the results of the first study, potato plants were colonized by diverse species from 8 of the 11 *Glomeromycota* families, a much higher AMF diversity than those reported for potato in other ecosystems (Senés-Guerrero et al. 2014). Besides, the composition of the AMF community was affected by potato plant developmental stages, and most of the AMF species detected in potato roots at the emergence stage did not persist during later stages. Contrary to what is characteristic in other alpine environments, the highest AMF diversity occurred at the highest altitude (4075 m asl) in both soil and root samples. The study also highlighted the importance of three OTUs – namely, *Funneliformis mosseae*, an unknown *Claroideoglomus* sp., and *Rhizophagus irregularis*, easily cultivable generalists which colonize early plant developmental stages, as promising candidates for the development of biofertilizers for sustainable potato agriculture.

The second work cited analyzed in depth, for the first time, the composition of the AMF community colonizing Andean potatoes (Senés-Guerrero and Schüssler 2016). In this study, the SSU-ITS-LSU rRNA gene region used was defined as an extended DNA barcode which allowed resolving closely related AMF species (Stockinger et al. 2010; Schoch et al. 2012). Following this methodology, the results showed that almost 92% of the individual root systems studied contained between 1 and 25 AMF species. Additionally, OTU analyses clearly revealed that the AMF community structure varied according to altitude, plant stage, or plant variety.

Of the 41 species detected in total, *Acaulospora* spp. were identified as dominant colonizers (present in 85% of the samples); it was also established that species of this genus co-occurred with *Cetraspora nodosa* and certain *Claroideoglomus* and *Rhizophagus* species in most potato root samples. Surprisingly, these species were relatively conserved throughout the rhizosphere of plants collected in the studied region, even though some samples were collected at distant locations (>3000 km distance). Therefore, as stated before, these AMF species were considered as belonging to a conserved core-species community of native potatoes in the Andes. According to the authors, identification and characterization of some of these yet unnamed AMF species would facilitate the selective design of AMF-based bioinoculants with the purpose of improving sustainable agricultural practices.

Even assuming that the great majority of microorganisms colonizing the rhizosphere of important crops belong to the unculturable category, there is no doubt that the information gained through metagenomic approaches will certainly shed more light on the potential use of this microbial source for biotechnological purposes. In fact, it is increasingly acknowledged that these so-called unculturables might be cultured in vitro if key factors influencing colony formation are appropriately optimized (Stewart 2012). Improvement of culturability of these hitherto-unculturable microorganisms will presumably reveal a range of novel important functions in the rhizosphere, including functions involved in enhancing crop growth and development as well as rhizosphere competence of microbes (Nunes da Rocha et al. 2009).

Among the *omic* technologies, ***metabolomics*** – defined as the systematic identification and quantification of all low molecular weight molecules present in the cells in a particular physiological or developmental state and which constitute the end products of cellular processes – can also play an important role in identifying potentially useful microbes to develop bioinoculants. Besides allowing understanding, at least in part, the complex interactions and chemical *conversations* and *warfare* established among the biological partners which colonize the rhizosphere (Persello-Cartieaux et al. 2003), metabolomic techniques also allow to detect microbial metabolites involved in the biocontrol of phytopathogens.

Some of these metabolites are soluble and have been thoroughly studied in the past; in recent years, however, there has been an increased interest in understanding the effects of microbial volatiles on plants and pathogens (Schmidt et al. 2015). By making use of such an experimental metabolomic approach, Velivelli et al. (2014b) identified the microbial volatile organic compounds (mVOCs) of 27 potato rhizobacterial isolates. Analysis of the complex mixture of mVOCs emitted by the rhizobacteria tested confirmed the presence of some organic volatiles previously shown to act as antifungal; in vitro experiments confirmed the antifungal activity of these mVOCs against *R. solani*. The authors also showed that volatiles able to stimulate plant development or trigger induced systemic resistance (e.g., acetoin and 2,3-butanediol) were present as well.

10.7 Does Biotechnology (and Bioinoculants) Represent a Real Alternative for Small Andean Farmers?

The practical implementation and social acceptance of modern biotechnologies remain a subject of heated debates. Although there has been a strong academic, scientific, and technological development in underdeveloped countries (Eakin and Lemos 2006), typically the development, promotion, and marketing of these technologies have been controlled by large corporations. Consequently, in order to avoid what Rosset and Altieri (1997) termed the threat of *input substitution* in smallholder sustainable agriculture, it is necessary to transfer the technologies to local stakeholders and/or small farmer's cooperatives. On the other hand, the knowledge and confidence of farmers concerning the use of agricultural biotechnological products are also fundamental in order to achieve an adequate perception of their usefulness. Thus, an objective and transparent communication of knowledge in the area as well as a fluid exchange of information between academia, government, business, and farmers is absolutely necessary (Wolt and Peterson 2000). Furthermore, if the impact of biotechnology on the livelihoods of Andean smallholders is to be maximized, then accessibility and costs of development/implementation should be considered alongside technical optimization.

It is also important to emphasize that a change in the scheme of development of agricultural biotechnologies will not only benefit the farmers as final users of these technologies but could also foster – with the cooperation of academia, government, and business – diversification of the rural economies in the Andes through the creation of small and medium biotechnological enterprises able to develop, adapt, and optimize biotechnological solutions for local problems.

Recently, Barragan-Ocaña and del Valle Herrera (2016) investigated the impact of endogenously generated technologies on the lives of farmers from underdeveloped countries. The results obtained confirmed that (1) it is possible to generate technologies in local areas of knowledge, and (2) when managed by small national or local companies, such technologies can contribute to the sustainable development of economies and better conditions for rural producers. Irrespective the fact that this study was conducted in Mexico, their main conclusions do certainly apply to other Latin-American regions. Indeed, there have been some promising results in the Andean region in this way: for instance, Davies et al. (2005a) developed local, on-farm methods for inoculating Andean crops with AMF using roots of infected crops that often performed better than commercial inoculants.

Another good example of success in this area would be the projects developed by the Foundation for Research and Promotion of Andean Products (PROINPA). Together with the International Potato Center (IPC), PROINPA launched several studies aimed at evaluating the potential use of indigenous microorganisms for potato production (Ortuño et al. 2010; Oswald et al. 2007). Some microbial isolates were subsequently tested in Bolivia and Peru in a collaborative project financed by the European Union, COMMINANDES, among whose objectives were stimulating local collective capacities to develop composting systems and management of microbial inoculants to reduce chemical dependence of small-scale farmers. Later in this project, massive culture media were developed, and subsequently liquid and solid formulations were produced. All the bioinoculants developed were tested in farmers' fields to verify their actions and application forms (Ortuño et al. 2010). Some of these microbial resources were used to formulate commercial products currently commercialized by BioTop, a private company based in Cochabamba (Bolivia) that acts as the commercial branch of the PROINPA Foundation (PROINPA/BioTop catalog). A similar approach was followed also by PROINPA researchers to develop bioinoculants that improve quinoa production in the altiplano region (Ortuño et al. 2013). Native microorganisms were prospected, characterized, selected, and used to develop the bioinoculants to reduce the disturbance of the altiplano soil ecosystem and to keep the technology as simple as possible, in order to provide cost-effective technologies for Andean farmers.

Following these successful experiences, an ambitious initiative was launched that deserves to be considered with some detail: the VALORAM project (http://valoram.ucc.ie/). This EU-funded project – whose acronym highlights the importance of exploring and valorizing Andean soil microbial diversity to develop alternative, efficient technologies to intensify potato-based farming systems in a sustainable way – was a collaborative effort between five European and three Latin American partners. Besides isolating, identifying, and characterizing indigenous microbes colonizing the potato rhizosphere in traditionally managed fields, the VALORAM project aimed at assessing and comparing these microbial communities using metagenomic techniques. Furthermore, one of the main objectives of this project was to test and evaluate selected microbial isolates for their plant growth-promoting and protecting properties in field trials, studying their interactions with potato varieties and native rhizosphere microorganisms (VALORAM Report 2015).

According to the participants, several of these objectives have been achieved so far. For instance, as already stated, from an initial collection of ~600 rhizobacterial strains, isolated from eight different potato fields from the Central Andean Highlands of Peru and Bolivia, 23 exhibited antagonistic abilities against *P. infestans* and *R. solani* and were associated with plant growth-promotion and/or disease suppression, during growth room experiments (Ghyselinck et al. 2013). Five of these strains were later shown to increase potato tuber number and yield – depending on the inoculant – when applied to soils amended with organic manure in field trials conducted in Bolivia, Peru, and Ecuador (Velivelli et al. 2014b). Additionally, a suppressive effect of one *Pseudomonas* strain against *R. solani* was also observed in a field trial conducted in Bolivia. In a similar study performed in Bolivia, 17 bacterial strains showing PGP abilities in vitro were tested in potato fields. Even though the potato tuber yield did not vary significantly among plants treated with these microbial inoculants, two *Pseudomonas* sp. isolates and one *Bacillus* sp. isolate appeared to promote potato growth (Franco et al. 2015).

At the time this chapter was written, the results of several of these studies have not yet come to light. However, detailed preliminary information is available from the VALORAM Final Report (2015). According to this report, several assays were conducted in Bolivia, Ecuador, and Peru to evaluate the potential of Andean microorganisms to increase the productivity and health of potato plants grown under high- and low-input cropping systems. These assays did not only include the pilot-scale production of AMF and PGPR inoculums, but were followed by participatory field trials conducted with local farming communities and NGOs. The farmers themselves were asked to evaluate the success or failure of these trials and selected the most accepted technologies in each community. As can be deduced from these results, the VALORAM experience, as a whole, seems to confirm that when a biological approach is combined with suitable plant genotypes, appropriate land management, and inoculation with beneficial microorganisms, then a valuable opportunity results for the sustainable intensification of potato-based farming systems in the Andean region (VALORAM Final Report 2015). Furthermore, preliminary cost-benefit analyses indicate that farmers may reduce their expenses to almost 50% – for example, by reducing their dependence on agrochemicals.

10.8 Concluding Remarks and Future Perspectives

The use of microbial inoculants in modern agriculture represents an extremely important tool that may not only increase the productivity of crops at much lesser costs but also reduce concomitantly the environmental impacts that result from farming activities. The literature is full of reports confirming at different levels of experimentation – laboratory, greenhouse, experimental plots, and open field – that such expectations can be met. However, the use of bioinoculants remains well below its full potential, a fact that can be attributed to several factors among which the correct choice of suitable microbial strains is one of the most important. As already stated by Trivedi et al. (2012) the ecological specificity associated with the naturally occurring microorganisms must orient the efforts of the scientific community in order to end with successful inoculants. Consequently, it is not only necessary to prospect for microorganisms exhibiting remarkable PGP traits, but also to select those able to colonize the rhizosphere of crops and to resist the challenges imposed by the particular climatic conditions that prevails in the Andean mountains. That means that, besides the abilities mentioned in the previous pages concerning the selection of appropriate microorganisms, care must be taken in selecting cold-tolerant or cold-adapted strains, as already established for the Indian Himalayan region (Yarzábal 2014).

On the other side, before engaging in the process of developing and producing of a given bioinoculant, it is necessary to fully understand the ecology of plant-microbe interactions and to apply these ecological lessons throughout the process. As we have seen, it is also absolutely necessary to establish a proactive interaction with the potential users of such technological assets, during experimentation and adaptation to local needs, in order to maximize the chances of a successful incorporation of such resources in their agricultural practices.

In their paramount work on alternative pathways to intensify soil fertility management by smallholder farmers in the Andean highlands, Fonte et al. (2012) insisted on developing proper strategies for taking full advantage of the functioning of soil microbial communities, either by adequately managing the soil or by inoculating beneficial microbes. In order to achieve this goal, one of the steps has been precisely the subject of this chapter, namely, the development of microbial inoculants well suited to each plant crop and properly adapted to the local conditions; the other fundamental step, namely, the characterization of the microbial communities colonizing different Andean agro ecosystems and their shifts owing to alternative management strategies, still needs much work to be accomplished. The possibility of using next-generation sequencing technologies, together with more classic molecular biology techniques, will certainly boost such detailed characterization.

Historically, the Andean region and the population settled in these mountains have dealt with challenges that will certainly increase in the coming years. Nevertheless, it is also true that this region offers unique attributes that, if adequately exploited, may allow a successful intensification of agroecological practices and an improvement of the livelihoods of mountain farmers (Fonte et al. 2012). As pointed by Sinha (1997) and by Trivedi et al. (2012), the experience gained during the past decade in the Indian Himalayan Region – in many aspects similar to the Tropical Andean region – shows that it is indeed possible to reconcile agricultural production and nature, through a harmonic relationship that results in an increased sustainability of the former and a decreased entropy of the latter.

Acknowledgments LAY acknowledges Proyecto Prometeo of the National Secretary of Science, Technology and Innovation of Ecuador (SENESCYT).

References

Adesemoye O, Torbert HA, Kloepper JW (2009) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria allow reduced application rates of chemical fertilizers. Microb Ecol 58:921–929

Ahemad M, Kibret M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saudi Univ Sci 26:1–20

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Aubron C, Cochet H, Brunschwig G, Moulin C-H (2009) Labor and its productivity in Andean dairy farming systems: a comparative approach. Hum Ecol 37:407–419

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016a) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016b) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Barnett BA, Holm DG, Koym JW et al (2015) Site and clone effects on the potato root-associated core microbiome and its relationship to tuber yield and nutrients. Am J Potato Res 92:1–9

Barragán-Ocaña A, del Valle-Rivera MC (2016) Rural development and environmental protection through the use of biofertilizers in agriculture: an alternative for underdeveloped countries? Technol Soc 46:90–99

Bashan Y (1998) Inoculants of plant growth-promoting bacteria for use in agriculture. Biotechnol Adv 16:729–770

Baum C, El-Tohamy W, Gruda N (2015) Increasing the productivity and product quality of vegetable crops using arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: a review. Sci Hortic (Amsterdam) 187:131–141

Berruti A, Lumini E, Balestrini R, Bianciotto V (2015) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as natural biofertilizers: let's benefit from past successes. Front Microbiol 6:1559

Birch PJ, Bryan G, Fenton B et al (2012) Crops that feed the world 8: potato: are the trends of increased global production sustainable? Food Sec 4:477–508

Bojacá CR, Wyckhuys KAG, Gil R et al (2010) Sustainability aspects of vegetable production in the peri-urban environment of Bogotá, Colombia. Int J Sustain Dev World Ecol 17:487–498

Borsdorf A, Stadel C (2015) The Andes. Springer, Cham

Brundrett MC (2009) Mycorrhizal associations and other means of nutrition of vesicular plants: understanding the global diversity of host plants by resolving conflicting information and developing reliable means of diagnosis. Plant Soil 320:37–77

Buytaert W, Cuesta-Camacho F, Tobón C (2011) Potential impacts of climate change on the environmental services of humid tropical alpine regions. Glob Ecol Biogeogr 20:19–33

Calvo Vélez P, Meneses LR, Zúñiga Dávila D (2008) Estudio de las poblaciones microbianas de la rizósfera del cultivo de papa (*Solanumtuberosum*) en zonas altoandinas. Ecología Apl 7:141–148

Calvo P, Zúñiga D (2010) Caracterización fisiológica de cepas de *Bacillus*spp. aisladas de la rizósfera de papa (*Solanumtuberosum*). Ecología Apl 9:31–39

Calvo P, Martínez C, Rico M et al (2009) Microbiotic biodiversity and their functionality in roots and rhizosphere of potato plants. 15th Triennial ISTRC Proceedings. pp 110–116

Calvo P, Ormeño-Orrillo E, Martínez-Romero E, Zúñiga D (2010) Characterization of *Bacillus* isolates of potato rhizosphere from Andean soils of Peru and their potential PGPR characteristics. Braz J Microbiol 41:899–906

Cole DC, Orozco TF, Pradel W et al (2011) An agriculture and health inter-sectorial research process to reduce hazardous pesticide health impacts among smallholder farmers in the Andes. BMC Int Health Hum Rights 11:S6

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Davies TFJ, Calderón MC, Huaman Z (2005a) Influence of arbuscular mycorrhizae indigenous to Peru and a flavonoid on growth, yield, and leaf elemental concentration of "Yungay" potatoes. Hortic Sci 40:381–385

Davies JFT, Calderón CM, Huaman Z, Gómez R (2005b) Influence of a flavonoid (Formononetin) on mycorrhizal activity and potato crop productivity in the highlands of Peru. Sci Hortic 106:318–329

De La Peña C, Loyola-Vargas VM (2014) Biotic interactions in the rhizosphere: a diverse cooperative enterprise for plant productivity. Plant Physiol 166:701–719

Devenish C, Gianella C (2012) 20 years of sustainable mountain development in the Andes – from Rio 1992 to 2012 and beyond – (Consorcio para el Desarrollo Sostenible de la Ecorregión Andina)

Dillehay TD, Rossen J, Andres TC, Williams DE (2007) Preceramic adoption of peanut, squash, and cotton in northern Peru. Science 316:1890–1893

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Eakin H, Lemos MC (2006) Adaptation and the state: Latin America and the challenge of capacity-building under globalization. Glob Environ Chang 16:7–18

FAO Stat (2014) *Solanum tuberosum* annual production. Available at: http://faostat3.fao.org/search/solanum%20tuberosum/E

Finckh MR, Schulte-Geldermann E, Bruns C (2006) Challenges to organic potato farming: disease and nutrient management. Potato Res 49:27–42

Fonte SJ, Vanek SJ, Oyarzun P et al (2012) Pathways to agroecological intensification of soil fertility management by smallholder farmers in the Andean highlands. Adv Agron 116:125–184

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) Report (2003) Organic agriculture: the challenge of sustaining food production while enhancing biodiversity. FAO Corporate Document Repository. http://www.fao.org/3/contents/4bd9da73-3374-592e-a44f-c087adf7a552/AD090E00.HTM. Accessed 27 Sept 2016

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) Report (2013) The state of food and agriculture: food systems for better nutrition. FAO Corporate Document Repository. http://www.fao.org/docrep/018/i3300e/i3300e00.htm. Accessed 27 Sept 2016

Franco J, Main G, Navia O, Ortuño N, Herbas J (2011) Improving productivity of traditional Andean small farmers by bio-rational soil management: I. The potato case. Rev Lat Papa 16:270–290

Franco J, Main G, Urquieta E (2015) Valorización de la diversidad microbiológica andina a través de la intensificación sostenible de sistemas agrícolas basados en el cultivo de papa (VALORAM) (pp. 52–57). In: Fundación PROINPA. Informe Compendio 2011–2014. Cochabamba – Bolivia. Available at: http://www.proinpa.org/publico/Informe_compendio_2011_2014/valorizacion%20de%20la%20diversidad%20microbiologica.pdf

Fuentes-Ramírez LE, Caballero-Mellado J (2006) Chapter 5. Bacterial biofertilizers. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 143–172

Gardi C, Angelini M, Barceló S et al (2014) Atlas de suelos de América Latina y el Caribe. ComisiónEuropea – Oficina de Publicaciones de la UniónEuropea

Ghyselinck J, Velivelli SLS, Heylen K et al (2013) Bioprospecting in potato fields in the central Andean highlands: screening of rhizobacteria for plant growth-promoting properties. Syst Appl Microbiol 36:116–127

Gianinazzi S, Gollotte A, Binet M-N et al (2010) Agroecology: the key role of arbuscular mycorrhizas in ecosystem services. Mycorrhiza 20:519–530

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica, Article ID 963401, 15 pages. http://dx.doi.org/10.6064/2012/963401

Haller A (2014) The "sowing of concrete": Peri-urban smallholder perceptions of rural–urban land change in the central Peruvian Andes. Land Use Policy 38:239–247

Harden C (2007) Two soil toposequences in a tropical glacial trough, southern Ecuador. Zeitschriftfür Geomorphol 51:139–152

Harrier LA, Watson CA (2004) The potential role of arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi in the bioprotection of plants against soil-borne pathogens in organic and/or other sustainable farming systems. Pest Manag Sci 60:149–157

Herrera-Peraza RA, Hamel C, Fernandez F, Ferrer RL, Furrazola E (2011) Soil strain compatibility: the key to effective use of arbuscular mycorrhizal inoculants? Mycorrhiza 21:183–193

Herridge D, Peoples M, Boddey R (2008) Global inputs of biological nitrogen fixation in agricultural systems. Plant Soil 311:1–18

Hijri M (2016) Analysis of a large dataset of mycorrhiza inoculation field trials on potato shows highly significant increases in yield. Mycorrhiza 26:209–214

Hirose Y, Fujita T, Ishii T, Ueno N (2010) Antioxidative properties and flavonoid composition of *Chenopodium quinoa* seeds cultivated in Japan. Food Chem 119:1300–1306

IUSS Working Group WRB (2014) World reference base for soil resources 2014. International soil classification system for naming soils and creating legends for soil maps, World Soil Resources Reports, vol 106. FAO, Rome

Jacobsen SE (2011) The situation for quinoa and its production in southern Bolivia: from economic success to environmental disaster. J Agron Crop Sci 197:390–399

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Jodha NS, Shrestha S (1993) Sustainable and more productive mountain agriculture: problems and prospects. In: Mountain environment and development –part 3 (Thematic Papers). ICIMOD, Kathmandu, pp 1–65

Johnson SE, Loeppert RH (2006) Role of organic acids in phosphate mobilization from iron oxide. Soil Sci Soc Am J 70:222–234

Jones DL (1998) Organic acids in the rhizosphere—a critical review. Plant Soil 205:25–44

Jung SC, Martinez-Medina A, Lopez-Raez JA, Pozo MJ (2012) Mycorrhiza-induced resistance and priming of plant defenses. J Chem Ecol 38:651–664

Kivlin SN, Hawkes CV, Treseder KK (2011) Global diversity and distribution of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Soil Biol Biochem 43:2294–2303

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016b) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016a) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with *Enterobacter* and *Rhizobacteria* on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Lozada C (2006) Overgrazing and range degradation in the Peruvian Andes. Rangel Arch 13:64–66

Lucy M, Reed E, Glick B (2004) Application of free living plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 86:1–25

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

McArthur DAJ, Knowles NR (1993) Influence of vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on the response of potato to phosphorus deficiency. Plant Physiol 101:147–160

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013a) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013b) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015a) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015b) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015c) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015d) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015e) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015f) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016a) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016c) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016d) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016e) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. *Biocatalysis and Agricultural*. Biotechnology 4:806–811

Moreno Díaz P (1988) Inoculación de micorrizas en papa (*Solanumtuberosum*) respuesta en el crecimiento y nutrición de plantas inoculadas en invernadero y en campo. Rev Lat Papa 1:84–103

Mulligan M, Rubiano J, Hyman G et al. (2009) The Andes basin focal project. Final report to the CGIAR challenge program on water and food. CPWF Project Report PN63

Mulligan M, Rubiano J, Hyman G et al (2010) The Andes basins: biophysical and developmental diversity in a climate of change. Water Int 35:472–492

Nunes da Rocha U, van Overbeek L, van Elsas JD (2009) Exploration of hitherto-uncultured bacteria from the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 69:313–328

Ochoa-Tocachi BF, Buytaert W, De Bièvre B et al (2016) Impacts of land use on the hydrological response of tropical Andean catchments. Hydrol Process 30:4074–4089

Oliveira CA, Alves VMC, Marriel IE et al (2009) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms isolated from rhizosphere of maize cultivated in an oxisol of the Brazilian Cerrado Biome. Soil Biol Biochem 41:1782–1787

Ortuño N, Navia O, Medrano A, Rojas K, Torrico L (2010) Desarrollo de bioinsumos: un aporte a la soberanía alimentaria de Bolivia. Rev Agric 62:30–38

Ortuño N, Castillo JA, Claros M et al (2013) Enhancing the sustainability of quinoa production and soil resilience by using bioproducts made with native microorganisms. Agronomy 3:732–746

Ortuño N, Claros M, Gutiérrez C et al (2014) Bacteria associated with the cultivation of quinoa in the Bolivian Altiplano and their biotechnological potential. Rev Agric 53:53–61

Oswald A, Calvo P (2009) Using rhizobacteria to improve productivity of potato. 15th Triennial ISTRC Proceedings. pp 29–33

Oswald A, Calvo P, Sanchez J, Zúñiga D (2007) Using plant growth promoting rhizobacteria to improve potato production and plant health. Proceedings of the 16th International Symposium of the International Scientific Centre for Fertilizers (CIEC) -Mineral Versus Organic Fertilization Conflict or Synergism? Gent, Belgium. pp 401–409

Oswald A, Calvo Velez P, ZúñigaDávila D, Arcos Pineda J (2010) Evaluating soil rhizobacteria for their ability to enhance plant growth and tuber yield in potato. Ann Appl Biol 157:259–271

Owen D, Williams AP, Griffith GW, Withers PJA (2014) Use of commercial bio-inoculants to increase agricultural production through improved phosphorus acquisition. Appl Soil Ecol 86:41–54

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Parniske M (2008) Arbuscular mycorrhiza: the mother of plant root endosymbioses. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:763–775

Partap T (1999) Sustainable land management in marginal mountain areas of the Himalayan region. Mt Res Dev 19:251–260

Pérez B, Gabriel J, Angulo A et al (2015) Efecto de los bioinsumos sobre la capacidad de respuesta de cultivares nativos de papa (*Solanumtuberosum* L.) a sequía. Rev Lat Papa 19:40–58

Persello-Cartieaux F, Nussaume L, Robaglia C (2003) Tales from the underground: molecular plant–rhizobacteria interactions. Plant Cell Environ 26:189–199

Pestalozzi H (2000) Sectoral fallow systems and the management of soil fertility: the rationality of indigenous knowledge in the High Andes of Bolivia. Mt Res Dev 20:64–71

Piperno DR (2011) The origins of plant cultivation and domestication in the new world tropics: patterns, processes, and new developments. CurrAnthropol 52:S453–S470

Podwojewski P, Poulenard J (2006) Paramos soils. In: Lal R (ed) Encyclopedia of soil, Science, vol 2. Taylor and Francis, New York, pp 1239–1242

Posada JM, Aide TM, Cavelier J (2000) Cattle and weedy shrubs as restoration tools of tropical montane rainforest. Restor Ecol 8:370–379

Poulenard J, Podwojewski P (2006) Alpine soils. In: Lal R (ed) Encyclopedia of soil, Science, vol 2. Taylor and Francis, New York, pp 75–79

Poulenard J, Podwojewski P, Herbillon AJ (2003) Characteristics of non-allophanic Andisols with hydric properties from the Ecuadorian páramos. Geoderma 117:267–281

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

PROINPA. BiotopCatalog. Retrieved at: http://www.proinpa.org/tic/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=122:catalogo-de-bioinsumos&catid=44&Itemid=153

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rajendhran J, Gunasekaran P (2008) Strategies for accessing soil metagenome for desired applications. Biotechnol Adv 26:576–590

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability. Update on microbial phosphorus. Plant Physiol 156:989–996

Rodriguez H, Fraga R (1999) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion. Biotechnol Adv 17:319–339

Rojas W, Valdivia R, Padulosi S et al (2009) From neglect to limelight: issues, methods and approaches in enhancing sustainable conservation and use of Andean grains in Bolivia and Peru. J Agric Rural Dev Trop Subtrop 92:87–117

Rosset PM, Altieri MA (1997) Agroecology versus input substitution: a fundamental contradiction of sustainable agriculture. Soc Nat Resour 10:283–295

Ruiz KB, Biondi S, Oses R et al (2014) Quinoa biodiversity and sustainability for food security under climate change. A review. Agron Sustain Dev 34:349–359

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saigusa M, Matsuyama N (1998) Distribution of Allophanic Andosols and non-allophanic Andosols in Japan. Tohoku J Agric Res 48:75–83

Sandor JA, Eash NS (1995) Ancient agricultural soils in the Andes of southern Peru. Soil Sci Soc Am J 59:170–179. doi:10.2136/sssaj1995.03615995005900010026x

Schmidt R, Cordovez V, de Boer W et al (2015) Volatile affairs in microbial interactions. ISME J 9:2329–2335

Schoch C, Seifert K, Huhndorf S et al (2012) Nuclear ribosomal internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region as a universal DNA barcode marker for fungi. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:6241–6246

Schouteden N, De Waele D, Panis B, Vos CM (2015) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi for the biocontrol of plant-parasitic nematodes: a review of the mechanisms involved. Front Microbiol 6:1280

Senés-Guerrero C, Schüssler A (2016) A conserved arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal core-species community colonizes potato roots in the Andes. Fungal Divers 77:317–333

Senés-Guerrero C, Torres-Cortés G, Pfeiffer S et al (2014) Potato-associated arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal communities in the Peruvian Andes. Mycorrhiza 24:405–417

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shoji S, Dahlgren R, Nanzyo M (1993) Terminology, concepts and geographic distribution of volcanic ash soils. In: Shoji S, Nanzyo M, Dahlgren R (eds) Volcanic ash soils: genesis, properties and utilization. Elsevier Science Publishers B.V, Amsterdam, pp 1–6

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sieverding E, Friedrichsen J, Suden W (1991) Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza management in tropical agrosystems. Deutsche GesellschaftfuerTechnischeZusammenarbeit GmbH, Eschborn

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh LP, Gill SS, Tuteja N (2011a) Unraveling the role of fungal symbionts in plant abiotic stress tolerance. Plant Signal Behav 6:175–191

Singh JS, Pandey VC, Singh DP (2011b) Efficient soil microorganisms: a new dimension for sustainable agriculture and environmental development. Agric Ecosyst Environ 140(3e4):339e353

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Sinha SK (1997) Global change scenario: current and future with reference to land cover changes and sustainable agriculture- south and south-east Asian context. Curr Sci 72:846–854

Spooner DM, McLean K, Ramsay G et al (2005) A single domestication for potato based on multilocus amplified fragment length polymorphism genotyping. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:14694–14699

Stanish C (2007) Agricultural intensification in the Titicaca Basin. In: Thurston TL, Fisher CT (eds) Seeking a richer harvest. The archaeology of subsistence intensification, innovation, and change. Springer, New York, pp 125–139

Stewart E (2012) Growing unculturable bacteria. J Bacteriol 194:4151–4160

Stockinger H, Krüger M, Schüssler A (2010) DNA barcoding of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. New Phytol 187:461–474

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Thomas T, Gilbert J, Meyer F (2012) Metagenomics – a guide from sampling to data analysis. Microb Inform Exp 2:3. http://doi.org/10.1186/2042-5783-2-3

Trivedi P, Pandey A, Palni LMS (2012) Bacterial inoculants for field applications under mountain ecosystems: present initiatives and future prospects. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: plant probiotics. Springer, Berlin, pp 15–44. doi:10.1007/978-3-642-27515-9_2

Turner BL, Frossard E, Oberson A (2006) Enhancing phosphorus availability in low-fertility soils. In: Uphoff NT et al (eds) Biological approaches to sustainable soil systems. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 191–205

VALORAM Report Summary (2015) Retrieved at http://cordis.europa.eu/result/rcn/164393_en.html on 2016/09/05

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Velivelli SLS, Kromann P, Lojan P et al (2014a) Identification of mVOCs from Andean rhizobacteria and field evaluation of bacterial and mycorrhizal inoculants on growth of potato in its center of origin. Microb Ecol 69:652–667

Velivelli SLS, Sessitsch A, Doyle Prestwich B (2014b) The role of microbial inoculants in integrated crop management systems. Potato Res 57:291–309

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Vosátka M, Gryndler M (2000) Response of micropropagated potatoes transplanted to peat media to post-vitro inoculation with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and soil bacteria. Appl Soil Ecol 15:145–152

Wang B, Qiu YL (2006) Phylogenetic distribution and evolution of mycorrhizas in land plants. Mycorrhiza 16:299–363

Whipps JM (2004) Prospects and limitations for mycorrhizas in biocontrol of root pathogens. Can J Bot 1227:1198–1227

Wolt JD, Peterson RKD (2000) Agricultural biotechnology and societal decision-making: the role of risk analysis. AgBioforum 3:291–298

Wright SF, Upadhyaya A (1998) A survey of soils for aggregate stability and glomalin, a glycoprotein produced by hyphae of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Plant Soil 198:97–107

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yarzábal LA (2014) Cold-tolerant phosphate solubilizing microorganisms and agriculture development in mountainous regions of the world. In: Saghir Khan M et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer, Cham/Heidelberg/New York/Dordrecht/London, pp 113–135

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zehetner F, Miller WP, West LT (2003) Pedogenesis of volcanic ash soils in Andean Ecuador. Soil Sci Soc Am J 67:1797

Zhang N, Wang D, Liu Y et al (2014) Effects of different plant root exudates and their organic acid components on chemotaxis, biofilm formation and colonization by beneficial rhizosphere-associated bacterial strains. Plant Soil 374:689–700

Entomopathogenic Bacteria and Biorationals in Chickpea Organic Crop Protection

11

S.P. Shanthakumar

Abstract

Global food produce is contributed largely by agriculture and agro-based industries which is crucial for food security. But importance given to the organic crop protection for sustainable farming and land use is trivial across the countries. Recent upgradation in agro-farming systems by techno-crafts for higher yield and crop protection should also place microbes as an important entity in pest management. Development of new biocontrol agents from the microbial community is being reported which should gain lead in organic product development. Earlier microbial pesticide was found to be a slow action pest control or prevention tool in biological control approach. Many target-specific pest control agents like entomopathogenic bacteria and virus were found to be swift in action when compared with entomopathogenic fungi; henceforth, product developers and biocontrol specialists have reclaimed the hope on biological pest control because they could reduce pest population instantly and ecofriendly. In present articles focus on various examples, process and related information on entomopathogenic bacteria for development of biocontrol products against major chickpea crop pest *Helicoverpa armigera*. Special reference is given to chickpea crop since India is the largest producer of chickpea facing the highest crop loss due to pod borer.

Keywords

Insect pathology • Bacteria • Arthropods • Rhizosphere • Non-target organisms

---

S.P. Shanthakumar (✉)
M.S. Swaminathan Research Foundation, III Cross Road, Taramani Institutional Area,
Taramani, Chennai 600 113, India
e-mail: spshanthakumar@gmail.com

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_11

11.1 Introduction

Global food production of all types stood at ~5.2 billion tons, representing some ~2.7 billion tons of edible dry matter, of which legumes and oil seeds contribute gross tonnage of ~165 Mt. with maximum of ~39 Mt. of dry protein (Borlaug 2003). The Indian agriculture is at the crossroad; our population may reach ~1750 million by 2050. Per capita cropland will then be 0.089 ha, and per capita fresh water supply will be ~1190 m^3/year. Food grain production must be doubled, and the area under irrigation should go up from the current ~60–114 M ha by 2050 (Swaminathan 2010).

Major investment of the farmers in agriculture is on pesticides for control of pest. Achieving sustainable pest control and finding equilibrium levels often take many years, and the result is not the instant pest 'extermination' that is wished for by many farmers (Neuenschwander 2004). Low crop productivity is related to abiotic and biotic factors, viz. damage caused by insect pests, which are realized as a major biotic constraint to sustainable crop production (Sharma and Yadav 2001). Crop loss due to insect pests is estimated to ~14% of the total agricultural production. The global monetary loss due to insect pests accounts to US$ ~90 billion in rice, wheat, maize, potato, cotton, soybean, barley and coffee (Andersen and Cohen 2000). India has the distinction of world's largest producer of pulses, but the average productivity of ~614 kg/ha is very low because of biotic stress in terms of insect infestation. Among all the insect pests, the lepidopteran insect, *H. armigera*, poses a serious threat to the pulses especially to chickpea and pigeon pea (Rabindra et al. 2005; Behere et al. 2013). Not all pests are amenable to classical biological control; many more biocontrol agents should be identified and explored. Parasitoids, predators, pathogens and nematodes have all been used for control of pestiferous arthropods (Figs. 11.1 and 11.2).

11.2 Chickpea Production: Global, National and State Prospects

The chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) is the third most important food legume grown in the world. In India, chickpea is an important pulse crop in terms of both area and production. India is the largest producer of chickpea in the world sharing the range between ~65% and 66% (FAOSTAT 2008) of the total area of ~12 M ha and production of ~9 Mt., respectively. As per FAO report, Mexico has registered highest productivity (~1809 kg/ha) followed by Canada (~1580 kg/ha) and Australia (~1268 kg/ha). In India, chickpea cultivation is being done in ~6 M ha with the production of ~4 Mt. of the grains during 2002–2003. During 2008–2010, chickpea production reached to ~7 Mt., and it was ~71% production at global scenario (FAOSTAT 2010). Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Maharashtra, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka are the major chickpea-producing states in India. Coimbatore, Erode, Perambalur and Dindigul are the highest chickpea-producing districts in Tamil Nadu (INDIASTAT 2012).

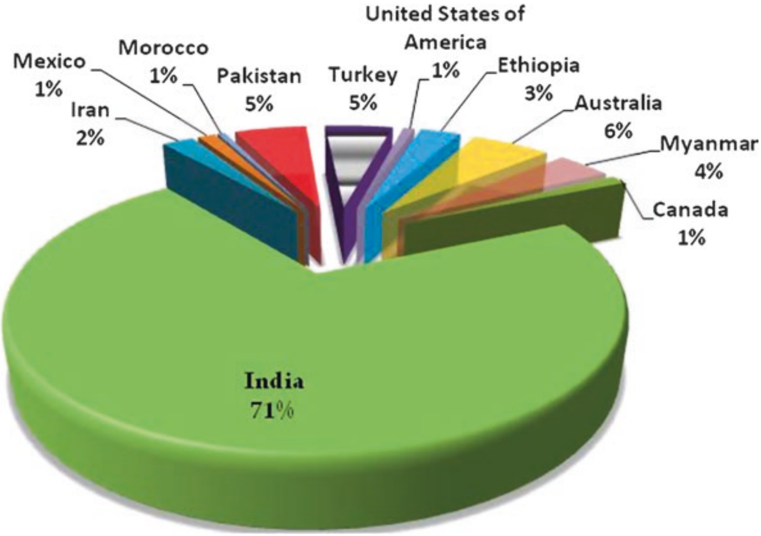


Fig. 11.1 Global status in chickpea production (FAOSTAT 2010)

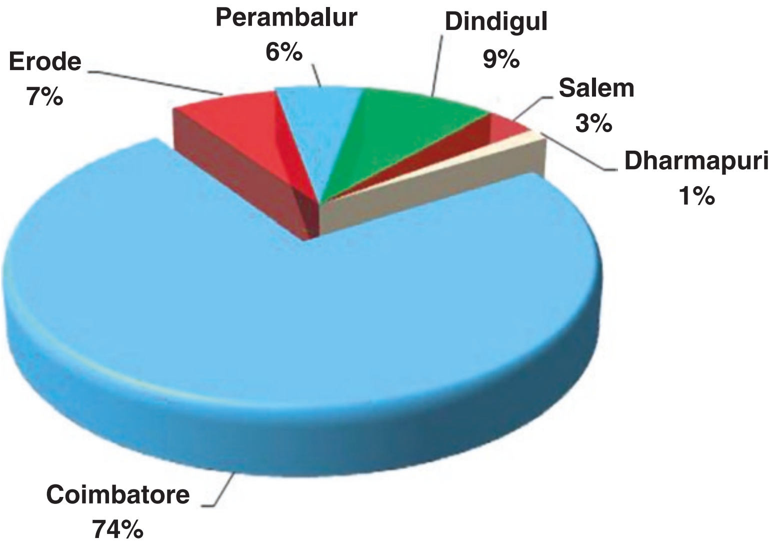


Fig. 11.2 Chickpea production status in Tamil Nadu (INDIASTAT 2012)

In the case of Dindigul district, more than 500 acres of cultivable land is being used for chickpea cultivation, and an average of 203 tonnes of chickpea production per year is the statistical projections by national database (INDIASTAT 2012).

11.3 Crop Loss and Economical Impact Due to *H. armigera*

Insects are the most widely distributed and successful animal class in the world. The indispensable reasons for this phenomenon are rapid reproduction, short life cycle and a robust immune system (Kranthi and Kranthi 2004; Gayatri Priya et al. 2012; Behere et al. 2013). The crop production losses have shown an increasing trend over the years. In 1983, the losses due to insect pests were estimated worth Rs. 6000 crores (Krishnamurthy Rao and KSRK 1983) which increased to Rs. 20,000 crores in 1993 (Jayaraj 1993) and to Rs. 29,000 crores in 1996 (Dhaliwal and Arora 2010). Birthal and Sharma (2004) have reported that *H. armigera* alone causes an annual loss of about Rs. 1000 crores in India. The American bollworm, *H. armigera*, is a polyphagous pest of worldwide occurrence inflicting annual crop damage in India worth US $1 billion (Subramanian and Mohankumar 2006). Global crop losses due to *H. armigera* are estimated to be over US $ 2 billion annually, of which 50% loss occurs in India, causing widespread misery and frequent crop failures (Subramaniam Gopalakrishnan et al. 2011).

In India, this insect occurs as a major pest in many economically important crops, including cotton, pigeon pea, chickpea, tomato, lady's finger and black gram (Ge et al. 2003; Subramanian and Mohankumar 2006; Nguyen et al. 2012; Guo et al. 2012). Severe outbreaks were recorded on soybean and mustard in Madhya Pradesh (Singh 2005), pigeon pea in Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh (Singh 1994), black cumin and strawberries in Himachal Pradesh (Singh 1999), finger millet and sweet orange in Andhra Pradesh (Reddy and Reddy 1999) and chickpea, linseed and mustard in Orissa (Patnaik and Lenka 2000).

It has also been observed that *H. armigera* attacks few new host plants such as rose and gherkin (Malarvannan 2004). During the off season, *H. armigera* is observed to survive on few weeds like *Abutilon indicum*, *Achyranthes aspera*, *Cleome monophylla*, *Solanum viarum*, *Datura metel*, *Acanthospermum hispidum* and *Gynandropsis gynandra* (Rao et al. 1991).

In Tamil Nadu, the data collected on cotton from 1985–1986 to 1987–1988 revealed that *H. armigera* reached the economic threshold level of 10% damage to fruiting parts. The districts of Coimbatore, Erode and Salem had a higher incidence in 1987–1988, and to some extent, a similar trend was noticed in the earlier 2 years (Jayaraj et al. 1990). Intensive field surveys on *H. armigera* incidence in southern districts (Aruppukottai, T.Kallupatti and Thirumangalam) of Tamil Nadu, India, in different rainfed cotton cropping systems (cotton alone and cotton intercropped with cow pea, black gram, green gram, sun flower and sorghum systems) recorded maximum *H. armigera* under pure cotton (Saminathan et al. 2003; Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2016b).

11.4 Chemical Control of *H. armigera*

In the Indian conditions, most of the farmers use insecticides as a dominant tool among the various options for the management of the insect pest. However, the indiscriminate use of insecticides has resulted in resistance development of *H. armigera* to almost all groups of insecticides. In India, resistance was first reported in cotton-growing belt of Andhra Pradesh in 1987 (Reddy 1988). Low to moderate levels of resistance have been reported in Maharashtra; moderate to high in Tamil Nadu, Uttar Pradesh, Gujarat and Punjab; and high in Andhra Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh (Kranthi et al. 2006). Excessive use of insecticides has resulted in an increase in severity of sucking pest which was considered as minor pests in addition to environmental pollution. In order to avoid the development of insecticide resistance, it is essential to curtail the indiscriminate use of the insecticide (Nimbalkar et al. 2009; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016a; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a; Parewa et al. 2014; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016).

The pest is primarily controlled by biological and chemical means, yet the insect's wide-ranging host preference, high population density throughout the breeding season and tendency to develop resistance to insecticides hamper attempts to overcome the damage it causes (Gunning and Moores 2002; Landers 2007). However, increased use of chemical pesticides has posed serious health hazards and widespread ecological damage (Rejaul Hassan and Karim 2005). Though chemical insecticides have contributed largely in the management of pest, it has resulted in a number of ecological and health hazards due to the accumulation of undesirable residues in the food crops besides promoting insecticide resistance of pests with negative impact on non-target species (Arti and Sujoita 2009).

India produces more than 200 pesticides and formulations, the largest in Asia and twelfth in the world. The agricultural sector consumes ~67% of the pesticides produced, with two-third alone taken by crops like cotton, paddy, vegetables and a fruit; the largest usage is recorded in Andhra Pradesh followed by Tamil Nadu. The insecticides chlorpyriphos, phosalone and malathion were also highly superior in reducing the pest incidence (Biradar et al. 2001). Bioassay against *H. armigera* on pigeon pea revealed that fenvalerate and monocrotophos are more toxic, followed by endosulfan and dimethoate (Sharma and Yadav 2001). On chickpea, the efficacy of acephate alone and in combination with other synthetic pyrethroids was superior against *H. armigera*. Similarly, deltamethrin resulted in lowest fruit damage due to *H. armigera* on tomato followed by cypermethrin and acephate (Mehta et al. 2001; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2015a, f, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

A troublesome aspect of *H. armigera* is their ability to develop resistance to insecticides. The pest has build-up resistance to commonly used pesticides methomyl, chlorpyriphos, quinalphos, acephate, fenvalerate, endosulfan and monocrotophos and synthetic pyrethroids up to 20- to 60-folds depending on the location (Singh et al. 2002). Resistance to DDT, organophosphorus insecticides and synthetic pyrethroids has bedevilled chemical pest control application and, in some cases, has forced abandonment of cropping due to inability to control the pest (David 1997).

11.5 Biological Control of *H. armigera*

Farmers mainly use inorganic pesticides against insect pests (Malik et al. 2002). The outbreak of *H. armigera* has been attributed to the development of insecticide resistance and the use of broad spectrum insecticides, which are known to have a detrimental effect on populations of its natural enemies and nutritional and bioclimatic factors in host plants (Naseri et al. 2009). Therefore, alternative measures have been adopted, and considerable attention has been directed towards ecofriendly insecticides in the past few years (Arti and Sujoita 2009). In Indian agriculture, the IPM programme has commenced during the last decade, and one of the important steps in biocontrol is using beneficial organisms for the control of insect pest (Prasad et al. 2007; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b; Rawat et al. 2016; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016).

11.6 Microbial Pesticides

India has been bestowed with varied diversity, rich in beneficial bacterial, viral, fungal and entomopathogenic nematodes. This, apparently, offers a greater scope for microbial control making it more feasible and cost-effective to the resource-poor farmers. Microbial pesticide would help to manage insecticide-resistant pest population of *H. armigera*, prevent the rise of secondary pest problems and fit well in agriculture (Zhou et al. 2013; Pawar and Borikar 2005). Microbial pathogens are distinguished from commensal microorganisms by their ability to enter, proliferate, persist and disseminate from host sites that are inaccessible to commensal organisms (Finlay and Falkow 1997).

Almost half (~49%) of the total introductions of traditional fungi for biocontrol of insect pests were conducted (Hajek et al. 2007). The most commonly introduced species were *Metarhizium anisopliae* and *Beauveria bassiana* in India (Hajek and Delalibera 2010). However, ~700 products of different microbial are currently available worldwide. Thirty-eight fungal formulations based on *Metarhizium*, *Beauveria* and *Lecanicillium* and ~45 baculovirus-based formulations for the control of *Helicoverpa* and *Spodoptera* are available (Vasantharaj and Ramamurthy 2008). Fungal pathogens particularly *Beauveria bassiana* (Saxena and Ahmad 1999; Uma Devi et al. 2008), *Metarhizium anisopliae* (Gopalakrishnan and Narayanan 1989; Khaderkhan et al. 1993; Shanthakumar et al. 2009), *Lecanicillium lecanii* and *Nomuraea rileyi* (Lingappa et al. 2005; Shanthakumar et al. 2010b) have been widely used as insecticides globally.

Next important microbial agent is the entomopathogenic virus. The most prevalent viruses in the environment, three families (*Baculoviridae*, *Polydnaviridae*, *Ascoviridae*), are specific for insects and related arthropods. The most widely exploited virus groups for biocontrol of insects pests are the baculoviruses (Evans 2000; Monobrullah and Nagata 2000). Some of the viral organisms pathogenic to *H. armigera* are nuclear polyhedrosis virus (NPV), cytoplasmic polyhedrosis virus (CPV) and granulosis virus (GV).

The average mortality of *H. armigera* due to the above pathogens was ~21% and could reach ~57% in an epidemic year (Fan et al. 1999). Application of different doses of *Splt* MNPV showed dose-related mortality on final instars of *Spodoptera litura* (Mohammad and Uma 2008). Entomopathogenic viruses are generally considered to be environmentally safe and do not leave toxic residues (Morris 1980; Monobrullah 2003). However, widespread use of viruses for pest management has been hampered by their relatively high cost, slow activity and susceptibility to UV degradation (Moscardi 1999).

Followed by entomopathogenic virus, entomopathogenic nematodes are other important biocontrol agents for agricultural insect pest management. It is well known that entomopathogenic nematodes, which are classified into Steinernematidae and Heterorhabditidae families, have great potential as biological control agents in plant protection (Klein 1990). Their activity against different pest insects is already well studied (Ebssa 2005; Laznik et al. 2008; Forst et al. 1997). Endemic nematode was tested successively against various insect pests at the laboratory and field (Ehlers 1995; Woodring and Kaya 1988 and Legaspi et al. 2000). Virus and nematodes even though perform well in controlling insect but when it comes to product development at large scale for growing demand, both the group have some limitations as they need living host system which is not required in case of bacterial entomopathogens (Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016c, d; Saha et al. 2016a, b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Teotia et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b).

Thus bacterial entomopathogens are versatile and can be produced in large scale in fementers with limited resource which is economical and time saving in terms of mass production. Naturally available soil bacteria from plant rhizosphere can be chosen for a simple ecological compatibility reason to make the product effective in field condition after augmentation. Many studies on soil bacterial insecticides were carried out and reported against a wide range of pests as discussed in the following chapters.

11.7 Role of Soil and Rhizosphere Entomopathogenic Bacteria

Rhizobacteria have been studied as plant growth promoters for agricultural production as well as biocontrol agents against both diseases and pests (Kloepper and Beauchamp 1992). A few bacterial isolates with pesticidal activity against Lepidoptera, Coleoptera and Diptera (Shah and Goettel 1999) are commercially available. Notably the soil-dwelling insect pathogen, *B. thuringiensis*, is suitable for use in biological control, and certain strains have been developed as commercial bioinsecticides (Clara et al. 2004).

Different isolates of *B. thuringiensis* have been proven to be successful against various insects and nematode pests under field conditions. *Pseudomonas gladioli* showed antifeedant activity and growth reduction of *H. armigera* that fed on *P. gladioli*-treated cotton plants (Qingwen et al. 1998). The diet contaminated with the bacteria, *Pseudomonas maltophilia*, *B. subtilis*, *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, showed insecticidal potential against *Helicoverpa zea.* Among the four species, *P. maltophilia* caused severe losses in all stages of *H. zea*, with the larval stage being the most susceptible which led to more than a 60% loss in adult emergence (Bong and Sikorowski 1991). *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* harbouring the *Fit* gene cluster colonize and kill *S. littoralis*, *H. virescens* and *Plutella xylostella* via oral infection (Beat et al. 2013).

Similarly, rhizobacteria isolated from cotton roots exhibiting antagonism towards seedling blight and leaf blight of cotton were tested for their efficiency against *H. armigera*. The bioformulation developed using *B. subtilis* (isolate DGL9) + chitin was found to be detrimental to the developmental stages of *H. armigera* (larva, pupa and adult) by causing larval mortality and pupal and adult malformation with reduced adult emergence (Ayyathurai et al. 2009). Maria et al. (2008) have shown the first evidence that the two root-associated bacteria, *P. fluorescens* strains CHA0 and Pf-5, also exhibit potent insecticidal activity and kill larvae of *Manduca sexta* and *Galleria mellonella* within time frames that were comparable to those of the known insect pathogens, *Photorhabdus* and *Xenorhabdus.* Zehnder et al. (1997) evaluated induced resistance in cucumber by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) *P. putida*, *S. marcescens*, *Flavimonas oryzihabitans* and *B. pumilus* on the spotted cucumber beetle *Diabrotica undecimpunctata* and striped cucumber beetle *Acalymma vittatum.*

Ramamoorthy et al. (2001) reviewed that certain fluorescent pseudomonads are effective rhizosphere colonizers and are endophytic in nature in the plant system. Genetically engineered fluorescent pseudomonads with the insecticidal crystal protein effectively control lepidopteran insect pest. Transgenic *P. cepacia* strain 526 with the crystal protein gene has consistently shown insecticidal activity against tobacco hornworm (Stock et al. 1990). Thus, PGPR treatment of crops can be effective for insect pest management and has a great potential for future use. The increase in hymenopterous parasitoid and spider population in the crop because of bacteria *Pseudomonas* is reported and synergistically was found responsible for the reduced incidence of leaf folder under field conditions (Radjacommare et al. 2002). The increased natural enemy population might have associated with host-bacteria-based pathways (octadecanoid pathway) leading to the production of volatile compounds, which attract the natural enemies. The activation of octadecanoid pathway and increased amount of volatile substance have been reported (Bell and Mullet 1993).

11.8 Molecular Characterization and Identification of Entomopathogenic Bacteria

Comparison and analysis of the 16S rRNA gene has been extensively used as a diagnostic method to determine phylogenetic relationships of bacterial isolates. Moreover, this gene is characterized by having areas of secondary structure which have also proven useful for diagnostic purposes. The size of this gene is approximately 1.6 kb and is composed of regions with different levels of variability thus providing valuable information for differentiation of taxa (Stackebrandt and Goebel 1994). The study of the genetic diversity among bacterial species and strains has also had an impact in assessing relatedness among species and understanding their diversity (Boemare and Tailliez 2009). Bacteria are characterized by having single chromosome within the nucleoid. The size of this chromosome varies among species. For example, the bacterial genomes of *B. thuringiensis* (the widely studied insect pathogen), *B. cereus* and *B. anthracis* are around 5.4 Mb (Carlson and Kolsto 1993 and Ivanova et al. 2003). Other species such as *B. subtilis* and *B. licheniformis* have a smaller chromosome (4.2 Mb) (Rey et al. 2004).

Entomopathogenic nematode symbiotic bacteria *Photorhabdus luminescens* have a genome size of 5.7 Mb (Duchaud et al. 2003). Many bacteria also contain extrachromosomal elements (plasmids), which are smaller double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) molecules that replicate independent of the chromosomal DNA. Genes located in bacterial plasmids usually code for proteins that determine specific phenotypes but do not code for products needed for bacterial survival and growth. Bacterial genes are organized in operons or cassettes that consist of a promoter, a series of genes and a transcription terminator (Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Meena et al. 2014a, 2016e; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016).

11.9 Microbial Mode of Action and Active Principle

The microbial entomopathogenic agents like bacteria and fungi infest the insect primarily, and then after colonization, they secret toxins which curtails the normal metabolism and decease. Entomopathogenic fungi like *Beauveria* sp. produce several metabolites, including bassianin, beauvericin, bassianolide, beauveriolide, bassiacridin, oosporein and tenellin (Vining et al. 1962; Strasser et al. 2000; Quesada–Moraga and Vey 2004). Beauvericin is toxic to *H. zea*, *Culex pipiens*, *Aedes aegypti* and *Calliphora erythrocephala* rupturing the midgut epithelium and dissolving the ribosomes (Zizka and Weiser 1993; Grove 1985; Champlin and Grula 1979). *Metarhizium* sp. produces destruxins and cytochalasins (Roberts 1981); *P. tenuipes* produces tenuipesine (Kikuchi et al. 2004); *Akanthomyces gracilis* produces akanthomycin (Wagenar et al. 2002); *Cordyceps pseudomilitaris* produces coryanhidrides (Isaka et al. 2000); *Tolypocladium* spp. produce efrapeptins (Krasnoff and Gupta 1992); *Aschersonia aleyrodis* produces destruxins and homodestruxins; and *Aschersonia tubulata* produces dustanin (Krasnoff et al. 1996).

Different types of *Cry* proteins isolated from *B. thuringiensis* could directly bind to peritrophic membrane and disintegrate the columnar cells and microvilli and cause imbalance in gut pH and kill the lepidopteran insects (Garczynski and Siegel 2007). Oral injection with *P. entomophila* bacterial cells and monalysin toxin isolated from *P. entomophila* could cause significant mortality in *Drosophila melanogaster* (Takayuki Kuraishi et al. 2011). Novel toxin complexes (Tc) A and (Tc) B from bacterium *Yersinia entomophaga* against *Plutella xylostella* were reported by Landsberg et al. (2011).

11.10 Bacterial Source for Insect Toxins and Biopesticides

The entomopathogenic toxins in the form of proteins and secondary metabolites were reported from many bacterial species. As far as the protein insecticidal toxins are concerned, it is the crystal insecticidal proteins or cry toxins and corresponding Cry genes that were reported from the spore-forming bacterial genus, *B. thuringiensis*. The presence of Cry genes is not unique to *Bt*, but also several other bacterial species including *B. sphaericus*, *P. popilliae*, *P. lentimorbus* and *Clostridium bifermentans* produce Cry proteins (Barloy et al. 1998; Zhang et al. 1997; Yokoyama et al. 2004). *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CH0 and the related strain Pf-5 possess an insecticidal toxin named fluorescence insecticidal toxin (Fit) reported by Maria et al. (2008) on lepidopteran insect pest, *Manduca sexta*. The Fit toxins produced by the above two *P. fluorescens* strains were similar to the MCF (makes caterpillar floppy) toxin produced by the entomopathogenic bacterium *Photorhabdus luminescens* (Daborn et al. 2001). Currently, 145 holotype crystal protein genes have been assigned to 50 sets at the primary rank (*cry*1–50), and 9 *cyt* genes have two primary ranks (*cyt*1–2).

In addition to the ICPs, 21 holotype vegetative insecticidal protein (*vip*) genes with three primary ranks (*vip*1–3) have been classified. *Bacillus thuringiensis*, *B. sphaericus*, *B. cereus*, *Brevibacillus laterosporus*, *Clostridium bifermentans* and *Paenibacillus popilliae* are important entomopathogenic bacteria which was reported for the presence of toxin-producing genes, viz. Cry1A(a-i), Cry1B(a-g), Cry1C(a-b), Cry1D(a-b), Cry1E(a-b), Cry1F(a-b), Cry1G(a-c), Cry1H(a-b), Cry1I(a-f), Cry1J(a-d), Cry1Ka, Cry1La, Cry2A(a-e), Cry9Aa, Cry9B(a-b), Cry9Ca, Cry9E(a-d), Cry15Aa, Cry26Aa, Cry28Aa and Cry32Aa (Garczynski and Siegel 2007).

The action potential of the above-mentioned active principles was proved against different ecological population of *H. armigera* across India. The baseline susceptibility of Indian populations of *H. armigera* to the insecticidal protein Cry1Ac from *B. thuringiensis* was determined through bioassays conducted in 1999 and 2001. Populations of *H. armigera* were collected from cotton fields of nine major cotton-growing states in India, which included Punjab (Bathinda), Haryana (Sirsa), Rajasthan (Sri Ganganagar), Madhya Pradesh (Barwaha and Khandwa), Gujarat (Rajkot, Vadodara and Anand), Maharashtra (Jalgaon, Jalna, Akola and Yavatmal), Andhra Pradesh (Adilabad, Warangal, Khammam and Guntur), Karnataka (Raichur, Davangere and Ranebennuru) and Tamil Nadu (Coimbatore and Dindigul) and were found susceptible to crystal protein toxins (Jalali et al. 2004).

Secondary metabolite produced by bacteria for their insecticidal activity was not much explored, and only few studies were taken up in the recent past. Detailed analysis of liquid cultures of the entomopathogenic bacteria (Brachmann et al. 2006; Lang et al. 2008) showed that these bacteria are in fact very important secondary metabolite producers that can produce several structurally diverse compounds. Therefore entomopathogenic bacteria can be regarded as a novel source of potential biocontrol products which have been studied only recently. Eleftherianos et al. (2007) show that *Photorhabdus* species produced a small-molecule (E)-1,3-dihydroxy-2-(isopropyl)-5-(2-phenylethenyl)benzene (ST) that acted as an inhibitor of phenoloxidase (PO) in the insect host *Manduca sexta.*

The entomopathogenic bacteria *Xenorhabdus* and *Photorhabdus* produce phage-derived bacteriocins (Thlaer et al. 1995), colicin E3-type killer proteins (Singh and Banerjee 2008) and insect toxin complexes (Ffrench-Constant and Waterfield 2006) as well as several other secondary metabolites (Piel 2004). Insecticidal compounds from bacteria described in the literature represent mostly small molecules like benzylideneacetone (Ji et al. 2004), iodinine (Fodor et al. 2004), phenethylamines and indole derivatives (Li et al. 1995; McInerney et al. 1991a), and comparatively less number of complex compounds like the xenorhabdins and xenorxides (Li et al. 1998) and xenocoumacins (XCNs) (McInerney et al. 1991b) was reported.

Despite their simple structure, different biological activities have been described for these compounds, and their biosynthesis genes have not been identified yet except for the XCNs (Helge and Bode 2009). Additionally, it should be mentioned that other entomopathogenic bacteria reported have not been analysed for secondary metabolites and/or genes encoding the corresponding biosynthesis genes but are members of well-known insecticidal genera like *Serratia entomophila* and *Erwinia carotovora* (Grimont et al. 1988; Vallet-Gely et al. 2008). Entomopathogenic activity of *E. carotovora* has been reported only under lab conditions and has to be proven for its insecticidal activity under field conditions.

11.11 Frontiers of Microbial Pesticides in Field Application

The definite evaluation of the efficacy of an entomopathogen attacking a pest is often the determination of the reduction of pest damage and increase in crop yield (Hajek and Goettel 2007). Naturally, the most useful information on the effects of pathogens on non-targets is gained from field studies. By knowing the physiological host range of a pathogen, we can attempt to predict its ecological host range. However, it is fairly typical that hosts can be infected in the laboratories that are never found infected under field conditions (Hajek and Butler 1999).

On contrary, few reports on microbial biocontrol agents which were found successful at laboratory level also performed well at field scale as reported by Radjacommare et al. (2002) which demonstrated that the talc-based formulation of two *P. fluorescens* strains (PF1 and FP7) and its mixture (with and without chitin) were tested against sheath blight and leaf folder in rice. The application of talc formulation through seed, root, soil and foliar spray significantly reduced the sheath blight and leaf folder incidence both under greenhouse and field conditions. Several *Pseudomonas* strains have been found to control many fungal, bacterial, viral and insect pests at laboratory level (Ramamoorthy et al. 2001). The laboratory biocontrol efficacy and PGPR activity of fluorescent pseudomonads were further increased by mixing two or more strains of *Pseudomonas* species (Garica and Sarmiento 2000; Nandakumar et al. 2001; Nakkeeran et al. 2004) or in combination with other bacterial or fungal antagonists (Duffy et al. 1996) or mixed with chitin or other substances (Benhamou et al. 1998). Even though many reports on the entomopathogenic bacteria have been recorded, only limited studies were made on its efficacy at field level which should be given importance in future studies for sustainable organic crop protection (Shanthakumar et al. 2010a; Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b, c; Singh et al. 2015).

11.12 Biosafety of Microbial Pesticides on Beneficial Insects

Beneficial microbes proposed to have biocontrol potential against various pests should pass through various regulations for commercial product development. The major criterion in the regulatory forum is nothing but the biological safety of the microbes against higher animals, and human must be tested safer according to standard protocol. Protocols for testing the effects of pathogens on non-targets have been suggested for a few specific entomopathogen/host systems (Hokkanen and Hajek 2003). Studies of potential effects of entomopathogens on non-target organisms generally begin with laboratory assays for host specificity. Bioassay methods for different groups of pathogens are described in detail by Lacey (1997). Insect pathogens may have indirect effects on non-target organisms, and consequently impacts could also occur at the field level. In addition, such community level influences may occur across time and space. To investigate non-target effects on communities, standard ecological measurements, such as diversity indices, would be appropriate (Magurran 2004).

The microbial pesticides developed should be safer against beneficial insects as they were used worldwide to control pests. As deployment of beneficial insect predators and parasitoids against the insect pests has been found as an effective and feasible method of augmentative biological control in several countries (Gurr and Wratten 2000; Gurr et al. 2000; Shanthakumar et al. 2010b), the entomopathogens should be evaluated for its non-specificity against natural predatory insects like green lacewings (*Chrysoperla* sp.), true bugs (*Geocoris*, *Orius* and *Nabis* sp.), various predatory beetles (*Cheilomenes* sp. and *Coccinella* sp.) and spiders.

Advantage of bacterial insect pathogens is that they are naturally less harmful to Hymenopteran families like Ichneumonidae, Braconidae, Trichogrammatidae and Tachinidae which are common natural enemies of insect pests in all agro-systems (Luttrell et al. 1994). Generally, entomopathogens appear to be harmless against natural enemies. *Bt*s and baculoviruses are safe to natural enemies, while fungi and nematodes may affect some natural enemies. These effects are usually limited to some natural enemies and are minor. Many studies have been published on compatibility of entomopathogens and natural enemies; however, reports on greenhouse and field evaluations are limited (Ravensberg 2011; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c, d; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016).

If the product developed does not pass through these safety parameters, it will have deleterious effect on habitat management which is directly linked to the disturbances in diversity of natural enemies and the quality of the environment in which they occur. As a result of frequent and intense disturbance regimes, many agricultural systems are recognized as particularly difficult environments for natural enemies (Landis and Marino 1999). This is significant for annual monocultural cropping systems where the rates of establishment of imported natural enemies, and their success in controlling the target pest are lower than in more stable cropping systems (Hall et al. 1980).

Beneficial organisms are generally considered to be more susceptible to chemical insecticides than their hosts. Croft (1990) studied interactions between beneficial insects and pesticides intensively in field crops, orchards, vineyards and glasshouses. Most microbial control agents are generally considered to be host specific and pose a lower risk than associated with many chemical pesticides (Goettel and Roberts 1992). Exposure of honey bees to high inoculum densities of *B. bassiana* resulted in very low mortality that was not different from the control suggesting that *B. bassiana* can be applied for pest control in fields where honey bees are used for pollination (Al mazrawi 2007).

Earlier report on non-infectivity of HaNPV to *Bombyx mori* was confirmed by Sanjay et al. (1991), where they found that *B. mori* fed on HaNPV-infected leaves did not affect larval weight, larval duration, cocooning percentage, weight of cocoons and percentage adult emergence of silkworm, thus reported to be non-infective. Neem extract did not affect the parasitization of *Trichogramma pretiosum* and *T. principium* (Klemm and Schmutterer 1993) as same as oils from neem, citronella and lemon grass were not repellent to *Coccinella undecimpunctata* (Matter et al. 1993) and hence can be used as biorationals in combination with bacterial insect pathogens.

11.13 Rationale and Future Prospects

Microbial contrivances shows selective sweep in insect pest population without any negative impact on environment and crop production. Need for laboratory and field evaluation on the active microbes is felt necessary for product development to validate their ecological impact precisely other than target pest control. This review highlights the bright scope for bacterial entomopathogens both in action potential and low-cost production over the entomopathogenic fungus, virus and nematodes. Moreover, the secondary metabolite produced by the entomopathogens should be given importance rather than protein toxins for future product development as the bacterial system is good source for production of life-sustaining concentrations of target-specific metabolites. Composite cultures and use of safer insecticidal biorationals like neem and other plant-based products are highly recommended as organic pest control strategy.

Acknowledgements I thank Dr. Vasantharaj David for helpful comments on an earlier finding. The author is also indebted to Prof. M. S. Swaminathan for the facilities provided to work on biological control.

References

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Al mazrawi MS (2007) Impact of the entomopathogenic fungus, Beauveria bassiana on the honeybees, Apis mellifera (Hymenoptera: Apidae). World J Agri Sci 3(1):7–11

Andersen-Per Pinstrup, Marc J Cohen (2000) Modern biotechnology for food and agriculture: risks and opportunities for the poor, Agr. Biotechnol Poor 159–169

Arti P, Sujoita P (2009) Evaluation of the morphological abnormalities in the 4th instar larva of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hub.) on application of leaf extract of *Lantana camara* (L.) World J Zool 4(4):253–255

Ayyathurai V, Duraisamy L, Ambalavanan S, Ramasamy S (2009) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria of cotton affecting the developmental stages of *Helicoverpa armigera*. J Plant Protect Res 49:3

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Barloy F, Lecadet MM, Delecluse A (1998) Distribution of clostridial cry-like genes among *Bacillus thuringiensis* and *Clostridium* strains. Curr Microbiol 36:232–237

Beat R, Pechy-Tarr M, Ryffel F, Hoegger P, Obrist C, Rindlisbacher A, Keel C, Maurhofer M (2013) Oral insecticidal activity of plant-associated pseudomonads. Environ Microbiol 15:751–763

Behere GT, Tay WT, Russell DA, Kranthi KR, Batterham P (2013) Population genetic structure of the cotton bollworm *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) in India as inferred from EPIC-PCR DNA markers. PLoS One 8:1

Bell E, Mullet JE (1993) Characterization of an *Arabidopsis lipoxygenase* gene responsive to methyl jasmonate and wounding. Plant Physiol 103:1133–1137

Benhamou N, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1998) Induction of resistance against fusarium wilt of tomato by combination of chitosan with an endophytic strain: ultrastructure and cytochemistry of the host response. Planta 204:153–168

Biradar AP, Balikai RA, Teggelli RG (2001) Chemical control of pod borer, *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hübner) on pigeon pea. Karnataka J Agr Sci 14:500–502

Birthal PS, Sharma OP (2004) Integrated pest management in Indian agriculture. Proceedings 11. National centre for agricultural economics and policy research. Library Avenue, New Delhi 110 012

Boemare N, Tailliez P (2009) In: Stock SP et al (eds) Insect pathogens: molecular approaches and techniques. CAB International. Chapter 2, Wallingford, pp 31–45

Bong CFJ, Sikorowski PP (1991) Effects of cytoplasmic polyhedrosis virus and bacterial contamination on growth and development of corn earworm, *Heliothis zea* (Boddie). J Invertebr Pathol 57:406–412

Borlaug NE (2003) Feeding a world of 10 million people, The TVA/IFDC legacy, Third lecture published in Travis. *P. Hignett* memorial lecture series.

Brachmann AO, Forst S, Furgani GM, Fodor A, Bode HB (2006) Xenofuranones A and B: phenylpyruvate dimmers from *Xenorhabdus szentirmaii*. J Nat Prod 69:1830–1832

Carlson CR, Kolsto AB (1993) A complete physical map of a *Bacillus thuringiensis* chromosome. J Bacteriol 175:1053–1060

Champlin FR, Grula EA (1979) Noninvolvement of beauvericin in the entomopathogenicity of *Beauveria bassiana*. Appl Environ Microbiol 37:1122–1125

Clara M, Porcar M, Lopez A, Escudero IRD, Perez-Llarena FJ, Caballero P (2004) Characterization of a *Bacillus thuringiensis* strain with a broad spectrum of activity against lepidopteran insects. Entomol Exp Appl 111:71–77

Croft BA (1990) Arthropod biological control agents and pesticides. Wiley, New York. 723pp

Daborn PJ, Waterfield N, Blight MA, Ffrench-Constant RH (2001) Measuring virulence factor expression by the pathogenic bacterium *Photorhabdus luminescens* in culture and during insect infection. J Bacteriol 183:5834–5839

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

David G (1997) Genetics of *Heliothis* and *Helicoverpa* resistance to chemical insecticides and to *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Pest Sci 51:251–258

Dhaliwal GS, Arora R (2010) Principles of insect pest management. National Agricultural Technology Information Centre, Ludhiana

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Duchaud E, Rusniok C, Frangeul L, Buchrieser C, Givaudan A, Taourit S, Bocs S, Boursaux-Eude C, Chandler M, Charles JF, Dassa E, Derose R, Derzelle S, Freyssinet G, Gaudriault S, Medigue C, Lanois A, Powell K, Siguier P, Vincent R, Wingate V, Zouine M, Glaser P, Boemare N, Danchin A, Kunst F (2003) The genome sequence of the entomopathogenic bacterium *Photorhabdus luminescens*. Nat Biotechnol 21:1307–1313

Duffy BK, Simon A, Weller DM (1996) Combination of *Trichoderma koningii* with fluorescent pseudomonads for control of take-all on wheat. Phytopathology 86:188–194

Ebssa L (2005) Efficacy of entomopathogenic nematodes for the control of the western flower thrips *Frankliniella occidentalis*. Ph. D. Thesis, Hannover University: 141 pp

Ehlers RU (1995) Introduction of non-endemic nematodes for biological control: Scientific and regulatory policy issues. COST & OECD workshop. Bruhnskoppel-Seminar hotel Malente, Germany. 17 p

Eleftherianos I, Boundy S, Susan A J, Aslam S, Marshall JW, Cox RJ, Simpson TJ, Clarke DJ, ffrench-Constant RH, Reynolds S (2007) An antibiotic produced by an insect-pathogenic bacterium suppresses host defenses through phenoloxidase inhibition. Proc Natl Acad Sci 104(7):2419–2424

Evans HF (2000) Viruses. In: Lacey LA, Kaya HK (eds) Field manual of techniques in invertebrate pathology. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 179–208

Fan X, Feg SL, Fu YQ, Wang HM (1999) Field studies on the occurrence and epidemiology of entomopathogenic diseases infecting *Helicoverpa armigera* in Hebei. Chinese J Biol Control 15:27–30

FAO (2008) FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organisation of United Nations, Rome (http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html#SEARCH_DATA)

FAO (2010) FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organisation of United Nations, Rome (http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html#SEARCH_DATA)

Ffrench-Constant R, Waterfield N (2006) An ABC guide to the bacterial toxin complexes 183. ADV NU

Finlay BB, Falkow S (1997) Common themes in microbial pathogenicity revisited. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 61:136–169

Fodor A, Forst S, Haynes L, Hevesi M, Hogan J, Klein MG, Mathe-Fodor A, Stackebrndt, E., Szentirmai A, Sztaricskai F (2004) New perspectives of *Xenorhabdus* antibiotics research. In: Ehlers RU, Enkerli J, Glazer I, Lopez-Ferber M, Tkaczuk C (eds) IOBC/WPRS bulletin: insect pathogens insect parasitic nematodes. IOBC/WPRS; 2008, pp 157–164

Forst S, Dowds B, Boemare NE, Stackebrandt E (1997) *Xenorhabdus* spp. and *Photorhabdus* spp.: bugs that kill bugs. Annu Rev Microbiol 51:47–72

Garczynski SF, Siegel JP (2007). In: Lacey LA, Kaya HK (eds) Field manual of techniques in invertebrate pathology. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 175–197. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4020-5933-9

Garica OA, Sarmiento M (2000) A note on the viability of *Azospirillum brasilense* in turf used as carrier in inoculated grass seeds. Cuba J Agric Sci 34:343–345

Gayatri Priya N, Ojha A, Kajla MK, Raj A, Rajagopal R (2012) Host plant induced variation in gut bacteria of *Helicoverpa armigera*. PLoS One 7(1)

Ge F, Liu XH, Ding YQ, Wang XZ, Zhao YF (2003) Life-table of *Helicoverpa armigera* in Northern China and characters of population development in Southern and Northern China. Chin J Appl Ecol 14(2):241–245

Goettel MS, Roberts DW (1992) Mass production, formulation and field application of entomopathogenic fungi. In: Lomer CJ, Prior C (eds) Biological control of locusts and grasshoppers. CAB International, Wallingford, pp 230–238

Gopalakrishnan C, Narayanan K (1989) Occurrence of two entomofungal pathogen *Metarhizium anisopliae* (Metschnikoff) Sorokin var. minor Tulloch and *Nomuraea rileyi* in *Heliothis armigera*. Curr Sci 57:167–168

Grimont PAD, Jackson TA, Ageron E, Noonan MJ (1988) *Serratia entomophila* sp. nov. associated with amber disease in the New Zealand grass grub *Costelytra zealandica*. Int J Syst Bacteriol 38:1–6

Gunning RV, Moores GD (2002) Chlorfenapyr resistance in *Helicoverpa armigera* in Australia. In: Pests and diseases 2002. Proceedings of the British Crop Protection Council Conference. British Crop Protection Council, United Kingdom. pp 793–798

Guo H, Sun Y, Ren Q, Zhu-Salzman K, Kang L (2012) Elevated CO_2 reduces the resistance and tolerance of tomato plants to *Helicoverpa armigera* by suppressing the JA signaling pathway. PLoS One 7(7)

Gurr G, Wratten SD (2000) Biological control: measures of success. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht

Gurr G, Wratten SD, Barbosa P (2000) Success in conservation biological control of arthropods. In: Gurr GW, Wratten SD (eds) Biological control: measures of success. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, pp 105–132

Hajek AE, Butler L (1999) Predicting the host range of entomopathogenic fungi. In: Follett PA, Duan JJ (eds) Nontarget effects of biological control. Kluwer Acad. Publ, Dordrecht, pp 263–276

Hajek AE, Delalibera I (2010) Fungal pathogens as classical biological control agents against arthropods. BioControl 55:147–158

Hajek and Goettel (2007) Field manual of techniques in invertebrate pathology. In: Lacey LA and Kaya HK (eds), pp 815–833

Hajek AE, McManus ML, Delalibera I (2007) A review of introductions of pathogens and nematodes for classical biological control of insects and mites. Biol Control 41:1–13

Hall RW, Ehler LE, Bisabri-Ershadi B (1980) Rates of success in classical biological control of arthropods. Bull Entomol Soc Am 26:111–114

Helge B, Bode (2009) Entomopathogenic bacteria as a source of secondary metabolites. Curr Opin Chem Biol 13:224–230

Hokkanen HMT, Hajek AE (2003) Environmental impacts of microbial insecticides. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht

INDIASTAT (2012) Indian statistical department data base. (http://www.indiastat.com/agriculture/2/agriculturalarealanduse/152/areaundercropsinindia19501951to20102011/448934/stats.aspx)

Isaka M, Tanticharoen M, Thentaranonth Y (2000) Cordyanhydrides A and B. Two unique anhydrides from the insect pathogenic fungus *Cordyceps pseudomilitaris* BCC 1620. Tetrahedron Lett 41:1657–1660

Ivanova N, Sorokin A, Anderson I, Galleron N, Candelon B, Kapatral V, Bhattacharyya A, Reznik G, Mikhailova N, Lapidus A, Chu MM, Goltsman E, Larsen N, D'Souza M, Walunas T, Grechkin Y, Pusch G, Haselkorn R, Fonstein M, Ehrlich SD, Overbeek R, Kyrpides N (2003) Genome sequence of *Bacillus cereus* and comparative analysis with *Bacillus anthracis*. Nature 423:87–91

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jalali SK, Mohan K, Singh SP, Manjunath TM, Lalitha Y (2004) Baseline- of the old-world bollworm, *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae susceptibility) populations from India to *Bacillus thuringiensis* Cry1Ac insecticidal protein. Crop Prot 23:53–59

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jayaraj J (1993) Biopesticides and integrated pest management for sustainable crop production. In: Roy NK (ed) Agrochemicals in sustainable agriculture. APC Publications, New Delhi

Jayaraj S, Rangarajan AV, Gopalan M, Ramakrishnan C, Manoharan T, Thangaraju D (1990) Biology and bionomics of *Heliothis armigera* Hübner and pest surveillance -a retrospect. In: Jayaraj S, Uthamasamy S, Gopalan M, Rabindra RJ (eds) Heliothis management, Proc. Natl. workshop. Tamil Nadu Agri. Univ., Coimbatore, pp 36–44

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Ji D, Yi Y, Kang GH, Choi YH, Kim P, Baek NI, Kim Y (2004) Identification of an antibacterial compound, benzylideneacetone, from *Xenorhabdus nematophila* against major plant-pathogenic bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Lett 239:241–248

Khaderkhan H, Jayaraj S, Gopalan M (1993) Muscardine fungi for the biological control of agro forestry termite *Odontotermes obesus* (Rambur). Insect Sci Appl 14:529

Kikuchi H, Miyagawa Y, Nakamura K, Sahashi Y, Inatomi S, Oshima Y (2004) A novel carbon skeletal trichothecene, tenuipesine A, isolated from an entomopathogenic fungus, *Paecilomyces tenuipes*. Org Lett 6:4531–4533

Klein MG (1990) Efficacy against soil-inhabiting insect pests. In: Gaugler R, Kaya HK (eds) Entomopathogenic nematode in biological control. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 195–214

Klemm U, Schmutterer H (1993) Effects of neem preparations on *Plutella xylostella* L. and its natural enemies of the genus *Trichogramma*. Z Pflanzenkrankh Pflanzenschutz 100:113–128

Kloepper JW, Beauchamp CJ (1992) A review of issues related to measuring colonization of plant roots by bacteria. Can J Microbiol 38:1219–1232

Kranthi KR, Kranthi NR (2004) Modeling adaptability of cotton boll worm *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) to Bt cotton in India. Curr Sci 87:1096–1107

Kranthi S, Kranthi KR, Bharose AA, Syed SN, Dhawad CS, Wadaskar RM, Behere GT, Patil EK (2006) Cytochrome oxidase I sequence of Helicoverpa species in India – its utility as a molecular tool. Indian J Biotechnol 5:195–199

Krasnoff SB, Gupta S (1992) Efrapeptin production by *Tolypocladium* fungi (Deuteromycotina: Hyphomycetes). Intra– and inter–specific variation. J Chem Ecol 18:1721–1741

Krasnoff SB, Gibson DM, Belofsky GN, Gloer KB, Gloer JB (1996) New destruxins from the entomopathogenic fungus *Aschersonia* sp. J Nat Prod 59:485–489

Krishnamurthy Rao BH, Murthy, KSRK. (eds) (1983) Proceedings of national seminar on crop losses due to insect pests. Indian J Ent. (Special issue), vols I–II. Hyderabad

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with *Enterobacter* and *Rhizobacteria* on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kuraishi T, Binggeli O, Opota O, Buchon N, Lemaitre B (2011) Genetic evidence for a protective role of the peritrophic matrix against intestinal bacterial infection in Drosophila melanogaster. Proc Nat Acad Sci 108:15966–15971

Lacey LA (ed) (1997) Manual of techniques in insect pathology. Academic, London

Landers A (2007). Modern technology to improve spraying efficiency. Online:http://www.aben.cornell.edu/extension/pestapp/publications/mod.tech.html.22/10/2007.

Landis DA, Marino PC (1999) Landscape structure and extra-field processes: impact on management of pests and beneficials. In: Ruberson J (ed) Handbook of Pest management. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 79–104

Landsberg MJ, Sandra A, Rothnagel JR, Jason N, Busby Sean DG, Marshall Robert M, Simpsond Shaun Lottc J, Hankamera B, Hurst MRH (2011) 3D structure of the *Yersinia entomophaga* toxin complex and implications for insecticidal activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108:20544–20549

Lang G, Kalvelage T, Peters A, Wiese J, Imhoff JF (2008) Linear and cyclic peptides from the entomopathogenic bacterium *Xenorhabdus nematophilus*. J Nat Prod 71:1074–1077

Laznik ZTT, Lakatos T, Trdan S (2008) Entomopathogenic nematode *Steinernema feltiae* (Filipjev) (Rhabditida: Steinernematidae) recorded for the first time in Slovenia. Acta Agric Slov 91:37–45

Legaspi JC, Legaspi BC, Saldana RR (2000) Evaluation of *Steinernema riobravis* (Nematoda: Steinernematidae) against the Mexican rice borer (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae). J Entomol Sci 35(2):141–149

Li J, Chen G, Webster JM, Czyzewska E (1995) Antimicrobial metabolites from a bacterial symbiont. J Nat Prod 58:1081–1086

Li J, Hu K, Webster JM (1998) Antibiotics from *Xenorhabdus* spp. and Photorhabdus spp. (Enterobacteriaceae). Chem Comp 34:1331–1339

Lingappa S, Saxena Hem, Devi Vimala PS, Rai R Ahmad and Sanjeev Gupta eds. Indian Society of Pulses 2005. Role of biocontrol agents in management of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner). In: Recent advances in *Helicoverpa armigera* management (Hem Saxena Research and development. IIPR, Kanpur, pp 159–184

Luttrell RG, Fitt GP, Ramalho FS, Sugonyaev ES (1994) Cotton pest management: Part 1. A worldwide perspective. Annu Rev Entomol 39:517–526

Magurran AE (2004) Measuring biological diversity. Blackwell Publ, Malden

Malarvannan S (2004) Studies on biocontrol of *Helicoverpa armigera* using traditional plants. Ph. D Thesis. University of Madras, Chennai

Malik MF, Ali L, Anwar S (2002) Determination of installation heights for codling moths synthetic pheromone traps in apple canopy. Asian J Plant Sci 1:226–227

Maria P-T, Bruck DJ, Maurhofer M, Fischer E, Vogne C, Henkels MD, Donahue MD, Grunder J, Loper JE, Keel C (2008) Molecular analysis of a novel gene cluster encoding an insect toxin in plant- associated strains of Pseudomonas fluorescens. Environ Microbiol 10(9):2368–2386

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Matter MM, Marei SS, Moawad SM, El Gengaihi S (1993) The reaction of *Aphis gossypii* and its predator, *Coccinella undecimpunctata* to some plant extracts. Bull Fac Agric Univ Cairo 44:417–432

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

McInerney BV, Gregson RP, Lacey MJ, Akhurst RJ, Lyons GR, Rhodes SH, Smith DR, Engelhardt LM, White AH (1991a) Biologically active metabolites from Xenorhabdus spp., part 1. Dithiolopyrrolone derivatives with antibiotic activity. J Nat Prod 54:774–784

McInerney TWC, Lacey MJ, Akhurst RJ, Gregson RP (1991b) Biologically active metabolites from *Xenorhabdus* spp., part 2. Benzopyran-1-one derivatives with gastroprotective activity. J Nat Prod 54:785–795

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013a) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1, 2 & 3):6–12

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013b) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015a) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Botany 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015b) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015c) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015d) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016a) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016c) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016d) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016e) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Mehta PK, Vaidya DN, Kashyap NP (2001) Management of tomato fruit borer, *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) using insecticides and biopesticides. Himachal J Agric Res 26:50–53

Mohammad M, Uma S (2008) Sub-lethal effects of SpltNPV infection on developmental of *Spodoptera litura* (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae), bio-control. Sci Technol 4:431–437

Monobrullah M (2003) Optical brighteners – pathogenicity enhances of entomopathogenic viruses. Curr Sci 84:640–645

Monobrullah MD, Nagata M (2000) Optimization of *Spodoptera litura* (Fab.) nucleo polyhedron virus production in homologous host larvae. Insect Sci Appl 20:157–165

Morris ON (1980) Entomopathogenic viruses: strategies for use in forest insect pest management. Can Entomol 112(6):573–584

Moscardi F (1999) Assessment of the application of baculoviruses for control of Lepidoptera. Annu Rev Entomol 44:257–289

Nakkeeran S, Kavitha K, Mathiyazhagan S, Fernando WGD, Chandrasekar G, Renukadevi P (2004) Induced systemic resistance and plant growth promotion by *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* strain PA-23 and *Bacillus subtilis* strain CBE4 against rhizome rot of turmeric (Curcuma longa L.) Can J Plant Pathol 26:417–418

Nandakumar R, Babu S, Viswanathan R, Sheela J, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2001) A new bio-formulation containing plant growth promoting rhizobacterial mixture for the management of sheath blight and enhanced grain yield in rice. BioControl 46:493–510

Naseri B, Fathipour Y, Moharramipour S, Hosseininaveh V (2009) Comparative life history and fecundity of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) on different soybean varieties. Entomol Sci 12(2):147–154

Neuenschwander P (2004) Harnessing nature in Africa. Nature 432:801–802

Nguyen Q, Palfreyman RW, Chan LCL, Reid S, Nielsen LK (2012) Transcriptome sequencing of and microarray development for a *Helicoverpa zea* cell line to investigate in vitro insect cell-Baculovirus interactions. PLoS One 7(5)

Nimbalkar RK, Shinde S, Tawar DS, Muley SP (2009) Response of cotton bollworm *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) to different insecticides in Maharashtra, India, world. J Agric Sci 5(2):250–255

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Patnaik HP, Lenka D (2000) Damage potential of *Helicoverpa armigera* in linseed (*Linum usitatissimum*). Indian J Agric Sci 70:197–198

Pawar CS, Borikar PS (2005) Microbial options for management of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner). pp 193–231

Piel J (2004) Metabolites from symbiotic bacteria. Nat Prod Rep 21:519–538

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Prasad A, Wadhwani Y, Jain M, Vyas L (2007) Pathological alteration in the protein content of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hubner) induced by *Bacillus thuringiensis*, npv and neem treatments. J Herb Med Toxicol 1(1):51–53

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Qingwen Z, Ping L, Gang W, Qingnian C (1998) On the biochemical mechanism of induced resistance of cotton to cotton bollworm by cutting off young seedling at plumular axis. Acta Phytophyl Sin 25:209–212

Quesada–Moraga E, Vey A (2004) Bassiacridin, a protein toxic for locusts secreted by the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria bassiana*. Mycol Res 108:441–452

Rabindra RJ, Amerika Singh, Chandish R Balla, Hema Saxena (2005) Food legumes for nutritional security and sustainable agriculture. In: Kharkwal MC (ed) Proceedings of Fourth International Food Legumes Research Conference (IFLRC- IV)

Radjacommare R, Nandakumar R, Kandan A, Suresh S, Bharathi M, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2002) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* based bioformulation for the management of sheath blight and leaffolder in rice. Crop Prot 21:671–677

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Ramamoorthy V, Viswanathan R, Raguchander T, Prakasam V, Samiyappan R (2001) Induction of systemic resistance by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in crop plants against pests and diseases. Crop Prot 20:1–11

Rao NV, Rao KT, Reddy AS (1991) Weed hosts of gram caterpillar, *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hub.) in Andhra Pradesh. J Insect Sci 4:174–175

Ravensberg WJ (2011) A roadmap to the successful development and commercialization of microbial pest control products for control of arthropods. Progress in biological control, vol 10. Springer, pp 235–293

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reddy AS (1988) *Heliothis armigera* (Hubner) – a serious threat to cotton cultivation in India, pp 113–131. National Workshop on *Heliothis* Management. Tamil Nadu Agriculture University, Coimbatore, India. pp 249–262

Reddy MRS, Reddy GS (1999) An ecofriendly method to combat *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hub) on sweet orange (*Citrus sinensis* L.) Insect Environ 4:143–144

Rejaul Hassan ASM, Karim B (2005) Pest management, productivity and environment: a comparative study of IPM and conventional farmers of Northern districts of Bangladesh. Pak J Soc Sci 3(8):1007–1014

Rey MW, Ramaiya P, Nelson BA, Brody-Karpin SD, Zaretsky EJ, Tang M, de Leon AL, Xiang H, Gusti V, Clausen IG, Olsen PB, Rasmussen MD, Andersen JT, Jorgensen PL, Larsen TS, Sorokin A, Bolotin A, Lapidus A, Galleron N, Ehrlich SD, Berka RM (2004) Complete genome sequence of the industrial bacterium *Bacillus licheniformis* and comparisons with closely related *Bacillus* species. Genome Biol 5:77

Roberts DW (1981) Toxins of entomopathogenic fungi. In: Burges HD (ed) Microbial control of pests and plant disease 1970–1980. Academic, London, pp 441–463

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saminathan VR, Mahadevan NR, Muthukrishnan N (2003) Population ecology of *Helicoverpa armigera* under different rainfed cotton cropping systems in southern districts of Tamil Nadu. Indian J Entomol 65:82–85

Sanjay B, Kulkarni KA, Lingappa S (1991) Safety of *Heliothis armigera* (Hübner) NPV to some non-target beneficial organisms. Indian J Entomol 53:475–478

Shah PA, Goettel MS (1999) Directory of microbial control products. Society for Invertebrate Pathology, Division of Microbial Control. http://www.sipweb.org/directory.htm.

Shanthakumar SP, Malarvannan S, Prabavathy VR, Sudha Nair (2009) Efficacy of green muscardine fungus, *Metarhizium anisopliae* (Metsch.) against red flour beetle, *Tribolium castaneum* (Herbst) (Tenebrionidae: Coleoptera). In: Booklet on the national symposium on non-chemical insect pest management. Elite publishing house. pp 105–11 2

Shanthakumar SP, Manivannan S, Prabavathy VR (2010a) Intraspecific plasticity in egg parasitoid, *Trichogramma chilonis* Ishii (Hymenoptera: Trichogrammatidae). Pest Manag Hortic Ecosyst 16(1):5–16

Shanthakumar SP, Murali PD, Malarvannan S, Prabavathy VR, Naira S (2010b) Laboratory investigation of the potential of entomopathogenic fungi, *Nomuraea rileyi* against tobacco caterpillar, *Spodoptera litura* Fabricius and its safety to *Trichogramma* sp. J Biopest 3:132–137

Sharma RP, Yadav RP (2001) Susceptibility status of *Helicoverpa armigera* Hüb. to some synthetic insecticides and neem seed kernel extract as influenced by host plant. Pestic Res J 13:152–159

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh SP (1994) Fifteen years of AICRP on biological control. Project directorate of biological control. Bangalore, New Delhi. 320 pp

Singh R (1999) A serious outbreak of *Helicoverpa armigera* (Hübner) on strawberries in the foothills of Shivaliks. Insect Environ 5:41

Singh OP (2005) Consumption pattern of insecticide in *Helicoverpa armigera* management in India. In: Recent advances in *Helicoverpa armigera* Management. Indian Society of Pulses Research and Development, Kanpur, pp 17–24

Singh J, Banerjee N (2008) Transcriptional analysis and functional characterization of a gene pair encoding iron-regulated xenocin and immunity proteins of *Xenorhabdus nematophila*. J Bacteriol 190:3877–3885

Singh SP, Ballal CR, Poorani J (2002) Old world boll worm *Helicoverpa armigera*, associated *Heliothinane* and their natural enemies. Project Directorate of Biological Control, Bangalore, India, Technical Bulletin No. 31+135pp

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer Singapore, 113–134; 10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4.

Stackebrandt E, Goebel BM (1994) Taxonomic note: a place for DNA-DNA reassociation and 16S rRNA sequence analysis in the present species definition in bacteriology. Int J Syst Bacteriol 44:846–849

Stock CA, Mcloughlin TJ, Klein JA, Adang M (1990) Expression of a *Bacillus thuringiensis* crystal protein gene in *Pseudomonas cepacia* 526. Can J Microbiol 36:879–884

Strasser H, Vey A, Butt TM (2000) Are there any risks in using entomopathogenic fungi for pest control, with particular reference to the bioactive metabolites of *Metarhizium*, *Tolypocladium* and *Beauveria* species. Biocontrol Sci Tech 10:717–735

Subramaniam Gopalakrishnan GV, Rao R, Pagidi Humayun V, Rao R, Alekhya G, Jacob S, Deepthi K, Meesala Sree Vidya V, Srinivas LM, Rupela O (2011) Efficacy of botanical extracts and entomopathogens on control of *Helicoverpa armigera* and *Spodoptera litura*. Afr J Biotechnol 10(73):16667–16673

Subramanian S, Mohankumar S (2006) Genetic variability of the bollworm, *Helicoverpa armigera,* occurring on different host plants. spp. J Insect Sci 6:26

Swaminathan MS (2010) From green to evergreen revolution. Indian Agriculture: performance and emerging challenges. Chapter 1, pp 28., Academic Foundation, New Delhi, pp 7

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Thlaer JO, Baghdiguian S, Boemare N (1995) Purification and characterization of Xenorhabdicin, a phage tail-like bacteriocin, from the lysogenic strain F1 of *Xenorhabdus nematophilus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:2049–2052

Uma Devi K, Padmavathi J, Uma Maheswara Rao C, Khan AA, Mohan M (2008) A study of host specificity in the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria bassiana* (Hypocreales, Clavicipitaceae). J Biocontrol Sci Tech 18(10):975–989

Vallet-Gely I, Lemaitre B, Boccard F (2008) Bacterial strategies to overcome insect defences. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:302–313

Vasantharaj DB, Ramamurthy (2008) Biotechnological approaches in IPM and their impact on environment. J Biopest 1:01–05

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Vining LC, Kellerher WJ, Schwarting AE (1962) Oosporein production by a strain of *Beauveria bassiana* originally identified as *Amanita muscaria*. Can J Microbiol 8:931–933

Wagenar MM, Gibson DM, Clardy J (2002) Akanthomycin, a new antibiotic pyridone from the entomopathogenic fungus *Akanthomyces gracilis*. Org Lett 4:671–673

Woodring JL, Kaya HK (1988) Steinernematid and Heterorhabditid nematodes. A hand-book of techniques, Southern Cooperative Series Bulletin, vol 331. Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station, Fayetteville. 30 p

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Yokoyama T, Tanaka M, Hasegawa M (2004) Novel cry gene from *Paenibacillus lentimorbus* strain Semadara inhibits ingestion and promotes insecticidal activity in *Anomala cuprea* larvae. J Invertebr Pathol 85:25–32

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zehnder GW, Kloepper J, Yao C, Wei G (1997) Systemic resistance against beetles (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae) by plant growth – promoting rhizobacteria. J Econ Entomol 90:91–39

Zhang J, Hodgman TC, Krieger L, Schnetter W, Schairer HU (1997) Cloning and analysis of the first cry gene from *B. popilliae*. J Bacteriol 179:4336–4341

Zhou WW, Liang QM, Xu Y, Gurr GM, Bao YY, Geoff M, Bao GY-Y, Zhou X-P, Zhang C-X, Cheng J, Zhu Z-R (2013) Genomic insights into the glutathione S-transferase gene family of two rice planthoppers, *Nilaparvata lugens* (Stal) and *Sogatella furcifera* (Horvath) (Hemiptera: Delphacidae). PLoS One 8:2

Zizka J, Weiser J (1993) Effect of beauvericin, a toxic metabolite of *Beauveria bassiana*, on the ultrastructure of *Culex pipiens* autogenicus larvae. Cytobios 75:13–19

Bio-stimulants: An Approach Towards the Sustainable Vegetable Production

12

Kumari Shubha, Anirban Mukherjee, Meenu Kumari,
Kalpana Tiwari, and Vijay Singh Meena

Abstract

In the context of changing climatic scenario, depletion of natural resources and increasing hunger and malnutrition, it is necessary to ensure sustainable agricultural production and resource utilization. Bio-stimulants are a viable alternative in this condition. Bio-stimulant consists of various substances and microorganisms which have found to be effective in enhancing plant growth enhance nutrition efficiency, abiotic stress tolerance and crop quality traits. Vegetables are a rich and relatively cheaper source of vitamins. Consumption of vegetable provides palatability and taste, increases appetite, supplies fibre for digestion and helps in preventing malnutrition. To enhance the sustainability of vegetable production, bio-stimulants can be effectively used. In this chapter, status of vegetable production worldwide and in India, categories of plant bio-stimulants and its importance in vegetable production enhancement and factors contributing towards the expansion of the bio-stimulants market in the world have been discussed. The impact of PGPR carrying plentiful multifunctional plant growth-promoting activities on vegetable crops is discussed. Furthermore, this chapter

---

K. Shubha (✉)
ICAR-National Bureau of Plant Genetic Resources, New Delhi, Delhi 110012, India
e-mail: shubha.veg@gmail.com

A. Mukherjee
ICAR-Vivekanad Parvatiya Krishi Anusandhan Sansthan, Almora 263601, Uttarakhand, India

ICAR-Indian agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi 110012, India

M. Kumari
ICAR-IIHR, Central Horticultural Experiment Station, Bhubaneswar, Orissa 751001, India

K. Tiwari
ICAR-Indian Institute of Pulse Research, Kanpur, Uttar Pradesh 208024, India

V.S. Meena
ICAR-Vivekanad Parvatiya Krishi Anusandhan Sansthan, Almora 263601, Uttarakhand, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_12

has summarized recent advancement in bio-stimulant commercial products and vegetable disease interaction and has drawn lines of future research that can aid to improve the effectiveness of the use of bio-stimulants in sustainable quality vegetable production.

Keywords

Microorganism • Horticultural crops • Biofertilizers • Nutrients • Food security

12.1 Introduction

The decline of natural resources and environmental misbalance inflicted by current agricultural practices has posed a severe challenge to the sustainability of food and nutritional drift. Global population has been constantly rising (1.13% per annum), resulting in the steady demand for food. The adverse impact of ecological threats as a result of the nonjudicial use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides and the sustainable management of soil fertility have become a major concern nowadays (Wezel et al. 2014). Undesirable changes in soil biological and chemical properties have not only questioned the sustainable food production but alarming malnutrition too. Apart from this, the changing climatic scenario has added huge unforeseen costs in cultivation practices. Today growing food is much costlier economically and environmentally than the last decades. To combat with such situations, cost-effective and environmentally friendly agricultural practices are essential. In such context, bio-stimulants are a viable alternative (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b).

Bio-stimulant is an organic material neither a plant nutrient nor a pesticide but has a positive impact on plant health when applied in small quantities. The level of response from bio-stimulants cannot be attributed to the application of traditional plant nutrients (Gallant 2004). Bio-stimulant consists of various substances and microorganisms (microbial inoculants, fulvic acid humic acid, seaweed extracts, trace minerals, protein hydrolysates, amino acids), which have found to be effective in enhancing plant growth (du Jardin 2012; Calvo et al. 2014).

12.2 Importance of Vegetable in Food Basket

Vegetables are a rich and relatively cheaper source of vitamins. The consumption of vegetable provides palatability and taste, increases appetite, supplies fibre for digestion and helps in preventing constipation. It plays a key role in neutralizing the acids produced during digestion of pretentious and fatty foods and also provides valuable roughages which help in the movement of food in the intestine.

Some of the vegetables are good sources of carbohydrates (leguminous vegetables, potato, sweet potato, garlic, onion and fenugreek), proteins (peas, leafy vegetables, beans and garlic), vitamin A (carrot, drumstick, tomato, leafy vegetables), vitamin

B (garlic, peas and tomato), vitamin C (drumstick leaves, green chillies, leafy vegetables, cole crops and leaves of radish) and minerals (leafy vegetables, drumstick pods). As per nutritionist, the daily requirement of vegetables is 75–125 g of green leafy vegetables, 85 g of other vegetables and 85 g of roots and tubers with other food.

All these vegetables are important dietary sources of micronutrients. The World Health Organization (WHO) approximates that less fruit and vegetable intake contributes to ~16 million disability-adjusted life years (DALYs). The DALYs is a measure of overall disease burden expressed as the potential life lost through premature mortality and the years of productive life lost through ill-health and disability. The approximately 1.7 million losses of life worldwide are attributable to low fruit and vegetable consumption (FAO STAT 2014). In this regard, WHO recommended the dietary allowance of 400 g of fruit and vegetables per day – excluding starchy root crops for the prevention of chronic diseases like diabetes and obesity, heart disease and cancer and for the prevention and relief from several micronutrient deficiencies, especially in developing countries (WHO 2003). There is a huge gap in the recommended dietary allowances and actual intakes in fruits and vegetables worldwide due to lack of availability and accessibility for the poor masses. A low production trend has been observed worldwide.

12.3 Status of Vegetable Production

The annual growth rate of vegetable in the world has been declined from 6.7% in the decade 1990–2000 to 3.4% in 2000–2011. The trend is applicable to nearly about all countries in Asia and Pacific region except Iran (Table 12.1). Due to the increased resource use efficiency, Iran has maintained increasing return.

India is the second largest producer of vegetables in the world (next to China) and produces ~15% of the world's vegetable biomass. It produces over ~90 Mt vegetables in ~6.2 M ha which are ~3% of the total area under cultivation in the country. In India, more than 40 types of vegetables belonging to different groups are commercially cultivated. These include solanaceous, cucurbitaceous, *Allium* groups,

Table 12.1 Vegetable producers and their productivity in major countries in Asia and Pacific region

	Area		Production		
Countries	('000 ha) 2011	Growth percent (2000–2011)	('000 tonnes) 2011	Growth percent (1990–2000)	Growth percent (2000–2011)
China	24,213	2.9	562,596	10.7	4.2
India	7571	3.0	105,795	4.0	3.5
Asia	40,228	2.6	802,500	8.4	4.0
Iran	885	4.3	23,764	1.2	6.7
Africa[a]	5388	2.1	36,846	4.7	3.4
World	56,734	2.1	1,090,425	6.7	3.4

[a] Regional Office for Africa; (Source: FAO STAT 2014)

leguminous, cruciferous, root crops and leafy vegetables. Among these the five crops, viz. potato (*Solanum tuberosum*), tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*), onion (*Allium cepa*), cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var. *capitata*) and cauliflower (*Brassica oleracea* var. *botrytis*), account for ~60% of the total vegetable production in the country. Vegetables including root and tuber crops occupy an important place in the diversification of agriculture and have played a pivotal role in food and nutritional security of the ever-growing population of our country (Maity et al. 2013). Still, the sector is surrounded by some issues that hinder the sustainable development of the vegetable sector of India. The major issues are described below.

12.3.1 Use of Quality Inputs

The vegetable sector suffers from a lack of availability of good quality seeds, planting material (Shubha and Shridhar 2016; Shubha et al. 2016), fertilizer and plant protectants. Availability of critical inputs is very much essential for achieving a good harvest. Bio-stimulants can complement the fertilizers and plant protection material.

12.3.2 Ecological Issues

Indiscriminate use of fertilizers and agrochemicals in vegetable crops has challenged the environment and ecological balance. To restore the ecological balance, bio-stimulants can help in promoting conservation agriculture.

12.3.3 Quality Control

Although India produces ~15% of vegetables but hardly 1% of the produce is exported. The main constraint is the quality of vegetables. The quality requirements for export differ from those for domestic needs. Nevertheless, uniformity in size and colour is a universally accepted attribute; there are quite a lot of other specific quality requirements for the world market. The export consignments are rejected at the destinations for not meeting the recommended international standards due to pesticide residues and contamination with fungicides and other agrochemicals. Different markets require different qualities. For example, in onion Japan and European markets demand yellow or brown varieties, while Southeast Asian and West Asian countries require light to dark red varieties. The season of demands also differs in several countries as per climate and consumers' preferences.

12.3.4 Post-harvest Management

Vegetables are highly perishable in nature, ~25–40% of the produce get wasted due to lack of sufficient post-harvest handling measures, which cuts down the export quantities and increases competitiveness.

This issue can effectively be resolved by using the bio-stimulants as it can supplement the inputs like fertilizer and agricultural chemicals and is safe to the environment. It enhances the quality and quantity of produce which helps to fetch better market.

12.4 Bio-stimulant and Its Importance in Vegetable Production Enhancement

Bio-stimulants are mixtures of one or more things such as microorganisms, trace elements, enzymes, plant hormones and seaweed extracts rather than chemical fertilizers, which meant to correct severe nutrient deficiency. It has shown to influence several metabolic processes such as photosynthesis, respiration, ion uptake and nucleic acid synthesis. Bio-stimulants enhance nutrient availability, increase antioxidants, enhance metabolism water-holding capacity and increase chlorophyll production. Besides many advantages, the use of bio-stimulants in agricultural practices is proposed as a safe tool to enhance the nutritional properties of food crops (Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a; Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

Agricultural bio-stimulants comprise diverse formulations of substances, compounds and microorganisms that are applied to plants or soils to improve crop vigour, quality, yield and tolerance to abiotic stresses. It promotes plant growth and development throughout the crop life cycle from germination to maturity in a number of established ways. Better germination and root development, greater vigour and stress resistance, more efficient energy and nutrient uptake and transport are possible through the use of bio-stimulants (Fig. 12.1). By improving the efficiency of the plant’s metabolism to induce yield increases and enhance crop quality, it helps in increasing plant tolerance to abiotic stresses and recovering from stresses; facilitates nutrient assimilation, translocation and use; enhances quality attributes of produce, viz. sugar content, colour and fruit seeding; and enhances soil fertility, mainly by fostering the growth of complementary soil microorganisms (Meena et al. 2015a, f, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016).

The bio-stimulants are established as ecofriendly compounds having beneficial effects on plants (Schiavon et al. 2008). In particular, they decrease the use of chemical fertilizers by escalating the amount of macro- and micronutrients taken up by plants, positively influencing root morphology and plant growth (Nardi et al. 2009; Ertani et al. 2013). They exhibit hormone-like activity and influence plant metabolism through interacting with the biochemical processes. The manipulation of physiological mechanisms, such as nitrogen assimilation and glycolysis are induced to enhance plant quality parameters (Ertani et al. 2009). The mechanisms behind the biochemical and physiological effects of bio-stimulants on vegetable are often unidentified. It is because of the heterogeneity of the raw materials constituents used for vegetable production (Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b, 2016c; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Saha et al. 2016a; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

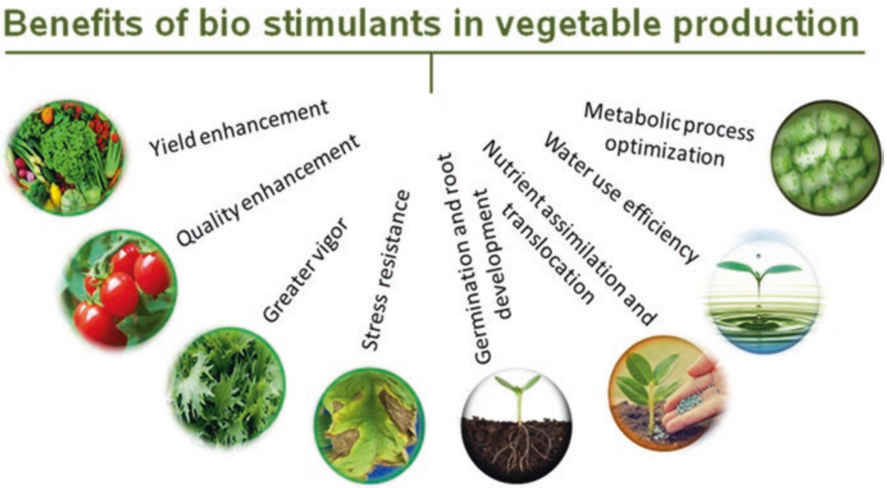


Fig. 12.1 Benefits of bio-stimulant in vegetable production

These effects are influenced by many components that may act synergistically in different ways. Current studies suggest that the active molecules in bio-stimulants can promote assimilation of nitrogen through stimulation of the activity and transcription of nitrogen assimilation and Krebs' cycle enzymes (Schiavon et al. 2008). The induction of the metabolic pathway linked with the synthesis of phenylpropanoids in plants treated with bio-stimulants may explain the reason behind the plants to overcome stress situations (Ertani et al. 2013).

Pepper is an important agricultural crop known for the nutritional value. It is an excellent source of a wide range of phytochemicals with renowned antioxidant properties. The major antioxidant compounds include capsaicinoids, carotenoids and phenolic compounds, particularly quercetin, flavonoids and luteolin (Howard et al. 2000). In recent studies, the application of certain bio-stimulant to pepper plants was found to exert affirmative effects on plant growth and yield devoid of fruit quality degradation (Azcona et al. 2011; Meena et al. 2014a, 2016d; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015bVerma et al. 2014; Meena et al. 2014a).

Bio-stimulants improve nutrient availability at root rhizosphere, enhance water-holding capacity, increase antioxidant activities and proliferate metabolism and chlorophyll production (EBIC 2013). It distinguish themselves from traditional crop inputs in three ways: (1) operate through different mechanisms than fertilizers, no matter the presence of nutrients in the products, (2) act only on the plant's vigour and do not have any direct actions against pests or disease and (3) play a complementary role in cropping nutrition and crop protection (EBIC 2013).

Bio-stimulants have a significant impact on crop yield, thereby helping nations cater to the surging demand for food. Keeping this in mind, the global population explosion is one of the foremost factors driving the bio-stimulants market. The

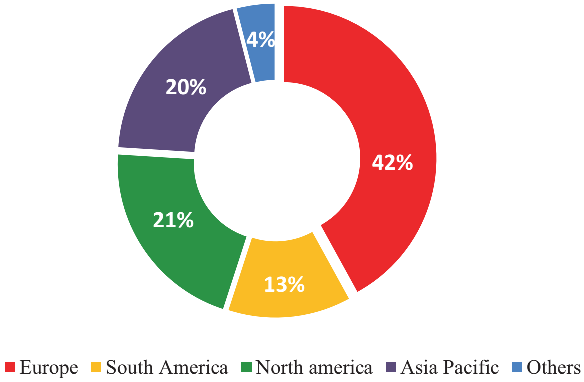


Fig. 12.2 Global bio-stimulant market share

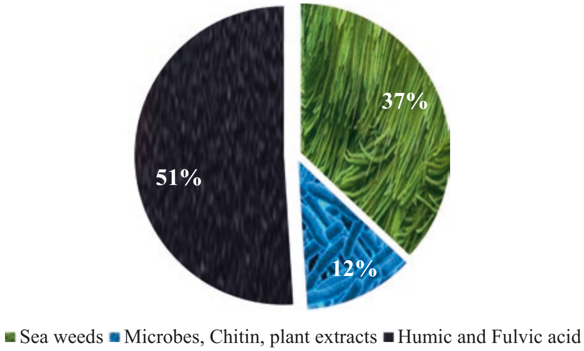


Fig. 12.3 Bio-stimulants active ingredient sources

bio-stimulants can increase crop yield by 5–10% while increasing the fertilizer use efficiency by at least 5–25% and reducing the cost of pesticides ~10–15% (EBIC 2013). The global market of bio-stimulant was mainly concentrated in Europe (Fig. 12.2), although is projected to be spread across the world and will reach from $1.69 billion in 2016 to $2.24 billion by 2018 (Calvo et al. 2014) and $3.08 billion by 2022 at 10.50% CAGR (Anonymous 2016).

12.5 Categories of Plant Bio-stimulants

The bio-stimulant includes a diverse group of products, technologies that have different modes of action and are derived from naturally occurring microorganisms, plant extracts or other organic matter. Worldwide the bio-stimulants' active ingredient sources are majorly classified in three as humic acid and fulvic acid (~51%), seaweed extracts (~37%) and microbes, and chitin and plant extract (~12%) (Figs. 12.3). The details are presented below.

12.5.1 Humus and Humic Acids

Humic substances are natural elements of the soil organic matter, consequential to the decompositions of the animal, plant and microbial residues as a result of the metabolic activity of soil microbes by means of these substrates. The best sources of humic acids are found in layers of leonardite. It is an organic matter alike the soft brown coal but differs by its degree of oxidation. Both the humic acid and fulvic acid have been shown to possess an affirmative impact on plant growth through providing an effective growing environment for plants by increasing surface water infiltration, penetration and soil water-holding capacity. They also enhance the availability of phosphorus potassium and some essential micronutrients (Gallant 2004). Humic acids play an important role in physiological and morphological effects on plants (Eyheraguibel et al. 2008) The humic acids retain nutrient ions and thus prevent them from leaching. They also act as a buffer for plants from too high concentrations of fertilizer salts. Other than these the humic acids have been shown to boost germination rates and promote greater fibrous root growth (EBIC 2013).

The bio-stimulants act in synergy with plant nutrients. The application of humic acid and nitrogen in combination has promoted better root growth than with only nitrogen. They also enhance chlorophyll content of plant leaves and improve stand uniformity by influencing metabolism (Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b, 2015e; Teotia et al. 2016).

12.5.2 Fulvic Acids

The fulvic acids are a kind of humic substances recognized to be powerful organic electrolytes which help to dissolve soil minerals and metals (Huang and Deller 1970). Fulvic acids transform minerals to readily available form for easy absorption by plants (Jackson 1993). They act more in the plant than in the soil and enhance vitamins, coenzyme, auxin, nutrient and metabolism, which help significantly to plant health. Furthermore, the fulvic acids help plants to resist wilting indirectly by raising the amount of carbohydrates which results in soluble sugars accumulation in the cell. To deal with drought stress, they increase the osmotic pressure on the cell walls. Finally, fulvic acids help to enhance the nutrient uptake by increasing the permeability of the cell membrane.

12.5.3 Cytokinins

Cytokinins promote cell division in plants. They have been reported to promote cell expansion, enlarge leaf surface area that results in more chlorophyll production and amplify photosynthesis. A low concentration of cytokinins has been used as a seed treatment to promote lateral root development in young seedlings (Laplaze et al. 2007; Werner et al. 2010). They also have the ability to promote nutrient translocation within plants which is responsible for increased plant metabolism (Chang et al. 2013).

12.5.4 Protein Hydrolysates and Other N-Containing Compounds

Protein hydrolases are actually amino acids and peptide mixtures which are obtained by enzymatic and chemical protein hydrolysis produced from agro-industry as by-products, from both animal (e.g. epithelial tissues, collagen) and plant sources (crop residues) (Calvo et al. 2014; Halpern et al. 2015). In biostimulants some other nitrogenous molecules like polyamines, betaines and 'nonprotein amino acids' are there (Vranova et al. 2011). Protein hydrolysates are established for having a role in increasing microbial biomass and activity, soil respiration and thus overall soil fertility. Significant improvements in yield and quality traits have been reported in agricultural and horticultural crops (Calvo et al. 2014). A number of commercial products prepared from protein hydrolysates of animal and plant origins are available in the European market (Table 12.2).

Table 12.2 Examples of commercialized bio-stimulants and their use in vegetable disease management

Products	Product origin	Manufacturer	Crop	Disease targets
Vacciplant®	Laminarian extract from brown algae, *Laminaria digitata*	Laboratoire Goemar, France	Tomato	Bacterial spot, bacterial speck, grey mould, powdery mildew, *Phytophthora* blight, early blight, Anthracnose
			Egg plant	Powdery mildew, *Phytophthora* blight
			Cucurbits	Powdery mildew, *Phytophthora* blight
			Zucchini	
			Cucumber	
			Watermelon	
			Melon	
			Leafy vegetable	Downy mildew
			Lettuce	Grey mould
			Spinach	
			Cabbage	Downy mildew
				Grey mould
Elexa® 4PDB	Chitosan-based natural product	Plant Defence Boosters Inc., USA	Cucumber, melon, pumpkin, squash	Downy mildew
				Powdery mildew
			Peas	Powdery mildew
Milsana®	Alcoholic extract from dried plant part of a weed giant knotweed (*Reynoutria sachalinensis*)	KHH Bioscience, USA; BIOFA AG, Germany	Greenhouse as well as open field cucumber	Powdery mildew
			Tomato and pepper	Powdery mildew
ChitoPlant ®	Chitosan-based natural product	ChiPro GmbH, Germany	Tomato	Powdery mildew Scab
			Potato	
			Cucurbits	Downy mildew

12.5.5 Beneficial Bacteria

The bio-stimulants, in agriculture point of view, can be considered of two types within the taxonomic, functional and ecological diversity: first mutualistic endosymbionts like *Rhizobium* and second mutualistic, rhizospheric-like 'plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria' (PGPR). *Rhizobium* and related taxa are commercialized as biofertilizers. The PGPRs are multifunctional and influence all aspects of plant life: morphogenesis and development, nutrition and growth, interactions with other organisms in the agroecosystems, response to biotic and abiotic stress, etc. (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Gaiero et al. 2013; Vacheron et al. 2013; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015c). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) are now increasingly applied in vegetable crops (Table 12.3).

PGPR inoculants are nowadays regarded as some type of plant 'probiotics', i.e. efficient contributors to plant nutrition and immunity (Berendsen et al. 2012). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) is such group of microorganisms that act as a bio-stimulant in a wide range of soil and plant interactions including improvement

Table 12.3 Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) application in vegetable crops

PGPR spp./strain	Crop	Effect on plant growth	References
Rhizobium und Nicola; Rhizobium spp. Mesorhizobium, R.leguminosarum, Bradyrhizobium, Sinorhizobium meliloti	Broccoli, carrot, lettuce	Increased yield, enhanced macro and micronutrient uptake,	Yildrim et al. (2011), Bhagat et al. (2014), and Ghosh et al. (2015),
Azotobacter chroococcum, Azotobacter spp. A. vinelandii Azospirillum lipoferum, A. brasilense,	Cucumber, lettuce	Increased germination, increased length and weight of roots, improved vigour index of germinating seeds	Fasciglione et al. (2012) and Mangmang et al. (2015),
Pseudomonas P. aeruginosa, fluorescens, P. putida, Pseudomonas sp.	Broccoli, cucumber, lettuce,	Enhanced nutrient uptake, increased plant growth, increased dry matter and mineral content of fruits, increased yield in terms of number of fruits and weight	Kohler et al. (2009), Dursun et al. (2010), and Tanwar et al. (2014)
Achromobacter xylosoxidans, Stenotrophomonas maltophilia, Achromobacter sp., A. xylosoxidans	Cucumber, potato	Increased plant height, dry weight, fruit yield, tuber dry matter	Egamberdieva et al. (2011) and Dawwam et al. (2013)
Bacillus subtilis, B. Megaterium, B. cereus, B. amyloliquefaciens, Bacillus sp.,	Cucumber, pepper	Induced systemic tolerance to drought stress, increased root vigour, increased fresh root and shoot weight and their length	Wang et al. (2012), Kokalis-Burelle et al. (2002), and Lim and Kim (2013)

in the availability of nutrients, production of volatile organic compounds, hormone release or hormonal changes within plants, enhancement of tolerance to abiotic stresses and much more. Beside these low cost, easy access and simple mode of application have attracted the agrarian stakeholders (Sindhu et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015d, 2016e; Singh et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016).

12.6 Strategies for Bio-stimulants Adoption

The farmers of developing countries will not adopt bio-stimulant and biocontrol management practices until and unless the successes are guaranteed. The small-scale farmers in developing countries do not always welcome the suggestion of using alternative methods with much enthusiasm (Bashan et al. 2014). Among the bio-based products, majority of the farmers are using bio-stimulants and biopesticides. In North America, it represents ~40% of the biocontrol market as compared with ~25% in Europe, ~20% in Asia, ~ 10% in South America and ~5% in the rest of the world (Cox and Wong 2013).

The main reason for farmer's laggardness about these alternative methods of agro-ecological management is the variable efficacy in the field as compared with conventional chemical inputs (Arora et al. 2011; Walters et al. 2013). These products have shown variable field performances as compared with the laboratory or in greenhouse condition. Such inconsistency in practical conditions made this technology not fully reliable does the farming community (Gozzo and Faoro 2013).

Naturally, the bio-stimulants depend on the concentration and interaction with the environmental condition. As, for example, the PGPR, bacteria concentrations in commercialized products may fall below the desired threshold level (10^8–10^{11} cells/mL). The concentration varies under a long term or in any inadequate storage conditions. Similarly, the performance of bio-stimulants greatly depends on the field environmental condition (temperature, relative humidity, the intensity of sunlight, concentration of UV radiation, disease pressure), crop systems (nutritional requirements, plant genotype, physiology) and the formulation (Walter et al. 2014).

The farmers' adoption decision depends mainly on the label of change that they want from the current agricultural practices and the potential of a new technology. The level of change can be manipulated by creating a need for development through effective utilization of extension strategies. The benefits of the technology have to be clearly demonstrated to educational programmes, awareness campaigns obviously backed by pragmatic field results. Development of detailed package of practices about the agronomic parameters crop management techniques, the time and frequency of dosage application procedures and other important practices (Singh et al. 2015; Meena et al. 2013c; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

In developing countries like India, certain other things have to be considered for successful transfer of technology. The first is the availability of the product in the right time at the right place. It has been reported that the basic input like the seed, fertilizer is still partially available to the farmers. In such a condition the products like bio-stimulants have to be readily available in local markets during the pick application period. Agricultural Extension strategies required here to demonstrate the beneficial elements of the technology and convince the farmers about the better return on investment by means of better resource use efficiency and good environmental benefits.

12.6.1 Factors Contributing Towards the Expansion of the Bio-stimulants Market in the World

- Rising global population and food demand
- The need for sustainable increase in the crop yield
- To minimize the abiotic stress in plants
- The growing concerns about sustainable agriculture
- Eco-friendly properties of bio-stimulants over pesticides and fertilizers
- The increase in government grants and funding to encourage the use of bio-stimulant products
- Proven performance and acceptance from NGOs, governmental bodies and academia
- The rising awareness regarding the use and benefits of bio-stimulants
- The growing popularity of natural and organic ingredient-based agriculture
- Effort on the part of the market players to develop cost-effective products
- Demand from farmers and consumers for environmentally safe and organic products that provide alternatives to synthetic inputs

There are two indispensable factors for effective adoption of any particular technology knowledge about technology and compatibility of the technology with local condition. This is true for bio-stimulants too. The knowledge factor can be taken care of through research in applications of bio-stimulants in vegetable crops, types of vegetable crops may be covered with the level of concentration, etc. Agronomic field research in vegetable crop particular to Indian condition is very less which needs to be promoted.

The compatibility of a technology depends on several other factors such as the cost of the product, ease of application and efficiency. For that purpose, detailed studies are required for (1) long-term survival and good shelf-life of bio-stimulant, specificity in applications in a wide range of agroecological conditions in the vegetable crop, (2) cost reduction mechanisms, (3) suitable conditions dosage, concentration and (4) farm machinery applications of bio-stimulants.

Presently, India does not have much production units of bio-stimulants. It majorly depends on imports. In 2016, India has imported 492 tonnes of bio-stimulants worth $ 15.78 Million. The United States is the largest supplier of bio-stimulants accounting for imports worth $ 9.75 Million followed by Mexico and Israel which exported bio-stimulants worth $ 2.93 Million and $ 1.37 Million, respectively (Zauba.com 2016). Although very less amount is used for plant growth promotion. Efforts are required to production, promotion and adoption of bio-stimulants. In such a condition, public-private partnership and convergence approach are required (Mukherjee et al. 2012a; Mukherjee and Maity 2015).

A strong extension strategy is required which shall be focused on the promotion of bio-stimulants and its use in vegetable production. Development of strong hub and spoke model like some private extension system (Mukherjee et al. 2011) is required for effective delivery of bio-stimulants products at farmers' doorsteps. Targeting large farmers can be another option. Large farmers and the progressive have greater risk-absorbing capacity in case of inadvertent loss. Study depicts that marketing orientation, education, economic motivation, social participation, family size and extension agency contact are such factors that can influence farmers progressiveness (Mukherjee et al. 2012b). Large-scale and progressive farmers can be motivated towards the adoption of bio-stimulants which further be upscaled as per the theories of diffusion. Farmers are facing severe losses due to unseasonal rains, the risk of droughts and natural calamities (Mukherjee 2015) which can be addressed to some extent by the use of bio-stimulant technology.

12.7 Conclusions

In order to enhance the sustainable food production, food and nutritional security with a significant reduction of synthetic fertilizers, agrochemical use and environmental pollution and natural resource productivity enhancement through the use of bio-stimulants in the vegetable are essential. It promotes plant growth and development throughout the crop life cycle from germination to maturity in a number of established ways. Better germination and root development, greater vigour and stress resistance, more efficient energy and nutrient uptake and transport are possible through the use of bio-stimulants. India is a larger import of plant bio-stimulants. For better adoption of bio-stimulants, research and extension are both required. Especially the knowledge and awareness about the bio-stimulant technology and compatibility of the commercial product which Indian farmers' condition are necessary.

Acknowledgements We would like to thank the Indian Council of Agricultural Research for providing support and facilities and reviewers and editors of the book for their valuable comments.

References

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Anonymous (2016) Bio-stimulants Market Worth USD 3.08 Billion by 2022 – Scalar Market Research. http://www.cleveland19.com/story/33459526/Bio-stimulants-market-worth-usd-308-billion-by-2022-scalar-market-research. Viewed on 18–11-2016

Arora NK, Khare E, Maheshwari DK (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: constraints in bioformulation, commercialization, and future strategies. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria. Springer, Berlin, pp 97–116

Azcona I, Pascual I, Aguirreolea J, Fuentes M, Garcia-Mina JM, Sanchez-Diaz M (2011) Growth and development of pepper are affected by humic substances derived from composted sludge. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 174:916–924

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bashan Y et al (2014) Advances in plant growth promoting bacterial innoculant technology: formulations and practical perspectives (1998–2013). Plant Soil 378(1–2):1–33

Berendsen RL, Pieterse CM, Bakker PA (2012) The rhizosphere microbiome and plant health. Trends Plant Sci 17:1360–1385

Bhagat D, Sharma P, Sirari A, Kumawat KC (2014) Screening of *Mesorhizobium* spp. for control of fusarium wilt in chickpea in vitro conditions. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 3:923–930

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Calvo P, Nelson L, Kloepper J (2014) Agricultural uses of plant bio-stimulants. Plant Soil 383(1):3–41

Chang L, Ramireddy E, Schmülling T (2013) Lateral root formation and growth of Arabidopsis is redundantly regulated by cytokinin metabolism and signalling genes. J Exp Bot. doi:10.1093/jxb/ert291

Cox M, Wong B (2013) Biological crop chemistry primer; green shoots through green products, Piper Jaffray industry note

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Dawwam GE, Elbeltagy Emara AHM, Abbas IH, Hassan MM (2013) Beneficial effect of plant growth promoting bacteria isolated from the roots of potato plant. Ann Agric Sci 58:195–201

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

du Jardin P (2012) The science of plant bio-stimulant- a bibliographic analysis. http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/sectors/chemicals/files/fertilizers/final_report_bio_2012_en.pdf, Viewed on 30-11-2016

Dursun A, Ekinci M, Donmez MF (2010) Effects of foliar application of plant growth promoting bacterium on chemical contents, yield and growth of tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* L.) and cucumber (*Cucumis sativus* L.) Pak J Bot 42:3349–3356

EBIC (2013) Economic overview of the Bio-stimulants sector in Europe. European Bio-stimulants industry Council. http://www.Bio-stimulants.eu/2013/04/2013-overview-of-the-european-Bio-stimulants-market. Viewed on 28-11-2016

Egamberdieva D et al (2011) Bacteria able to control foot and root rot and promote growth of cucumber in salinated soils. Biol Fertil Soils 47:197–205

Ertani A, Schiavon M, Muscolo A, Nardi S (2013) Alfalfa plant-derived bio-stimulant stimulate short-term growth of salt stressed Zea mays L. plants. Plant Soil 364:145–158

Ertani A, Cavani L, Pizzeghello D, Brandellero E, Altissimo A, Ciavatta C, Nardi S (2009) Biostimulant activity of two protein hydrolyzates in the growth and nitrogen metabolism of maize seedlings. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 172(2):237–244

Eyheraguibel B, Silvestre J, Morard P (2008) Effects of humic substances derived from organic waste enhancement on the growth and mineral nutrition of maize. Bioresour Technol 99(10):4206–4212

FAO STAT (2014) FAO statistical year book 2014. Asia and Pacific food and Agriculture. Food and Agriculture of the United Nations Regional Office for Asia and the Pacific Bangkok, 2014. http://www.fao.org/3/a-i3590e.pdf. Viewed on 25-10-2016

Fasciglione G, Casanovas EM, Yommi A, Sueldo RJ, Barassi CA (2012) Azospirillum improves lettuce growth and transplant under saline conditions. J Sci Food Agric 92:2518–2523

Gaiero JR, McCall CA, Thompson KA, Dayu NJ, Best AS, Dunfield KE (2013) Inside the root microbiome: bacterial root endophytes and plant growth promotion. Am J Bot 100:1738–1750

Gallant A (2004) Bio-stimulants: what they are and how they work. TURF Recreat:1–4

Ghosh PK, De TK, Maiti TK (2015) Production and metabolism of indole acetic acid in root nodules and symbiont (Rhizobium undicola) isolated from root nodule of aquatic medicinal legume Neptunia oleracea L. J Bot. Article ID 575067. https://www.hindawi.com/journals/jb/2015/575067/ Viewed on 04-12-2016

Gozzo F, Faoro F (2013) Systemic acquired resistance (50 years after discovery): moving from the lab to the field. J Agric Food Chem 61:12473–12491

Halpern M, Bar-Tal A, Ofek M, Minz D, Muller T, Yermiyahu U (2015) Chapter two-The use of biostimulants for enhancing nutrient uptake. Adv Agron 130:141–174

Howard LR, Talcott ST, Brenes CH, Villalon B (2000) Changes in phytochemical and antioxidant activity of selected pepper cultivars (capsicum species) as influenced by maturity. J Agric Food Chem 48:1713–1720

Huang WH, Deller WD (1970) Dissolution of rock-forming silicate minerals in organic acids; simulated first-stage weathering of fresh mineral surfaces. Am Mineral J 55:2076–2094

Jackson WR (1993) Humic, fulvic and microbial balance: organic soil conditioning. Jackson Research Center, Evergreen, p 329

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Kohler J, Hernandez JA, Caravaca F, Roldan A (2009) Induction of antioxidant enzymes is involved in the greater effectiveness of a PGPR versus AM fungi with respect to increasing the tolerance of lettuce to severe salt stress. Environ Exp Bot 65:245–252

Kokalis-Burelle N, Vavrina CS, Rosskopf EN, Shelby RA (2002) Field evaluation of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria amended transplant mixes and soil solarization for tomato and pepper production in Florida. Plant Soil 238:257–266

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Laplaze L, Benkova E, Casimiro I et al (2007) Cytokinins act directly on lateral root founder cells to inhibit root initiation. Plant Cell 19:3889–3900

Lim JH, Kim SD (2013) Induction of drought stress resistance by multi-functional PGPR Bacillus licheniformis K11 in pepper. Plant Pathol J 29:201–208

Maity A, Mukherjee A, Pramanik P, Shubha (2013) Shifting towards vegetable from boro rice cultivation in Purba Medinipur district of West Bengal. Bioinfolet 10(3A):876–878

Mangmang JS, Deaker R, Rogers G (2015) Germination characteristics of cucumber influenced by plant growth promoting Rhizobacteria. Int J Veg Sci http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/19315260.2014.938850

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1, 2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mukherjee A, Maity A (2015) Public–private partnership for convergence of extension services in Indian agriculture. Curr Sci 109(9):1557–1563

Mukherjee A, Bahal R, Burman RR, Dubey SK, Jha GK (2011) Effectiveness of Tata Kisan Sansar in technology advisory and delivery services in Uttar Pradesh. Indian Res J Ext Educ 11(3):8–13

Mukherjee A, Bahal R, Burman RR, Dubey SK (2012a) Factors contributing farmers' association in Tata Kisan Sansar: a critical analysis. Indian Res J Ext Educ 12(2):81–86

Mukherjee A, Bahal R, Burman RR, Dubey SK, Jha GK (2012b) Constraints in privatized agricultural technology delivery system of Tata Kisan Sansar. J Glob Commun 5(2):155–159

Mukherjee A (2015) Prioritization of problems in integrated agriculture: a case of Rampur village in sub humid region of Eastern India. Indian Res J Ext Edu 15(1):53–59

Nardi S, Carletti P, Pizzeghello D, Muscolo A (2009) Biological activities of humic substances. In: Senesi N, Xing B, Huang PM (eds) Biophysico-chemical processes involving natural nonliving organic matter in environmental systems. Wiley, Hoboken, pp 305–339

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016a) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016b) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Schiavon M, Ertani A, Nardi S (2008) Effects of an alfalfa protein hydrolysate on the gene expression and activity of enzymes of the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle and nitrogen metabolism in Zea mays L. J Agric Food Chem 56:11800–11808

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Shubha KS (2016) Generation mean analysis for pod yield and its associated traits in garden pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) Veg Sci 42(2):43–46

Shubha KS, Choudhary H, Dubey SC, Sharma RK (2016) Identification of resistant sources and inheritance of fusarium wilt resistance in garden pea. Ind J Hortic 73(3):356–361

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Tanwar A, Aggarwal A, Parkash V (2014) Effect of bioinoculants and superphosphate fertilizer on the growth and yield of broccoli (*Brassica oleracea* L. var. italica Plenck). N Z J Crop Hortic Sci 42(4):288–302

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Vacheron J et al (2013) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria and root system functioning. Front Plant Sci 4:1–19

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Vranova V, Rejsek K, Skene KR, Formanek P (2011) Non-protein amino acids: plant, soil and ecosystem interactions. Plant Soil 342:31–48

Walter DR, Newton AC, Lyon GD (eds) (2014) Induced resistance for plant defence: a sustainable approach to crop protection, 2nd edn. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford

Walters DR, Ratsep J, Havis ND (2013) Controlling crop diseases using induced resistance: challenges for the future. J Exp Bot 64(5):1263–1280

Wang CJ, Yang W, Wang C, Gu C, Niu DD, Liu HX, Wang YP, Guo JH (2012) Induction of drought tolerance in cucumber plants by a consortium of three plant growth-promoting Rhizobacterium strains. PLoS One 7:1–10

Werner T, Nehnevajova E, Köllmer I, Novák O, Strnad M, Krämer U, Schmülling T (2010) Root-specific reduction of cytokinin causes enhanced root growth, drought tolerance, and leaf mineral enrichment in Arabidopsis and tobacco. Plant Cell 22:3905–3920

Wezel A et al (2014) Agroecological practices for sustainable agriculture. A review. Agron Sustain Dev 34(1):1–20

WHO (2003) Diet, nutrition and the prevention of chronic diseases: report of a Joint WHO/FAO Expert Consultation, WHO Technical Report Series, vol 916. World Health Organization, Geneva

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Yildirim E, Karlidag H, Turan M, Dursun A, Goktepe F (2011) Growth, nutrient uptake and yield promotion of broccoli by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria with manure. Hort Sci 46:932–936

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zauba.com (2016) Analysis of imports of bio-stimulants. Available at https://www.zauba.com/importanalysis-Bio-stimulants-report.html. Viewed on 02-12-2016

Efficacy of Biological Soil Amendments and Biocontrol Agents for Sustainable Rice and Maize Production

13

Manoj Kaushal and Suhas P. Wani

Abstract

Exploiting the agroecosystem services of soil microbes appears as a promising effective approach to alleviate the negative impacts on soil systems and crop production. Lack of soil organic matter (SOM) is a prevalent feature of degraded soils. Different biological soil amendments, such as organic manure, compost, vermicompost, indigenous microbes, and crop residues, are widely used in reclamation of degraded soils. The biological soil amendments also furnish a valuable source of fertilizer for growing rice and maize and also boost physicochemical and biological parameters of soil such as water holding capacity, moisture content, electrical conductivity, organic carbon content, and population of beneficial microbes which directly correlates to soil health and fertility. However, efficiency of amendments applied based on variety of factors including the composition and characteristics, soil microflora, and environmental conditions can accelerate initial reclamation and lead to self-sustaining primary productivity of crops. On the other hand, high cost of chemical fertilizers, pesticides, and other agricultural inputs and their harmful environmental legacy have encouraged researchers to explore the use of microbial-mediated amendments to play a central role in raising productivity and inhibition/suppression of pathogenic population below levels at which they cause economic and other effects to the crops as well as the environment. Biological control can be achieved through one or more mechanisms, viz., antibiosis, competition for nutrients and/space, induced resistance, plant growth promotion, and rhizosphere colonization ability. Potent biocontrol agents such as *Bacillus* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., and *Tricoderma* sp. prove to be very promising in controlling soilborne diseases of rice and maize crops employing both antibiosis and induction of host resistance. Determination of the

---

M. Kaushal (✉) • S.P. Wani
Research Program-Asia, International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics, Patancheru 502324, India
e-mail: kaushal.mbg@gmail.com

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_13

modes of action of biocontrol agents is obligatory to provide higher level of protection to crop under a particular environmental condition that exists in divergent agroecosystems. This chapter reviews an insight of mechanisms of biological soil amendments and biocontrol agents and their emphasis on soil amelioration with the goal of a sustainable agricultural system.

Keywords
Biological soil amendments • Biocontrol mechanisms • Intermediate metabolites • Induced systemic resistance • Rhizobacteria • Sustainable agriculture

13.1 Introduction

Rice (*Oryza sativa* L.), a widely grown crop in tropical and subtropical regions, is the most important staple foods for ~50% of the world's human population and requires ~10 Mt. of N fertilizers every year (Zhang et al. 2014). N source supplied to crop is usually by commercially available N fertilizers such as urea, which results in a substantial amount of loss through different mechanisms and thus becomes one of the predominant factors for environmental hazards and deterioration of soil fertility as well (Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b; Ahmad et al. 2016).

The sustainable maize production systems also face major challenges of appropriate management of N fertilizers to maximize economic return while minimizing environmental pollution. Maize, grown in rotation with legume crops (alfalfa or soybeans), often yields more, so organic N in crop residues derived from biological N_2 fixation by legume crops has been an effective alternative to meet this challenge (Raaijmakers and Lugtenberg 2013). Increase maize yield from ~5 to 20% attributed to the beneficial effect of crop rotation including improved soil physical properties (Barea 2015), a better balance of plant nutritional factors, increased root activity, a shift in soil mycorrhizal populations, lessen disease severity (Reid et al. 2001), and magnified seasonal N mineralization (Browne et al. 2013). A large effort has been devoted to the studies of legume effects on subsequent cereal crops grown in rotation systems (Barea et al. 2013a; Lugtenberg 2015). The use of biological soil amendments such as manure and compost improves soil fertility and soil quality as well as enhances the population of beneficial microbes in rice and maize fields.

Biological soil amendments of animal origin such as manure and compost that include animal waste and human waste serve as a potential vector for soil- and root-borne pathogens and also critical in sustainable farming systems and certified organic production. Addition of dairy farm manure provides partial or complete N and other nutrient elements, as well as increases soil N release through seasonal N mineralization and availability to the plant (Zolla et al. 2013). However, nutrient (N) availability from manure varied greatly due to source of manure, method of storage (Eghball 2000), and time and method of application. Manure application usually increases crop yield due to plant nutrient availability (Ma et al. 1999b) and improved

Table 13.1 List of major rice diseases and their causal organisms

Disease	Causal organism	Biocontrol agents
Bacterial blight and leaf streak	*Xanthomonas oryzae*	*Streptomyces* sp.
Blast	*Pyricularia grisea*	*P. fluorescens*
Brown spot	*Bipolaris oryzae*	*P. aeruginosa*
Crown sheath rot	*Gaeumannomyces graminis*	*P. fluorescens*
False smut	*Ustilaginoidea virens*	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Foot rot	*Erwinia chrysanthemi*	*Azotobacter* sp.
Grain rot	*Burkholderia glumae*	*Bacillus* sp.
Leaf scald	*Rhynchosporium oryzae*	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Leaf smut	*Entyloma oryzae*	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Pecky rice (kernel spotting)	*Curvularia* sp.; *Fusarium* sp.	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Root rots	*Pythium spinosum*	*P. fluorescens*
Seedling blight	*Sclerotium rolfsii*	*B. glumae*
Sheath blight	*Rhizoctonia solani*	*P. fluorescens*
Sheath brown rot	*Pseudomonas fuscovaginae*	*B. amyloliquefaciens*
Sheath rot	*Sarocladium oryzae*	*P. aeruginosa*
Sheath spot	*Rhizoctonia oryzae*	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Stem rot	*Sclerotium oryzae*	*P. fluorescens*
Seed-rot and seedling disease	*Fusarium* sp.; *Pythium* sp.	*Pseudomonas* spp.

soil structure (Spence and Bais 2013). The N fertilizer application can be reduced by the use of biological N_2 fixation technology which further minimizes environmental risks (Raimam et al. 2007).

N-fixing bacteria may be free-living or symbiotically associated to rice plants mostly species of *Alcaligenes*, *Azospirillum*, *Bacillus*, *Enterobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Rhizobium* (Hirsch et al. 2013b). The most serious constraint on high productivity of rice (Table 13.1) and maize (Table 13.2) crop is the diseases caused by fungi, bacteria, viruses, or nematodes (Manandhar et al. 1998) causing annual yield losses in very high amount. Beyond good agronomic practices (resistant cultivars and application of pesticides), a wide variety of approaches may be used to prevent, mitigate, or control rice diseases such as heavily use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides.

However, many resistant cultivars have very short life span due to the breakdown of the resistance in high pathogenic variability of the pathogens. Also, the environmental pollution caused by excessive use of agrochemicals as well as strict regulations on chemical pesticide has led to considerable changes in attitudes of people's toward the use of more pesticides in rice and maize crops. Among the alternatives, a variety of biological controls are available for use in rice as well as maize crops, but their effective adoptions will require a greater understanding of the complex interactions among plants, soil, and microbes (Meena et al. 2016a; Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a). This article presents an advanced survey of biological soil

Table 13.2 List of major maize diseases and their causal organisms

Disease	Causal organism	Biocontrol agent
Anthracnose leaf blight	*Colletotrichum graminicola*	*Torulaspora globosa*
Aspergillus ear	*Aspergillus flavus*	*Streptomyces* sp.
Bacterial leaf spot	*Xanthomonas campestris*	*B. subtilis*
Bacterial stalk and top rot	*Erwinia carotovora*	*B. subtilis*
Bacterial stripe	*Pseudomonas andropogonis*	*Microbacterium maritypicum*
Black bundle disease	*Cephalosporium acremonium*	*Glomus fasciculatum*
Charcoal rot	*Macrophomina phaseolina*	*Trichoderma* sp.
Cladosporium rot	*Cladosporium herbarum*	*Trichoderma* sp.
Fusarium ear	*Fusarium subglutinans*	*T. harzianum*
Holcus spot	*Pseudomonas syringae*	*M. maritypicum*
Leaf spots, minor	*Alternaria alternata*	*Pseudomonas* sp.
Penicillium ear rot	*Penicillium* sp.	*Trichoderma* sp.
Seedling blight	*Gibberella fujikuroi*	*Bacillus* sp.
Sheath spot	*Rhizoctonia solani*	*T. harzianum*
Smut	*Ustilago maydis*	*T. viride*
Stalk rot	*Physoderma maydis*	*T. machilonis*
Stewart's disease	*Erwinia stewartii*	*M. maritypicum*
Yellow leaf blight	*Phyllosticta maydis*	*Pantoea ananas*

amendments and biocontrol agents applied to the suppression of plant diseases for sustainable rice and maize production (Zancarini et al. 2013).

13.2 Biological Soil Amendments (BSAs)

Any material of plant or animal origin added to the soil to brush up its physicochemical and biological properties in relation to plant growth or ameliorate the WHC, avoiding contamination of pathogens, is considered as biological soil amendments (BSAs). The BSAs consist of whole or a part of materials of animal/plant origin, such as manure, blood meal, and fish emulsion and human waste, compost, or table waste, used alone or in consortium. Moreover, BSAs increase soil microbial activity, uptake of nutrients, decomposition rate, and crop vigor and yield while reducing fertilizer need leading to maximize yields (Fig. 13.1). However, there is still lack of information available with regard to utility of BSAs, organic amendments, growth regulators, and other biological stimulants. BSAs may be treated or untreated and transform depleted soil into healthy soil (Zolla et al. 2013; Meena et al. 2015a, f, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Treated BSAs are substitute in which microbial/bacterial inoculums are added that have been isolated from highly fertile soils and exhibit optimum abilities to produce organic nutrients and beneficial enzymes. This can increase availability of labile organic carbon and more accumulation of soil organic carbon such as azolla-algal biofertilizers which increases accumulation of ferric iron oxide in soil and

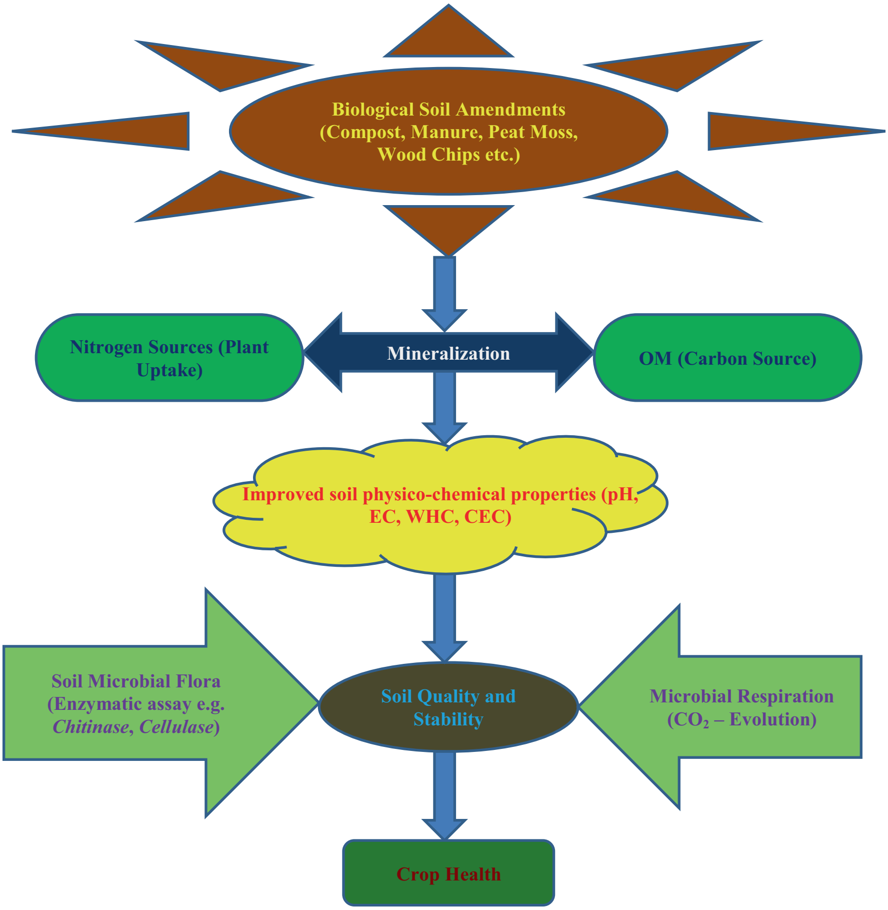


Fig. 13.1 An overview of biological soil amendments (BSAs) and their role toward the soil sustainability

ultimately increases soil redox value and soil porosity in rice cropping system. Azolla anabaena treatment also diminishes CH_4 emission rate during the rice growing seasons due to the lower C/N ratio (14:1) and maximizes cellulose and lignin content. Agnihotri et al. (1999) also reported that rice straw application before flooding and the biofertilizers after flooding enhanced CH_4 efflux from rice fields, while CH_4 fluxes were decreased by composts of cow dung. Composted livestock manure application in rice field increased rice yield by ~30% and dwindle CH_4 emissions 56% per unit of grain yield compared to the non-fertilized control treatment. Availability of major nutrients such as N, P, K, Ca, Mg, Si, soluble Fe, etc. can also be increased to rice and maize plants by adding BSAs, organic materials, inorganic fertilizer, and other amendments (Ali et al. 2012), which further stimulated plant growth and yield (Hu and Wang 1995; Lee et al. 2004).

Overall BSAs such as straw compost, cattle manure compost, green plant biomass, and azolla anabaena improve soil quality parameters such as porosity, total nitrogen, MBC, MBN, SOM, CEC, and nutrient availability to plants in paddy and maize fields alone or as consortium or in combination with other chemical fertilizers. In addition to nutrients released from the added BSAs, they also accelerate the rice and maize plant growth, photosynthetic carbon assimilation and root exudation, and microbial activity and increased the MBC that eventually resulted in organic C accumulation in soil (Ali et al. 2012). Conclusively, to minimize the use of conventional NPK fertilizers, reducing CH_4 emissions and sustaining rice productivity, BSAs could be introduced in rice and maize cropping systems.

13.2.1 Beneficial Soil Microorganisms

Naturally occurring soil microbes are nature's most constructive fertilizer producers and serve as supreme agents of BSAs. Thus, BSAs are adopted for their multiple benefits to sustained plant growth and overall soil productivity and disease suppression. They are also effective in different soil conditions and provide unique propensity to fix both atmospheric and chemical nitrogen and thus selected for utmost adaptability. These rhizospheric bacteria are ruling in this category due to their natural enzyme production capabilities which transform insoluble form of phosphorus and potassium to soluble form. Besides they also produce antibiotics and other plant hormones that stimulate root and shoot growth of rice plants. These microbes are isolated, screened, and grown in the laboratory under aseptic conditions to provide a pure microbial culture.

Thereafter, pure microbial culture is combined with other BSAs and applied to soil so that indigenous bacteria multiply, grow, and get adapted to conditions rapidly. BSAs improve the biological health of soil, thereby increasing nutrient uptake by 150–250% and reducing volatilization (gaseous escape) and leaching run off and seepage. Increasing BSAs of a soil makes the soil more permeable to absorb additional water and healthy populations of microbes metabolizing nutrients, making them available to plants (Duarte et al. 2006).

13.2.2 Humus

Decomposed parts of plant and animal organic matter within the soil that resists further decomposition are called humus, and the process of formation is called humification. Humus profoundly improves soil structure and permeability, enhances water holding capacity of soil, and naturally chelates unavailable micronutrients. Active humus within the soil is created by both biological and chemical processes and is composed largely of three organic acids: humic acid, humin, and fulvic acid (Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Meena et al. 2015b, 2016c; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016).

These small organic materials join together to form complex chemical structures called polymers. Chemically, these are polyphenolic acids, and synthesis of these polymers results from primary transformative mechanism, i.e., release of enzymes from different microbes. Humus is considered as "Black Gold" of soil as it darkens soil color and increases absorption of organic compounds that aid plant nutrition, buffering capacity of soil, thereby helping to stabilize the soil's pH and thus plants for absorbing mineral nutrients as well in cleaning of toxic materials in the soil (Mercado-Blanco 2015).

13.2.3 Biostimulants

Biostimulants include diverse formulations, microorganisms, plant extracts, and other bioactive compounds applied to improve crop yields, quality, and tolerance of biotic and abiotic stresses in a cheaper way. They are used as BSAs (microbial inoculants, humic and fulvic acids, seaweed extracts, protein hydrolysates, amino acids) to escalate plant growth. Moreover, these BSAs also increased leaf pigments (chlorophyll and carotenoids) and stimulate root growth and enhance the antioxidant potential of plants (Nardi et al. 2009; Ertani et al. 2013). Biostimulants influence biochemical and physiological mechanisms (glycolysis and nitrogen assimilation) and thus sway plant metabolism (Ertani et al. 2009; Vaccaro et al. 2009; Azcona et al. 2011). In maize plant, a protein hydrolyzate-based fertilizer was proved to overcome salinity stress through stimulation of enzymes, enhancement of phenylalanine ammonia-lyase (PAL) activity and transcription, and increase of flavonoid synthesis (Ertani et al. 2011; Saha et al. 2016a, b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016d; Verma et al. 2015b; Teotia et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b).

13.2.4 Intermediate Metabolites

This category of BSAs is derived from plant and animal soluble comprising simple and complex sugars, amino acids, carbohydrates, peptides, lignin, and cellulose. They help to break soil compaction, improve CEC, and serve as an immediate source of energy for soil microbes and plants.

13.3 Biological Control and Its Mechanisms

The rhizosphere region of plants is surrounded by diverse types of microbes which can contribute to biological control due to secretion of a variety of root exudates in higher amount. Biological control refers to the inhibition/suppression of activities and populations of one or more plant pathogens through introduced or native microbial species. Microbes that contribute most to disease control are most likely genera of bacteria (*Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Burkholderia*, *Lysobacter*, and *Streptomyces*),

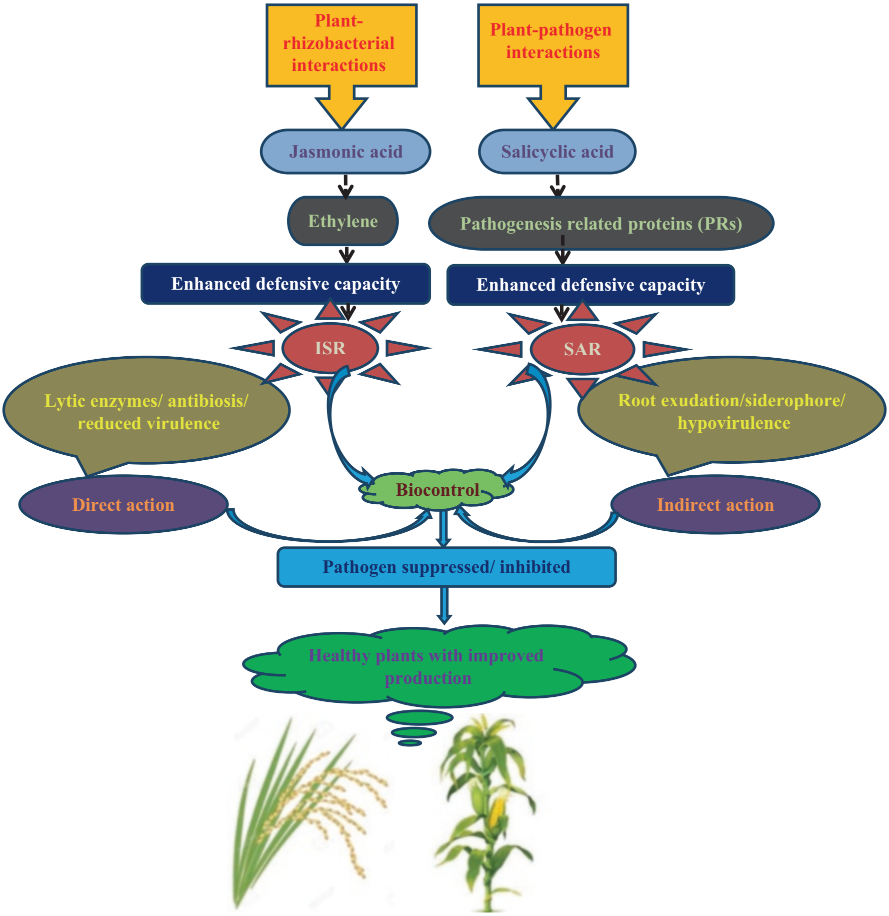


Fig. 13.2 Different mechanisms carried out by BCAs leading to biological control (mainly rice and maize crops)

fungi (*Trichoderma*, *Gliocladium*, *Dactylella*, and *Paecilomyces*), and some VAM fungi (*Glomus* sp.) considered as biocontrol agents (BCAs). These microbes provide biological control in a variety of ways (Fig. 13.2), including niche exclusion, bio-antagonism, and induction of induced systemic resistance (ISR) against infection by fungal, bacterial, and viral pathogens in different plant species (Compant et al. 2005).

Plant diseases may be suppressed by one or more microbes and codified as general and specific suppression. When inoculation of a biocontrol agent results in substantial levels of disease suppression, it leads to specific suppression. Biocontrol agents are also responsible for depletion of available soil nutrients making less available to the pathogens for their proliferation and becomes as causal agents for plant disease. Selection and desired effects of applying microbial cultures may vary based on their adaptability to new ecological and environmental conditions, so they are applied in soils as single inoculation or repeated applications to produce the anticipated results. Also in rice cropping system, more than 95% of the agricultural land devoted to crop production worldwide can be classified as having disease-inducing soils, which have poor physical properties, and large amounts of energy are lost as greenhouse gases (Verma et al. 2014, 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b, 2014a, 2016e; Sharma et al. 2016; Shrivastava et al. 2016).

Biological factors have been identified as the most important element disease suppressive soils (Mazzola 2002). Disease suppressive soils are the soils in which the pathogen may persist in the soil but causes little or no damage to crops. A prominent example of disease suppressiveness is *Pseudomonas fluorescens* producing 2, 4-diacetylphloroglucinol (Raaijmakers and Weller 1998); siderophore-mediated competition for iron has been studied in detail over the last three to four decades (Weller 2007).

16S rRNA-based techniques have also been used to identify additional bacterial taxa such as *Pseudomonas*, *Azospirillum*, *Gluconacetobacter*, and *Burkholderia* that are involved in take-all decline (Sanguin et al. 2009; Schreiner et al. 2010). Fusarium wilt suppressiveness (Alabouvette 1999), tobacco black root rot disease suppressiveness (Kyselkova et al. 2009), and *Rhizoctonia solani* suppressiveness (Mendes et al. 2011) are other well-examined examples of disease suppressive soils. Besides good cultural practices (soil and water management), commercialization of biocontrol agents governed by several factors such as stability, efficacy, specificity toward host, and reliability has also a number of constraints. Significant biological control arises from manipulating different associations/interactions between microbes and host plants or antagonisms between microbes and pathogens. Plants, pathogens, and BCAs interact in a variety of ways for successful biological control in rice and maize cropping system.

Microbial interactions are comprehensive analyses of symbiotic microorganisms (bacteria, fungi) interacting with plants, viz., competition, mutualism, commensalism, antagonisms, predation, and protocooperation. Mechanism of both beneficial and antagonistic functions exhibited by symbiotic microbes toward their hosts could enable the development of microbe-based sustainable agriculture (Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016).

13.3.1 Antagonism

Interaction involving physical contact of the pathogen with BCAs and other organisms would be required to exert a suppressive effect referred to as direct antagonism. Indirect antagonisms do not involve targeting a pathogen by BCAs, for example, stimulation of plant host defense pathways by nonpathogenic ones.

13.3.2 Mutualism

Mutualism is an obligatory interaction between two or more species in which both species are benefitted such as mycorrhizal association between higher plants and fungi. For example, bacteria in the genus *Rhizobium* can reproduce in mutualistic association with legume plants and *Glomus* and *Gigaspora* sp. with some horticultural plants. In this type of mutualism, BCAs stimulate host defense and improve nutrition to plants which can contribute to biological control (de Bruijn 2015).

13.3.3 Commensalism

Some microbes live in a symbiotic interaction with plants, where one gets the benefit and the other is neither harmed nor benefitted creating challenges to soilborne pathogens. Increasing iron uptake efficiency of the commensal microbes is also an important factor to colonize plant roots which leads to the displacement of pathogens from infected areas/sites.

13.3.4 Protocooperation

Both partners count in association do not depend on each other for survival. Some microbes isolated and classified as BCAs are involved in protocooperation depending on environmental conditions leading to disease suppression.

13.3.5 Competition

The rhizosphere region of plant secretes root exudates such as flavonoids, sugars, carbohydrates, proteins, amino acids, etc. for which competition exists between pathogens and BCAs, thus becoming an important factor for limiting disease incidence and severity. For example, soilborne pathogens (*Fusarium* and *Pythium*) infect through mycelial contact and are more susceptible to competition than other microbes. These microbes produce secondary metabolites that suppress soilborne fungal pathogens. Another example of biological control is iron limitation in the rhizosphere region which depends on soil pH to support the growth of microorganisms, generally iron (ferric form) which is insoluble in water (pH 7.4) needed with concentrations of 10^{-6} M. However, highly oxidized and aerated soil contains much lower concentration (10^{-18} M) (Barea and Richardson 2015).

13.3.6 Antagonism

Microbes produce lytic enzymes which hydrolyze compounds such as cellulose, hemicellulose, proteins, and DNA. Secretion of lytic enzymes resulted in suppression of plant pathogens directly by lyse cell walls and act to decompose plant residues. For example, *Lysobacter* and *Myxobacteria* are known to produce lytic enzymes and thus suppress fungal plant pathogens. *Serratia marcescens* produce chitinase for the control of *Sclerotium rolfsii* (Ordentlich et al. 1988), and a b-1, 3-glucanase significantly contributes to biocontrol activities of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3. Microbes also produce hydrogen cyanide (HCN) which effectively blocks the cytochrome oxidase pathway and is highly toxic to all aerobic microorganisms and thus suppresses plant pathogens. HCN production by fluorescent pseudomonads is involved in the suppression of root pathogens. *P. fluorescens* CHA0 produces antibiotics, siderophores, and HCN and inhibits the growth of *Thielaviopsis basicola* (Olivares et al. 2013). *Enterobacter cloacae* suppress *Pythium ultimum*-induced damping-off by producing volatile compounds such as ammonia.

13.3.7 Predation

Predation mediated by microbes (BCAs) is pathogen nonspecific and provides disease control at different levels under nutrient-limited conditions. For example, chitinase enzymes produced by *Trichoderma* attack cell walls of fungi (*Rhizoctonia solani*) by decreasing the concentration of cellulose. BCAs directly attack the fungal pathogen that kills it or its propagules. Obligate bacteria (*Pasteuria penetrans*) are the prominent example to be used as BCA against fungal parasites (*Coniothyrium minitans* that attacks sclerotia and *Pythium oligandrum* that attacks living hyphae) of plant pathogens. Fungi (*Acremonium alternatum*, *Ampelomyces quisqualis*, and *Cladosporium oxysporum*) are some of the other examples that attack powdery mildew pathogens (Meena et al. 2013c, 2015d; Singh et al. 2015; Bahadur et al. 2016a).

13.4 Induced Systemic Resistance (ISR)

It is the state of enhanced defensive capacity developed by a plant when appropriately stimulated (Van Loon et al. 1998), where plants trigger biological or chemical inducers for protection of nonexposed parts against attack by pathogenic microbes. Both biotic and abiotic agents protect crops against pathogens by eliciting induced systemic resistance (Da Rocha and Hammerschmidt 2005; Reglinski and Walters 2009). Bacteria such as *Bacillus* spp., *Pseudomonas* sp. (Bakker et al. 2007), and *Serratia* sp. (Press et al. 1997; Schuhegger et al. 2006) and fungi like *Trichoderma* sp. (Segarra et al. 2009), *Piriformospora indica* (Shoresh et al. 2010), *Penicillium simplicissimum* (Elsharkawy et al. 2012), *Phoma* sp. (Sultana et al. 2009), nonpathogenic *Fusarium oxysporum* (Fravel et al. 2003), and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (Pozo et al. 2009) have been implicated as BCAs to elicit induced systemic resistance (ISR). ISR elicitors identified include flagella (Meziane et al. 2005), iron-regulated metabolites (Audenaert et al. 2002; Meziane et al. 2005; Ongena et al. 2005; Ran et al. 2005; De Vleesschauwer et al. 2008), the antibiotics

2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (Iavicoli et al. 2003; Weller et al. 2012) and pyocyanin (Audenaert et al. 2002; De Vleesschauwer et al. 2006), biosurfactants (Ongena et al. 2007; Tran et al. 2007), and volatile organic compounds (Ryu et al. 2004).

Siderophore, flagellar peptides and lipopolysaccharides, 2, 3-butanediol, cyclic lipopeptides, and other volatile substances are some of the other chemical elicitors of ISR produced by the rhizobacterial strains (Van Loon et al. 1998; Ryu et al. 2004; Compant et al. 2005; Van Wees et al. 2008). Kloepper et al. (1980) were the first to demonstrate the importance of siderophore production as a mechanism of biological control of *Erwinia carotovora* by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strains A1, BK1, TL3B1, and B10. Also, a direct correlation was established in vitro between siderophore synthesis in fluorescent pseudomonads to inhibit germination of chlamydospores of *F. oxysporum*.

Siderophore-producing PGPR have also been identified as molecules able to activate ISR for protection of plants against diseases (Leeman et al. 1996a; Audenaert et al. 2002; Meziane et al. 2005). An important determinant of ISR siderophore pseudobactin was developed against blast disease in rice (De Vleesschauwer et al. 2008).

BCAs and other nonpathogenic microbes stimulate the pathways of ISR as a result of infection by a pathogen, upon colonization or after treatment with specific chemicals. ISR is mediated by a network of interconnected signaling pathways such as jasmonic acid (JA) and/or ethylene produced by some nonpathogenic rhizospheric bacteria. Another systemic acquired resistance (SAR) is mediated salicylic acid (SA)-dependent induced resistance triggered by a localized infection and leads to the expression of pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins produced by pathogen infection (Fig. 13.2).

Generally, ISR is not accompanied by the activation of PR genes, but enhanced defensive capacity of SAR is associated with the accumulation of PRs (Van Loon 2007). SA accumulation occurs locally and at lower levels with the development of SAR, and its application induces SAR in many plant species (Van Loon et al. 1998). Tissue necrosis development is a necessary feature for SAR activation (Vleesschauwer and Hofte 2009), but SAR can also be triggered without tissue necrosis in *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Mishina and Zeier 2007). PR proteins include some enzymes that acts directly to reinforce cell wall boundaries to resist infections lyse invading cells and induce localized cell death. In general, ISR-mediated protection is significantly less than that of SAR (Van Loon 2000); however, combination of ISR and SAR provides a better protection indicating that they act additively in inducing resistance to pathogens (Van Wees et al. 2000). Despite local site of induction, induced resistance is expressed systemically in plant parts that are separated from the inducer conferring an enhanced level of protection against a broad spectrum of pathogens. Root-colonizing microbes having biocontrol strains (*Pseudomonas* sp. and *Trichoderma* sp.) are known to strongly induce plant host defenses (Harman et al. 2004).

To overcome the SA-mediated pathway, pathogenic strains of *Pseudomonas syringae* produce JA. Sometimes absence of production of inducing components in the rhizosphere or an inability of the particular plant species to perceive such compounds leads to the failure to elicit ISR in certain hosts (Van Loon 2007). *P. putida* WCS358r and *P. fluorescens*WCS374r act differently depending on the plant species: in *Arabidopsis*, WCS358r elicits ISR, but not in radish and carnation plants (Van Peer et al. 1991; Van Peer and Schippers 1992; Leeman et al. 1995; Van Wees et al. 1997).

13.5 Suppression by Antibiotics Production

Antibiotics are one or more compounds secreted by one microbial species at low concentrations to inhibit/kill other microbial species. BCAs must produce antibiotics biosynthesized by different genes in sufficient quantities near the pathogen to induce positive biological control. Several BCAs that produce in situ antibiotics have been measured (Thomashow et al. 2002); however, the effective quantities are still required to be estimated because of the presence of other organic compounds. Few examples of BCAs that are known to produce multiple antibiotics are *Bacillus cereus* strain UW85 that produces both zwittermicin (Silo-Suh et al. 1994) and kanosamine and can suppress one or more pathogens. This ability of producing different antibiotics by single bacterial species suppresses diverse plant pathogens and thus enhances biological control in rice and maize cropping systems.

13.6 Conclusions and Future Prospective

An ideal agricultural system is considered as sustainable if it supports and improves soil health as well as fortifies the environment while fulfilling the world's food demand for increasing population. Biological soil amendments offer an environmentally sustainable approach to increase crop production and good soil health. The utilization of BSAs can decrease the use of synthetic fertilizers, prevent the exhaustion of soil organic matter, and diminish environmental pollution, thus enriching soil fertility and enhancing rice and maize yield. Also, biological control led by BCAs offers excellent model systems that furnish novel genetic constituents and bioactive compounds with multifold use in agriculture and environmental sustainability. Current and future progress in our understanding of BCAs and mechanisms of actions, formulations, and applications could facilitate their development as the reliable components in management of sustainable agroecosystems. The use of molecular tools has enhanced our capacity to understand and manipulate the different biocontrol products with improved effectiveness. Genetic enhancement of BCAs with native microbial strains may involve addition of one or more traits associated with effective disease control and plant growth promotion. Genetic manipulation of native microbes from rice and maize cropping systems to enhance establishment and proliferation of beneficial microorganisms is being pursued.

Acknowledgments Financial assistance provided by ICRISAT is highly acknowledged.

References

Agnihotri S, Kulshreshtha K, Singh SN (1999) Mitigation strategy to contain methane emission from rice-fields. Environ Monit Assess 58:95–104

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Alabouvette C (1999) Fusarium wilt suppressive soils: an example of disease suppressive soils. Aust Plant Pathol 28:57–64

Ali MA, Farouque G, Haque M, Kabir A (2012) Influence of soil amendments on mitigating methane emissions and sustaining rice productivity in paddy soil ecosystems of Bangladesh. J Environ Sci Nat Resour 5:179–185

Audenaert K, Pattery T, Cornelis P, Hofte M (2002) Induction of systemic resistance to *Botrytis cinerea* in tomato by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2: role of salicylic acid, pyochelin, and pyocyanin. Mol Plant Microbe Int 15:1147–1156

Azcona I, Pascual I, Aguirreolea J, Fuentes M, Garcia-Mina JM, Sanchez-Diaz M (2011) Growth and development of pepper are affected by humic substances derived from composted sludge. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 174:916–924

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ, Van Loon LC (2007) Induced systemic resistance by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. Phytopathology 97:239–243

Barea JM (2015) Future challenges and perspectives for applying microbial biotechnology in sustainable agriculture based on a better understanding of plant-microbiome interactions. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 15:261–282

Barea JM, Richardson AE (2015) Phosphate mobilisation by soil microorganisms. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 225–234

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, Azcon R, Azcon-Aguilar C (2013) Microbial interactions in the rhizosphere. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 1. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 29–44

Browne P, Barret M, Morrissey JP, O'Gara F (2013) Molecular-based strategies to exploit the inorganic phosphate-solubilization ability of *Pseudomonas* in sustainable agriculture. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 2. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 615–628

de Bruijn FJ (2015) Biological nitrogen fixation. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 215–224

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clement C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Da Rocha AB, Hammerschmidt R (2005) History and perspectives on the use of disease resistance inducers in horticultural crops. Hortic Technol 15:518–529

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

De Vleesschauwer D, Cornelis P, Hofte M (2006) Redox active pyocyanin secreted by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2 triggers systemic resistance to *Magnaportegrisea* but enhances *Rhizoctoniasolani* susceptibility in rice. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 19:1406–1419

De Vleesschauwer D, Bakker PAHM, Djavaheri M, Hofte M (2008) *Pseudomonas fluorescens*WCS374r-induced systemic resistance in rice against *Magnaportheoryzae* is based on pseudobactin-mediated priming for a salicylic acid-repressible multifaceted defense response. Plant Physiol 148:1996–2012

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Duarte CM, Alonso S, Benito G, Dachs J, Fernandez Rios AA, Montes C, Pardo M, Simo R, Valladares F (2006) Cambio global: Impacto de la actividad humanasobre el sistema Tierra. Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas (CSIC)

Eghball B (2000) Nitrogen mineralization from field-applied beef cattle feedlot manure or compost. Soil Sci Soc Am J 64:2024–2030

Elsharkawy MM, Shimizu M, Takahashi H, Hyakumachi M (2012) Induction of systemic resistance against cucumber mosaic virus by *Penicillium simplicissimum* GP17-2 in *Arabidopsis* and tobacco. Plant Pathol. doi:10.1111/j.1365- 3059.2011.02573.x

Ertani A, Cavani L, Pizzeghello D, Brandellero E, Altissimo A, Ciavatta C, Nardi S (2009) Biostimulant activity of two protein hydrolysates on the growth and nitrogen metabolism in maize seedlings. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 172:237–244

Ertani A, Schiavon M, Altissimo A, Franceschi C, Nardi S (2011) Phenol-containing organic substances stimulate phenylpropanoid metabolism in Zea mays L. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 3:496–503

Ertani A, Nardi S, Altissimo A (2013) Review: long-term research activity on the biostimulant properties of natural origin compounds. Acta Hortic 1009:181–188

Fravel D, Olivain C, Alabouvette C (2003) *Fusarium oxysporum* and its biocontrol. New Phytol 157:493–502

Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) *Trichoderma* species opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56

Hirsch PR, Miller AJ, Dennis PG (2013b) Do root exudates exert more influence on rhizosphere bacterial community structure than other rhizodeposits? In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 1. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 229–242

Hu DJ, Wang FH (1995) Silica nutrition of rice. Agric Sci Hubei 5:33–36

Iavicoli A, Boutet E, Buchala A, Metraux JP (2003) Induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* in response to root inoculation with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 16:851–858

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) *Pseudomonas* siderophores: a mechanism explaining disease suppressive soils. Curr Microbiol 4:317–320

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kyselkova M, Kopecky J, Frapolli M, Defago G, Sagova-Mareckova M, Grundmann GL, Moenne-Loccoz Y (2009) Comparison of rhizobacterial community composition in soil suppressive or conducive to tobacco black root rot disease. ISME J 3:1127–1138

Lee YB, Lee CH, Hawng JY, Lee IB, Kim PJ (2004) Enhancement of phosphate desorption by silicate in soils with salt accumulation. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 50:43–499

Leeman M, Van Pelt JA, Den Ouden FM, Heinsbroek M, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1995) Induction of systemic resistance against fusarium wilt of radish by lipopolysaccharides of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 85:1021–1027

Leeman M, den Ouden EM, van Pelt JA, Dirkx FPM, Steijl H, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1996) Iron availability affects induction of systemic resistance to Fusarium wilt of radish by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 86:149–155

Lugtenberg B (2015) Life of microbes in the rhizosphere. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 7–15

Ma BL, Dwyer LM, Gregorich ED (1999) Soil N amendment effects on seasonal N mineralization and N cycling in maize production. Agron J 91:1003–1009

Manandhar HK, Lyngs Jorgensen HJ, Mathur SB, Smedegaard-Peterson V (1998) Suppression of rice blast by preinoculation with avirulent *Pyricularia oryzae* and the non-rice pathogen *Bipolaris sorokiniana*. Phytopathology 88:735–739

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Mazzola M (2002) Mechanisms of natural soil suppressiveness to soilborne diseases. Anton Leeuw Int J G 81:557–564

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sustain Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bangladesh J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of well grow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Mendes R, Kruijt M, De Bruijn I, Dekkers E, Van der Voort M, Schneider JHM, Piceno YM, DeSantis TZ, Andersen GL, Bakker PAHM, Raaijmakers JM (2011) Deciphering the rhizosphere microbiome for disease-suppressive bacteria. Science 332:1097–1100

Mercado-Blanco J (2015) Life of microbes inside the plant. In: Lugtenberg B (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 25–32

Meziane H, Van der Sluis I, Van Loon LC, Hofte M, Bakker PAHM (2005) Determinants of *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358 involved in inducing systemic resistance in plants. Mol Plant Pathol 6:177–185

Mishina TE, Zeier J (2007) Pathogen-associated molecular pattern recognition rather than development of tissue necrosis contributes to bacterial induction of systemic acquired resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant J 50:500–513

Nardi S, Carletti P, Pizzeghello D, Muscolo A (2009) Biological activities of humic substances. In: Senesi N, Xing B, Huang PM (eds) Biophysico-chemical processes involving natural nonliving organic matter in environmental systems, PART I. Fundamentals and impact of mineral-organic-biota interactions on the formation, transformation, turnover, and storage of natural nonliving organic matter (NOM). Wiley, Hoboken, pp 301–335

Olivares J, Bedmar EJ, Sanjuan J (2013) Biological nitrogen fixation in the context of global change. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 26:486–494

Ongena M, Jourdan E, Schafer M, Kech C, Budzikiewicz H, Luxen A, Thonart P (2005) Isolation of an N-alkylated benzylamine derivative from *Pseudomonas putida* BTP1 as elicitor of induced systemic resistance in bean. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:562–569

Ongena M, Jourdan E, Adam A, Paquot M, Brans A, Joris B, Arpigny JL, Thonart P (2007) Surfactin and fengycin lipopeptides of *Bacillus subtilis* as elicitors of induced systemic resistance in plants. Environ Microbiol 9:1084–1090

Ordentlich A, Elad Y, Chet I (1988) The role of chitinase of *Serratia marcescens* in biocontrol of *Sclerotium rolfsii*. Phytopathology 78:84–88

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pozo MJ, Verhage A, Garcia-Andrade J, Garcia JM, Azcon-Aguilar C (2009) Priming plant defences against pathogens by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. In: Azcon-Aguilar C, Barea JM, Gianinazzi S, Gianinazzi-Pearson V (eds) Mycorrhizas: functional processes and ecological impact. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 137–149

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Press CM, Wilson M, Tuzun S, Kloepper JW (1997) Salicylic acid produced by *Serratia marcescens* 90–166 is not the primary determinant of induced systemic resistance in cucumber or tobacco. Mol Plant Microbe Int 10:761–768

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raaijmakers JM, Lugtenberg BJJ (2013) Perspectives for rhizosphere research. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 2. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 1227–1232

Raaijmakers JM, Weller DM (1998) Natural plant protection by 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing *Pseudomonas* spp. in take-all decline soils. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 11:144–152

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Raimam MP, Albino U, Cruz MF, Lovato GM, Spago F, Ferracin TP, Lima DS, Goulart T, Bernardi CM, Miyauchi M, Nogueira MA, Andrade G (2007) Interaction among free-living N-fixing bacteria isolated from *Drosera villosa* var. *villosa* and AM fungi (*Glomus clarum*) in rice (*Oryza sativa*). Appl Soil Ecol 35:25–34

Ran LX, Li ZN, Wu GJ, Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2005) Induction of systemic resistance against bacterial wilt in Eucalyptus urophylla by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. Eur J Plant Pathol 113:59–70

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Reglinski T, Walters D (2009) Induced resistance for plant disease control. In: Walters D (ed) Disease control in crops. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, pp 62–92

Reid LM, Zhu X, Ma BL (2001) Crop rotation and nitrogen effects on maize susceptibility to gibberella (*Fusarium graminearum*) ear rot. Plant Soil 237:1–14

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Pare PW (2004) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 134:1017–1026

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sanguin H, Sarniguet A, Gazengel K, Moenne-Loccoz Y, Grundmann GL (2009) Rhizosphere bacterial communities associated with disease suppressiveness stages of take-all decline in wheat monoculture. New Phytol 184:694–707

Schreiner K, Hagn A, Kyselkova M, Moenne-Loccoz Y, Welzl G, Munch JC, Schloter M (2010) Comparison of barley succession and take-all disease as environmental factors shaping the rhizobacterial community during take-all decline. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:4703–4712

Schuhegger R, Ihring A, Gantner S, Bahnweg G, Knappe C, Vogg G, Hutzler P, Schmid M, Van Breusegem F, Eberl L, Hartmann A, Langebartels C (2006) Induction of systemic resistance in tomato by N-acyl-L-homoserine lactone producing rhizosphere bacteria. Plant Cell Environ 29:909–918

Segarra G, Van der Ent S, Trillas I, Pieterse CMJ (2009) MYB72, a node of convergence in induced systemic resistance triggered by a fungal and a bacterial beneficial microbe. Plant Biol 11:90–96

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shoresh M, Harman GE, Mastouri F (2010) Induced systemic resistance and plant responses to fungal biocontrol agents. Annu Rev Phytopathol 48:21–43

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Silo-Suh LA, Lethbridge BJ, Raffel SJ, He H, Clardy J, Handelsman J (1994) Biological activities of two fungistatic antibiotics produced by *Bacillus cereus* UW85. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:2023–2030

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Spence C, Bais H (2013) Probiotics for plants: rhizospheric microbiome and plant fitness. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 2. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 713–721

Sultana S, HossianMd M, Kubota M, Hyakumachi M (2009) Induction of systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* in response to a culture filtrate from a plant growth-promoting fungus, Phoma sp. GS8-3. Plant Biol 11:97–104

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Thomashow LS, Bonsall RF, Weller DM (2002) Antibiotic production by soil and rhizosphere microbes in situ. In: Hurst CJ, Crawford RL, Knudsen GR, McInerney MJ, Stetzenbach LD (eds) Manual of environmental microbiology, 2nd edn. ASM Press, Washington, DC, pp 636–647

Tran H, Ficke A, Asiimwe T, Hofte M, Raaijmakers JM (2007) Role of the cyclic lipopeptide massetolide A in biological control of *Phytophthora infestans* and in colonization of tomato plants by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. New Phytol 175:731–742

Vaccaro S, Muscolo A, Pizzeghello D, Spaccini R, Piccolo A, Nardi S (2009) Effect of a compost and its water-soluble fractions on key enzymes of nitrogen metabolism in maize seedlings. J Agric Food Chem 57:11267–11276

Van Loon LC (2000) Systemic induced resistance. In: Slusarenko AJ, Fraser RSS, Van Loon LC (eds) Mechanisms of resistance to plant diseases. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 521–574

Van Loon LC (2007) Plant responses to plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Eur J Plant Pathol 119:243–254

Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483

Van Peer R, Schippers B (1992) Lipopolysaccharides of plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas* sp. strain WCS417r induce resistance in carnation to fusarium wilt. Neth J Plant Pathol 98:129–139

Van Peer R, Niemann GJ, Schippers B (1991) Induced resistance and phytoalexin accumulation in biological control of fusarium wilt of carnation by *Pseudomonas* sp. strain WCS417r. Phytopathology 81:728–734

Van Wees SCM, Pieterse CMJ, Trijssenaar A, Van'tWestende Y, Hartog F, Van Loon LC (1997) Differential induction of systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* by biocontrol bacteria. Mol Plant Microbe Int 10:716–724

Van Wees SCM, De Swart EAM, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2000) Enhancement of induced disease resistance by simultaneous activation of salicylate- and jasmonate-dependent defense pathways in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 97:8711–8716

Van Wees SCM, Van der Ent S, Pieterse CMJ (2008) Plant immune responses triggered by beneficial microbes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11:443–448

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Vleesschauwer D, Hofte M (2009) Rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance. Adv Bot Res 51:223–281

Weller DM (2007) *Pseudomonas* biocontrol agents of soilborne pathogens: looking back over 30 years. Phytopathology 97:250–256

Weller DM, Mavrodi DV, Van Pelt JA, Pieterse CMJ, Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2012) Induced systemic resistance (ISR) in *Arabidopsis thaliana* against *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. tomato by 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing Pseudomonas fluorescens. Phytopathology 102:403–412

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zancarini A, Lepinay C, Burstin J, Duc G, Lemanceau P, Moreau D, Munier-Jolain N, Pivato B, Rigaud T, Salon C, Mougel C (2013) Combining molecular microbial ecology with ecophysiology and plant genetics for a better understanding of plant-microbial communities interactions in the rhizosphere. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 1. Wiley Blackwell, Hoboken, pp 69–86

Zhang A, Liu R, Gao J, Yang S, Chen Z (2014) Regulating N application for rice yield and sustainable eco-agro development in the upper reaches of Yellow River Basin, China. Sci World J 2014:239279

Zolla G, Bakker MG, Badri DV, Chaparro JM, Sheflin AM, Manter DK, Vivanco J (2013) Understanding root-microbiome interactions. In: de Bruijn FJ (ed) Molecular microbial ecology of the rhizosphere, vol 2. Wiley Blackwell, Singapore, pp 745–754

14

Bacterial-Mediated Selenium Biofortification of *Triticum aestivum*: Strategy for Improvement in Selenium Phytoremediation and Biofortification

Zain ul Abadin, Muhammad Yasin, and Muhammad Faisal

Abstract

The increasing world population has forced the world to improve the productivity of crops. Among other important cereals, wheat is one such a crop which has increasing demands all over the world. It provides ~20% of caloric and protein needs worldwide. Although the use of modern technologies enhanced the production of wheat, it also resulted in decreased mineral content of crops, which include Ca, K, Na, Zn, Fe and Se. The selenium (Se) content in wheat is highly variable ranging from 5 to 720 μg Se/kg. Meanwhile the Se distribution is highly uneven worldwide, ranging from a low value of 0.01 mg Se/kg of soil to a higher value of 1200 mg Se/kg of soil in seleniferous soils. Wheat is among one of the major sources of Se supply for humans in areas where wheat is an important component of daily diet, so it must be maintained in healthy concentration to ensure adequate supply of Se to humans. The use of selenate and selenite with urea crystals and foliar application proved to enhance selenium content, but these measures have their own drawbacks. Bacterial inoculation to wheat resulted in remarkable increase in the accumulation of selenium in wheat plant along with Ni, Mn, P, Mo, K, Fe and Ca. Selenium-fortified wheat is a best option for the daily intake of selenium by humans.

Keywords

Biofortification • Phytoremediation • Wheat • Selenium • Bacteria

---

Z.u. Abadin • M. Yasin • M. Faisal (✉)
Department of Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, University of the Punjab,
Quaid-e-Azam Campus, Lahore 54590, Pakistan
e-mail: mohdfaysal@yahoo.com

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_14

14.1 Introduction

The selenium (Se) is a metalloid, which belongs to the group VI-A of the periodic table. Selenium shows several beneficial as well as toxic effects on organisms that depend on the quantity of available Se in soil for plant uptake, accumulation in food stuff and its daily intake by humans and other organisms. Selenium requirement for humans is ~55 to 60 μg day^{-1}; however, daily intake of <40 μg Se may lead to Se deficiency, and daily intake of ~400 μg Se may cause toxic effects in humans (WHO 1996). Se exists in six isotopes with ^{80}Se as the most abundant one. In nature, Se is found in four different oxidation states, 2 in halides, 0 in elemental form, 4^+in selenite and 6^+in selenate. It belongs to group VI-A, and its chemical properties are very similar to sulphur (S). In environment, Se occurs in both inorganic and organic forms in soil, water and air. Inorganic forms include selenite/selenate salts, while organic forms are the Se products from decomposition of Se-rich plant material (Barceloux and Barceloux 1999). Shale rock-derived soils are one of the natural rich sources of Se. Selenium distribution is highly uneven worldwide, and Se quantity in soil may vary from a low value of 0.01 to 2 mg Se kg^{-1} to a high value of 1200 mg Se kg^{-1} of soil (Mayland 1994). Anthropogenic activities are one of the major factors for the imbalance of Se in the environment, e.g. the use of Se metalloid in metallurgy and glass manufacturing industry constitutes ~60% of the total Se used (USGS 2011).

Selenium plays a significant role in the biological systems, as it is the main component of many selenoproteins in living organisms. About 30 selenoproteins are encoded by 25 human genes. Glutathione peroxidases (GPxs) are such eight proteins (GPx1-GPx8) having antioxidant properties with multidimensional roles in living cells, ranging from H_2O_2 homeostasis to regulation of apoptosis (Brigelius-Flohe and Maiorino 2013). Other selenoproteins are deiodinases and thioredoxin reductases which play a significant role in thyroid hormone metabolism, intracellular redox potential, DNA synthesis, cancer prevention, fertility and reproduction (Suttle 2010). Selenium in combination with vitamin E plays a synergistic effect on muscle activity as it improves endurance and recovery of muscles cells (Cabaraux et al. 2007).

Low Se content in diet may reduce the efficiency of immune system which may result in occurrence of various diseases, both in animals and humans (Table 14.1). In animals, deficiency of Se affects the heart, skeletal muscles and liver. White muscle disease, a degenerative myopathy, is a common disease of animals due to Se deficiency. Commonly cattle, poultry and horses are affected by this disease. In humans Se deficiency results in Keshan disease (cardiomyopathy) and Kashin-Beck disease (osteoarthropathy). Investigations showed that these diseases are common in areas where daily intakes are between 10 and 15 μg Se day^{-1}.

On the other hand, high Se intake may result in low haemoglobin level, decreased sperm motility and increased incidence of pancreatic and skin cancer. It is estimated that over 800 million people worldwide might have been affected due to selenium deficiency (Fordyce 2013; Meena et al. 2013a, 2016a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b; Ahmad et al. 2016).

Table 14.1 Impact of Se deficiency on various organisms

Organism	Effects	References
Mouse	Se deficiency causes increase in inflammatory lesions caused by *S. aureus* mastitis	Gao et al. (2016)
Chicken	Low Se intake results in an increase in NO and Hsps which may play special role in chicken erythrocyte injury	Zhao et al. (2016)
Rats	Low selenium concentration in the kidney of a growing rat leads to damages of the ultrastructure and extracellular matrix (ECM) of the kidney	Han et al. (2016)
Chicken	Se deficiency caused changes in autophagy-related genes, which increased the autophagic process and also caused structural damages to the immune organs of chickens	Khoso et al. (2016)
Chicken	Se deficiency decreases the expression of selenoproteins, reduces antioxidant function, and increases the expression of inflammatory factors in chicken aorta vessels	Du et al. (2016)
Human	A low concentration of selenium in blood serum in the early stage of pregnancy has been proved to be a predictor of low birth weight of a new born baby	Pieczynska and Grajeta (2015)

It is very important to address new strategies to manage Se status in human's population. Various strategies can be used to cope up with Se deficiency in food such as Se foliar application in crops and Se-enriched fertilizers (urea granules) which showed improved Se content of food crops. Selenium biofortification, a process in which agronomic practices like conventional plant breeding or modern biotechnology are applied to produce crops with greater nutritional value, can enhance Se content of food crops. Plants with the ability to store and volatilize Se can be used for removing excess Se from seleniferous or contaminated areas (phytoremediation) and produce Se-enriched dietary material to eliminate Se deficiency in areas with low Se (biofortification) content in food. The three important components for a successful biofortification strategy include (1) increase in nutrient content as well as yield of the crop; (2) increased efficacy, i.e. improvement in nutrient status of mineral; and (3) the adoptability of the strategy by the farmers. Additionally, the rhizospheric plant growth-promoting microbes can perform a significant role in absorption of nutrients by plant roots, through plant root growth promotion especially root elongation and increasing its number (Ker et al. 2014). Previous studies showed that Se biofortification coupled with microbes is an effective strategy to enhance Se content in plants (Table 14.2).

14.2 Worldwide Importance of Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) as Food Crop

Wheat is one of the oldest forms of nutrition available to humans and considered to be one of the main crops to ensure global food security. Introduction of new technologies in agriculture sector and development of high-yield strains of crops had helped a lot to reduce hunger and poverty worldwide. In developing countries, it is

Table 14.2 Bacterial-associated Se biofortification in different crops and its effects on Se uptake in plants

Crop	Mineral for biofortification	Bacteria used	Results	References
Wheat	Selenium	*Paenibacillus* sp.; *Bacillus* sp.	Se associated with STB was translocated into the leaves	Acuña et al. (2013)
Wheat	Selenium, iron	*Bacillus* sp.	Increase in Se and Fe amount in wheat kernels Enhanced growth of plants	Yasin et al. (2015a)
Wheat	Selenium	*Bacillus* sp., *Paenibacillus* sp., *Klebsiella*, *Acinetobacter* sp.	P-solubilization, high IAA production	Duran et al. (2014)
Wheat	Iron, copper, zinc	*Providencia* sp., *Anabaena* sp., *Calothrix* sp.	Increased protein content	Rana et al. (2012)
Saltmarsh bulrush, rabbitfoot grass	Selenium, mercury	Rhizosphere bacteria	Se and Hg were accumulated in wetland plants	De Souza et al. (1999)
Wheat	Selenium	*Stenotrophomonas* sp., *Enterobacter* sp., *Bacillus* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., *G. claroideum*	Rise in selenium content of wheat grains	Duran et al. (2013)
Chickpea	Iron	PGPR	Increase in iron content of grain and shoot	Khalid et al. (2015)

projected that the demand will increase by ~60% till 2050 (Nelson et al. 2010). To meet this increasing demand, several developing countries are importing colossal amounts of wheat, and it is estimated that wheat has the highest percentage (~46%) out of total food imports (Dixon et al. 2009).

Wheat is an important source of calories and proteins. It helps to meet one fifth of daily calories and proteins to human population. According to the available data, ~19% of daily caloric needs and ~21% of daily protein intake globally are met by wheat consumption. Developing countries have higher demand for wheat. In Central Asia ~47% of the daily calories and proteins are provided by wheat intake; on the other hand this percentage falls dramatically to ~20% in high-income countries (Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2015f, 2016b; Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

However, the ~2.5 billion deprived people of the world are dependent on wheat as the main component of their diet. With regard to wheat as an important cereal crop worldwide, Se-supplemented or Se-rich wheat grains can be an important

Table 14.3 Percentage dependence of people on wheat in different regions of the world

Region	Share in cereal intake	
	Calories (%)	Proteins (%)
Australia	78	85
Central Asia	89	91
Eastern Europe and Russia	81	84
High-income countries	70	79
North Africa	66	71
North America	73	80
West Asia	78	84

source of Se supply to humans, Table 14.3 shows the dependence on wheat as the main constituent of the food of the world populations (Shiferaw et al. 2013).

14.3 Content of Se in Wheat Under Natural Conditions Worldwide

Selenium content of the soil varies significantly across the globe, which in turn affects the Se content of crops growing in those regions. Studies show that selenium content of wheat varies from as low as 0.001 mg/kg in the areas of southwestern Australia to as high as 30 mg/kg in some areas of South Dakota, whereas the world's average wheat content is between the range of 0.02 and 0.60 mg Sekg^{-1}. A study conducted by Lyons et al. (2005a) in different areas of Mexico and Australia showed the variation of the Se content of wheat varieties in these regions. The results of the study provided a range 5–720 μg Se kg^{-1} in wheat samples. Survey conducted to find out Se content of wheat grown at Centro Internacional de Mejoramiento de Maiz y Trigo (International Maize and Wheat Improvement Centre) showed a range from 9 to 244 μg Se kg^{-1} in hundred wheat samples, whereas at the same place, field trials showed a range of 40–110 μg Se kg^{-1}.

Field trials of wheat grown at three different soils near Tamworth, New South Wales, over a period of 27 years also showed large variations in Se content. Neutral soils showed large amount of Se in wheat ranging from 61 to 510 μg Sekg^{-1} in 27 samples of wheat during the year of 1971. This range narrowed in 1996 and became 140–490 μg Sekg^{-1}. While for black cracking soil with slightly acidic pH, the range almost remained the same, i.e. from 35 to 210 μg Se kg^{-1}, over the period. For more acidic soil, Se content of wheat was very low it ranged from 18 to 22 μg Se kg^{-1}. These results also supported the idea that Se absorption by plants decreases in acidic soils (Lyons et al. 2005a). Selenium concentrations determined in different areas of the world are shown in Table 14.4.

Table 14.4 Concentration of Se in wheat worldwide

Country	Selenium (mg/kg)
Algeria	0.021–0.153
Belgium	0.003–0.303
China	Deficient 0.001–0.105
Colombia	180
Greece	0.019–0.528
India	Seleniferous 0.742
	Non-seleniferous 0.010
Ireland	0.060–0.069
Russia	0.044–0.557
Scotland	0.003–0.006
World (average)	0.1–1.9

Adopted from Fordyce (2013), Hira et al. (2004) and Fordyce et al. (2000)

14.4 Factors Influencing Selenium Availability in Soil

There are many factors which determine availability of Se in soil (Fig. 14.1). These factors include organic matter content, pH of soil, redox conditions in the crop field, speciation of Se, soil texture and mineralogy, etc. (Fordyce 2013).

In natural conditions, the inorganic form of Se, i.e. selenite (SeO_3^{-2}), is more stable because it is absorbed by ligand exchange which is pH dependent. Decrease in pH increases adsorption by ligand exchange. This adsorption and formation of insoluble iron oxide and oxyhydroxide makes selenite less available for absorption by plants (Fig. 14.1). On the other hand, selenate (SeO_4^{-2}) is more soluble and mobile at neutral and alkaline pH, that is why it is easily taken up by plants. This is also supported by comparing uptake of selenate and selenite by plants (Alloway 2013; Kumar et al. 2017; Meena et al. 2015a, b; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Das and Pradhan 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Other inorganic forms of Se present in soil are selenides (Se^{2-}) and elemental selenium (Se^0), which are present in acidic and organic-rich environment. These forms of Se are less available to plants due to their low solubility and oxidation potential. Organic forms of selenium in soil are selenomethionine ($C_5H_{11}NO_2Se$) and selenocysteine ($C_3H_7NO_2Se$). Both of these organic forms are readily available to plants. Order of Se bioavailability of these forms of Se, starting with the most soluble and mobile forms are as follows: selenate (Se^{+6}) > selenomethionine > selenocysteine > selenite (Se^{+4}) > selenium (Se^0) > selenide (Se^{-2}) (Jacobs 1989; Neal 1995; Yanai et al. 2015).

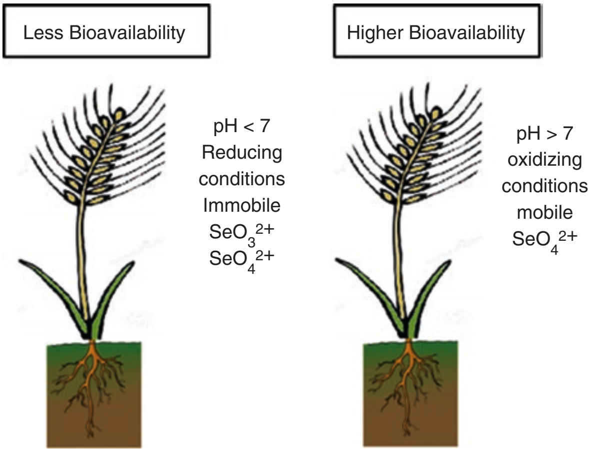


Fig. 14.1 Factors influencing Se availability in soil (Fordyce 2013)

14.5 Plant-Microbe Interaction (PMI) and Plant Growth

To meet the ever-increasing demand of food, it is important to increase per hectare yield of staple food crops; current strategies include the use of fertilizers and chemical pesticides. Although these techniques helped to achieve the target of enhanced production, it also resulted in environmental and health-related problems (Leach and Mumford 2008). So there is a need to introduce ecologically favourable methods to cope up with these nuisances. In this regard, application of plant-microbe interaction can be a good strategy to meet these challenges of high-yield, less pollution, eco-friendly and cost-effective production of food. The rhizosphere microbes (bacteria, fungi, algae, etc.) interact with plant roots and can improve nutrient uptake in plant through root growth promotion, solubilize inorganic nutrients in soil as well as protect plants from various pathogens (Ehlers 2006; Berendsen et al. 2012).

The microbes improve plant growth by the production of different phytohormones such as cytokinins, ethylene, gibberellins and IAA. Although these hormones are also synthesized by plants, these microbes, in particular, play a role for balanced quantity of these hormones in plants, for instance, the role of these microbes in balancing ethylene, inhibitor of plant growth, by controlling its precursor 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboyclic acid (ACC) (Glick 2005). Besides this balancing of hormones, nutrient acquisition helps in direct growth enhancement. One such example is nitrogen fixation by bacteria. These are plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR), which use root exudates and metabolize it to provide nitrogen to plants in turn. Free-living bacteria in soil such as *Azospirillum*, *Burkholderia* and *Stenotrophomonas* also have the capacity to fix nitrogen. Sulphur is also such a nutrient which is provided to plants through oxidation by these microbes (Banerjee and Yesmin 2009).

Another mechanism of supporting plant is by microbial antagonism which includes secretion of diffusible antibiotics, biosurfactants and volatile organic compounds (VOCs) to inhibit pathogenic microorganisms, degradation of toxins and pathogenicity factors and competition for minerals like iron through synthesis of competent siderophore uptake systems. These microbes can help plants by induced systemic resistance (ISR), a phenomenon by which microbes activate the plant to defend itself (Van Loon 2007).The inoculation of efficient microbe in soil and plant systems has a number of advantages when compared to synthesized pesticides and fertilizers. These microbes are safer, because they create less damage to environment and pose less risk to human populations. They are more specific in their activity as small quantities can show high effectiveness with high decomposition rates and can be good candidates for integrated pest management (Berg 2009; Meena et al. 2015e, 2016c, d; Saha et al. 2016a, b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b).

14.6 Role of Selenobacteria (Se-Tolerant Bacteria) in Wheat Growth Promotion and Selenium Uptake

Numerous studies (Yasin et al. 2015a; Duran et al. 2014) in the last two decades support the idea of microbe-supplemented biofortification of wheat. Selenobacteria (Se-tolerant bacteria) isolated from different ecological niches have been explored and studied for their potential in the bioremediation and biofortification of soils (Eswayah et al. 2016). Duran et al. (2013) showed that inoculation of bacteria enhanced translocation of Se to shoots and ultimately increased the Se content of the wheat grain. Another study conducted by same research group shows that ACC deaminase activity of selenobacteria not only protects plant against stress but also improves the Se content of plant and eliminates stress produced due to Se toxicity (Acuna et al. 2013).

Studies conducted by Yasin et al. (2015a) on wheat also showed strong relation between selenobacteria (Fig. 14.2) and wheat growth and their positive role in biofortification of Se and other essential mineral elements in plants. *Bacillus* strains with high tolerance for Se showed significantly improved Se uptake in wheat plants and different plant growth-enhancing attributes including auxin production, more differentiated roots, greater number of leaves, greater dry weight and increased shoot length and higher acid phosphatase activity (Yasin et al. 2015b). Another study by our group showed that bacterial inoculation increased acid phosphatase activity in *T. aestivum* by ~40% (Yasin and Faisal 2013).

Fig. 14.2 Pure culture of selenium-resistant bacteria showing characteristic red colonies on LB agar supplemented with sodium selenite (Na_2SeO_3)

14.7 Uptake of Selenite and Selenate in Microbes and Plants

Less work was carried out on the transport of selenate and selenite into the bacterial cells. Available data showed that two different mechanisms are used by bacteria for uptake of these oxyanions. Selenate ions are transported by sulphate ATP-binding cassette transporter complex (consists of five proteins) which is encoded by the *cys*AWTP operon (Sirko et al. 1990). This complex includes two CysA, which are ATP-binding proteins; CysT and CysW, which are transmembrane proteins; and CysP which is periplasmic sulphate-binding protein. While selenite is transported by sulphate permease in *E. coli* along with ABC transporter complex, blocking of transport complex does not completely prevent the selenite uptake (Turner et al. 1998; Rosen and Liu 2009).

As discussed earlier, Se has similar properties as that of S, so they have some common enzymes for their metabolism. Selenium non-accumulator plants cannot tolerate high Se, and they contain generally less than 25 μg Se gramme^{-1} dry weight (DW) of the plant (White et al. 2004), whereas hyperaccumulator species of plants have high selenium content of 10–15 mg Se gramme^{-1}dry weight of plant. One hypothesis is Se hyperaccumulator plants have the ability to bear high Se content due to their capability to restrict integration of selenomethionine and selenocysteine (SeCys) into cellular proteins (Brown and Shrift 1982; El Mehdawi and Pilon-Smits 2012). This restriction is achieved by conversion of SeMet into amino acids which are not involved in protein formation like ɣ-glutamyl-Se-methylselenocysteine, Se-methylselenocysteine and selenocystathionine (Burnell 1981). The available data shows that Se is not required by plants as there is no codon found for SeCys in plants. However, plants are ought to be significant sources of Se for animal and humans (Sors et al. 2005a, b).

Three readily available forms of Se in soil are selenate, selenite and organic compounds of Se. Uptake of these compounds depends on physiochemical status of soil, i.e. amount of phosphate and sulphate ions and pH. Selenate and sulphate ions compete for transport into the cell; however, these ions are transported against their electrochemical gradients, by cotransport of three protons against one ion (Boldrin et al. 2016). Sulphate is transported via high- and low-affinity sulphate transporter proteins. Literature review showed that high-affinity sulphate transporters are responsible for selenate transport into the plant (Shibagaki et al. 2002). On the other hand, selenite and organic Se compounds have different mechanisms for their transport into the cell. There uptake is passive as compared to selenate which is taken actively (Abrams et al. 1990; Supriatin et al. 2016).

Experiments with wheat showed similar results for the transport and assimilation of Se, and selenate uptake was through high-affinity sulphate transporters in wheat, because S starvation increased selenate uptake. Similarly, selenite uptake in wheat roots is through phosphate transporters, and it is metabolically dependent active process. Assimilation of these two oxyanions is also different as selenate remains in roots and shoots, especially in xylem sap, because its assimilation into organic compounds is quite low, whereas selenite is rapidly metabolized into organic forms in plant tissues. Furthermore, studies show that selenite presence in the soil inhibits selenate uptake (Li et al. 2008; Verma et al. 2014, 2015a, b; Meena et al. 2013b, 2014a, 2016e; Sharma et al. 2016; Masood and Bano 2016; Teotia et al. 2016).

14.8 Selenium Fortification Strategies and Their Worldwide Application

There are various methods and strategies to improve Se content in food and its consumptions by humans. One way is to take Se directly either by supplementation of livestock or by Se pills, while the other way, as discussed in this chapter, is to use agronomic biofortification strategies. Agronomic biofortification is an important tool to enhance Se status of crops. Several recent studies proved that this strategy enhances Se content of crops (Ros et al. 2016). Another strategy is to apply Se fertilizers directly to the soil; however, Se uptake in plants may be affected by various factors such as application time of specific fertilizer, chemical speciation and type of Se in soil. Among the inorganic anions such as selenate and selenite, supply of selenate to plants results in the highest crop response regarding Se uptake in plants (Cartes et al. 2005).

Another strategy is the foliar application of Se fertilizer. This strategy is more effective as compared to Se application through soil, as studies showed that it almost doubles the Se content of the crop. A study by Ducsay and Lozek (2006) showed that the foliar application of 10–20 g Se hector^{-1} increased the Se content of wheat grains. Se content in unfertilized samples was 0.045 mg/kg^{-1}dry weight, whereas when 10 g Sehector^{-1} was applied, this content was raised to 0.088 mg/kg dry weight. It was a combination of foliar and soil-applied Se because the foliar fertilizers are applied before extensive leaf cover. Such fertilizers showed different crop responses when applied on different times of the season. However, Se application through foliar sprays lasts for shorter time in comparison to Se application through soil. Other strategies include granule fertilizers, liquid fertilizers, seed enrichment and use of organic Se fertilizers, but these techniques produce less significant results as compared to the two techniques discussed earlier (Ros et al. 2016; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2014b, 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2016).

The Finnish government made it compulsory to include Se in all multi-nutritional fertilizers since 1984. As a result, an increase in Se content of ~125 analysed food items was noticed, and daily human intake was also increased from just below 25 μg day^{-1} in 1975 to a slightly above 124 μg day^{-1} (Eurola et al. 1991). In Australia, the addition of selenate at a rate of 4–120 g Se hector^{-1} resulted in 133-fold rise in the Se concentration of crops (Lyons et al. 2005b; Meena et al. 2013c, 2015d; Singh et al. 2015; Bahadur et al. 2016a). Similarly, in Romania this technique was also applied because of low levels of Se in the soil, and selected plant growth-promoting bacteria were inoculated to enhance Se concentration in crops (Oancea et al. 2014).

14.9 Conclusions

As selenium is an essential micronutrient for animals and humans. Above certain level it is toxic to the biological system. Several strategies are adapted to overcome the deficiency of selenium in human diet. The use of wheat and other crops which accumulate selenium in association with selenium-resistant bacteria not only boosts the selenium accumulation by plant but may also be a way to amend the selenium-deficient soil with considerable amount of this metalloid. Selenium-biofortified crops can be a good and cheap source of selenium for daily requirements of human population.

Acknowledgements The author would like to thank Higher Education Commission Pakistan and University of the Punjab, Lahore, Pakistan, for the support for the research work to our group.

References

Abrams M, Burau R, Zasoski R (1990) Organic selenium distribution in selected California soils. Soil Sci Soc Am J 54(4):979–982

Acuña JJ, Jorquera MA, Barra PJ, Crowley DE, Mora ML (2013) Selenobacteria selected from the rhizosphere as a potential tool for se biofortification of wheat crops. Biol Fert Soils 49(2):175–185

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Alloway BJ (2013) Introduction. Heavy metals in soils. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 3–9

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Banerjee MR, Yesmin L (2009) Sulfur-oxidizing plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for enhanced canola performance, Google Patents number US7491535

Barceloux DG, Barceloux D (1999) Selenium. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 37(2):145–172

Berendsen RL, Pieterse CM, Bakker PA (2012) The rhizosphere microbiome and plant health. Trends Plant Sci 17(8):478–486

Berg G (2009) Plant–microbe interactions promoting plant growth and health: perspectives for controlled use of microorganisms in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 84(1):11–18. Biol Fert Soil 50(6): 983–990

Boldrin PF, de Figueiredo MA, Yang Y, Luo H, Giri S, Hart JJ, Faquin V, Guilherme LR, Thannhauser TW, Li L (2016) Selenium promotes sulfur accumulation and plant growth in wheat (Triticum aestivum). Physiol Plant 158:80–91

Brigelius-Flohé R, Maiorino M (2013) Glutathione peroxidases. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Gen Subj 1830(5):3289–3303

Brown T, Shrift A (1982) Selenium: toxicity and tolerance in higher plants. Biol Rev 57(1):59–84

Burnell JN (1981) Selenium metabolism in Neptunia amplexicaulis. Plant Physiol 67(2):316–324

Cabaraux JF, Dotreppe O, Hornick JL, Istasse L, Dufrasne I (2007) Les oligo-éléments dans l'alimentation des ruminants: État des lieux, formes et efficacité des apports avec une attention particulière pour le sélénium. CRA-W-Fourrages Actualités, 12ème journée, 2007; 28–36.

Cartes P, Gianfreda L, Mora M (2005) Uptake of selenium and its antioxidant activity in ryegrass when applied as selenate and selenite forms. Plant Soil 276(1–2):359–367

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

De Souza M, Huang C, Chee N, Terry N (1999) Rhizosphere bacteria enhance the accumulation of selenium and mercury in wetland plants. Planta 209(2):259–263

Dixon J, Braun H, Crouch J (2009) Overview: transitioning wheat research to serve the future needs of the developing world. Wheat facts and Futures 2009. Mexico: CIMMYT 23 (4.3):1

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Du Q, Yao H, Yao L, Zhang Z, Lei X, Xu S (2016) Selenium deficiency influences the expression of selenoproteins and inflammatory cytokines in chicken aorta vessels. Biol Trace Elem Res:1–13

Ducsay L, Lozek O (2006) Effect of selenium foliar application on its content in winter wheat grain. Plant Soil Environ 52(2):78

Durán P, Acuña J, Jorquera M, Azcón R, Borie F, Cornejo P, Mora M (2013) Enhanced selenium content in wheat grain by co-inoculation of selenobacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: a preliminary study as a potential se biofortification strategy. J Cereal Sci 57(3):275–280

Durán P, Acuña JJ, Jorquera MA, Azcón R, Paredes C, Rengel Z, de la Luz MM (2014) Endophytic bacteria from selenium-supplemented wheat plants could be useful for plant-growth promotion, biofortification and Gaeumannomyces graminis biocontrol in wheat production. Biol Fertil Soils 50(6):983–990

Ehlers RU (2006) Einsatz der Biotechnologie im biologischen Pflanzenschutz. Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Phytomedizinischen Gesellschaft eV8:17–31

El Mehdawi A, Pilon-Smits E (2012) Ecological aspects of plant selenium hyperaccumulation. Plant Biol 14(1):1–10

Eswayah AS, Smith TJ, Gardiner PH (2016) Microbial transformations of selenium species of relevance to bioremediation. Appl Environ Microbiol 82(16):4848–4859. AEM. 00877-00816

Eurola MH, Ekholm PI, Ylinen ME, Varo PT, Koivistoinen PE (1991) Selenium in Finnish foods after beginning the use of selenate-supplemented fertilisers. J Sci Food Agric 56(1):57–70

Fordyce FM (2013) Selenium deficiency and toxicity in the environment. Essentials of Medical Geology. Springer, pp 375–416

Fordyce FM, Johnson CC, Navaratna UR, Appleton JD, Dissanayake CB (2000) Selenium and iodine in soil, rice and drinking water in relation to endemic goitre in Sri Lanka. Sci Total Environ 263(1):127–141

Gao X, Zhang Z, Li Y, Shen P, Hu X, Cao Y, Zhang N (2016) Selenium deficiency facilitates inflammation following S. aureus infection by regulating TLR2-related pathways in the mouse mammary gland. Biol Trace Elem Res 172 (2):449–457

Glick BR (2005) Modulation of plant ethylene levels by the bacterial enzyme ACC deaminase. FEMS Microbiol Lett 251(1):1–7

Han J, Liang H, Yi J, Tan W, He S, Wu X, Shi X, Ma J, Guo X (2016) Selenium deficiency induced damages and altered expressions of metalloproteinases and their inhibitors (MMP1/3, TIMP1/3) in the kidneys of growing rats. J Trace Elem Med Biol 34:1–9

Hira CK, Partal K, Dhillon K (2004) Dietary selenium intake by men and women in high and low selenium areas of Punjab. Public Hlth Nutri 7(01):39–43

Jacobs LW (ed) (1989) Selenium in agriculture and the environment, Soil science Society of America special publication 23. SSSA, Madison

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pur Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Ker K, Seguin P, Driscoll BT, Fyles JW, Smith DL (2014) Evidence for enhanced N availability during switchgrass establishment and seeding year production following inoculation with rhizosphere endophytes. Arch Agron Soil Sci 60(11):1553–1563

Khalid S, Asghar HN, Akhtar MJ, Aslam A, Zahir ZA (2015) Biofortification of iron in chickpea by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Pak J Bot 47:1191–1194

Khoso PA, Pan T, Wan N, Yang Z, Liu C, Li S (2016) Selenium deficiency induces autophagy in immune organs of chickens. Biol Trace Elem Res:1–10

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pur Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum Aestivum

L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Reg. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Leach A, Mumford J (2008) Pesticide environmental accounting: a method for assessing the external costs of individual pesticide applications. Environ Pollut 151(1):139–147

Li HF, McGrath SP, Zhao FJ (2008) Selenium uptake, translocation and speciation in wheat supplied with selenate or selenite. New Phytol 178(1):92–102

Lyons G, Ortiz-Monasterio I, Stangoulis J, Graham R (2005a) Selenium concentration in wheat grain: is there sufficient genotypic variation to use in breeding? Plant Soil 269(1–2):369–380

Lyons GH, Judson GJ, Ortiz-Monasterio I, Genc Y, Stangoulis JC, Graham RD (2005b) Selenium in Australia: selenium status and biofortification of wheat for better health. J Trace Elem Med Biol 19(1):75–82

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Mayland HF (1994) Selenium in plant and animal nutrition. In: Frankkenberger, WT BS (eds) selenium in the environment. Marcel-Dekker, New York, pp 29–47

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res. 45 (1,2 & 3): 6-12.

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. The Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) Bangladesh J. Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (Pisum sativum L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Neal RH (1995) Selenium. In: Alloway BJ (ed) Heavy metals in soils. Blackie Academic & Professional, London, pp 260–283

Nelson GC, Rosegrant MW, Palazzo A, Gray I, Ingersoll C, Robertson R, Tokgoz S, Zhu T, Sulser TB, Ringler C (2010) Food security, farming, and climate change to 2050: scenarios, results, policy options, vol 172. International Food Policy Research Institute, Washington, D C

Oancea F, Szabolcs L, Oancea AO, Lacatusu R, Abraham B, Stanciu-Burileanu MM, Meszaros A, Lungu M (2014) Selenium biofortification biotechnologies of wheat grain in south-eastern part of Romania for a better human health. Studia Universitatis "Vasile Goldis" Arad Seria Stiintele Vietii (Life Sciences Series) 1:24–47

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pieczyńska J, Grajeta H (2015) The role of selenium in human conception and pregnancy. J Trace Elem Med Biol 29:31–38

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rana A, Joshi M, Prasanna R, Shivay YS, Nain L (2012) Biofortification of wheat through inoculation of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and cyanobacteria. Eur J Soil Biol 50:118–126

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Ros G, Rotterdam A, Bussink D, Bindraban P (2016) Selenium fertilization strategies for biofortification of food: an agro-ecosystem approach. Plant Soil 404(1–2):99–112

Rosen BP, Liu Z (2009) Transport pathways for arsenic and selenium: a minireview. Environ Int 35(3):512–515

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from indo-Gangetic plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shibagaki N, Rose A, McDermott JP, Fujiwara T, Hayashi H, Yoneyama T, Davies JP (2002) Selenate-resistant mutants of *Arabidopsis thaliana* identify SULTR1; 2, a sulfate transporter required for efficient transport of sulfate into roots. Plant J 29(4):475–486

Shiferaw B, Smale M, Braun HJ, Duveiller E, Reynolds M, Muricho G (2013) Crops that feed the world10. Past successes and future challenges to the role played by wheat in global food security. Food Secure 5(3):291–317

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (Zea mays) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229–4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak a (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Sirko A, Hryniewicz M, Hulanicka D, Böck A (1990) Sulfate and thiosulfate transport in Escherichia coli K-12: nucleotide sequence and expression of the cysTWAM gene cluster. J Bacteriol 172(6):3351–3357

Sors T, Ellis D, Na G, Lahner B, Lee S, Leustek T, Pickering I, Salt D (2005a) Role of sulfur assimilating enzymes in selenate reduction, tolerance and accumulation in *Astragalus*. Plant J 42:785–792

Sors T, Ellis D, Salt D (2005b) Selenium uptake, translocation, assimilation and metabolic fate in plants. Photosynth Res 86(3):373–389

Supriatin S, Weng L, Comans RN (2016) Selenium-rich dissolved organic matter determines selenium uptake in wheat grown on Low-selenium arable land soils. Plant Soil 408 (1–2):73–94

Suttle NF (2010) Mineral Nutrition of Livestock, 4th edn. MPG Books Group, London, p 565

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Turner RJ, Weiner JH, Taylor DE (1998) Selenium metabolism in *Escherichia coli*. Biometals 11(3):223–227

USGS (2011) 2010 minerals yearbook-selenium and tellurium. United States Geological Survey, Reston

Van Loon L (2007) Plant responses to plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Eur J Plant Pathol 119(3):243–254

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (Brassica oleracea var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

White P, Bowen H, Parmaguru P, Fritz M, Spracklen W, Spiby R, Meacham M, Mead A, Harriman M, Trueman L (2004) Interactions between selenium and sulphur nutrition in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. J Exp Bot 55(404):1927–1937

World Health Organization (1996) Trace elements in human nutrition and health. World Health Organization, Geneva

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yanai J, Mizuhara S, Yamada H (2015) Soluble selenium content of agricultural soils in Japan and its determining factors with reference to soil type, land use and region. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 61(2):312–318

Yasin M, Faisal M (2013) Growth responses of *Triticum aestivum* after inoculating with *Pseudomonas* and *Stenotrophomonas*. Afr J Microbiol Res 7(19):1952–1956

Yasin M, El-Mehdawi A, Anwar A, Pilon-Smits E, Faisal M (2015a) Microbial-enhanced selenium and iron biofortification of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.)-applications in phytoremediation and biofortification. Int J Phytoremediation 17(4):341–347

Yasin M, El-Mehdawi AF, Pilon-Smits EA, Faisal M (2015b) Selenium-fortified wheat: potential of microbes for biofortification of selenium and other essential nutrients. Int J Phytoremediation 17(8):777–786

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zhao J, Xing H, Liu C, Zhang Z, Xu S (2016) Effect of selenium deficiency on nitric oxide and heat shock proteins in chicken erythrocytes. Biol Trace Elem Res 171(1):208–213

Role of Vesicular-Arbuscular Mycorrhizae in Mobilization of Soil Phosphorus

15

M. Lalitha, K.S. Anil Kumar, S. Dharumarajan,
N. Balakrishnan, R. Srinivasan, K.M. Nair, Rajendra Hegde,
and S.K. Singh

Abstract

The microorganisms play a vital role in sustaining the crop production through improving the soil properties and plant nutrition. Among the microorganisms VAM (vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizae) is a beneficial fungus that plays an important role in soil nutrient dynamics and improving soil physical, chemical and biological properties. Though phosphorus is the second macronutrient required in relatively large amounts by plants next to nitrogen, it is one of the most difficult nutrients for plants to acquire because of its low solubility, low mobility and fixation in soil. The mycorrhizal symbiotic association between fungi and plants plays an important role in the uptake of phosphorus. Many experiments have specified that VAM is able to alter mobilization of soil phosphorus of its host plants. The paper summarizes about mycorrhizal symbiosis of VAM involving multistep colonization process, soil phosphorus dynamics in the rhizosphere and mycorrhizal mechanism and pathways involved in phosphorus availability and uptake.

Keywords

Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizae • Colonization process • Soil phosphorus dynamics • Phosphorus availability and uptake

---

M. Lalitha (✉) • K.S. Anil Kumar • S. Dharumarajan • R. Srinivasan • K.M. Nair • R. Hegde
Regional Centre, ICAR-National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning,
Hebbal, Bangalore 560024, India
e-mail: mslalit@yahoo.co.in

N. Balakrishnan
Department of Soil Science and Agricultural Chemistry, Tamil Nadu Agricultural University,
Coimbatore 64100, India

S.K. Singh
ICAR-National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning,
University P.O., Nagpur 440033, India

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_15

15.1 Introduction

The microorganisms play a vital role in sustaining the crop production through improving the soil properties and plant nutrition. Though the agricultural production has been continued to increase to feed the blooming population in one side, the soil fertility has attained the statue and started to decline because of faulty agricultural practices. Because of that fertile lands are going out of cultivation and increased degradation results increased area under current fallows. In this situation, we must go for a combined use of both organic and inorganic fertilizers in judicious combination based on soil nutrient status to improve and sustain the soil fertility and productivity which is called as integrated nutrient management (INM). One of the major components in INM practices is the use of bio-fertilizers which are prepared from many beneficial microbial inoculants (Meena et al. 2013a, 2016a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b; Ahmad et al. 2016).

The main beneficial activities of microorganisms are increased availability of plant nutrients, improvement of nutrient uptake, production of plant growth regulators, plant protection against root pathogens etc. According to their relationships with the plant, the microorganisms can be divided into saprophytes, parasitic symbionts (pathogen) and mutualistic symbionts (symbionts). The mutualistic symbionts are commonly used in bio-fertilizers because it carries out functions for the plants that they are unable to perform for themselves. For example, the host plant receives mineral nutrients by the organisms, and the microorganism obtains photosynthetically derived carbon compounds from the host plant (Finlay 2008). Among these the microorganism VAM is a beneficial fungus that plays an important role in soil nutrient dynamics and improving soil physical, chemical and biological properties (Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Meena et al. 2016b; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016; Kumar et al. 2016a).

15.2 Mycorrhizal Symbiosis

Frank was the first person to coin the term “Mykorrhizen” in the year 1885 for fungal association in the trees of pines. Mykorrhizen is a Greek term meaning “fungal root”. Paleobotany dates these associations to the Devonian era (~400 million years back). These mycorrhizal associations played predominant role in the transformation of primitive aquatic plants to highly evolved terrestrial plants during the course of evolution. Today, mycorrhiza is the most widespread symbiotic association existing in the ecosystems throughout the world (Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Meena et al. 2015a, b, f; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016).

Members of several fungal taxa are involved in mycorrhizal associations and possess a few common characteristic features such as ubiquitous distribution, strong biotrophic dependence on host plants and rarely free-living saprophytes. To date, seven types of mycorrhizae are recognized, viz. ectomycorrhiza, ectendomycorrhiza, endomycorrhiza, arbutoid mycorrhiza, monotropoid mycorrhiza, ericoid mycorrhiza and orchidoid mycorrhiza (Smith and Read 1997). Allen (1991) defined a mycorrhiza as a mutualistic symbiosis between plant and fungus localized in a root or root-like structure in which energy moves primarily from plant to fungus and inorganic resources move from fungus to plant (Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016c; Saha et al. 2016a; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

15.2.1 Vesicular-Arbuscular Mycorrhizae

Among the mycorrhizal associations, VAM is most widespread in their distribution both genetically and geographically. These fungi lacks sexual reproduction and are classified on the basis of their characteristic chlamydospore size, shape, colour and wall characters. This group includes members of order *Glomales* in class *Zygomycotina.* It encompasses seven genera, viz. *Glomus*, *Gigaspora*, *Modicella*, *Acaulospora*, *Sclerocystis*, *Endogone* and *Glaziella* with more than 150 species. VAM is beneficial symbionts that colonize a wide range of host roots that include both agricultural and horticultural plants. However, a few plant families such as Amaranthaceae, Brassicaceae, Cruciferae, Chenopodiaceae, Caryophyllaceae, Juncaceae, Cyperaceae and Polygonaceae do not exhibit any association (Smith and Read 1997; Brundrett 2009).

15.2.2 Multistep Colonization Process

Mycorrhiza formation is the multistep colonization metabolic process, which involves plant fungal colonization followed by a series of root-fungus interactions. The results give way to the integration of both organisms and development of a well-adapted unity (Fig. 15.1). This efficient mycorrhizal colonization begins with hyphae that arise from soil borne propagules which are called large resting spores of the mycorrhizal plant or mycorrhizal root fragments. Upon the arrival of the fungal hyphae at the root surface, an appressorium is usually formed on the epidermal cells. The appressoria facilitate the hyphae to pass through the intercellular spaces and then enter into root tissues through cortical root layers. Once the hyphae reach the inner cortex, they will grow into the cells as repeated dichotomous branching which forms tree-like structures called arbuscules (Garg and Chandel 2010).

The lifespan of individual arbuscules is about 4–14 days. Arbuscule formation therefore represents a large surface of cellular contact between both symbionts. This facilitates the exchange of metabolites between host and fungus. In fact, the arbuscule is probably the main transfer site of mineral nutrients from the fungus to the plant and C compounds to the fungus (Smith and Smith 1990). This mycelial network could extend several centimetres outside the root surface and bridge the nutrient depletion zone around roots with the bulk soil to absorb low-mobile ions (Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Saha et al. 2016b; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Meena et al.

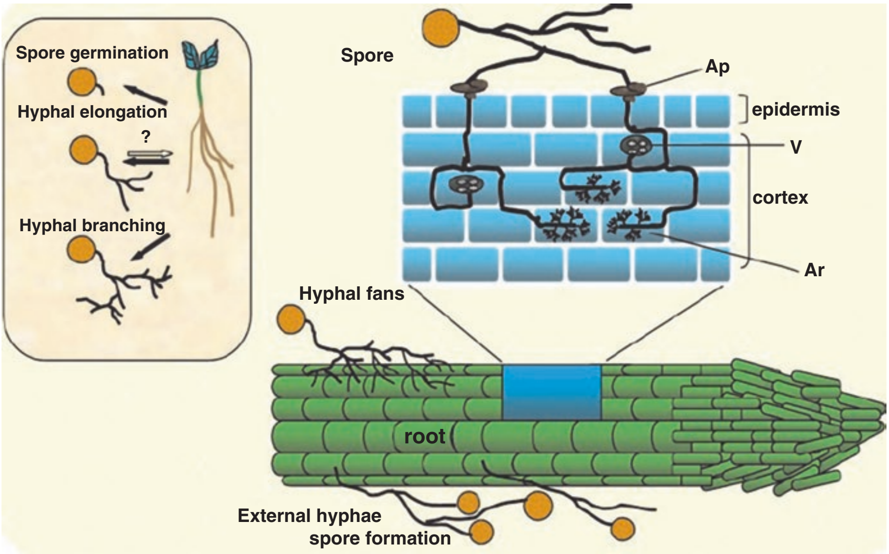


Fig. 15.1 Mycorrhizal multistep colonization (Adapted from Gadkar et al. 2011)

2013b, 2014a, 2015e, 2016d, e; Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Shrivastava et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016; Teotia et al. 2016). The factors which influence the mycorrhizal association are host plant, mycorrhizal fungi, soil and environmental conditions (Barea 1991). If any one of these factors is inhibitory to mycorrhizal fungi, the symbiosis will be inhibited even if other factors are optimum (Liu et al. 2000).

15.3 Soil Phosphorus Dynamics in the Rhizosphere

The adequate amount of soil phosphorus is required to enhance shoot and root growth and promote early maturity which in turn help to increase water use efficiency (WUE) and yield potential because it is the element, which helps to store and transfer energy produced by photosynthesis (Tairo and Ndakidemi 2013). Though phosphorus is the second macronutrient required in relatively large amounts by plants next to nitrogen, it is one of the most difficult nutrients for plants to acquire because of its low solubility, low mobility and fixation in soil (Balemi and Negisho 2012).

The availability of soil phosphorus is affected by the presence of Fe and Al oxides which fix phosphorus as Fe and Al phosphates and clay minerals in highly weathered alfisol, ultisol and oxisols and as Ca phosphates under calcareous soils (Amanullah et al. 2010). Despite its availability, the phosphorus uptake is influenced by the rooting type, soil properties and soil moisture availability. Since the P availability depends on many factors, most of the plant phosphorus requirement has been met by diffusion process rather than by mass flow and root interception. In the diffusion process, once the phosphate is adsorbed strongly by the soil, its effective diffusion coefficient value becomes low, which creates a steep concentration gradient in the soil (Kanno et al. 2016). Hence the soil phosphate near the root zone only could reach the root surface to meet the plant requirements and ultimately plant express phosphorus deficiency when the demand is more than the availability exist in soil.

15.3.1 Mycorrhizal Effects on Phosphorus Availability Mechanism

The mycorrhizal symbiotic association between fungi and plants plays an important role in the uptake of phosphorus. Phosphorus has very limited mobility in soils and despite of its low availability it has been utilized quickly around roots and form depletion zones. Thus to obtain more phosphorus, plants must bypass these depletion zones by further root activity. The increased P uptake of mycorrhizal plants is mainly due to absorption and translocation of P from distant areas, which are otherwise inaccessible to plant roots. Hyphae absorb P in the form of orthophosphate and transported actively as polyphosphates (Tinker and Nye 2000; Hinsinger 2001; Plassard and Dell 2010).

The increase in absorption of P by mycorrhizal plants has been attributed to increase in surface area for absorption (Smith and Read 2008; Smith and Smith 2011a). The fineness of hyphae has twofold advantages over root hairs by increase in the surface area of hyphae for greater absorption of nutrient and increase the area of exploration by enabling the entry of hyphae into soil pores which cannot be entered by root hairs. Rapid absorption of soluble form of P by the extra radical hyphae leads to a shift in the equilibrium towards the release of bound P from the soil reserves. It has often been observed that mycorrhizal roots on a unit weight basis absorbed much higher amounts of P than non-mycorrhizal plants. This suggests that mycorrhizal fungus hyphae have higher affinity for phosphate ions at lower threshold concentration for absorption than do plant roots (Bolan 1991).

15.3.2 Mycorrhizal Pathway of Phosphorus Uptake

There are two possible ways in which soil phosphorus has been taken up by the plants: (i) direct pathway and (ii) AM pathway (Smith et al. 2011). Generally plants uptake phosphorus through direct pathway as negatively charged $H_2PO_4^-$ ions which increase negative electric potential inside the cell membrane because of high cell concentration compared to soil solution. Hence an additional metabolic energy required for the Pi uptake, and it needs high-affinity transporter proteins. So the pathway is more effective in the root apex which has high-affinity transporter proteins (PiTs) in the epidermis. But after a certain period of time, two things will happen. The first is when loss of root hairs started, the transporter protein (PiT)

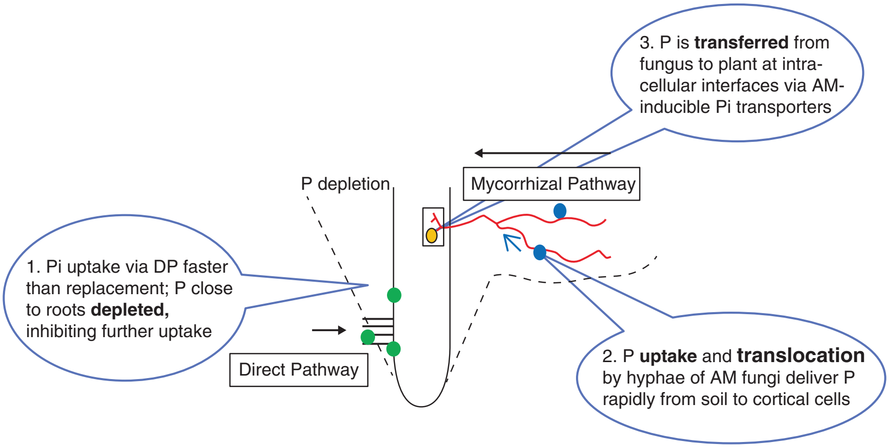


Fig. 15.2 The phosphorus uptake pathways of mycorrhizal root (Adapted from Smith et al. 2011)

activity will reduce, and certainly direct uptake will decline. Second, the uptake of phosphorus as orthophosphate (Pi) by root epidermal cells leads to lower the Pi concentrations in the root rhizosphere making zone of depletion (Smith and Smith 2011b; Balzergue et al. 2011).

Accordingly plants developed a range of strategies to enhance Pi uptake capacity (Marschner 1995) and among one is AM pathway (Fig. 15.2) in which soil phosphorus is foraged from large volumes of soil and transported to cortical cells evaded direct uptake. In the mycorrhizal pathway AM fungal hyphae uptake the orthophosphate (Pi) by fungal Pi transporters from the root and directly translocated into the intracellular fungal structures of arbuscules and hyphal coils which is present in root cortical cells (Smith et al. 2011). The fungal Pi transporters are specific to AM pathway, and it is different from the direct uptake expressed exclusively in the colonized cortical cell. The plant Pi transporters induced in colonized cells transfer Pi from the interfacial apoplast to the plant cortical cells and meet the plant requirement (Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2013c, 2014b, 2015c, d; Sindhu et al. 2016; Singh et al. 2015, 2016).

15.4 Mycorrhiza and Soil Phosphorus Uptake

The association between concentrations of extractable soil phosphate and the extent of mycorrhizal colonization in plants are ambiguous. Sites with large amounts of extractable phosphate may have high levels of infection and large numbers of spores, whereas sites with small amounts of extractable phosphate may have low levels of colonization or low numbers of spores (Gianinazzi-Pearson et al. 1980; Almagrabi and Abdelmoneim 2012). In contradictory Rathore and Singh (1995) and Ezawa et al. (2005) reported that plant inoculation with VAM in the absence of added P significantly increased the available soil P because of the release of organic

Table 15.1 Available soil phosphorus (mg kg^{-1}) under maize crop at 45 DAS as influenced by VAM inoculation

	Phosphorus doses (kg ha^{-1})					
Mycorrhizal strain	0	15	30	45	60	Mean
Uninoculated	5.1	6.5	8.3	8.8	10.5	7.9
G. margarita	5.8	6.5	8.8	10.6	11.4	8.6
G. fasciculatum	6.5	7.5	8.8	11.3	12.6	9.4
VAM mixed endophyte	6.0	7.5	8.4	10.9	11.5	8.9
CD($P = 0.01$)	M 0.1		P 0.1		M × P 0.2	

Rathore and Singh (1995)

exudates in the rhizosphere and concluded that mycorrhizal inoculam may substitute phosphatic fertilizer equivalent of 30 kg P ha^{-1} (Table 15.1).

However, in some studies a negative association has been found between the amounts of extractable phosphate in soils and the abundance of VAM fungi as assessed by infection (Liu et al. 2000). Adding phosphate fertilizers has been shown either to have no effect (Kahiluoto et al. 2001) or to decrease (Ryan and Graham 2002) the level of mycorrhizal infection in a range of agricultural crops. This relationship is probably correlated with effects of phosphate on lengths of root colonized. The low percentage of root length colonized at high phosphorus availability does not necessarily imply plant suppression or control of fungal activity; there may be no effects of high phosphorus on the fungus per se (Marschner 1995; Mathimaran et al. 2005; Beauregard et al. 2010). But very high phosphorus application can definitely alter root colonization particularly reducing arbuscule development and decrease mycorrhizal fungal biomass per plant (Smith and Read 2008).

In addition reductions in appressorium formation were also observed in *Pisum sativum* roots at high phosphorus which was arbitrated by internal plant-derived signals (Balzergue et al. 2011). When phosphorus is abundant, a direct possibly less costly uptake pathway is preferred and the rate of root colonization also low (Nagy et al. 2008). However, a group of secondary metabolites called strigolactones which mediate signalling necessary for root colonization has strong negative effect with high phosphorus supply in various species (Lopez-Raez et al. 2008) which is also one of the reasons for the less colonization. Furthermore, the effect of soil phosphorus on mycorrhizal fungal diversity is also confounded by factors such as host species (Gosling et al. 2013).

15.4.1 Rate and Source of P Application vs. VAM Colonization

The sources of different phosphorus fertilizer do not have any significant effect on mycorrhizal infection when it was applied in low rate. The effect of phosphorus source is evident where the rate of fertilizer application is high. The high root length infection is always associated with rock phosphate compared to superphosphate. Phosphate in the soil solution derived from the Ghafsa phosphate rock source is expected to be different from the superphosphate source, and so the difference in infectivity associated with the higher rate of superphosphate application could also have been due to the differences in the rates of dissolution of superphosphate and phosphate rock to provide phosphorus in the soil solution over a given period (Asmah 1995).

15.4.2 Phosphorous Interaction with Zn

It is believed that soil phosphorus has antagonistic interactions with Zn, when any one of the nutrients available in soil is in excess (Gianquinto et al. 2000), and such a relationship is a result of the dilution effect of plant growth due to improved P nutrition. Further a study by Lu et al. (1998) demonstrated an increase in P availability caused no significant change in Zn concentrations of *Brassica napus*, and interactions of P and Zn in *Oryza sativa* and *Triticum aestivum* were additive and beneficial to the concentrations of P and Zn (Islam et al. 2005). The interaction remains uncertain, and the presence or absence of mycorrhizal association on the relationship was hypothesized, despite the fact that much literature has indicted that mycorrhizal fungal colonization promotes P or Zn nutrition of host plants independently. The high avaialble P (P addition up to 40 mg kg^{-1}) in soil has increased plant available zinc, whereas at higher P levels, the zinc translocation was inhibited (Rupa et al. 2003) (Table 15.2).

There was a synergistic interaction between P and Zn, which had resulted in extensive root growth in colonized plants. There is a strong positive relationship between Zn and P contents in the roots (r = 0.95; P < 0.001) and also in shoots (r = 0.96; P < 0.001) (Subramanian et al. 2008).

Table 15.2 Effects of different rates and sources of phosphorus application on root infection, nutrient concentration and uptake of soil phosphorus in maize crop (Asmah 1995)

Soil	Treatment	Root infection (%)	Nutrient concentration (μg g^{-1})	Nutrient uptake (mg/pot)
Paleustal	Control	47.50	1.26	1.65
	TSP1	78.30	1.27	2.58
	TSP2	52.30	2.18	4.38
	PR1	68.90	1.61	2.71
	PR2	75.00	1.61	3.73
Haplustoll	Control	58.00	0.99	1.12
	TSP1	63.80	1.40	2.81
	TSP2	50.00	1.37	3.21
	PR1	77.60	1.12	2.18
	PR2	80.25	1.16	2.33
	LSD (P < 0.01)	16.48	0.39	0.68

TSP1 triple superphosphate at 44 kg P ha^{-1}, *TSP2* triple superphosphate at 22 kg P ha^{-1}, *PR1* rock phosphate at 44 kg P ha^{-1}, *PR2* rock phosphate at 22 kg P ha^{-1}

15.4.3 Phosphatase

Soil phosphatase plays an important role in the P nutrition of plants because it mediates the release of inorganic phosphorus from organically bound phosphorus. Mycorrhizal colonization has been shown to influence the phosphatase activity, particularly the increased alkaline phosphatase activity in the presence of mycorrhizal hyphae (Tarafdar and Marschner 1994). Acid phosphatases have also been reported in mycorrhizal fungi, and although their function is unclear, they may be associated with the growth and development of the fungus within the host tissue as well as with phosphorus acquisition in the rhizosphere. Subramanian et al. (2009) reported that acid phosphatase activity of VAM-colonized soils was higher irrespective of the stages of observation, but the increase was well exhibited at early stages than in the later stages.

15.5 Phosphorus Uptake Under Drought

Plant water use efficiency has been accounted to decrease, increase or remain unchanged with mycorrhizal colonization depending on plant or fungal species combination considered (Auge 2001). The positive effects of mycorrhizal colonization on plant water relations could be explained simply in terms of the improved phosphorus nutrition and larger biomass size of mycorrhizal plants. Increased phosphorus uptake promoted root growth, which in turn enhanced the hydraulic conductivity and transpiration rate in mycorrhizal colonization plants (Bethlenfalvay et al. 1988). Hence the contribution of mycorrhizal colonization towards plant drought tolerance may be due to the impact of accumulative physical, nutritional, physiological and cellular effects imposed by vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizae (Davies et al. 1992).

15.6 Conclusions

The fertilizer phosphate is becoming one of the most expensive commodities, and its availability is uncertain; the crop production will be critical, particularly in rainfed regions, where the fertilizer application is mainly based on rainfall distribution. In this situation mycorrhizal plant colonization is very useful in conserving energy by reducing fertilizer requirement of crops and in meeting the production targets in nutritionally deficient soils. The omnipresent nature, increased phosphorous uptake, drought tolerance and increased plant growth benefit by mycorrhizal colonization, which is important to increase the absorption of other relatively immobile elements in soil and a step towards the sustainability of the healthy soil and plant ecosystem.

Acknowledgements We thank the editors and anonymous reviewers for their constructive comments, which helped us to improve the manuscript.

References

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Allen MF (1991) The ecology of mycorrhizae. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, p 184

Almagrabi OA, Abdelmoneim TS (2012) Using of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi to reduce the deficiency effect of phosphorous fertilization on maize plants (*Zea mays* L.) Life Sci J 9(4):1648–1654

Amanullah, Zakirullah M, Khalil SK (2010) Timing and rate of phosphorus application influence maize phenology, yield and profitability in Northwest Pakistan. Int J Plant Prod 4:281–292

Asmah AE (1995) Effect of phosphorus source and rate of application on VAM fungal infection and growth of maize (*Zea mays* L.). Mycorrhiza 5(3):223–228

Auge RM (2001) Water relations, drought and vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Mycorrhiza 11:3–42

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Balemi T, Negisho K (2012) Management of soil phosphorus and plant adaptation mechanisms to phosphorus stress for sustainable crop production: a review. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 12(3):547–562

Balzergue C, Puech Pages V, Becard G, Rochange SF (2011) The regulation of arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis by phosphate in pea involves early and systemic signalling events. J Exp Bot 62:1049–1060

Barea JM (1991) Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizae as modifiers of soil fertility. In: Stewart BA (ed) Advances in soil science. Springer, New York, pp l–40

Beauregard MS, Hamel C, Atul-Nayyar St-Arnaud M (2010) Long-term phosphorus fertilization impacts soil fungal and bacterial diversity but not AM fungal community in alfalfa. Microb Ecol 59:379–389

Bethlenfalvay GJ, Thomas RS, Dakessian S, Brown MS, Ames RN, Whitehead EE (1988) Mycorrhizae in stressed environments: effects on plant growth, endophyte development, soil stability and soil water. In: Hutchinson CF, Timmermann BN (eds) Arid lands: today and tomorrow. Westview, Boulder, pp 1015–1029

Bolan NS (1991) A critical review on the role of mycorrhizal fungi in the uptake of phosphorus by plants. Plant Soil 134:189–207

Brundrett MC (2009) Mycorrhizal associations and other means of nutrition of vascular plants: understanding the global diversity of host plants by resolving conflicting information and developing reliable means of diagnosis. Plant Soil 320:37–77

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

Davies FT, Potter JR, Linderman RG (1992) Mycorrhiza and repeated drought exposure affect drought resistance and extraradical hyphae development of pepper plants independent of plant size and nutrient content. J Plant Physiol 139:289–294

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds)

Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Ezawa T, Hayatsu M, Saito M (2005) A new hypothesis on the strategy for acquisition of phosphorus in arbuscular mycorrhiza: upregulation of secreted acid phosphatase gene in the host plant. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:1046–1053

Finlay RD (2008) Ecological aspects of mycorrhizal symbiosis: with special emphasis on the functional diversity of interactions involving the extraradical mycelium. J Exp Bot 59(5):1115–1126

Gadkar V, David-Schwartz R, Kunik T, Kapulnik Y (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal colonization. Factors involved in host recognition. Plant Physiol 127:1493–1499

Garg N, Chandel S (2010) Arbuscular mycorrhizal networks: process and functions. A review. Agron Sustain Dev 30:581–599

Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Trouvelot A, Morandi D, Marocke R (1980) Ecological variations in endomycorrhizas associated with raspberry populations in the Vosges region. Acta Oecologia Ecol Plant 1:111–119

Gianquinto G, Abu-Rayyan A, Tola LD, Piccotino D, Pezzarossa B (2000) Interaction effects of phosphorus and zinc on photosynthesis, growth and yield of dwarf bean grown in two environments. Plant Soil 220:219–228

Gosling P, Mead A, Proctor M, Hammond JP, Bending GD (2013) Contrasting arbuscular mycorrhizal communities colonizing different host plants show a similar response to a soil phosphorus concentration gradient. New Phytol 198:546–556. doi:10.1111/nph.12169

Hinsinger P (2001) Bioavailability of soil inorganic P in the rhizosphere as affected by root-induced chemical changes: a review. Plant Soil 237:173–195

Islam MN, Hoque S, Islam A (2005) Interactive effects of phosphorus and zinc in wheat, rice and mungbean. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 53:221–227

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Kahiluoto H, Ketoja E, Vestberg M, Saarela I (2001) Promotion of AM utilization through reduced P fertilization 2. Field studies. Plant Soil 231:65–79

Kanno S, Arrighi J-F, Chiarenza S, Bayle V, Berthome R, Peret B, Javot H, Delannoy E, Marin E, Nakanishi TM, Thibaud M-C, Nussaume L (2016) A novel role for the root cap in phosphate uptake and homeostasis. eLife 5:e14577. doi:10.7554/eLife.14577

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016a) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016b) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with Enterobacter and Rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Liu AC, Hamel RI, Hamilton SDL (2000) Mycorrhizae formation and nutrient uptake of new corn (*Zea mays* L.) hybrids with extreme canopy and leaf architecture as influenced by soil N and P levels. Plant Soil 221:157–166

Lopez-Raez JA, Charnikhova T, Gomez-Roldan V, Matusova R, Kohlen W, De Vos R, Verstappen F, Puech-Pages V, Becard G, Mulder P, Bouwmeester H (2008) Tomato strigolactones are derived from carotenoids and their biosynthesis is promoted by phosphate starvation. New Phytol 178:863–874

Lu ZG, Grewal HS, Graham RD (1998) Dry matter production and uptake of zinc and phosphorus in two oilseed rape genotypes under differential rates of zinc and phosphorus supply. J Plant Nutr 21:25–38

Marschner H (1995) Mineral nutrition of higher plants, 2nd edn. Academic, London

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Mathimaran N, Ruh R, Vullioud P, Frossard E, Jansa J (2005) Glomus intraradices dominates arbuscular mycorrhizal communities in a heavy textured agricultural soil. Mycorrhiza 16:61–66

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of Inceptisol and Alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sustain Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1, 2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bangladesh J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015c) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015d) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015e) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatalysis Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016b) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016c) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016d) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016e) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Nagy R, Drissner D, Amrhein N, Jakobsen I, Bucher M (2008) Mycorrhizal phosphate uptake pathway in tomato is phosphorus-repressible and transcriptionally regulated. New Phytol 181:950–959

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Plassard C, Dell B (2010) Phosphorus nutrition of mycorrhizal trees. Tree Physiol 30(9):1129–1139. doi:10.1093/treephys/tpq063

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rathore VP, Singh HP (1995) Influence of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and phosphate on maize. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 43(2):207–210

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Rupa TR, Rao CS, Subba Rao A, Singh M (2003) Effects of farmyard manure and phosphorus on zinc transformations and phyto-availability in two alfisols of India. Bioresour Technol 87(3):279–288

Ryan MH, Graham JH (2002) Is there a role for arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in production agriculture? Plant Soil 244:263–271

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016a) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016b) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Smith SE, Read DJ (1997) Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizas. In: Mycorrhizal symbiosis. (2nd ed) Academic, New York, pp 9–126

Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbiosis, 3rd edn. Academic, New York

Smith SE, Smith FA (1990) Structure and function of the interfaces in biotrophic symbioses as they relate to nutrient transport. New Phytol 114:l–38

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011a) Fresh perspectives on the roles of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in plant nutrition and growth In Press at Mycologia, published on September 20, 2011 as doi:10.3852/11-229

Smith SE, Smith FA (2011b) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant nutrition and growth: new paradigms from cellular to ecosystems scales. Annu Rev Plant Biol 63:227–250

Smith SE, Jakobsen I, Gronlund M, Andrew Smith F (2011) Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant phosphorus nutrition: interactions between pathways of phosphorus uptake in arbuscular mycorrhizal roots have important implications for understanding and manipulating plant phosphorus acquisition. Plant Physiol 156:1050–1057

Subramanian KS, Bharathi C, Jegan A (2008) Response of maize to mycorrhizal colonization at varying levels of zinc and phosphorus. Biol Fertil Soils 45:133–144

Subramanian KS, Tenshia V, Jayalakshmi K, Ramachandran V (2009) Biochemical changes and zinc fractions in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus (Glomus intraradices) inoculated and uninoculated soils under differential zinc fertilization. Appl Soil Ecol 43:32–39

Tairo EV, Ndakidemi PA (2013) Possible benefits of rhizobial inoculation and phosphorus supplementation on nutrition, growth and economic sustainability in grain legumes. Am J Res Commun 1(12):532–556

Tarafdar JC, Marschner H (1994) Phosphatase activity in the rhizosphere and hyphosphere of VA-mycorrhizal wheat supplied with inorganic and organic phosphorus. Soil Biol Biochem 26:387–395

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Tinker PB, Nye PH (2000) Solute movement in the rhizosphere. Oxford University Press, New York

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var capitata). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can Bacillus spp. enhance K+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, New Delhi, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

The Role of Soil Microbes in Crop Biofortification

16

Darren Heenan Daly, Siva L.S. Velivelli,
and Barbara Doyle Prestwich

Abstract

Agronomic practices across the planet are becoming largely unsustainable in their current forms. With a growing population expected to reach ~9 billion by the year 2050, more sustainable ways to produce the world's main crops are needed. The main focus of current agronomic practices, especially in the case of cereal crops, is increased grain number and weight sometimes at the expense of nutritional content leading, in some instances, to micronutrient deficiencies. Micronutrient deficiencies are often termed *hidden hunger*, giving the false appearance that an individual is consuming sufficient amounts of nutrients. To counteract this problem, it is crucial that a sustainable solution to increase micronutrient concentration in a diverse range of crops is found. Plant growth-promoting microbes (PGPM) represents a sustainable solution to this problem. These PGPM can be divided into two main groups: plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and plant growth-promoting fungi (PGPF). These microbes are capable of increasing micronutrient concentrations in many crops worldwide. This chapter will focus on the use of these microbes to increase micronutrient content, in particular selenium, iron and zinc, using studies conducted over the last two decades right up to the present day, revealing how plant-microbe interactions and our ever-growing knowledge of these interactions can aid in the micronutrient biofortification of crops in a sustainable and environmentally friendly way.

D.H. Daly • B.D. Prestwich (✉)
School of Biological, Earth and Environmental Science, University College Cork,
Butler Building, Distillery Fields, North Mall Campus, Cork, Ireland
e-mail: 108590052@umail.ucc.ie; b.doyle@ucc.ie

S.L.S. Velivelli
Donald Danforth Plant Science Center, 975 North Warson Road, St. Louis, MO 63132, USA
e-mail: svelivelli@danforthcenter.org

V.S. Meena et al. (eds.), *Agriculturally Important Microbes for Sustainable Agriculture*, DOI 10.1007/978-981-10-5589-8_16

Keywords
Plant growth-promoting microbes • Sustainability • Micronutrients • Biofortification

16.1 Introduction

The pressure to produce sufficient nutritionally rich food in a sustainable manner has never been greater. With a growing global population (~9 billion by 2050), changing demographics and climate, pressure on resources such as water and land use, emergence of novel and more virulent pests and pathogens and changes in regulations with respect to the use of agrichemicals, food security is predicted to become increasingly vulnerable (FAO 2016). The United Nations through the 'Sustainable Development Goals Project' (UN 2015) has identified 17 goals to transform our world. Second on this list is the goal to 'end hunger, achieve food security and improve nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture'.

Nowadays, ~800 million people are undernourished with the vast majority living in developing countries. It is estimated that malnutrition contributes to the death of ~3.0 million children annually. Micronutrient deficiencies also known as hidden hunger where the intake of various vitamins and minerals (e.g. iron, iodine, selenium, zinc, folic acid and vitamin A) is too low for optimal health are a global issue affecting ~2 billion people (Trijatmiko et al. 2016). Nutritional deficiencies not only impact on an individual's health but also on their economic prosperity. The economic cost of micro- and macronutrient deficiencies has been estimated at ~2 trillion US dollars annually. Therefore, improving nutritional health is probably the major socio-economic challenge of this century. The nutritional content of our food crops can be enhanced in various ways. This enhancement is termed 'biofortification' which according to the World Health Organization (WHO) is defined as 'the process by which the nutritional quality of food crops is improved through agronomic practices, conventional plant breeding, or modern biotechnology' (WHO 2016a).

Probably the most famous biofortification project using genetic modification is the production of Golden Rice (Golden Rice 2016), whose benefits although clearly identified has faced much public opposition where it is perceived by many as the 'Trojan horse' for genetically modified crops. Genetic modification, particularly in Europe, is anathema to many, and as a consequence, Golden Rice is still not commercially available (International Rice Research Institute 2016). Besides genetic transformation approaches to biofortification, other biofortification strategies, including initiatives such as those followed in programs by HarvestPlus (2016) for the biofortification of rice, involve a combination of conventional breeding strategies for the exploitation of existing genetic variation in crop germplasm coupled with agronomic strategies, e.g. foliar and soil application of fertilizers (Nakandalage et al. 2016; Amanullah et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2013a; Bahadur et al. 2014; Maurya et al. 2014; Kumar et al. 2016c).

More recently, an understanding of the complex interactions between plant roots and microbial communities in the rhizosphere has fuelled research into the role and application of soil microbes in the biofortification of crops. There are many reports in the literature on the role of bacteria and mycorrhizal fungi in the mobilization of micronutrients in plants (Wu et al. 2015; Wang et al. 2014; Krishnakumar et al. 2013; Berruti et al. 2016). This chapter will focus in particular on crop biofortification by bacterial- and mycorrhizal-mediated mobilization of the micronutrients iron (Fe), zinc (Zn) and selenium (Se) from the rhizosphere (Jat et al. 2015; Kumar et al. 2015, 2016b; Ahmad et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016a, b; Parewa et al. 2014; Prakash and Verma 2016; Jaiswal et al. 2016; Jha and Subramanian 2016).

16.2 The Application of Plant Growth-Promoting Rhizobacteria for the Biofortification of Crops

The rhizosphere, an important interface between plant roots and the soil, can contribute to sustainable agriculture when the interaction between plants and beneficial bacteria is exploited. It has been ~35 years since Kloepper first described the role of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) in plant growth and defence (Kloepper et al. 1980). PGPR when associated with rhizosphere/plant roots play a major role in the direct or indirect promotion of plant growth. The direct plant growth promoter mechanisms, biofertilization and phytostimulation, are two examples of methods that simultaneously minimize the use of chemical fertilizers and promote plant growth, and bacteria with both biocontrol and biofertilization/phytostimulation properties offer advantage to plants in terms of both enhanced nutrient supply and control of disease (Adesemoye and Kloepper 2009; Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009; Glick 2012; Velivelli et al. 2014).

The recent work in the area of plant-microbe interactions has focused on the biofortification of staple crops using these PGPR, showing significant results. The WHO has identified micronutrients which are essential to the correct functioning of the human body, i.e. selenium (Se), iron (Fe) and zinc (Zn), and these constitute a significant portion of the current research on PGPR-mediated biofortification (Priyadharsini and Muthukumar 2016; Kumar et al. 2017; Meena et al. 2015a, b, f; Raghavendra et al. 2016; Zahedi 2016; Dominguez-Nunez et al. 2016; Dotaniya et al. 2016). These three micronutrients will be discussed further in relation to the biofortification of crops using PGPR.

16.2.1 Selenium

16.2.1.1 The Importance of the Trace Element Selenium in the Human Diet

Selenium (Se), a significant trace element in the human diet, is classified as a metalloid and occurs in the environment in different valences as selenide ($^{2-}$), selenite ($^{4+}$), selenate ($^{6+}$) or elemental Se (0). Se has implications for biological processes, such as anti-oxidation and prevention of certain cancers, e.g. liver cancer (Carlson et al. 2012) and colorectal cancer (Meplan and Hesketh 2012). Selenoproteins, i.e. proteins that contain a selenocysteine amino acid residue, facilitate adequate DNA synthesis, protection against diseases such as HIV, reproduction and thyroid hormone metabolism (Sunde 2012; Hatfield et al. 2014). A delicate balance occurs in humans between having too much and too little Se in the diet. Se levels that are too high can lead to selenotoxicity, resulting in symptoms ranging from nervous system disorders to nail and hair loss (Li et al. 2012), and selenium levels that are too low can lead to inadequate levels of protection against radioactive damage to DNA, which can result in micronuclei formation and potentially cancer (Baliga et al. 2008).

16.2.1.2 The Role of PGPR in the Mobilization of Selenium for the Biofortification of Plants

Plant roots have the capacity to absorb Se as selenate, selenite or organo-selenium compounds such as selenocysteine and selenomethionine, but lack the ability to absorb metal selenides or elemental Se (White et al. 2004, 2007). Generally, Se concentrations found in plants grown in seleniferous soils are less than 25 mg kg^{-1} dry weight (Bell et al. 1992; Terry et al. 2000; Yasin et al. 2015a, b), but in the case of a few hyperaccumulator species, these values can reach over 1000 mg kg^{-1} dry weight in plant material (Ellis and Salt 2003).

Selenate is the most widely utilized form of Se by plants, and in non-hyperaccumulators selenate is transported across the plasma membrane of root cells by high-affinity sulphate transporters (Terry et al. 2000; White et al. 2004, 2007; Sors et al. 2005; Broadley et al. 2006; Hawkesford and Zhao 2007). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) have the potential to increase plant Se levels and subsequently benefit the Se status of humans and livestock in areas of the world which may be Se-deficient. Over the past two decades, a number of studies have examined the potential of PGPR to act as Se-biofortification agents. A study by de Souza et al. (1999) found that Indian mustard (*Brassica juncea* L.) can be supported by PGPR to enhance selenium accumulation and volatilization (Rawat et al. 2016; Yasin et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2016c, d; Saha et al. 2016b; Yadav and Sidhu 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016b; Das and Pradhan 2016).

In *B. juncea*, dimethyl selenide is the predominant volatilized form of Se and is typically 500–700 times less toxic than inorganic forms of Se (McConnell and Portman 1952; Ganther et al. 1966; Wilber 1980) making it a suitable vector for biofortification of the human food chain with Se. A number of Se-tolerant rhizobacterial isolates from the rhizosphere of a range of Se-accumulating plants were used in this study. Antibiotic experiments using ampicillin revealed that bacteria were the key factor in enhanced Se uptake by Indian mustard (de Souza et al. 1999). When added to the plant nutrient solution, ampicillin inhibited Se volatilization by ~35% and tissue Se accumulation by ~70%.

The rhizobacterial strains designated BJ2 and BJ15 were used in axenic plant experiments to examine the role of rhizobacteria in Se accumulation and volatilization. When these two strains were inoculated within the rhizosphere of axenic Indian mustard plants, the Se volatilization rate from selenite was four times higher than that of axenic control plants, and plants accumulated more Se in their tissues when compared to axenic controls. Both BJ2 and BJ15 rhizobacterial strains increased Se concentrations in shoots and roots 1.4-fold and fivefold, respectively. As with many PGPR species, these isolates were thought to increase Se uptake via enhanced root hair production. In addition, seedlings with PGPR had a significantly higher Se tissue concentration of 1.3–2 times greater than axenic plants across the spectrum of Se concentrations tested (de Souza et al. 1999).

Acuña et al. (2013) investigated ash-derived volcanic andisol soil in Southern Chile, which is characteristically low in Se content, for the presence of PGPR with the ability to supply increased Se to host plants. Inoculation with two isolates, namely, *Pseudomonas* sp. R8 and *Stenotrophomonas* sp. B19, in the rhizosphere of wheat resulted in higher Se content in roots and leaves compared to uninoculated controls. When plants were inoculated with B19 in soils where the Se concentration was 5–10 mM, a significantly higher Se content was observed in wheat root and leaf tissues compared to plants grown in soil containing 2 mM Se (Acuña et al. 2013). In the same region, Durán et al. (2014) isolated endophytic bacteria from Se-supplemented wheat that shows potential for plant growth promotion, biofortification and biocontrol in wheat cultivation (Saha et al. 2016c; Verma et al. 2014, 2015b; Meena et al. 2014a, 2015e; Teotia et al. 2016).

Endophytic bacterial strains were isolated from both uninoculated control and Se-supplemented wheat plants from the genera *Bacillus*, *Paenibacillus*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter* and *Acinetobacter* and 15 strains selected according to tolerance of high Se levels (~50 mM). A number of these endophytes are highly tolerant to Se, ranging from 60 to 180 mM, and thus have the potential to be used as biofortification agents in areas of the world with low soil Se concentrations. Furthermore, some of these isolates displayed the ability to act as biocontrol agents for the endemic soilborne fungal pathogen *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* that causes take-all disease, one of the most severe wheat diseases in Southern Chile. Isolates from the genera *Acinetobacter* (strain E6.2), *Bacillus* (strain E8.1), *Bacillus* and *Klebsiella* (strains E5 and E1) inhibited the growth of *G. graminis* var. *tritici* mycelia by ~100%, 50% and 30%, respectively, *in vitro*; this adds to the potential of PGPR for biofortification agents that not only increase Se concentration in the plant but also act as sustainable crop protectants (Durán et al. 2014).

Two studies by Yasin et al. (2015) investigated the potential for Se biofortification in crop plants. First, an experiment with *B. juncea* to investigate the potential of two Se-tolerant rhizobacterial consortia to increase plant Se uptake using naturally seleniferous soil containing ~8 mg Se kg^{-1} was carried out with both rhizobacterial consortia consisting of four to five strains each, designated G1 and G2. *B. juncea* accumulated Se to 358 mg kg^{-1} in seeds, 711 mg kg^{-1} in leaf dry weight (DW) and 276 mg kg^{-1} in pod husks. Inoculation of G1 had a positive effect on plant growth compared to controls but did not accumulate Se with a significant difference compared to the control. G1-incoulated plants produced 40–45% more leaf and seed biomass compared to controls however; therefore, these plants were more effective in extracting Se from the soil compared to control plants. G2-inoculated plants had an overall decreased plant growth compared to control plants. However, nonprotein thiol levels were increased threefold in G2-inoculated plants compared to controls. Nonprotein thiols are often used by plants as antioxidant defence compounds, and it may be the case that one or more members of the G2 consortia initiated this response to a perceived bacterial threat (Yasin et al. 2015a). In a second experiment using two individual isolates, namely, *Bacillus cereus* YAP6 and *Bacillus licheniformis* YAP7, inoculation of wheat plants with either bacteria increased Se concentration in the grain by up to 375% compared to uninoculated Se-treated plants (Yasin et al. 2015b).

As mentioned previously, plants grown in seleniferous soil that can accumulate very high tissue levels of Se are termed ‘Se hyperaccumulators’. This poses the question of whether this hyperaccumulation of Se can be attributed to any specific microbe associated with Se-hyperaccumulating plants. Given the current depth of knowledge in plant-microbe interactions, we might reasonably expect such a microbe would be identified. The answer appears to be ‘no’. An experiment by Sura-de Jong et al. (2015) compared the endophytic population of both non-hyperaccumulating and hyperaccumulating plants, with two plant families per grouping, Brassicaceae and Fabaceae growing on the same seleniferous site (Sharma et al. 2016; Verma et al. 2015a; Meena et al. 2013b, 2016e; Shrivastava et al. 2016).

Terminal restriction fragment length (T-RFLP) analysis of bacterial isolates identified equal T-RF diversity between hyperaccumulators *Stanleya pinnata* and *Astragalus bisulcatus* and related non-hyperaccumulators *Physaria bellii* and *Medicago sativa*. Cultivable endophytes from hyperaccumulators were isolated, and of the 66 morphotypes isolated, seven were selected to be co-cultivated with *B. juncea* and *M. sativa*. Although plant growth promotion occurred in both plants, there was no effect on their Se status, suggesting that hyperaccumulation cannot be induced by the application of Se-tolerant PGPR alone (Sura-de Jong et al. 2015). Studies like these highlight the importance of understanding the complex interactions between all constituents of the plant-microbe interaction and how not all bacteria can benefit plant biofortification (Velazquez et al. 2016; Meena et al. 2015c; Sindhu et al. 2016; Bahadur et al. 2016a; Masood and Bano 2016) (Fig. 16.1).

16.2.2 Iron

16.2.2.1 The Importance of Iron in the Human Diet

Iron (Fe) is arguably one of the most important micronutrients in the human diet; it is the basis for the correct function of haemoglobin, and deficiency in iron can lead to anaemia. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), Fe deficiency is the only micronutrient deficiency that is prevalent in both the developing and developed worlds (WHO 2016b). In developing countries, up to ~50% of pregnant women and ~40% of preschool children suffer from anaemia (Beard 2008).Values for recommended daily intake are displayed in Table 16.1. In children under 5 years of age, 0.2% of deaths can be linked to deficiency in iron (Bhutta 2008). Children suffering from anaemia and Fe deficiency are better protected against mortality or

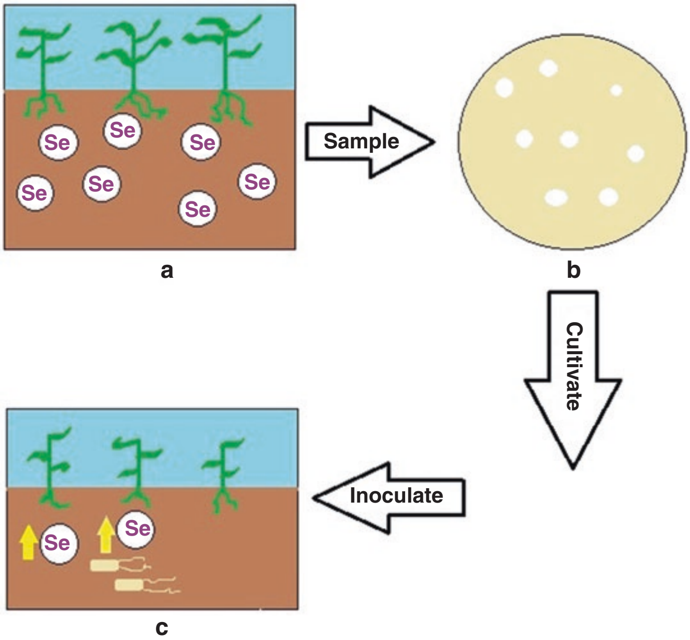


Fig. 16.1 Rationale for selection of PGPR involved in biofortification taking Se as an example. (**a**) Se-enriched soils. (**b**) Isolation of bacteria from (**a**) on Se-supplemented growth media to identify Se-tolerant bacteria. (**c**) Inoculation of PGPR from Se-enriched soils to Se-deficient soils to aid Se biofortification in plants

Table 16.1 Recommended daily dietary intake of Se, Zn and Fe, WHO (2006)

	Se	Zn	Fe
Category	mg		
Infants (1–3 years)	17	2.4–8.3	3.9–11.6
Children (4–6 years)	22	2.9–9.6	4.2–12.6
Adult female	26	3–9.8	19.6–58.8
Adult male	34	4.2–14	9.1–27.4
Pregnant women	28	4.2–14	>50
Lactating women <3 months	35	5.8–19	10–30

Values for Zn and Fe run from low to high as bioavailability increases in the diet. A diet of low bioavailability is defined as a diet low in vitamin C and animal protein; the opposite is true for a diet with high bioavailability. Socioeconomic and dietary factors play a major role in the potential uptake of micronutrients in the human body

hospital admission when supplemented with iron; however, supplementation with iron to the point where children become iron replete and no longer iron deficient may be harmful as in the case of malaria, whereby the causative agent, *Plasmodium*, can benefit from excess iron levels in the blood (Sazawal et al. 2006; Weinberg

1999; Nuberger et al. 2016). So, as for all (bio)fortification strategies, the relative benefits and risks must be balanced (Meena et al. 2013c, 2014b, 2015d; Singh et al. 2015, 2016).

16.2.2.2 The Acquisition of Iron by Plants

Plants acquire Fe via one of two strategies, depending on whether the plant is monocotyledonous or dicotyledonous. Appreciating these different mechanisms in the overall process of Fe acquisition by plants can help in the optimization strategies of Fe translocation from the rhizosphere to the plant. The reduction strategy, used by dicotyledonous plants, involves the secretion of H^+ and organic acids to acidify the rhizosphere which reduces Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+} and make it available for uptake into the plant. The chelation strategy, used mainly by monocotyledonous plants, involves the secretion of phytosiderophores (e.g. mugineic acid) that can bind Fe^{3+} which is subsequently taken up by the root cells (Gamalero and Glick 2011; Bulgarelli et al. 2013).

16.2.2.3 The Role of PGPR in Iron Acquisition and Plant Biofortification

The enzymes involved in the mugineic acid pathway were deduced from sequence comparison with bacteria, as it is now well known that bacteria can also act to help plants acquire Fe (Crowley 2006; Saha et al. 2016a). In one of the early experiments to determine microbial contribution to plant Fe acquisition, Masalha et al. (2000) experimentally determined that soil microbial activity was enhancing Fe acquisition using sterile and non-sterile soil as growth media. Non-sterile soil was associated with increased Fe uptake, suggesting that the microbial community of the soil may be contributing to Fe uptake in the plant. In sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.), root dry weight Fe concentrations were ~1748 ± 48 $\mu g\ g^{-1}$ for non-sterile soil, whereas in sterile soil, Fe concentration was ~248 ± 29 $\mu g\ g^{-1}$, suggesting microbial activity was enhancing Fe translocation from the soil to the plant (Masalha et al. 2000).

The microbial siderophores can be classified into four groups; the most common are the hydroxamate siderophores, followed by catecholates, carboxylates and pyoverdines. Examples of siderophores within these four respective groups include ferribactin, pyoverdine, enterochelin and rhizobactin; these are produced by *P. fluorescens*, *P. aeruginosa*, *E. coli* and *R. meliloti*, respectively (Maurer and Keller-Scheirlin 1968; Smith and Neilands 1984; Schalk and Guillon 2013; Vansuyt et al. 2007). Upwards of ~500 different siderophores have been reported to date, with ~270 being well characterized (Boukhalfa et al. 2003).

Siderophores can also be involved in a biocontrol capacity, sequestering iron away from the rhizospheric soil and making it inaccessible to any potential pathogens (Siddiqui 2006). These microbes can further enhance Fe acquisition in plants by inducing Fe-deficient responses, such as the production of hormonal compounds analogous to plant hormones, which microbes can produce independently. *B. subtilis* GB03 has the ability to enhance Fe acquisition in *Arabidopsis* via transcriptional upregulation of the Fe deficiency-induced transcription factor 1 (FIT1) which is required for induction of ferric reductase FRO2 and the IRT1 iron transporter to acquire Fe in the plant (Zhang et al. 2009).

A group of major microbial-derived plant growth-promoting (PGP) hormones called auxins have been implicated in enhanced Fe uptake. The ratio of auxin-producing microorganisms in soil that contains phenolic root exudates of Fe-deficient red clover (*Trifolium pratense* L.) is higher than that observed in phenolic-free soil solution controls, thus indicating that Fe deficiency in plants may contribute to the abundance of auxin-producing microbes in the rhizosphere. Not only the increase of auxin-producing microbes was observed, but the plant phenolics also inhibited the growth of the majority of microbes, suggesting iron-deficient plants can select for organisms which have the ability to produce auxin and siderophores, ~71% and 86% of the total microbial population, respectively (Jin et al. 2006, 2008). Exogenous application of the major auxin, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), enhances Fe deficiency-induced reduction of ferric Fe and expression of FRO2 and IRT1, which are critical for enhanced Fe uptake in the plant and growth of lateral roots and root hairs to provide increased surface area for Fe uptake (Jin et al. 2008; Chen et al. 2010; Wu et al. 2012). IAA also contributes extra nutrients for rhizobacterial growth by modulating the quantity of root exudation via an increase of porosity in the cell wall of plants (Glick 2012).

Utilizing two of the most important cereal crops, rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) and wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) in a rice-wheat cropping system, Rana et al. (2015) demonstrated that PGPR and cyanobacteria led to both higher macro- and micronutrient concentration in cereal grain. In rice, bacterial-cyanobacterial consortia increased Fe concentration from ~4 to 14% over the fertilizer-only control. While bacterial-cyanobacterial consortia had a significant Fe increase over uninoculated controls, isolate *Providencia* sp. PW5 alone increased the Fe concentration by ~45% compared to the fertilizer-only control in wheat grains. Adak et al. (2016) also observed increased acquisition of Fe through cyanobacteria inoculation in rice of ~13 to 46% compared to uninoculated controls.

Recent publications from India on the biofortification of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.), a major pulse crop grown under semiarid conditions, have highlighted the potential for Fe biofortification in chickpea. Nineteen *Acinetobacter* isolates statistically significantly increased mineral content in PGPR-inoculated chickpeas compared to uninoculated controls; Fe in plants varied from ~10 to 38% higher (Sathya et al. 2016). All 19 isolates increased Fe in the plant within the range of ~10 to 38%. Gopalakrishnan et al. (2016) also recorded increases in Fe concentration following PGPR treatment. Fe concentration in chickpea grain was increased up to 18% with isolates *E. ludwigii* SRI-229 and *P. monteilii* SRI-360, the two strains displaying the greatest performance over uninoculated controls (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2016). It is important to note that postharvest processing and cooking can affect micronutrient concentrations in the grain. Both Saytha et al. (2016) and Gopalakrishnan et al. (2016) reported that Fe concentration can be affected by cooking and can reduce from 5 to 30% and in some cases gain ~21% (Sathya et al. 2016; Gopalakrishnan et al. 2016).

16.2.3 Zinc

16.2.3.1 The Importance of Zinc to Human Health

Zinc (Zn) is typically the most abundant transition metal in living organisms after Fe and is the only metal resident in all enzyme classes (King 2006; Broadley et al. 2007). Zn plays a critical role in human health and is involved in correct functioning of the immune system to fight infections such as pneumonia (Black et al. 2008). Zn is also involved in protein synthesis, metabolic homeostasis and modulation of gene expression through Zn-containing proteins (Welch 2001) and plays a critical role in male fertility with Zn deficiency resulting in inhibition of spermatogenesis and abnormal sperm production (Prasad 2008). In contrast to Fe, Zn is not stored in the human body in sufficient amounts and as a result must be ingested daily (King 2011). Zn, along with Fe, iodine (I) and Se, i.e. the major micronutrients, is often found in insufficient quantities in plant staple foods to meet human nutritional requirements, and as a consequence, nearly half the global population suffers from Zn micronutrient deficiency (White and Broadley 2009; Cakmak 2008).

16.2.3.2 The PGPR-Mediated Biofortification of Plants with Zinc

Processing of staple grains such as rice and wheat decreases the micronutrient concentration of the grain, especially in the case of Zn in wheat (Zhang et al. 2010; Kutman et al. 2011). Grain concentration of Zn is also hindered by the presence of the well-documented ‘anti-nutrient’ phytic acid, which reduces mineral bioavailability because it can form insoluble complexes with essential minerals such as Zn^{2+} and Fe^{3+} (Urbano et al. 2000; Srivastava 2016). Tariq et al. (2007) investigated the potential of a PGPR consortium to increase Zn concentration in rice; the consortium, named ‘BioPower’, consists of two *Azospirillum lipoferum* strains, two *Pseudomonas* sp. strains and one *Agrobacterium* sp. strain (Hafeez et al. 2002; Tariq et al. 2007).

Rana et al. (2012) showed that inoculation of wheat with *Providencia* sp. + $N_{60}P_{60}K_{60}$ significantly increases grain Zn accumulation to ~42 mg kg^{-1}, along with a threefold increase in the concentration of Fe compared to control plants. Zinc-solubilizing bacteria (ZSB) have also been shown to increase Zn concentration in shoots and roots of soybean and wheat (He et al. 2010). Rana et al. (2015) documented an increased Zn concentration in wheat and rice grains over a 2-year-long rice-wheat cropping sequence. In wheat grains, Zn concentration was ~41 mg kg^{-1} post-treatment with $N_{60}P_{60}K_{60}$ and a bacterial consortium consisting of *B. pumilus* PW1, *Providencia* sp. PW5 and *B. diminuta* PW7.

Zinc concentration in the wheat grain was measured at ~38 mg kg $^{-1}$ post-treatment with $N_{60}P_{60}K_{60}$ only and was measured at ~33 mg kg^{-1} for the control without the application of fertilizer or bacteria. At the end of the 2-year cycle, Zn concentration in wheat grain had increased 1–7% overall in plants that had been treated with both fertilizer and bacteria compared to fertilizer-only controls.

In rice, Zn concentration in grain increased by ~14% when treated with $N_{90}P_{60}K_{60}$ and a PGP bacterial consortium consisting of the strains *Providencia* sp. PR3, *Brevundimonas diminuta* PR7 and *Ochrobactrum anthropi* PR10 (Rana et al. 2015).

Table 16.2 A selections of microbes which have been shown to contribute to the process of micronutrient biofortification

Microbe	Micronutrient	Reference
Bacillus subtilis (GB 03)	Fe	Zhang et al. (2009)
Pseudomonas sp. R8	Se	Acuña et al. (2013)
Stenotrophomonas sp. B19	Se	Acuña et al. (2013)
Providencia sp. PW5	Zn, Fe, Mn, Cu	Rana et al. (2012)
Pseudomonas sp. Z5	Zn	Yasmin (2011)
Flavobacterium sp.	Zn	He et al. (2010)
Anabaena sp.	Fe	Manjunath et al. (2016)
Azotobacter sp.	Fe, Zn	Manjunath et al. (2016)
Calothrix sp.	Zn	Manjunath et al. (2016)
Pseudomonas fluorescens C7	Fe	Vansuyt et al. (2007)

Manjunath et al. (2016) recorded increased Zn concentration in okra (*Abelmoschus esculentus* (L.) Moench). During midcrop stage, Zn concentrations were ~60 to 70% higher in plants treated with *Azotobacter* sp. and a cyanobacterium (e.g. *Calothrix*), compared to uninoculated controls (Majunath et al. 2016). Shakeel et al. (2015) observed that zinc-solubilizing bacteria (ZSB) increased zinc translocation in two rice varieties, basmati-385 and super basmati. A consortium of *Bacillus* sp. SH-10 and *B. cereus* SH-17 yielded a Zn concentration in grain of ~31 mg kg^{-1} compared to a concentration of ~18 mg kg^{-1} in the basmati-385 control. Application of ZSB with Zn fertilizer did not increase Zn concentration in the grain; this may be due to the increased Zn uptake potential of the varieties tested (Shakeel et al. 2015) (Table 16.2).

Isolates hail from diverse genera based on respective abilities to fix or solubilize nutrients within the rhizosphere for plant growth promotion (Fig. 16.2).

16.3 The Application of Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi (AMF) to Biofortification in Crops

Most plants, including all major food crops, form a symbiotic below-ground association with AMF that supplies the host plant with water and mineral nutrients, such as phosphorus (Senés-Guerrero et al. 2014). Plants colonized by AMF can effectively acquire nutrients from a larger soil volume, beyond the nutrition depletion zone to where the plant roots cannot extend. Thus, AMF helps the plant to grow better and increase its productivity. In return, the host plant provides AMF with carbohydrates required to complete its life cycle (Zhang et al. 2015).

The AMF acquire essential nutrients such as P, Zn, Cu, Fe, N and K from the soil, and thus AMF contact with roots provides the plant with access to essential nutritional elements, leading to solubilization, mobilization and uptake of the essential nutrients needed by plants for their growth (Clark and Zeto 2000; Kumar et al. 2016a). Plants colonized with AMF have significantly greater zinc concentrations in all tissue types compared to non-mycorrhizal plants, although the effect is primarily

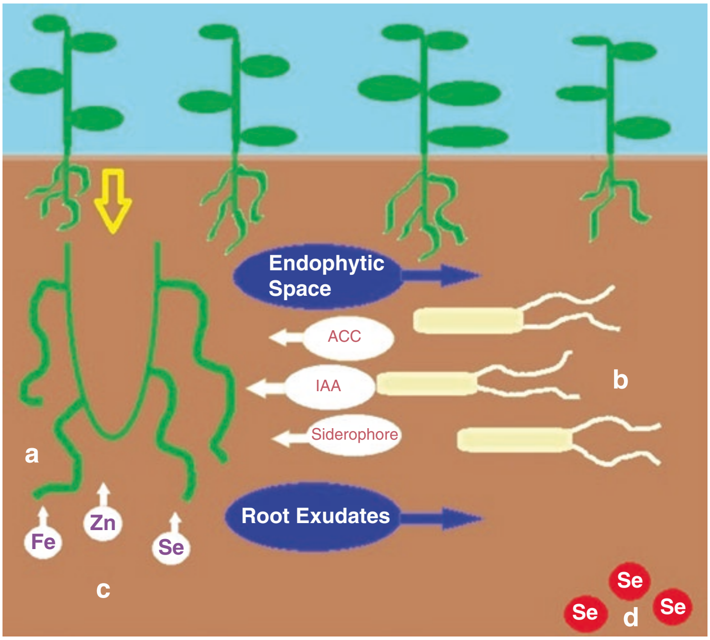


Fig. 16.2 Schematic representation of the reciprocal relationship between PGPR and the host plant; (**a**) represents the plant rhizospheric space, (**b**) represents beneficial PGPR. The plant provides root exudates which are consumed by bacteria as a carbon source, and endophytic PGPR have the option to potentially colonize the plant and avoid adverse environmental conditions. (**c**) Represents the increased uptake of micronutrients in the rhizosphere where PGPR activity leads to micronutrient biofortification of the plant. (**d**) Represents micronutrients in the soil which would be either unavailable or diminished in available supply to the plant without PGPR. Based on numerous PGP activities, PGPR can increase the translocation and concentration of key micronutrients which would otherwise be unavailable to the plant. Especially in the case of siderophore-producing PGPR, which can have a beneficial effect on Fe sequestration from the soil and subsequent transfer to the plant. In return, the plant can supply the PGPR with a carbon source in the form of root exudates and where there are endophytic PGPR present; the plant endosphere can act as a suitable environment for endophytic proliferation

due to soil property differences (Lehmann et al. 2014). Improved total uptake of N-P-K was observed in both shoots and roots of *Plantago minuta* under variable soil water conditions, when inoculated with AMF (Shi et al. 2015). Under field conditions, inoculation of AMF in the soil of chickpea plants increased plant biomass and yield, and also increased the nutritional value of the legume, leading to Fe and Zn biofortification (Pellegrino and Bedini 2014).

In addition, AMF increases positive interactions with rhizobacteria, including beneficial rhizobacteria known to induce spore germination of AMF and root colonization directly. AMF hyphal exudates influence surrounding microbial communities and may drive beneficial bacterial-plant interactions and consequently improve plant fitness and productivity (Scheublin et al. 2010; Cruz and Ishii 2011; Qin et al.

2016). Co-inoculation of AMF and beneficial bacteria, such as *Pseudomonas* strains, substantially increases wheat yield and mineral nutrient concentrations of P, K, Cu, Fe, Zn and Mn in wheat grains (Mader et al. 2011). The co-inoculation of selenobacteria and AMF significantly improves selenium (Se) content in wheat grain, suggesting a synergistic effect between these microbes (Durán et al. 2013). Dual inoculation of AMF and *Rhizobium* in the soybean/maize intercropping system significantly increased the efficiency of N fixation of soybean and enhanced the transfer of N from soybean to maize, leading to the yield enhancement of both crops (Meng et al. 2015).

Another important benefit of AMF is its secretion of a high molecular weight glycoprotein that helps in soil aggregation stability, promotes a better soil structure and healthy plant-soil system (Wu et al. 2014) and mitigates against phytoremediation of Al, As, Cd, Hg and Pb (He and Nara 2007). The AMF also show resistance to several biotic (e.g. pathogen) and abiotic stressors (e.g. drought). Under drought stress, a significant increase in plant growth and photosynthesis was observed when citrus plants were colonized by AMF (Wu et al. 2013). In another study, the AMF-inoculated strawberry has shown enhanced tolerance to drought stress (Boyer et al. 2015). AMF are capable of significantly improving plant innate system, mainly through the priming mechanism (Gallou et al. 2011).

The tomato plants colonized with AMF showed increased plant resistance to early blight, which requires JA signalling pathway (Song et al. 2015). Beneficial microbes provide plants with essential nutrients through a variety of mechanisms, and microbe interactions with plant roots are critical for nutrient uptake and crop productivity. Hence, a better understanding of microbial interactions and subsequent controlling of pathogens are essential for the use of microbes in agriculture.

The role of AMF in nutrient uptake and crop production is a key factor for biofortification of crops using essential mineral elements from the soil. With plant-microbial interactions, crops benefit through symbiosis with AMF, and this could help minimize the application of chemical fertilizers and improve nutrient availability. As a result, AMF could play a vital role in biofortification of crops with essential nutrients, thereby contributing to sustainable crops with improved nutrition that could curb global malnutrition (He and Nara 2007). Increasing the nutritional levels of economically important food crops, without requiring the consumption of more food, is achievable through the use of AMF and other beneficial microbes. Thus, unravelling the potential of AMF as a biofortification agent to increase the nutritional content in edible tissue plant parts is essential in the context of modern agriculture. As such, biofortification using AMF and other beneficial microbes in agriculture is important, including an increase of iron biofortification, zinc biofortification, provitamin A carotenoid biofortification and amino acid and protein biofortification of economically important crops, such as potato, sorghum, cassava, rice, wheat, maize, etc. (Mayer et al. 2008; Khush et al. 2012).

16.4 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

The threats to global food security have been highlighted by many authors to date (Tai et al. 2014; Sundström et al. 2014). National governments through the international forum of the United Nations have agreed on 17 goals to be achieved by 2030 (Sustainable Development Goals project), amongst them the eradication of world hunger and improved nutrition (FAO 2016). A number of these goals, particularly in relation to food security, can be addressed by crop biofortification. Many successful strategies for biofortifying crops are detailed in the peer-reviewed literature with the most famous biofortification project concerning the expression of provitamin A in Golden Rice which was based on a genetic engineering strategy. Even though the Golden Rice project was awarded the Patents for Humanity prize by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in 2015 in recognition of this lifesaving technology and the humanitarian nature of the project, the product is still not available on the market due to public opposition, in the main led by Greenpeace. This year (2016), 121 Nobel Laureates called on Greenpeace to end its opposition to this lifesaving technology (Support Precision Agriculture 2016).

Aside from genetic modification, other successful strategies including conventional breeding strategies have been utilized for crop biofortification. This year (2016), the World Food Prize was awarded to a group of scientists in recognition of their role in crop biofortification using breeding strategies to increase provitamin A in sweet potato by incorporating germplasm from the Andean region in South America to generate orange-fleshed sweet potatoes suitable for Africa (ISAAA 2016). This breeding strategy is reliant on natural diversity in the germplasm of a crop for the production of a particular vitamin or micronutrient.

In the absence of natural germplasm diversity, other strategies for crop biofortification can be utilized including foliar application of micronutrients and/or the exploitation of the natural microbial diversity in soils, i.e. plant growth-promoting microbes (PGPM) most especially bacteria and mycorrhizal fungi. Being environmentally safe and cost-effective are major advantages to the proliferation of PGPM throughout agriculture. Indeed this can be seen by the vast number of commercially available PGPM products released in recent years with up to 4% of the global biocide share being directly related to microbial volatile organic compounds (mVOCs) isolated and synthesized from PGPM (Glare et al. 2012; Wilson et al. 2013; Velivelli et al., 2014; Kanchiswamy et al. 2016), and this trend is set to continue. A historic problem in the biofortification of crops using foliar and soil application of micronutrients particularly in relation to Fe has been the low uptake of the micronutrient post-application. This has been highlighted recently by Kromann et al. (2016) with regard to Fe and Zn biofortification of Andean potatoes. It was found that both foliar and soil application of Zn fertilizers led to a ~three- and twofold increase, respectively, in tuber Zn concentration. However, there was no increase in Fe tuber concentration post-application. In this instance, it can be suggested that application of Fe fertilizer in conjunction with a PGPM capable of increasing Fe translocation and concentration in the tuber could be tested. The study also highlights the need to understand soil parameters within diverse environments, as these can have a significant effect on crop biofortification (Kromann et al. 2016).

Regulatory mechanisms in the plant-microbe micro-/macronutrient cycling pathways and their reciprocal interactions need to be further elucidated to determine the best course of action for formulation of appropriate treatments to specific soil/climate/temperature/crop scenarios. Indeed, this can be further seen in the observation that nitrogen status of the plant can have a positive correlation on the content and translocation of Fe and Zn in plants (Kutman et al. 2010, 2011), and many plant growth-promoting microbes are capable of fixing atmospheric nitrogen (Prasanna et al. 2012). Genome mining of selected PGPR or wild relative/stress-tolerant cultivars of major crops may reveal genes involved in nutrient cycling pathways that, through GM technology, could be incorporated into agriculturally important crops to optimize delivery of micronutrients to deficient populations in the developing world.

Using genomics, identifying changes in gene expression during microbial interactions is critical to understanding the role of microbes in biofortification. In particular, more attention needs to be focused on the following research questions: how microbes influence the nutritional content of economically important crops; identifying appropriate microbial strains; exploiting synergistic microbial activity, e.g. between AMF and other beneficial bacteria; and assessing constant field efficacy under different environmental regimes, to ensuring adequate uptake by plants and improving crop quality. Supplying essential nutrients using beneficial microbes naturally found in soils across the planet, such as AMF and PGPR, will help to alleviate the problem of *hidden hunger* and provide a promising sustainable agricultural strategy for improving current crop micronutrient content and in developing future biofortified crops.

Acknowledgements The authors would like to acknowledge the contribution of the Crawford-Hayes fund at the University College Cork, Ireland, for its contribution to the writing of this chapter.

References

Acuña JJ, Jorquera MA, Barra PJ, Crowley DE, de la Luz MM (2013) Selenobacteria selected from the rhizosphere as a potential tool for Se biofortification of wheat crops. Biol Fertil Soils 49:175–185. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0705-2

Adak A, Prasanna R, Babu S, Bidyarani N, Verma S, Pal M, Shivay YS, Nain L (2016) Micronutrient enrichment mediated by plant-microbe interactions and rice cultivation practices. J Plant Nutr 39:1216–1232. http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/01904167.2016.1148723

Adesemoye AO, Kloepper JW (2009) Plant-microbes interactions in enhanced fertilizer-use efficiency. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:1–12

Ahmad M, Nadeem SM, Naveed M, Zahir ZA (2016) Potassium-solubilizing bacteria and their application in agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 293–313. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_21

Amanullah SA, Iqbal A, Fahad S (2016) Foliar phosphorus and zinc application improve growth and productivity of maize (*Zea mays* L.) under moisture stress conditions in semi-arid climates. J Microb Biochem Technol 8:433–439. doi:10.4172/1948-5948.1000321

Bahadur I, Meena VS, Kumar S (2014) Importance and application of potassic biofertilizer in Indian agriculture. Int Res J Biol Sci 3:80–85

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena VS, Raghuwanshi R (2016a) Towards the soil sustainability and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 225–266. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_18

Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Saha M, Kumar A, Aeron A (2016b) Mineral release dynamics of tricalcium phosphate and waste muscovite by mineral-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from indo-gangetic plain of India. Geomicrobiol J. doi:10.1080/01490451.2016.1219431

Baliga MS, Diwadkar-Navsariwala V, Koh T, Fayad R, Fantuzzi G, Diamond AM (2008) Selenoprotein deficiency enhances radiation-induced micronuclei formation. Mol Nutr Food Res 52(11):1300–1304. doi:10.1002/mnfr.200800020

Beard JL (2008) Why iron deficiency is important in infant development. J Nutr 138:2534–2536

Bell PF, Parker DR, Page AL (1992) Contrasting selenite sulfate interactions in se accumulating and nonaccumulating plant species. Soil Sci Soc Am 56:1818–1824. doi:10.1236/sssaj1992.03615995005600060028x

Berutti A, Lumini E, Balestrini R, Bianciotto V (2016) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as natural biofertilizers: let's benefit from past successes. Front Microbiol 6:1559. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2015.01559

Bhutta ZA (2008) Micronutrient needs of malnourished children. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 11:309–314

Black RE, Lindsay HA, Bhutta ZA, Caulfield LE, De Onnis M, Ezzati M, Mathers C, Rivera J (2008) Maternal and child undernutrition: global and regional exposures and health consequences. Lancet 371:243–260

Boukhalfa H, Lack JG, Reilly SD, Hersman L, Neu MP (2003) Siderophore production and facilitated uptake of iron and plutonium in P. putida. No. LA-UR-03-0913. Los Alamos National Laboratory

Boyer LR, Brain P, Xu XM, Jeffries P (2015) Inoculation of drought-stressed strawberry with a mixed inoculum of two arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: effects on population dynamics of fungal species in roots and consequential plant tolerance to water deficiency. Mycorrhiza 25(3):215–227. doi:10.1007/s00572-014-0603-6

Broadley MR, White PJ, Bryson RJ, Meacham MC, Bowen HC, Johnson SE, Hawkesford MJ, McGrath SP, Zhao F-J, Breward N, Harriman M, Tucker M (2006) Biofortification of UK food crops with selenium. Proc Nutr Soc 65:169–181

Broadley MR, White PJ, Zelko I, Lux A (2007) Zinc in plants. New Phytol 173(4):677–702

Bulgarelli D, Schlaeppi K, Spaepen S, van Themaat EVL, Schulze-Lefert P (2013) Structure and functions of the bacterial microbiota of plants. Annu Rev Plant Biol 64:807–838. doi:10.1146/annurev-arplant- 050312-120106

Cakmak I (2008) Enrichment of cereal grains with zinc: agronomic or genetic bio-fortification? Plant Soil 302:1–17

Carlson BA, Yoo MH, Tobe R, Mueller C, Naranjo-Suarez S, Hoffmann VJ, Gladyshev VN, Hatfield DL (2012) Thioredoxin reductase 1 protects against chemically induced hepatocarcinogenesis *via* control of cellular redox homeostasis. Ox J Carcin 33(9):1806–1803. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgs230

Chen WW, Yang JL, Qin C, Jin CW, Mo JH, Ye T, Zheng SJ (2010) Nitric oxide acts downstream of auxin to trigger root ferric-chelate reductase activity in response to iron deficiency in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 154:810–819

Clark RB, Zeto SK (2000) Mineral acquisition by arbuscular mycorrhizal plants. J Plant Nutr 23(7):867–902. doi:10.1080/01904160009382068

Crowley DA (2006) Microbial siderophores in the plant rhizosphere. In: Barton LL, Abadia J (eds) Iron nutrition in plants and rhizospheric microorganisms. Springer, Netherlands, pp 169–189

Cruz AF, Ishii T (2011) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal spores host bacteria that affect nutrient biodynamics and biocontrol of soil-borne plant pathogens. Biol Open 1(1):52–57. doi:10.1242/bio.2011014

Das I, Pradhan M (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their role in enhancing soil fertility and health. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 281–291. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_20

De Souza M, Chu D, Zhao M, Zayed AM, Ruzin SE, Schichnes D, Terry N (1999) Rhizosphere bacteria enhance selenium accumulation and volatilization by Indian mustard. Plant Physiol 119:565–573

Dominguez-Nunez JA, Benito B, Berrocal-Lobo M, Albanesi A (2016) Mycorrhizal fungi: role in the solubilization of potassium. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 77–98. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_6

Dotaniya ML, Meena VD, Basak BB, Meena RS (2016) Potassium uptake by crops as well as microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 267–280. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_19

Durán P, Acuña JJ, Jorquera MA, Azcón R, Borie F, Cornejo P, Mora ML (2013) Enhanced selenium content in wheat grain by co-inoculation of selenobacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: a preliminary study as a potential Se biofortification strategy. J Cereal Sci 57(3):275–280. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jcs.2012.11.012

Durán P, Acuña JJ, Jorquera MA, Azcón R, Paredes C, Rengel Z, de la Luz MM (2014) Endophytic bacteria from selenium-supplemented wheat plants could be useful for plant-growth promotion, biofortification and *Gaeumannomyces graminis* biocontrol in wheat production. Biol Fertil Soils 50:983–990

Ellis DR, Salt DE (2003) Plants, selenium and human health. Curr Opin Plant Biol 6:273–279. doi:10.1016/S1369-5266(03)00030-X

FAO (2016) The state of food and agriculture. http://www.fao.org/publications/sofa/sofa2016/en/

Gallou A, Lucero Mosquera HP, Cranenbrouck S, Suárez JP, Declerck S (2011) Mycorrhiza induced resistance in potato plantlets challenged by Phytophthora infestans. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 76(1):20–26. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.pmpp.2011.06.005

Gamalero E, Glick B (2011) Mechanisms used by plant growth-promoting bacteria. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: plant nutrient management. Springer, Berlin, pp 17–46

Ganther HE, Levander OA, Saumann CA (1966) Dietary control of selenium volatilisation in the rat. J Nutr 88:55–60

Glare T, Caradus J, Gelernter W, Jackson T, Keyhani N, Köhl J, Marrone P, Morin L, Stewart A (2012) Have biopesticides come of age? Trends Biotechnol 30(5):250–258. doi:10.1016/j.tibtech.2012.01.003

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2012:1–15

Golden Rice (2016). www.goldenrice.org

Gopalakrishnan S, Vadlamundi S, Samineni S, Sameer Kumar CV (2016) Plant growth-promotion of chickpea and pigeon pea through inoculation of biocontrol potential bacteria, isolated from organic soils. Springer Plus 5:1882. doi:10.1186/s40064-016-3590-6

Hafeez FY, Hameed S, Zaidi AH, Malik KA (2002) Biofertiliser for sustainable agriculture. In: Azam F, Iqbal MM, Inayatullah C, Malik KA (eds) Technologies for sustainable agriculture. NIAB, Faisalabad, pp 67–74

Harvest Plus (2016). http://www.harvestplus.org/biofortification-nutrition-revolution-now

Hatfield DL, Tsuji PA, Carlson BA, Gladyshev VN (2014) Selenium and selenocysteine: roles in cancer, health and development. Trends Biochem Sci 39:112–120. doi:10.1016/j.tibs.2013.12.007

Hawkesford MJ, Zhao F-J (2007) Strategies for increasing the selenium content of wheat. J Cereal Sci 46:282–292

He X, Nara K (2007) Element biofortification: can mycorrhizas potentially offer a more effective and sustainable pathway to curb human malnutrition? Trends Plant Sci 12(8):331–333. doi:10.1016/j.tplants.2007.06.008

He CQ, Tan G, Liang X, Du W, Chen YL, Zhi GY, Zhu Y (2010) Effect of Zn-tolerant bacterial strain on growth and Zn accumulation in *Orychophragmus violaceus*. Appl Soil Ecol 44:1–5

International Rice Research Institute (2016). http://irri.org/golden-rice/faqs

ISAAA (2016). http://www.isaaa.org/kc/cropbiotechupdate/article/default.asp?ID=14884

Jaiswal DK, Verma JP, Prakash S, Meena VS, Meena RS (2016) Potassium as an important plant nutrient in sustainable agriculture: a state of the art. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 21–29. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_2

Jat LK, Singh YV, Meena SK, Meena SK, Parihar M, Jatav HS, Meena RK, Meena VS (2015) Does integrated nutrient management enhance agricultural productivity? J Pure Appl Microbiol 9(2):1211–1221

Jha Y, Subramanian RB (2016) Regulation of plant physiology and antioxidant enzymes for alleviating salinity stress by potassium-mobilizing bacteria. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 149–162. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_11

Jin CW, He YF, Tang CX, Wu P, Zheng SJ (2006) Mechanisms of microbially enhanced iron uptake in red clover. Plant Cell Environ 29:888–897

Jin CW, You GY, Zheng SJ (2008) The iron-deficiency induced phenolics secretion plays multiple important roles in plant iron acquisition underground. Plant Signal Behav 3:60–61

Kanchiswamy CN, Malnoy M, Maffei ME (2016) Bioprospecting bacterial and fungal volatiles for sustainable agriculture. Trends Plant Sci 20(4):206–211. doi:10.1016/j.tplants.2015.01.004

Khush GS, Lee S, Cho J-I, Jeon J-S (2012) Biofortification of crops for reducing malnutrition. Plant Biotechnol Reports 6(3):195–202. doi:10.1007/s11816-012-0216-5

King JC (2006) Zinc. In: Shills ME, Shike M (eds) Modern nutrition in health and disease, 10th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp 271–285

King JC (2011) Zinc: an essential but elusive nutrient. Am J Clin Nutr 94(suppl):697S–684S

Kloepper JW, Schroth MN, Miller TD (1980) Effects of rhizosphere colonization by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on potato plant development and yield. Phytopathology 70:1078–1082

Krishnakumar S, Balakrishnan N, Muthukrisnan R, Kumar SR (2013) Myth and mystery of soil mycorrhiza: a review. Af J Ag Res 8(38):4706–4717. doi:10.5897/AJAR2013.7490

Kromann P, Valverde F, Alvardo S, Vélez R, Pisuña J, Potosí B, Taipe A, Caballero D, Cabezas A, Devaux A (2016) Can Andean potatoes be agronomically biofortified with iron and zinc fertilisers? Plant Soil. doi:10.1007/s11104-016-3065-0

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Singh DK, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability? J Pure ApplMicrobiol 9:715–724

Kumar A, Choudhary AK, Pooniya V, Suri VK, Singh U (2016a) Soil factors associated with micronutrient acquisition in crops- biofortification perspective. In: Singh U, Praharaj SC, Singh SS, Singh PN (eds) Biofortification of food crops. Springer, India, pp 159–176. doi:10.1007/978–81–322-2716-8_13

Kumar A, Meena R, Meena VS, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016b) Towards the stress management and environmental sustainability. J Clean Prod 137:821–822

Kumar A, Patel JS, Bahadur I, Meena VS (2016c) The molecular mechanisms of KSMs for enhancement of crop production under organic farming. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 61–75. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_5

Kumar A, Maurya BR, Raghuwanshi R, Meena VS, Islam MT (2017) Co-inoculation with enterobacter and rhizobacteria on yield and nutrient uptake by wheat (Triticum aestivum L.)

in the alluvial soil under indo-gangetic plain of India. J Plant Growth Regul. doi:10.1007/s00344-016-9663-5

Kutman UB, Yildiz B, Ozturk L, Cakmak I (2010) Biofortification of durum wheat with zinc through soil and foliar application of nitrogen. Cereal Chem 87:1–9

Kutman UB, Yildiz B, Cakmak I (2011) Improved nitrogen status enhances zinc and iron concentrations both in the whole grain and the endosperm fraction of wheat. J Cereal Sci 53:118–125

Lehmann A, Veresoglou SD, Leifheit EF, Rillig MC (2014) Arbuscular mycorrhizal influence on zinc nutrition in crop plants – a meta-analysis. Soil Biol Biochem 69:123–131. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.soilbio.2013.11.001

Li SH, Xiao TF, Zheng BS (2012) Medical geology of arsenic, selenium and thallium in China. Sci Total Environ 421–422:31–40. doi:10.1016/j. scitotenv.201102.040

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Mäder P, Kaiser F, Adholeya A, Singh R, Uppal HS, Sharma AK, Srivastava R, Sahai V, Aragno M, Wiemken A, Johri BN, Fried PM (2011) Inoculation of root microorganisms for sustainable wheat–rice and wheat–black gram rotations in India. Soil Biol Biochem 43(3):609–619. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.soilbio.2010.11.031

Manjunath M, Kanchan A, Ranjan K, Venkatachalam S, Prasanna R, Ramakrishnan B, Hossain F, Nain L, Shivay YS, Rai AB, Singh B (2016) Beneficial cyanobacteria and eubacteria synergistically enhance bioavailability of soil nutrients and yield of Okra. Heliyon http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.heliyon.2016.c00066

Masalha J, Kosegarten H, Elmaci Ö, Mengel K (2000) The central role of microbial activity for iron acquisition in maize and sunflower. Biol Fertil Soils 30:433–439

Masood S, Bano A (2016) Mechanism of potassium solubilization in the agricultural soils by the help of soil microorganisms. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 137–147. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_10

Maurer B, Keller-Scheirlin W (1968) Ferribactin, a siderophore from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Migula 61. Arch Mirobiol 60:326–339

Maurya BR, Meena VS, Meena OP (2014) Influence of inceptisol and alfisol's potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) isolates on release of K from waste mica. Vegetos 27:181–187

Mayer JE, Pfeiffer WH, Beyer P (2008) Biofortified crops to alleviate micronutrient malnutrition. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11(2):166–170. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.pbi.2008.01.007

McConnell KP, Portman OW (1952) Toxicity of dimethyl selenide in the rat and mouse. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 79:230–231

Meena OP, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2013a) Influence of K-solubilizing bacteria on release of potassium from waste mica. Agric Sust Dev 1:53–56

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bohra JS, Verma R, Meena MD (2013b) Effect of concentrate manure and nutrient levels on enzymatic activities and microbial population under submerged rice in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Crop Res 45(1,2 & 3):6–12

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma R, Meena RS, Jatav GK, Meena SK, Meena SK (2013c) Soil microbial population and selected enzyme activities as influenced by concentrate manure and inorganic fertilizer in alluvium soil of Varanasi. Bioscan 8(3):931–935

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Bahadur I (2014a) Potassium solubilization by bacterial strain in waste mica. Bang J Bot 43:235–237

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP (2014b) Does a rhizospheric microorganism enhance K^+ availability in agricultural soils? Microbiol Res 169:337–347

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015a) The needs of healthy soils for a healthy world. J Clean Prod 102:560–561

Meena RS, Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP (2015b) Towards the plant stress mitigate the agricultural productivity: a book review. J Clean Prod 102:552–553

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Aeron A, Kumar A, Kim K, Bajpai VK (2015c) Potassium solubilizing rhizobacteria (KSR): isolation, identification, and K-release dynamics from waste mica. Ecol Eng 81:340–347

Meena VS, Meena SK, Verma JP, Meena RS, Ghosh BN (2015d) The needs of nutrient use efficiency for sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:562–563. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.044

Meena VS, Maurya BR, Meena RS (2015e) Residual impact of wellgrow formulation and NPK on growth and yield of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) Bangladesh J Bot 44(1):143–146

Meena VS, Verma JP, Meena SK (2015f) Towards the current scenario of nutrient use efficiency in crop species. J Clean Prod 102:556–557. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2015.04.030

Meena RK, Singh RK, Singh NP, Meena SK, Meena VS (2016a) Isolation of low temperature surviving plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) from pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and documentation of their plant growth promoting traits. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 4:806–811

Meena VS, Bahadur I, Maurya BR, Kumar A, Meena RK, Meena SK, Verma JP (2016b) Potassium-solubilizing microorganism in evergreen agriculture: an overview. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 1–20. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_1

Meena VS, Meena SK, Bisht JK, Pattanayak A (2016c) Conservation agricultural practices in sustainable food production. J Clean Prod 137:690–691

Meena RS, Bohra JS, Singh SP, Meena VS, Verma JP, Verma SK, Sihag SK (2016d) Towards the prime response of manure to enhance nutrient use efficiency and soil sustainability a current need: a book review. J Clean Prod 112(1):1258–1260

Meena SK, Rakshit A, Meena VS (2016e) Effect of seed bio-priming and N doses under varied soil type on nitrogen use efficiency (NUE) of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under greenhouse conditions. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 6:68–75

Meng L, Zhang A, Wang F, Han X, Wang D, Li S (2015) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and rhizobium facilitate nitrogen uptake and transfer in soybean/maize intercropping system. Front Plant Sci 6:339. doi:10.3389/fpls.2015.00339

Meplan C, Hesketh J (2012) The influence of selenium and selenoprotein gene variants on colorectal cancer risk. Mutagenesis 27:177–186

Nakandalage N, Nicolas M, Norton RM, Hirotsu N, Milham PJ, Seneweera S (2016) Improving rice zinc biofortification success rates through genetic and crop management approaches in a changing environment. Front Plant Sci 7:764. doi:10.3389/fpls.2016.00764

Nuberger A, Okebe J, Yahav D, Paul M (2016) Oral iron supplements for children in malaria-endemic areas. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. (2) 1–129. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD006589.pub4

Parewa HP, Yadav J, Rakshit A, Meena VS, Karthikeyan N (2014) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance growth and nutrient uptake of crops. Agric Sustain Dev 2(2):101–116

Pellegrino E, Bedini S (2014) Enhancing ecosystem services in sustainable agriculture: Biofertilization and biofortification of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Soil Biol Biochem 68:429–439. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.soilbio.2013.09.030

Prakash S, Verma JP (2016) Global perspective of potash for fertilizer production. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 327–331. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_23

Prasad AS (2008) Zinc in human health: effect of zinc on immune cells. Mol Med 14(353):357

Prasanna R, Joshi M, Rana A, Shivay YS, Nain L (2012) Influence of co-inoculation of bacteria-cyanobacteria on crop yield and C-N sequestration in soil under rice crop. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1223–1235

Priyadharsini P, Muthukumar T (2016) Interactions between arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on agricultural productivity. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 111–125. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_8

Qin H, Brookes PC, Xu J (2016) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal hyphae alter soil bacterial community and enhance polychlorinated biphenyls dissipation. Front Microbiol 7:939. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2016.00939

Raghavendra MP, Nayaka NC, Nuthan BR (2016) Role of rhizosphere microflora in potassium solubilization. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 43–59. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_4

Rana A, Joshi M, Prasanna R, Shivay YS, Nain L (2012) Biofortification of wheat through inoculation of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and cyanobacteria. Eur J Soil Biol 50:118–126

Rana A, Kabi SR, Verma S, Adak A, Madan P, Shivay YS, Prasanna R and Nain L (2015) Prospecting plant growth promoting bacteria and cyanobacteria as options for enrichment of macro- and micronutrients in grains in rice-wheat cropping sequence. Cogent Food Agric 1: 1037379. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/23311932.2015.1037379

Rawat J, Sanwal P, Saxena J (2016) Potassium and its role in sustainable agriculture. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 235–253. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_17

Saha M, Maurya BR, Meena VS, Bahadur I, Kumar A (2016a) Identification and characterization of potassium solubilizing bacteria (KSB) from Indo-Gangetic Plains of India. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 7:202–209

Saha M, Sarkar S, Sarkar B, Sharma BK, Bhattacharjee S, Tribedi P (2016b) Microbial siderophores and their potential applications: a review. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23:3984–3999. doi:10.1007/s11356-015-4294-0

Saha M, Maurya BR, Bahadur I, Kumar A, Meena VS (2016c) Can potassium-solubilising bacteria mitigate the potassium problems in India? In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 127–136. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_9

Sathya A, Vijayabharathi R, Srinivas V, Gopalakrishnan S (2016) Plant growth-promoting actinobacteria on chickpea seed mineral density: an upcoming complementary tool for sustainable biofortification strategy. 3 Biotech 6:138. doi:10.1007/s13205-016-0458-y

Sazawal S, Black RE, Ramsan M, Chwaya HM, Stoltzfus RJ, Dutta A, Dhingra U, Kabole I, Deb S, Othman MK, Kabole FM (2006) Effects of routine prophylactic supplementation with iron and folic acid on admission to hospital and mortality in preschool children in a high malaria transmission setting: community-based, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 367:133–143

Schalk IJ, Guillon L (2013) Pyoverdine biosynthesis and secretion in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: implications for metal homeostasis. Environ Microbiol 15(6):1661–1673. doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12013

Scheublin TR, Sanders IR, Keel C, van der Meer JR (2010) Characterisation of microbial communities colonising the hyphal surfaces of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. ISME J 4(6):752–763. doi:10.1038/ismej.2010.5

Senés-Guerrero C, Torres-Cortés G, Pfeiffer S, Rojas M, Schüßler A (2014) Potato-associated arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal communities in the Peruvian Andes. Mycorrhiza 24(6):405–417. doi:10.1007/s00572-013-0549-0

Shakeel M, Afroz R, Hssan MN, Hafeez FY (2015) Root associated Bacillus sp. improves growth, yield and zinc translocation for basmati rice (Oryza sativa) varieties. Front Microbiol 6:1286. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2015.01286

Sharma A, Shankhdhar D, Shankhdhar SC (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms: mechanism and their role in potassium solubilization and uptake. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 203–219. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_15

Shi Z, Mickan B, Feng G, Chen Y (2015) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi improved plant growth and nutrient acquisition of desert ephemeral *Plantago minuta* under variable soil water conditions. J Arid Land 7(3):414–420. doi:10.1007/s40333-014-0046-0

Shrivastava M, Srivastava PC, D'Souza SF (2016) KSM soil diversity and mineral solubilization, in relation to crop production and molecular mechanism. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP,

Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 221–234. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_16

Siddiqui ZA (2006) PGPR: prospective biocontrol agents of plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biocontrol. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 112–142

Sindhu SS, Parmar P, Phour M, Sehrawat A (2016) Potassium-solubilizing microorganisms (KSMs) and its effect on plant growth improvement. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 171–185. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_13

Singh NP, Singh RK, Meena VS, Meena RK (2015) Can we use maize (*Zea mays*) rhizobacteria as plant growth promoter? Vegetos 28(1):86–99. doi:10.5958/2229-4473.2015.00012.9

Singh M, Dotaniya ML, Mishra A, Dotaniya CK, Regar KL, Lata M (2016) Role of biofertilizers in conservation agriculture. In: Bisht JK, Meena VS, Mishra PK, Pattanayak A (eds) Conservation agriculture: an approach to combat climate change in Indian Himalaya. Springer, Singapore, pp 113–134. doi:10.1007/978-981-10-2558-7_4

Smith MJ, Neilands JB (1984) Rhizobactin, a siderophore from *Rhizobium meliloti*. J Plant Nutr 7:449–458

Song Y, Chen D, Lu K, Sun Z, Zeng R (2015) Enhanced tomato disease resistance primed by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus. Front Plant Sci 6:786. doi:10.3389/fpls.2015.00786

Sors TG, Ellis DR, Salt DE (2005) Selenium uptake, translocation, assimilation and metabolic fate in plants. Photosynth Res 86:373–389

Srivastava RP (2016) Antinutrients restraining biofortification. In: Singh U, Praharaj CS, Singh SS, Singh NP (eds) Biofortification of food crops. Springer, India, pp 333–348

Sunde RA (2012) Selenium. In: Ross AC, Caballero B, Cousins RJ, Tucker KL, Ziegler TR (eds) Modern nutrition in health and disease, 11th edn. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp 225–237

Sundström JF, Albihn A, Boqvist S, Ljungvall K, Marstrop H, Martiin C, Nyberg K, Vågsholm I, Yuen J, Magnusson U (2014) Future threats to agricultural food production posed by environmental degradation, climate change, and animal and plant diseases – a risk analysis in three economic and climate settings. Food Sec 6:201. doi:10.1007/s12571-014-0331-y

Support Precision Agriculture (2016). http://supportprecisionagriculture.org/

Sura-de Jong M, Reynolds RJB, Richterova K, Musilova L, Staicu LC, Chocholata I, Cappa JJ, Taghavi S, van der Lelie D, Frantik T, Dolinova I, Strejcek M, Cochran AT, Lovecka P, Pilon-Smits EAH (2015) Selenium hyperaccumulators harbor a diverse endophytic bacterial community characterized by high selenium resistance and plant growth promoting properties. Front Plant Sci 6:113. doi:10.3389/fpls.2015.00113

Tai APK, Martin MV, Heald CL (2014) Threat to future global food security from climate and ozone air pollution. Nat Clim Chang 4:817–821. doi:10.1038/nclimate2317

Tariq M, Hameed S, Malik KA, Hafeez FY (2007) Plant root associated bacteria for zinc mobilisation in rice. Pak J Bot 39(1):245–253

Teotia P, Kumar V, Kumar M, Shrivastava N, Varma A (2016) Rhizosphere microbes: potassium solubilization and crop productivity-present and future aspects. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 315–325. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_22

Terry N, Zayed AM, de Souza MP, Tarun AS (2000) Selenium in higher plants. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 51:401–432. doi:10.1146/annurev.arplant.51.1.401

Trijatmiko KR, Dueñas C, Tsakirpaloglou N, Torrizo L, Arines FM, Adeva C, Balindong J, Oliva N, Sapasap MV, Borrero J, Rey J, Francisco P, Nelson A, Nakanishi H, Lombi E, Tako E, Glahn RP, Stangoulis J, Chadha-Mohanty P, Johnson AAT, Tohme J, Barry G, Slamet-Lohdin IH (2016) Biofortified indica rice attains iron and zinc nutrition dietary targets in the field. Sci Rep 6:19792. doi:10.1038/srep19792

UN (2015) Sustainable development knowledge platform. https://sustainabledevelopment.un.org/about

Urbano G, Lopez-Jurado M, Aranda P, Vidal-Valverde C, Tenorio E, Porres J (2000) The role of phytic acid in legumes: antinutrient or beneficial function. J Physiol Biochem 56:283–229

Vansuyt G, Robin A, Briat JF, Curie C, Lemanceau P (2007) Iron acquisition from Fe-pyoverdine by *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact J 20:441–447

Velazquez E, Silva LR, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Peix A (2016) Diversity of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms and their interactions with plants. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 99–110. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_7

Velivelli SLS, Sessitch A, Doyle Prestwich B (2014) The role of microbial inoculants in integrated crop management systems. Potato Res 57(3):291–309. doi:10.1007/s11540-014-9278-9

Verma R, Maurya BR, Meena VS (2014) Integrated effect of bio-organics with chemical fertilizer on growth, yield and quality of cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* var *capitata*). Indian J Agric Sci 84(8):914–919

Verma JP, Jaiswa DK, Meena VS, Meena RS (2015a) Current need of organic farming for enhancing sustainable agriculture. J Clean Prod 102:545–547

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Meena VS, Kumar A, Meena RS (2015b) Issues and challenges about sustainable agriculture production for management of natural resources to sustain soil fertility and health. J Clean Prod 107:793–794

Wang U, Yang X, Zhang X, Dong L, Zhang J, Wei Y, Feng Y, Lu L (2014) Improved plant growth and Zn accumulation in grains of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) by inoculation of endophytic microbes isolated from a Zn hyperaccumulator, *Sedum alfredii* H. J Agric Food Chem 62(8):1783–1791. doi:10.1021/jf404152u

Weinberg ED (1999) The role of iron in fungal and protozoan infectious diseases. J Eukaryot Microbiol 46:231–238

Welch RM (2001) Impact of mineral nutrients in plants on human nutrition on a worldwide scale. In: Horst WJ, Schenk MK, Bürkert A (eds) Plant nutrition-food security and sustainability of agro-ecosystems. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 284–285

White PJ, Broadley MR (2009) Biofortification of crops with seven mineral elements often lacking in human diets: iron zinc copper calcium magnesium selenium and iodine. New Phytol 182:49–84

White PJ, Bowen HC, Parmaguru P, Fritz M, Spracklen WP, Spiby RE, Meacham MC, Mead A, Harriman M, Trueman LJ, Smith BM, Thomas B, Broadley MR (2004) Interaction between selenium and sulfur nutrition in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. J Exp Bot 55:1927–1937

White PJ, Broadley MR, Bowen HC, Johnson SE (2007) Selenium and its relationship with sulfur. In: Hawkesford MJ, de Kok LJ (eds) Sulfur in plants – an ecological perspective. Springer, London, pp 225–252

WHO (2006) Guidelines of food fortification with micronutrients. http://www.who.int/nutrition/publications/guide_food_fortification_micronutrients.pdf

WHO (2016a) Biofortification of staple crops. http://www.who.int/elena/titles/biofortification/en/

WHO (2016b) Micronutrient deficiencies: iron deficiency anaemia. http://www.who.int/nutrition/topics/ida/en/

Wilber CG (1980) Toxicology of selenium: a review. Clin Toxicol 17:171–230

Wilson K, Benton TG, Graham RI, Grzywacz D (2013) Pest control: biopesticides’ potential. Science 342(6160):799. doi:10.1126/science.342.6160.799-a

Wu T, Zhang HT, Wang Y, Jia WS, Xu XF, Zhang XZ, Han ZH (2012) Induction of root Fe (III) reductase activity and proton extrusion by iron deficiency is mediated by auxin-based systemic signalling in *Malus xiaojinensis*. J Exp Bot 63:859–870

Wu Q-S, Srivastava AK, Zou Y-N (2013) AMF-induced tolerance to drought stress in citrus: a review. Scientia Hort 164:77–87. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2013.09.010

Wu Q-S, Cao M-Q, Zou Y-N, He X-h (2014) Direct and indirect effects of glomalin, mycorrhizal hyphae, and roots on aggregate stability in rhizosphere of trifoliate orange. Sci Rep 4:5823. doi:10.1038/srep05823

Wu Z, Bañuelos GS, Lin ZQ, Liu Y, Yin X, Li M (2015) Biofortification and phytoremediation of selenium in China. Front Plant Sci 6:136. doi:10.3389/fpls.2015.00136

Yadav BK, Sidhu AS (2016) Dynamics of potassium and their bioavailability for plant nutrition. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 187–201. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_14

Yasin M, El-Medhawi AF, Jahn CE, Anwar A, Turner MFS, Faisal M, Pilon-Smits EAH (2015a) Seleniferous soils as a source for production of selenium-enriched foods and potential of bacteria to enhance plant selenium uptake. Plant Soil 386:385–394. doi:10.1007/s11104-014-2270-y

Yasin M, El-Medhawi AF, Pilon-Smits EAH, Faisal M (2015b) Selenium-fortified wheat: potential of microbes for biofortification of selenium and other essential nutrients. Int J Phytoremediation 17:777–786. doi:10.1080/15226514.2014.987372

Yasin M, Munir I, Faisal M (2016) Can *Bacillus* spp. enhance K^+ uptake in crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 163–170. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_12

Yasmin S (2011) Characterization of growth promoting and bioantagonistic bacteria associated with rhizosphere of cotton and rice. NIBGE, Faisalabad

Zahedi H (2016) Growth-promoting effect of potassium-solubilizing microorganisms on some crop species. In: Meena VS, Maurya BR, Verma JP, Meena RS (eds) Potassium solubilizing microorganisms for sustainable agriculture. Springer, India, pp 31–42. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2776-2_3

Zhang H, Sun Y, Xie X, Kim MS, Dowd SE, Paré PW (2009) A soil bacterium regulates plant acquisition of iron via deficiency-inducible mechanisms. Plant J 58:568–577. doi:10.1111/j.1365-313X.2009.03803.x

Zhang Y, Song Q, Yan J, Tang J, Zhao R, Zhang Y, He Z, Zou C, Ortiz-Moasterio I (2010) Mineral element concentrations in grains of Chinese wheat cultivars. Euphytica 174:303–313

Zhang Z-Z, Lou Y-G, Deng D-J, Rahman MM, Wu Q-S (2015) Effects of common mycorrhizal network on plant carbohydrates and soil properties in trifoliate orange–white clover association. PLoS One 10(11):e0142371. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0142371